

# HOW TO STUDY IN COLLEGE

WALTER PAUK • ROSS J. Q. OWENS • TENTH EDITION

gaining



retaining



explaining



# How to Study in College

TENTH EDITION

**Walter Pauk**

Cornell University, Emeritus

**Ross J. Q. Owens**



---

Australia • Brazil • Japan • Korea • Mexico • Singapore • Spain • United Kingdom • United States

**How to Study in College, Tenth Edition**  
**Pauk, Owens**

Senior Publisher: Lyn Uhl

Director of College Success: Annie Todd

Senior Sponsoring Editor: Shani Fisher

Assistant Editor: Daisuke Yasutake

Editorial Assistant: Cat Salerno

Senior Marketing Manager: Kirsten Stoller

Marketing Coordinator: Ryan Ahern

Marketing Communications Manager:  
Martha Pfeiffer

Content Project Manager: Jessica Rasile

Art Director: Linda Jurras

Print Buyer: Julio Esperas

Senior Rights Acquisition Account Manager:  
Katie Huha

Image Manager: John Hill

Production Service/Composer: Cadmus

Text Designer: Polo Barrera

Cover Design:  
Riezebos Holzbaur/Tim Herald

Cover Images: Photolibrary/Creatas (top);  
Photolibrary/Ron Nickel (middle); Photoli-  
brary/Image 100 (bottom)

© 2011, 2008, 2005 Wadsworth, Cengage Learning

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored, or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at  
**Cengage Learning Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706**

For permission to use material from this text or product,  
submit all requests online at [www.cengage.com/permissions](http://www.cengage.com/permissions).  
Further permissions questions can be emailed to  
[permissionrequest@cengage.com](mailto:permissionrequest@cengage.com).

Library of Congress Control Number: 2009937405

ISBN-13: 978-1-4390-8446-5

ISBN-10: 1-4390-8446-7

**Wadsworth**

20 Channel Center Street  
Boston, MA 02210  
USA

Cengage Learning is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with office locations around the globe, including Singapore, the United Kingdom, Australia, Mexico, Brazil and Japan. Locate your local office at **[international.cengage.com/region](http://international.cengage.com/region)**

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

For your course and learning solutions, visit **[www.cengage.com](http://www.cengage.com)**.

Purchase any of our products at your local college store or at our preferred online store **[www.CengageBrain.com](http://www.CengageBrain.com)**

# How to Study in College

## *The Book at a Glance*

### **Part 1 Building a Foundation** **1**

---

*Start with fundamental skills that help to put you on firm academic footing.*

- |          |  |           |
|----------|--|-----------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>Goal-Setting: Know What You're Aiming For</b>         | <b>3</b>  |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Organization: Use Your Time and Space Effectively</b> | <b>25</b> |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Concentration: Stay Focused</b>                       | <b>57</b> |
| <b>4</b> | <b>Stress Management: Learn How to Handle Pressure</b>   | <b>77</b> |

### **Part 2 Gaining Information** **105**

---

*Pinpoint and understand the most valuable information in your courses.*

- |          |  |            |
|----------|--|------------|
| <b>5</b> | <b>Comprehension: Read Smarter</b>   | <b>107</b> |
| <b>6</b> | <b>Vocabulary: Extend Your Word Frontier</b>                               | <b>127</b> |
| <b>7</b> | <b>Critical Thinking: Use Questions to Zero In on Valuable Information</b> | <b>157</b> |
| <b>8</b> | <b>Flexible Thinking: Learn Through Multiple Channels</b>                  | <b>179</b> |

### **Part 3 Retaining Information** **205**

---

*Once you've acquired information, it's no use if you can't find a way to hold onto it.*

- |           |   |            |
|-----------|---|------------|
| <b>9</b>  | <b>Remembering: Fight Back Against Forgetting</b> | <b>207</b> |
| <b>10</b> | <b>The Cornell System: Take Effective Notes</b>   | <b>235</b> |
| <b>11</b> | <b>Mastery: Turn Your Notes into Knowledge</b>    | <b>279</b> |

### **Part 4 Explaining Information** **301**

---

*To demonstrate your level of learning, you need to "show what you know."*

- |           |   |            |
|-----------|---|------------|
| <b>12</b> | <b>Tests and Quizzes: Ace Your Exams</b>                    | <b>303</b> |
| <b>13</b> | <b>Class Participation: Get the Most out of Discussions</b> | <b>337</b> |
| <b>14</b> | <b>Written Assignments: Turn in a Solid Research Paper</b>  | <b>361</b> |

# Contents

To the Instructor of the Tenth Edition

ix

To the Student

xv

## Part I Building a Foundation 1

---

<b>1 Goal-Setting: Know What You're Aiming For</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Stick to a Schedule</b>	30
<i>March to Your Own Rhythm</i>	4	<i>Divide Your Time into Blocks</i>	31
<i>Resist the Tug of the Crowd</i>	5	<i>Think in Terms of Tasks</i>	37
<i>Harness the Power of "Imaging"</i>	5	<i>Get Your Priorities Straight</i>	39
<i>Pursue Quality Instead of Quantity</i>	6	<b>Stay Organized</b>	43
<b>Change the Meaning of GPA</b>	9	<i>Devise a System</i>	43
<i>Define Your Goal</i>	10	<i>Keep Things Flexible</i>	46
<i>Devise a Plan</i>	12	<i>Cut Down on Clutter</i>	47
<i>Take Action</i>	14	<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	48
<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	16	<i>Seven Valuable Tidbits About Time</i>	49
<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	17	<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	50
<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	19	<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	52
<i>Say What?</i>	19	<i>Say What?</i>	52
<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	21	<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	54
<i>Backstory</i>	22	<i>Backstory</i>	55
<b>2 Organization: Use Your Time and Space Effectively</b>	<b>25</b>	<b>3 Concentration: Stay Focused</b>	<b>57</b>
<i>Reclaim Lost Time</i>	26	<b>Eliminate Distractions</b>	59
<i>Find "Hidden" Time</i>	26	<i>Reduce External Distractions</i>	59
<i>Change Your Time Habits</i>	27	<i>Discourage Internal Distractions</i>	62
		<i>Minimize Multitasking</i>	64

<b>Cultivate Concentration</b>	68	<b>Improve Your Attitude</b>	82
<i>Make Lists</i>	68	<i>Learn to Relax</i>	83
<i>Take Breaks</i>	68	<i>Improve Your Self-Esteem</i>	85
<i>Maintain a Balance</i>	69	<i>Take Control of Your Life</i>	86
<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	70	<b>Follow a Healthy Routine</b>	88
<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	71	<i>Develop Good Eating Habits</i>	88
<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	73	<i>Improve Your Sleep</i>	92
<i>Say What?</i>	73	<i>Get Some Exercise</i>	96
<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	74	<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	98
<i>Backstory</i>	75	<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	99
<b>4 Stress Management: Learn How to Handle Pressure</b>	<b>77</b>	<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	101
<b>Eliminate Avoidable Stress</b>	78	<i>Say What?</i>	101
<i>Discourage Procrastination</i>	79	<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	103
<i>Sidestep Common Stressors</i>	81	<i>Backstory</i>	104
<b>Part II Gaining Information</b>			<b>105</b>
<b>5 Comprehension: Read Smarter</b>	<b>107</b>	<i>Say What?</i>	122
<b>Learn Your Speed Limit</b>	108	<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	124
<i>Keep an Eye on Your Eyes</i>	108	<i>Backstory</i>	125
<i>Listen to Your Silent Speech</i>	110	<b>6 Vocabulary: Extend Your Word Frontier</b>	<b>127</b>
<i>Don't Forget Comprehension</i>	111	<b>Choose the Right Tools</b>	128
<b>Pick Up Your PACE</b>	112	<i>Harness the Power of Interest</i>	128
<i>P: Increase Your Preparation</i>	112	<i>Make the Most of the Dictionary</i>	132
<i>A: Choose Your Altitude</i>	113	<i>Preserve Your Words on Index Cards</i>	139
<i>C: Read in Clusters</i>	115	<b>Explore Your Personal Frontier</b>	141
<i>E: Draw on Your Experience</i>	117	<i>Understand How Words Are Learned</i>	142
<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	119	<i>Recognize Frontier Words</i>	143
<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	120	<i>Apply the Frontier System</i>	143
<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	122		

<b>Treat Words Like Chemical Compounds</b>	143	<i>Follow a Set of Guidelines for Analysis</i>	169
<i>Learn Roots and Prefixes</i>	144	<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	171
<i>Use the Fourteen Master Words</i>	147	<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	172
<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	149	<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	174
<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	150	<i>Say What?</i>	174
<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	152	<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	176
<i>Say What?</i>	152	<i>Backstory</i>	177
<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	153	<b>8 Flexible Thinking: Learn Through Multiple Channels</b>	<b>179</b>
<i>Backstory</i>	154	<b>Deal with the Dominant Channels</b>	180
<b>7 Critical Thinking: Use Questions to Zero In on Valuable Information</b>	<b>157</b>	<i>Cope with Difficult Texts</i>	180
<b>Figure Out Whether Information Is Relevant</b>	158	<i>Understand Visuals</i>	182
<i>Do a Bull's-Eye Search</i>	159	<b>Change the Channel</b>	188
<i>Do a Ballpark Search</i>	160	<i>Convert Words into Pictures</i>	188
<b>Decide Whether Information Is Important</b>	162	<i>Work in Groups</i>	195
<i>Answer the Author's Questions</i>	162	<i>Gain Hands-On Practice</i>	196
<i>Answer Your Own Questions</i>	163	<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	198
<b>Determine Whether Information Is Reliable</b>	164	<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	199
<i>Beware of Reliability Distractors</i>	164	<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	201
		<i>Say What?</i>	201
		<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	203
		<i>Backstory</i>	204
<b>Part III Retaining Information</b>			<b>205</b>
<b>9 Remembering: Fight Back Against Forgetting</b>	<b>207</b>	<i>Limit What You Choose to Learn</i>	213
<b>Make an Effort to Remember</b>	210	<i>Arrive at Meaningful Patterns</i>	214
<i>Avoid Pseudo-Forgetting</i>	210	<b>Strengthen Your Memories</b>	215
<i>Find a Motivation</i>	211	<i>Connect New Memories to Old</i>	215
<b>Organize Your Information</b>	212	<i>Use Recitation to Rehearse</i>	222
		<b>Allow Time for Consolidation</b>	223
		<i>Break Up Your Study Sessions</i>	224

<i>Come to Terms with Plateaus</i>	225	<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	271
<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	226	<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	272
<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	227	<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	274
<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	229	<i>Say What?</i>	274
<i>Say What?</i>	229	<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	276
<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	231	<i>Backstory</i>	277
<i>Backstory</i>	232		
<b>10 The Cornell System: Take Effective Notes</b>	<b>235</b>	<b>11 Mastery: Turn Your Notes into Knowledge</b>	<b>279</b>
<b>Prepare to Take Notes</b>	236	<b>Review to Cement Understanding</b>	280
<i>Prepare for Readings</i>	236	<i>Target Key Ideas with the Q System</i>	280
<i>Prepare for Lectures</i>	242	<i>See the Big Picture with Summaries</i>	284
<b>Start with the Cornell System</b>	243	<b>Recite to Strengthen Memories</b>	286
<i>Take Separate Notes</i>	244	<i>Recite Out Loud</i>	287
<i>Mark Your Textbook</i>	249	<i>Recite By Writing</i>	287
<i>Annotate Electronic Text</i>	250	<b>Reflect to Add Wisdom</b>	288
<b>Gather Information</b>	254	<i>Learn Why Reflection is Vital</i>	289
<i>Be Inquisitive</i>	254	<i>Use Techniques to Help You Reflect</i>	290
<i>Follow the Signs</i>	255	<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	293
<i>Record Efficiently</i>	260	<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	294
<i>Deal with Special Cases</i>	266	<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	296
<b>Tie Things Together</b>	267	<i>Say What?</i>	296
<i>Wrap Up Your Readings</i>	268	<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	298
<i>Relive Your Lectures</i>	268	<i>Backstory</i>	299
<i>Walk Through the Note-taking Steps</i>	268		

## **Part IV Explaining Information** **301**

<b>12 Tests and Quizzes: Ace Your Exams</b>	<b>303</b>	<i>Understand Objective Questions</i>	312
<b>Manage Test Anxiety</b>	304	<i>Learn the Basics of Writing an Essay</i>	318
<i>Prepare Yourself Academically</i>	304	<b>Work Systematically</b>	323
<i>Prepare Yourself Psychologically</i>	311	<i>Read Before You Answer</i>	323
<b>Know What Each Question Requires</b>	312	<i>Map Out Your Time</i>	324
		<i>Use Markings and Jottings</i>	325



<b>Learn from Experience</b>	326		
<i>Analyze Your Answers</i>	326		
<i>Plot a Course Correction</i>	327		
<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	328		
<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	329		
<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	331		
<i>Say What?</i>	331		
<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	333		
<i>Backstory</i>	334		
<b>13 Class Participation: Get the Most Out of Discussions</b>	<b>337</b>		
<hr/>			
<b>Do Your Homework</b>	338		
<i>Prepare Based on Specific Readings</i>	338		
<i>Prepare Based on Specific Questions</i>	339		
<b>Know the Ground Rules</b>	339		
<i>Learn What the Instructor Expects</i>	339		
<i>Adapt to the Discussion Environment</i>	340		
<b>Participate Fully</b>	342		
<i>Listen Actively</i>	342		
<i>AIM to Make Your Points Effectively</i>	347		
<b>Follow Up Promptly</b>	351		
<i>Review In-Class Discussions</i>	351		
<i>Review Online Discussions</i>	352		
<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	352		
<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	353		
<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	355		
<i>Say What?</i>	355		
<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	357		
<i>Backstory</i>	358		
<b>14 Written Assignments: Turn in a Solid Research Paper</b>	<b>361</b>		
<hr/>			
<b>Decide What to Investigate</b>	362		
<i>Choose a Subject</i>	362		
<i>Narrow Your Topic</i>	363		
<i>Find a Focus</i>	363		
<b>Gather Your Information</b>	364		
<i>Know Where to Look</i>	364		
<i>Assemble a Working Bibliography</i>	367		
<i>Take Notes</i>	368		
<b>Devise a Framework</b>	370		
<i>Decide on a Basic Premise</i>	370		
<i>Cluster Your Notes</i>	371		
<i>Plot an Organizational Pattern</i>	372		
<b>Write the Paper</b>	373		
<i>Race Through the First Draft</i>	373		
<i>Revise and Edit Your Paper</i>	374		
<i>Add the Missing Elements</i>	376		
<b>FINAL WORDS</b>	379		
<b>CHAPTER CHECKUP</b>	389		
<b>VOCABULARY IN ACTION</b>	391		
<i>Say What?</i>	392		
<i>Vocab-u-ladder</i>	393		
<i>Backstory</i>	394		
<b>Index</b>	<b>395</b>		



# To the Instructor of the Tenth Edition

Students who are seeking help are not primarily interested in theory, and most of them have little patience with merely inspirational talk. They want practical instruction on how to succeed academically. They want something that they can readily understand and apply and that works. After a week of classes, they discover that the hit-or-miss tactics that got them through high school are grossly inadequate and inefficient at the competitive college level. So they turn to us for help.

Let's then teach these students proven techniques for studying and learning. *How to Study in College* is brimming with exciting techniques, based on widely tested educational and learning theory, that have already helped myriad students. But the tail of theory is never allowed to wag the practical, feet-on-the-ground dog. While theory is always implicit and is sometimes given in enough detail to explain the rationale behind a particular technique or reassure the skeptic, it is never presented without explicit applications and never used simply as exhortation. After all, the person who needs penicillin is hardly cured by learning the history of antibiotics!

Because it is so crucial that students learn for the long term, we are wholeheartedly against techniques that stress mere memorization. Such techniques fill the mind with "knowledge" that melts away after a test and leaves learning still to be done. The techniques presented in this book result in real learning. And real learning, like a real diamond, lasts.

Finally, no textbook—no matter how complete or current—is truly useful if it is boring, confusing, or excessively difficult to read. We have worked hard to keep this book well organized and clear, maintaining a conversational tone so that reading it is like having a sincere, person-to-person chat.

## What's Different in the Tenth Edition?

Although most of the popular elements from the previous edition have been retained, some of the book's familiar material has been enhanced to make it even better organized, more helpful, and more timely. To provide an extra avenue for framing the book's important ideas and techniques, subsections have been annotated with Skill Tags, Web-inspired labels that highlight the core skills that run as themes throughout the book. In addition, three end-of-chapter vocabulary sections—two brand new and one updated—reinforce the importance of word building as a lifelong pursuit.

### New! Skill Tags

Learning assessments can be valuable for both instructors and students in providing a picture of each student's particular approach to study. But beyond the abstract insights they often afford, such assessments rarely offer any sort of tangible action plan. This can be a wasted opportunity, particularly for students, who may appreciate the brief introspection but inevitably forget any revelations because most avenues for follow-up lead nowhere or wind up as dead ends. We've decided to do things a little differently. The updated learning assessment for this new edition (available online at [www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e](http://www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e)) emphasizes eight core skills that serve as the foundation for the book's 14 chapters and points to specific sections in the tenth edition where those skills are used. The core skills are *focusing*, *overviewing*, *reframing*, *summarizing*, *planning*, *questioning*, *clustering*, and *self-direction*. Using a format that almost any Web-savvy reader should recognize, the book's subsections have all been "tagged" with Skill Tags, labels that indicate the skills they stress. Thus, after reflecting on their responses, students can refer to parts or pages of the book for discussions and techniques relating to each highlighted skill.

### New! Vocabulary in Action

As with previous editions, the tenth edition continues to emphasize vocabulary development as a lifelong endeavor. Because words are building blocks of thinking, it is essential that students be given a variety of opportunities to add to and strengthen their vocabularies. Unfortunately, not all students have an instant affinity for learning new words. As instructors know all too well, it is often the approach and not the ultimate goal that can lead to indifference and even resistance in some students. It is for this reason that "Vocabulary in Action" section takes three distinct approaches to vocabulary enrichment. "Say What?" is an updated version of the previous edition's "Words in

Context” section that quotes an eclectic array of thinkers and leaders—everyone from J. K. Rowling to Barack Obama—and asks students to use context to pinpoint the meaning for some of the words they use. “Vocab-u-ladder” uses a word puzzle to encourage students to explore the derivations of words and their relationships by linking two seemingly disconnected words together, using a ladder motif that incorporates a series of clues and provides a group of possible words that can be placed on each of the empty rungs. And finally, “Backstory” goes “up close and personal” with key words taken directly from each chapter, spotlighting their fascinating and sometimes surprising histories. The fact that these words have a direct connection to what students have just been reading adds to the relevance and interest of each story.

### New! Chapter Checkups

---

The end-of-chapter questions have been updated with a new name and a greater emphasis on questions that encourage students to reflect on what they have just read and apply the skills they’ve learned in each chapter to the work they are doing elsewhere.

### New! Chapter Topics

---

Although most of the chapter titles in the tenth edition are similar to those in the ninth edition, each chapter now includes an additional chapter topic (e.g., “Concentration” for Chapter 3, “Stay Focused”) that reinforces the chapter’s core topic. Like the Skill Tags that accompany chapter subsections, these chapter topics are designed to make it easier for readers to pinpoint key information in the book and to get to the heart of the skill or technique being emphasized.

## Valuable Features Retained

---

Although the enhancements to the tenth edition make for an even more compelling and effective text, several of the most helpful and popular elements from the previous edition have been retained in this one.

- **Concept Maps.** Concept maps continue to provide a graphical means of summarizing chapter content. Before students read a chapter, the maps supply advance organizers, which, according to David P. Ausubel, make it easier to learn and remember material in the chapter itself. After students have read the chapter, the concept maps provide a bird’s-eye view, showing that chapter’s main concepts with linking lines that establish relationships.

- **Marginal Questions.** The blue marginal questions that make *How to Study in College* distinctive among study skills textbooks remain, as do the outside margins, which not only make room for these printed questions but also make it easier for students to annotate the text on their own.
- **It's Your Q.** Although most of the book's paragraphs are accompanied by marginal questions that demonstrate the Q System, in the tenth edition—as in the previous one—a few questions in each chapter have been replaced by “It's Your Q” boxes that encourage students to formulate and write in their own marginal questions.

## Ancillary Materials

This edition is supported by several ancillaries that are designed to reinforce and enrich the basic book:

The **Student and Instructor Companion Websites** located at [www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e](http://www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e) provide additional materials for students and teachers. The Student Companion Website includes “Practice Quizzes,” “Roots and Prefixes Flashcards,” “Words of Wisdom,” and more. The Instructor Companion Website equips instructors with the author's PowerPoint slides, digital Instructor's Resource Manual, and additional support materials for your course.

The downloadable **Instructor's Resource Manual** provides you with quick access to information on preparing your syllabus, extra multiple-choice questions for each chapter, discussion questions, and reproducible masters relating to the concepts found in the text.

**PowerPoint Slides** for each chapter of the tenth edition are also accessible through the Instructor Companion Website. Use these slides to enhance any classroom presentation.

If you're looking for ways to assess your students, Cengage Learning has additional resources for you to consider. For in-depth information on any of the following items, talk with your sales rep:

- **College Success Factors Index:** This pre- and post-test determines a student's strengths and weaknesses in areas proven to be determinants of college success.
- **CL Assessment and Portfolio Builder:** This personal development tool engages students in self-assessment, critical thinking, and goal setting activities to prepare them for college and the workplace. The code for this item also provides students access to the Career Resource Center.
- **Noel-Levitz College Student Inventory:** *The Retention Management System™ College Student Inventory* (CSI from Noel-Levitz) is an early-alert, early-intervention program that identifies students with tendencies that contribute to dropping out of school. Students can participate in an integrated, campuswide program. Cengage Learning

offers you three assessment options that evaluate students on 19 different scales: Form A (194 items), Form B (100 items), or Form C (74 items). You will receive an online etoken that provides access to Form A, B, or C. Advisors are sent three interpretive reports: The Student's Report, The Advisor/Counselor Report, and The College Summary and Planning Report.

- **The Myers-Briggs Type Indicator® (MBTI®) Instrument<sup>1</sup>:** This is the most widely used personality inventory in history—and it is also available for packaging with *How to Study in College*. The standard Form M self-scorable instrument contains 93 items that determine preferences on four scales: Extraversion-Introversion, Sensing-Intuition, Thinking-Feeling, and Judging-Perceiving.

Also, the new edition may be packaged with the **College Success Planner**, a 12-month week-at-a-glance academic planner. The College Success Planner assists students in making the best use of their time both on and off campus, and includes additional reading about key learning strategies and life skills for success in college.

**Cengage Learning's TeamUP Faculty Program Consultants** is an additional service available. For more than a decade our consultants have helped faculty reach and engage first-year students by offering peer-to-peer consulting on curriculum and assessment, faculty training, and workshops. Our consultants are educators and higher education professionals who provide full-time support helping educators establish and maintain effective student success programs. They are available to help you to establish or improve your student success program and provide training on the implementation of our textbooks and technology. To connect with your TeamUP Faculty Program Consultant, call 1-800-528-8323 or visit [www.cengage.com/teamup](http://www.cengage.com/teamup).

## Acknowledgments

Sincere words of thanks go to those who are permanently linked to this book: the late Henry F. Thoma and Ian D. Elliot.

Sincere thanks also go to the contributors of material in previous editions: Professors Harrison A. Geiselman, Kenneth A. Greisen, and Jane E. Hardy, all of Cornell University; Professor William G. Moulton of Princeton University; Professor James A. Wood and Dr. Nancy V. Wood, both of the University of Texas at El Paso.

In addition, Walter Pauk remembers the valuable contributions made by Professors Mike Radis and Ron Williams of Pennsylvania State University as well as Professor Carol Kanar of Valencia Community College.

<sup>1</sup>MBTI and Myers-Briggs Type Indicator are registered trademarks of Consulting Psychologists Press, Inc.

Ross Owens is especially grateful to Joan Quirie Owens, who, as both his mother and his very first teacher, introduced him to the joys of reading and the allure of lifelong learning, and to his father, the late Gwinn Owens, whose passion for fairness and thirst for information were rivaled only by his love for his family. Finally, as always, deepest thanks go to Walter Pauk himself, a loyal friend and wonderful mentor, who remains the embodiment of this book's plain-spoken, clear-thinking, well-meaning wisdom.

At Cengage Learning, we would like to thank Shani Fisher, Daisuke Yasutake, and Cat Salerno for their editorial support of our work. We would also like to thank Jessica Rasile and Dawn Shaw for their time and contributions in seeing this new edition to its completion.

We would also like to thank the reviewers of previous editions, as well as these reviewers of the present tenth edition, for their helpful suggestions:

Ann Austin, St. Ambrose University  
Cecelia Brewer, University of Missouri–Kansas City  
Julie Colish, University of Michigan–Flint  
Dennis H. Congos, University of Central Florida  
Kelly Cox, University of Nevada–Las Vegas  
Azucena M. Endrinal, Houston Community College  
Karen Goode-Bartholomew, St. Norbert College  
Linda Gubbe, The University of Toledo  
Sis McManus, Whatcom Community College  
Nita McMillan, Southwest Tennessee Community College  
Carol Szabo, Elgin Community College  
Janet M. Zupan, University of Montana

And finally, in this edition, as in the nine previous ones, Walter Pauk offers very special thanks to his students:

“I am eternally grateful to my many students who have taught me much—so that I may pass on a little more to others.”

W. P.  
R. J. Q. O.



# To the Student

**Why waste time reading a book about study when you could be studying instead?** If you're like many students, you are both anxious to learn and impatient to succeed. You want a book that provides the answers you need, techniques that can actually use, and, most of all, that doesn't waste your time. We understand this feeling and, over the course of nearly five decades, have written and refined *How to Study in College* with exactly this sort of purpose in mind.

**And yet, this is not a simple test-passer, paper-writer, grade-getter kind of book.** That sort of quick-fix approach can be very appealing and it may get you over one hump, but unless your skills are solid and your learning is permanent you'll find yourself repeatedly climbing the same hill. *How to Study in College* is organized from top to bottom in a way that should make it easy to learn, use, and remember. It provides you with tips, techniques, and strategies that are supported by research and that you can use again and again, and it is designed with features that reinforce the very lessons you are learning. In short, you'll not only be reading a book that teaches but also one that practices what it preaches!

## How This Book Is Organized

**What does it take to be a successful student?** Imagine the power of being able to answer that basic question in a single, simple, memorable phrase. It might not always make things easier—studying still takes effort—but it would make them clearer and a lot less intimidating.

*Becoming a successful student involves building a strong study skills foundation before gaining, retaining, and ultimately explaining information.* That's right. That's the seed from which this entire book has grown. Build a base for information and then gain it, retain it, and explain it. All of the book's 14 chapters branch out from this single idea and have been clustered beneath these basic steps.

**Part I: Building a Foundation.** Even if it's made from sturdy and resilient materials, a tall tower will still topple if it's built upon a rickety base. In the same way, the gaining, retaining, and explaining you do in college must rest on a firm foundation of basic skills. Incidentally, these are skills that will be invaluable at college but should also serve you well at home, in your career, and for the rest of your life. You don't need to be a college student to benefit from knowing how to set goals (**Chapter 1**), control your time and organize your space (**Chapter 2**), stay focused (**Chapter 3**), and handle pressure (**Chapter 4**).

**Part II: Gaining Information.** How can you possibly know all there is to know? The world is awash with information. It's out there. You just have to go out and get it. But how? First of all, you need to know how to read. If that sounds obvious or even ridiculous, you may need to rethink what you know about reading. The truth is, there's no "one size fits all" method of reading. The way you read should be adapted to *what* you read. That's the topic of **Chapter 5**. Regardless of how you read, the things you read—and the things you hear—are made up of words. The more words you know and the more precisely you understand those words, the more clearly you'll be able to think. That's why **Chapter 6** focuses on strengthening your vocabulary. Even if it were possible to understand and digest every piece of information you're exposed to, it still wouldn't be wise. Time is short and not all information is created equal. Therefore, you need to be able to focus on the valuable information. **Chapter 7** helps you decide which information is worth keeping and which can be discarded. Finally, not all information comes in the form of words. And not all students learn best by using words. **Chapter 8** explores the other channels of communication we use in our efforts at understanding.

---

*Information is everywhere. You need a plan for going out and getting it.*

---

**Part III: Retaining Information.** When we talk about *retain it*, we're dealing with another important *-ain* word: your brain. As you'll learn in Part III, your brain's working memory only has room for roughly seven items at once. You can't possibly hold on to a semester's worth of information in the working memory of your brain. Not even close. What's more, the things you keep in working memory evaporate, fast. If you can't quickly find a place to store them, they'll be gone in a matter of minutes. Perhaps forever. The *retain it* section of this book will tell you how to hold on to information more or less permanently. Your primary storage areas will be your long-term memory and your notes. In **Chapter 9**, you'll find out more about how the memory works and learn the things you can do and shouldn't do if you want your memories to last. In **Chapter 10**, you'll learn how to retain valuable information by taking notes efficiently and effectively, using a simple, time-honored system that should work in almost any situation. **Chapter 11** shows you how to read those notes, make sense out of them, and then turn them into a part of your permanent knowledge.

**Part IV: Explaining Information.** In an ideal world, retaining information would be its own reward. You know, learning for learning’s sake. But that’s not how college works. In college your performance is measured with grades. The grades you receive depend upon how well you can “show what you know,” that is, how successfully you can take the information that you’ve retained during the semester (and often before) and explain it. The most common kind of explaining in college comes in the form of tests and exams. That’s the topic of **Chapter 12**. It provides you with systems, tips, and techniques for translating what you’ve gained into a test score that you can be proud of. **Chapter 13** focuses on another way of explaining—discussions. Depending on the course, class participation or online discussion threads can play an important role in your grade. But more importantly, you may not know how well you understand something until you have had an opportunity to discuss it with others. You’ll learn how to prepare for discussions and how to perform in them in a way that benefits both your understanding of your subject and helps your grade. Finally, **Chapter 14** tackles the writing of research papers. Although it may seem like a specialized skill, as this chapter will demonstrate, much of what you’ll need to explain in a paper draws on other skills that you’ve had a chance to develop and refine up to this point.

---

*You earn your grade based on your ability to explain what you’ve gained and retained.*

---

## How This Book Is Designed

Everything about *How to Study in College* is focused on helping you to become a successful student. This mission goes beyond the text of the book and includes the elements that make up the book’s design. The at-a-glance table of contents, the concept maps, the chapter checkups, and the marginal questions all act as tools to help you gain, retain, and explain the information in this book. In addition, the “Vocabulary in Action” section at the end of each chapter reinforces the idea that building your vocabulary should be a lifetime pursuit and not just a one-shot deal, while the new Skill Tags found at the start of each chapter subsection reinforce that the dozens of strategies, tips, and techniques in this book are all built on a foundation of eight basic skills.

### At-a-Glance Table of Contents

*How to Study in College* includes the sort of detailed table of contents (TOC) you’d expect to find in almost any textbook. It begins on page iii and extends over several pages. But the book includes another “at-a-glance” TOC inside the front cover that lists the book’s

four parts and fourteen chapters and briefly explains the purpose of each part. The at-a-glance TOC is a concentrated version of the book that helps you to gain, explain, and retain the book's contents more easily. The psychological effect of being able to see the book's entire contents on a single page can be dramatic and highly beneficial. Suddenly a book of more than 350 pages becomes more manageable and easier to grasp. Instead of operating in isolation, each important idea can be fit into the overall framework of the book's organization.

## Chapter Topics

---

Most chapter textbooks have titles, but that title doesn't always tell you clearly what the chapter's about. That's why each chapter in *How to Study in College* has both a title *and* a *topic*. The topic is a one- to three-word phrase—like Concentration, Comprehension, or Critical Thinking—that cuts to the very heart of the chapter's subject matter, providing a succinct summation of its focus and making it just a little easier for you to stay on track as you progress through the book. Like the Skill Tags that accompany the chapter subsections, the chapter topics are designed to make each chapter's purpose even clearer.

## Concept Maps

---

Textbook chapters aren't whodunits. Surprises can be fun, but there should be no mystery about how textbook chapters are organized or where they are leading. That's why each chapter in *How to Study in College* gives away the plot at the very beginning. It opens with a map that shows you right up front the topics the chapter will be covering and, just as importantly, how they relate to each other.

These maps should prove helpful in gaining the gist of each chapter before you begin reading—especially if you are a visually oriented learner—and make it easier to review and tie things together after you've finished a chapter.

**Use them to survey each chapter before you begin reading.** Look at the map as a whole and then note the concepts that make up the map. If you haven't noticed already, the map's top concept is the name of the chapter. Now note how the concepts connect. Turn each concept into a question; the topics connected below each concept should provide a broad outline of the answer.

**Use them to review the chapter once you've finished it.** Flip back to the front of the chapter and look at the map again. By now each topic name should be more meaningful than it was before you started reading the chapter. Test your knowledge of the chapter's concepts by covering the map and then drawing your own version from memory.

## Chapter Checkups

---

The end-of-chapter questions are designed to teach, not test; you'll find no trick questions and no traps to lead you to an incorrect answer. Take each question at face value and answer it to the best of your ability. Use any incorrect answers you give as opportunities to reread the pertinent portion of the chapter. By rereading and rethinking the question and answer, you will greatly strengthen your understanding of the entire concept. Answers to these questions are available online.

## Marginal Questions

---

If you've already flipped through this book, then you have almost certainly noticed something a little unusual about it. Running along the outside of each page in the marginal area that is blank in most books is a series of questions, one for almost every paragraph.

Why questions? Questions are what make learning come alive. They activate inert facts and turn them into vibrant ideas. If questions aren't a key component of your studying, you may not be truly learning. The book's marginal questions can help you in a number of ways. They provide the following:

1. **Concrete examples** of how each textbook paragraph can be seen as the answer to a question. We don't just tell you to do it. We show you how it's done!
2. **Added motivation** for understanding the book's important ideas. Before you read each paragraph, ask yourself the question in the margin and then set a mini-goal of answering it as you read. If you can answer the question, you'll feel encouraged by the knowledge that you're grasping the ideas in your reading.
3. **A ready-to-use recipe** for reviewing each chapter. You can efficiently do a re-cap of the important ideas on each page by covering the text with a sheet of paper, asking yourself the marginal questions, and then checking your responses against the actual text.
4. **Navigational cues** that make it easier to go back and pinpoint particular points in a chapter. If you need to return to a chapter to look up a specific passage or confirm a particular fact, the marginal questions will provide additional signposts that point you to the information you are searching for.
5. **Practice!** Not all of the paragraphs have marginal questions. (See "It's Your Q" below.) That's no oversight; it's done for a reason. With questions above and below you, you'll have examples and context to help you fill in the blanks with your own marginal questions as you work at perfecting this vital part of the learning process.

## It's Your Q

---

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. In each chapter, most but not all of the paragraphs are accompanied by marginal questions. At the end of each chapter, the “It’s Your Q” component encourages you to go back and test your ability to come up with your own marginal questions for the chapter paragraphs that don’t already have them. Look for the “It’s Your Q” boxes sprinkled throughout each chapter’s margins and test your ability to apply the Q System yourself by pinpointing the paragraph’s main idea and then writing in a question that will serve as a cue (Q) for that idea.

## Say What?

---

Also at the end of every chapter, you’ll find “Vocabulary in Action,” a three-part section devoted to vocabulary building. “Say What?” features quotations from notable thinkers and leaders. In each quotation, one or more words is italicized and you are asked to select from one of three words that most nearly reflects the meaning of the italicized word. This is not a test; rather, the purpose is to expose you to words in a real-world context. You may select unfamiliar words for further study. Familiar words will provide reinforcement for your existing vocabulary.

## Vocab-u-ladder

---

The second part of “Vocabulary in Action” provides an entertaining way of reinforcing a fundamental truth about words. Rather than operating in isolation, all words are connected. “Vocab-u-ladder” challenges you to use a list of words and a series of clues to connect two seemingly unrelated words.

## Backstory

---

When you learn the histories of words they can acquire a new and deeper significance. That’s the goal of “Backstory,” the third and final part of “Vocabulary in Action.” Backstory takes key words from each chapter and provides the fascinating and sometimes surprising histories of their origins. Once you learn the story behind the word “deadline,” for example, it’s unlikely that you’ll ever view another due date in quite the same way again.

Why do we devote so much of a book about study skills to words? Because when it comes to gaining, retaining, and explaining, nothing is more important. A wide and

precise vocabulary is really the main ingredient or quality that provides all of us with the endless ability for better thinking and judgment, not just in studying but in all phases of life—personally, socially, and professionally.

## Skill Tags

---

There's another important new element included in this book. In addition to the questions that run alongside most of the paragraphs, there are blue and white labels accompanying many of the chapter's subheadings. These are the Skill Tags, the basic building blocks from which the book has been constructed. They alert you to the skill or skills involved in that part of the chapter. For example, reviewing a lecture (see "Relive Your Lectures," p. 268) uses the core skills of *overviewing*, *summarizing*, and *questioning*; changing your time habits (see "Change Your Time Habits," p. 27) uses *self-direction* and *reframing*.

Although the book has four parts, 14 chapters, and well over 100 sections and subsections, all the lessons, strategies, tips, and techniques in *How to Study in College* rely on just eight core skills: *focusing*, *overviewing*, *reframing*, *summarizing*, *planning*, *questioning*, *clustering*, and *self-direction*.

- 1. Focusing.** Focusing is the ability to zero in on what's important to the exclusion of everything else. This can mean concentration, of course, but it also includes separating main ideas from supporting details and choosing valuable facts from among irrelevant ones.
- 2. Overviewing.** Overviewing is a key part of preparation. It involves taking a broad, big-picture look at information to establish the key points and interrelationships that might not be as readily apparent from closer examination. It is the ability to identify the framework or skeleton of information. This creates "advance organizers" that make it easier to arrange and retain more specific information.
- 3. Reframing.** While overviewing builds a framework, reframing changes that frame. It is the ability to process the same information from different angles, approaches, or contexts. This can mean adapting quickly to new and changing information or "translating" information from one form, such as words and numbers, into another, such as images. It is also that core skill behind reflection.
- 4. Summarizing.** Summarizing means condensing information. Determining the main idea of a paragraph, page, article, or book involves the skill of summarizing. So does reciting, your most powerful defense against forgetting.
- 5. Planning.** Planning uses a predetermined system or procedure to approach a particular problem, task, or period of time. Creating lists, budgets, and schedules requires planning, but so does any regular study skills strategy you may use, such as the Cornell System for notetaking.



6. **Questioning.** Questioning epitomizes active learning. It doesn't necessarily involve skepticism—although it certainly can—as much as it entails engaging in a dialogue with information that would otherwise seem inert.
7. **Clustering.** Clustering is the ability to organize or connect things in meaningful patterns. This means sorting and categorizing both ideas and files, for example, but it also includes thinking of reading assignments in terms of phrases, paragraphs, pages, or chapters, depending on which pattern best suits your purposes at the time. It also involves connecting old familiar information to new, unknown information.
8. **Self-direction.** Self-direction is the ability to act on your own, to set your own agenda, and to be the ruler of your own fate. It includes setting goals, cultivating your own interests and motivation, as well as listening to your “inner voice.”

**See how you rate with each of these eight fundamental skills.** Take the online assessment to determine which skills you excel in and which skills may require additional attention. (Go to [www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e](http://www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e)) With this newfound knowledge, read through the text as you normally would but pay attention to the Skill Tags that accompany the chapter subheadings.

**Use your assessment to study more effectively.** If, for example, you learn from the assessment that you're good at focusing or relating new information to old but have a difficult time reframing or planning, the knowledge of what your strengths are and where your weaknesses lie can mark the first step to your study success. Skill Tags act as signposts to the skills you need to focus on. They provide an opportunity to sharpen your skills and then use what you know to become a more successful student.

## The Value of Reframing

---

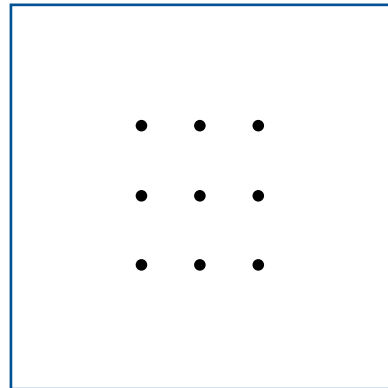
After looking over your answers to the online Skill Tags assessment, you may be thinking, “It's true. I have a hard time finding my old notes, but that's the way I've always been. How can I possibly change?” Or you may believe, for example, that jumping right in and reading a new assignment without surveying it first works better for you because you can save some time and maintain your momentum. These ways of thinking probably feel comfortable, but they may have created blind spots in your view of studying. To get a sense of how blind spots can limit you, try to solve the problem shown in Figure 1. Odds are that a blind spot will prevent you from solving it. Yet once you see the solution, you'll probably say, “How easy! Why didn't I think of that tactic myself?”

The Nine-Dot Problem (Figure 1) not only demonstrates a point, but it is also an excellent learning device. For instance, although very few students have solved the puzzle, they nevertheless have learned the value of reframing. Reframing means remaining flexible enough to look at things from a different angle. If you can break out of the conventional-thinking mold and let your mind rove more freely, you're more likely to be open to more innovative and imaginative approaches to solving problems.



**Figure 1****The Nine-Dot Problem**

Connect these dots by drawing four straight lines without taking your pencil from the paper and without re-tracing any lines. The solution appears on page xxiv.



## The Power of Planning

It might seem like a big contradiction to suggest that successful students need to be both flexible *and* systematic, but it's true. Being systematic is an important aspect of planning. Without a system, a problem such as the one in Figure 2 can make your head spin.

But if you plan your approach to a problem like this—that is, if you use a system—it can be relatively easy to solve. Drawing a simple grid provides a system for keeping track of the information you know about Anna, Bonita, Carlo, and Derek and the fruits they have brought. Planning can organize information in a way that makes it much clearer. Figure 4 provides the system.

**Figure 2****The Lunchtime Problem**

Match each student to the fruit that he or she brought for lunch.

Anna, Bonita, Carlo, and Derek each brought a piece of fruit for lunch. The fruits they brought were an apple, a banana, a grapefruit, and an orange.

1. Bonita's fruit isn't red
2. Anna brought a citrus fruit. So did Derek.
3. Derek's fruit isn't orange

Which student brought each fruit?

## Take Advantage of This Book's Additional Resources

Many of this book's important skills and systems are enriched and brought to life on our website. You'll have an opportunity to boost your vocabulary skills with electronic flash cards, to test your knowledge and comprehension with additional questions, and to customize and print out your own copies of the time- and task-based schedules discussed in Chapter 2. You can also learn more academic strategies in online supplementary

chapters on studying foreign languages, studying literature, studying science and mathematics, and using a computer for school. To visit the *How to Study in College* companion website, go to [www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e](http://www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e).

## Take Advantage of Your School's Resources

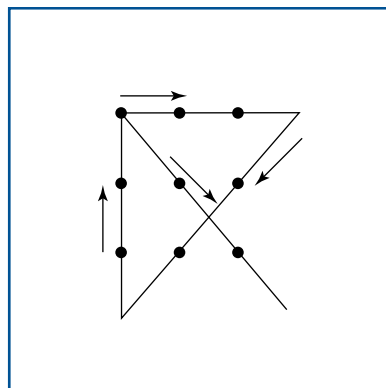
**College or university website.** It's a rare college these days that doesn't have a website. What sort of information do these sites contain? That's going to vary widely, depending on the college. Some have simply converted the text of their college catalog into an online form. Others provide elaborate and interactive repositories of information that keep you up-to-date on a variety of college news and often enable you to conduct some transactions that might otherwise need to be done by mail, over the phone, or in person. Regardless of the scope of your college's site, it is often a good place to start. Check the site's FAQs (Frequently Asked Questions) to see if your concern has already been addressed.

**College catalog.** General information about your college's requirements, policies, programs, and services appears in the college catalog. Even if your college provides this information on its website, it still helps to have a hard copy of the catalog handy during the first weeks of classes to remind yourself of requirements and deadlines to be met.

**Student handbook.** The student handbook provides information about your school's procedures, regulations, and code of conduct. It may also describe the school's requirements for good academic standing and graduation. For details or for specific department requirements, consult your department office or your academic adviser.

**Admissions or registrar's office.** You can find answers to questions about grades, transcripts, and college requirements in the admissions or registrar's office. Admission to college and registration for courses begin with this office.

**Figure 3**  
**Answer to the Nine-Dot Problem**  
Begin at the top left corner and follow the arrows.



**Figure 4****Answer to the Lunch-time Problem**

Using a simple grid makes it much easier to sort out the puzzle's clues.

Draw a grid that lists the students in the rows and the fruits in the columns. Mark an  $\times$  in a box each time you can conclude that a student could not have brought the fruit to lunch. Put a  $\checkmark$  in a box when you can conclude which fruit a student has brought. (Superscripts next to each mark tell us the statement number that allowed us to draw each conclusion.)

	Apple	Banana	Grapefruit	Orange
Anna	$\times^2$	$\times^2$	$\times^3$	$\checkmark^3$
Bonita	$\times^1$	$\checkmark^2$	$\times^2$	$\times^2$
Carlo	$\checkmark^2$	$\times^2$	$\times^2$	$\times^2$
Derek	$\times^2$	$\times^2$	$\checkmark^3$	$\times^3$

1. Bonita's fruit isn't red
2. Anna brought a citrus fruit. So did Derek.
3. Derek's fruit isn't orange

- Statement 1 tells us only that Bonita did not bring the apple.
- Statement 2 tells us that Bonita and Carlo could not have brought either the grapefruit or the orange. Because we already know that she didn't bring the apple, that leaves the banana for Bonita and the apple for Carlo.
- Statement 3 solves the mystery of whether Anna or Derek brought the orange. Because we know that Derek's fruit *isn't* orange, that means he brought the grapefruit and Anna brought the orange.

**Office of financial affairs.** For answers to questions about scholarships, loans, and grants, contact the financial affairs office. You will come here to pay fees and fines and to pick up your checks if you are in a work-study grant or program. If you want a part-time job on campus for which you must qualify on the basis of your financial status, you will fill out application forms in this office.

**Career development and placement office.** If you want help choosing a major or setting a career goal, contact the career development and placement office. People in this office can administer various interest, personality, and skills assessment tests to help you determine the kind of work for which you are best suited. They can help you find jobs on and off campus. Some career development centers sponsor on-campus recruitment, inviting businesses to interview prospective graduates and aiding them in submitting applications and résumés. After graduation, you can file a résumé in the placement office if you want your school's help with landing a job.

**Academic advising office or counseling department.** Academic and guidance counselors can help you with everything from choosing the right course to solving personal problems that prevent you from meeting your academic goals. The academic office or counseling department may be part of the admissions office, or it may be a separate department. In many colleges, students are assigned to an adviser or a counselor who follows their progress throughout their college careers.

**Student health center.** If you become ill, you can go to a doctor at the health center. The health center may have a pharmacy and may provide a limited amount of hospital care. Some mental health services may be available through this center, through the office of a school psychologist or psychiatrist, or through a peer-counseling group. The health center may also refer students to an agency outside the college.

**Student government association.** Working with the dean of students, the student government association sponsors student activities such as intramural events, dances, special-interest organizations and clubs, and other social and academic events. (Joining a club or taking part in campus events is a good way to meet other students who share your interests.) In addition, your student government may publish a weekly bulletin or a student handbook that summarizes college requirements and resources.

**Student publications.** The college newspaper or literary magazine offers contributors unique opportunities for self-expression and provides readers with information and entertainment. Serving on the editorial staff of one of these publications may also fulfill some journalism or English requirements.

**Learning lab or skills center.** You may turn to the learning lab or skills center for help in improving your study, reading, writing, math, or computer skills. Whether you are required to spend time in a lab because of your performance on a college skills assessment test or you choose to go on your own, take full advantage of the opportunity to gain the skills you need.

**Special student services.** Veterans, students with physical or learning disabilities, minority students, international students, and students who are economically disadvantaged may need the special assistance of a trained support group to meet their academic goals. If you think you qualify for these services, ask your counselor or adviser about them. Your college may also offer services such as off-campus residence listings.

**Athletics office.** A listing of the college's athletic programs and events is available in the athletics office. This is the office to visit if you are interested in participating in sports.

**Resident assistant.** For on-campus students, resident assistants (RAs) can be a great source of information about campus services. Although RAs are not professional counselors, they have recently been through many of the experiences you're undergoing and can probably direct you to the campus office best suited to your needs.

## Final Words

Our ultimate goal in this book is to provide you with tools, skills, and systems that will lead to self-sufficiency. Or, as Ralph Waldo Emerson once expressed it: "The best service one person can render another person is to help him help himself."

# Skill Tags add a new dimension to study skills

All the lessons, strategies, tips, and techniques in the 14 chapters of this book rely on just eight fundamental skills, which are displayed as Internet-style tags known as Skill Tags throughout this tenth edition of *How to Study in College*:

**FOCUSING** zeroes in on what's important. Not only is it the key to concentration, but it also lets you separate main ideas from supporting details and choose valuable facts from among irrelevant ones.

**OVERVIEWING** provides a big-picture look that allows you to identify the framework or skeleton of information. This creates "advance organizers" that make it easier to arrange and retain what you learn.

**REFRAMING** enables a stronger, more flexible approach to learning. It can mean the ability to adapt quickly to new and changing information or to "translate" information from one form, such as text, into another, such as pictures. It is also the core skill behind reflection.

**SUMMARIZING** means condensing information. Determining the main idea of a paragraph, page, article, or book involves the skill of summarizing. So does reciting, your most powerful defense against forgetting.

**PLANNING** uses a predetermined system or procedure to approach a particular problem, task, or period of time. Lists, budgets, and schedules all require planning. So do any regular study skills strategies you use, including the Cornell System for notetaking.

**QUESTIONING** leads to active learning. By engaging in a dialogue with the things you read, see, or hear, you help bring information to life and transform your notes into knowledge.

**CLUSTERING** means organizing or connecting things in meaningful patterns, groups, or categories and can involve strengthening newfound facts and information by connecting them to the things you already know.

**SELF-DIRECTION** is the ability to learn independently and to be the ruler of your own fate. It includes setting goals, cultivating your own interests and motivation, as well as listening to your "inner voice."

## Use these skills as versatile study tools

Sharpen these eight skills and you should have the necessary tools to tackle virtually any study challenge – everything from setting goals to writing research papers. Look for these Skill Tags to help determine which tools you'll need.

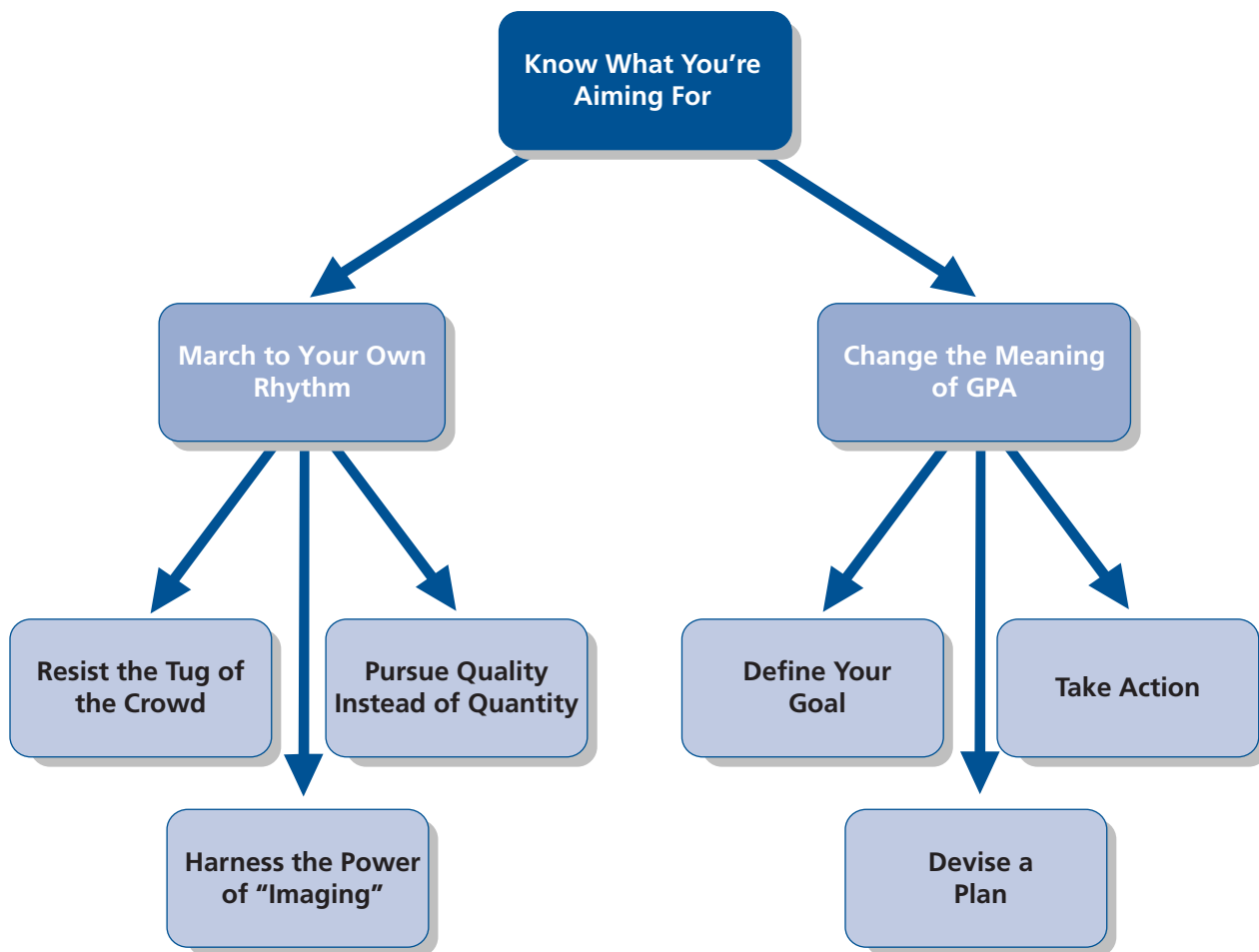
## Take the Skill Tags Assessment to learn where your skills are strongest

Start by finding out how you rate with each of these eight fundamental skills by taking the Skill Tags Assessment at [www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e](http://www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e). Then, with this newfound knowledge, read through the text as you normally would but pay special attention to the Skill Tags for a better understanding of which skills each section requires. (To learn more about Skill Tags, see "To the Student," page xxi.)

# Building a Foundation

Your success as a student who can effectively gain, retain, and explain information must rest on a strong foundation of skills that will serve you well through college and beyond. Like the basic courses that act as springboards for advance study, learning to set goals, get organized, maintain your concentration, and manage your stress should provide a sturdy base on which you can build your academic success. This part will help you to:

- 1 Know What You're Aiming For**
- 2 Use Your Time and Space Effectively**
- 3 Stay Focused**
- 4 Learn How to Handle Pressure**



# Know What You're Aiming For

*Most of us go to our graves with our music still inside us.*

**Oliver Wendell Holmes**  
(1809–1890), American physician and writer

There's something deep inside each of us that yearns for fulfillment. We were meant for something to which our nature inclines. But what? No one really knows. So, you yourself must dig. Dig—but for what? Start by digging for happiness. Ask, “What kind of work would I be happiest in? Doesn't it make sense that every day's work should be a joy?” In this chapter, you can begin to focus your life as you read how to:

- **March to Your Own Rhythm**
- **Decide What Would Make You Happy**
- **Redefine Your GPA**



What are the risks of having no goal?

Goals bring meaning to life; otherwise, life can be aimless. Viktor Frankl's research revealed these stark data:

When 60 students were asked why they had attempted suicide, 85 percent said the reason had been that "life was meaningless."<sup>1</sup>

How do goals go beyond simple survival?

Goals have to go beyond earning your "bread and butter," as is shown in the following slice of human life:

Governments, guided by social scientists, used to say that if you just improve the socio-economic status of the people, everything will be OK, people will become happy. The truth is that as the struggle for survival has subsided, the question has emerged: survival for what? Ever more people today have the means to life, but no meaning to live for.<sup>2</sup>

How do goals relate to purpose?

Goals and purpose breathe meaning into life. Goals and purpose form the psychological underpinnings of our individual lives. There's power in purpose, as is shown in this excerpt:

We cannot have deep and enduring satisfaction unless we have self-worth. We cannot have self-worth unless our lives are an earnest attempt to express the finest and most enduring qualities that we are aware of. Purpose is an important condition for an enduring satisfaction with life.<sup>3</sup>

## March to Your Own Rhythm

What was Thoreau's advice?

The nineteenth-century American writer, philosopher, and naturalist Henry David Thoreau famously wrote:

If a man does not keep pace with his companions, perhaps it is because he hears a different drummer. Let him step to the music which he hears, however measured or far away.<sup>4</sup>

How can you bring meaning into your life?

This doesn't mean, as some have suggested, that you need to be an outcast or iconoclast or that you have to live alone in the woods of Walden Pond, as Thoreau once did. Many people who are intricately woven into the fabric of society still manage to adhere to ideals that they have sharpened and defined on their own. To bring meaning into your life, you must decide on your own goal. Avoid the trap of surrendering to the expectations of others instead of pursuing a goal that is personally meaningful.

<sup>1</sup>Viktor Frankl, an Austrian psychiatrist and psychotherapist, created the theory of Logotherapy, which states that a person's primary motivation is his or her search for meaning in life.

<sup>2</sup>Richard J. Leider, *The Power of Purpose* (San Francisco: Berrett-Koehler Publishers, 1997), p. 35.

<sup>3</sup>Ibid.

<sup>4</sup>Henry David Thoreau, *Walden and Resistance to Civil Government*, 2nd ed. (W. W. Norton, 1992), p. 217.

What role should friends and family play in your goals?

This doesn't mean that you shouldn't discuss your goals with friends and family. It is helpful to ponder their thoughts and advice. But process these through your own brain cells and heart cells, and then make a decision, which must be your very own. Above all, set your own pace instead of marching along with the crowd.

## Resist the Tug of the Crowd

REFRAMING

SELF-DIRECTION

What happens when people think as a crowd instead of individually?

When you become part of the crowd, your individual thinking is replaced by crowd psychology. Here's how Gustave LeBon, a French social scientist, described crowd psychology:

The most striking peculiarity presented by a psychological crowd is the following: Whoever be the individuals that compose it, however like or unlike be their mode of life, their occupations, their character, or their intelligence, the fact that they have been transformed into a crowd puts them in possession of a sort of collective mind which makes them feel, think, and act in a manner quite different from that in which each individual of them would feel, think, and act were he in a state of isolation.<sup>5</sup>

What did Gould observe about the psychology of a crowd?

LeBon's observations about crowds were adopted and furthered by Edson Gould, one of the most respected names on Wall Street, who used this easily visualized example to illustrate how the individual is almost powerless to resist the powerful magnetism of the crowd:

You're *alone* in an empty movie theater and hear the cry of "fire." You look around, see no flames, smell no smoke, you *calmly walk* to the nearest exit. But, repeat the same cry of "fire" (again without flames visible or the smell of smoke) in a *crowded* theater and once the *crowd* starts *running* for an exit, you'll find *yourself running*, too. That's crowd psychology.<sup>6</sup>

What should you guard against in crowd psychology?

Don't let crowd psychology rob you of your independence or rob you of your freedom to think and decide individually. In sum, preserve yourself as a sovereign individual so that, for better or for worse, you are the ruler of your career and destiny.

## Harness the Power of "Imaging"

REFRAMING

SELF-DIRECTION

In what way does a goal go beyond a statement?

A goal is much more than just a simple statement. Actually, it's a vivid dream that has been mentally acted and reenacted. What lawyer hasn't first imagined presenting a

<sup>5</sup>Quoted in Dan Sullivan, *The Chartist* (December 30, 1997): 4.

<sup>6</sup>Quoted in Edson Gould, *Findings and Forecasts* (New York: Anametrics, 1974).

What is Peale's explanation of imaging?

closing argument to judge and jury? What business executive hasn't imagined outlining an exciting plan to staff members seated around the board of directors' table?

Although *imagined* is generally used to denote imagination, in his landmark book *Positive Imaging* Norman Vincent Peale used the word *imaging* to convey a much deeper concept:

Imaging consists of vividly picturing, in your conscious mind, a desired goal or objective, and holding that image until it sinks into your unconscious mind, where it releases great, untapped energies.<sup>7</sup>

How does imaging your goal affect it?

So, if we think deeply enough and image vividly enough about what we want to do with our lives, our whole being can be energized. Peale, who is one of the most widely read inspirational writers of all time, goes on to say,

There is a powerful and mysterious force in human nature that is capable of bringing about dramatic improvement in our lives. It is a kind of mental engineering. ... In imaging, one does not merely think about a hoped-for goal; one "sees" or visualizes it with tremendous intensity. Imaging is a kind of laser beam of the imagination, a shaft of mental energy in which the desired goal or outcome is pictured so vividly by the conscious mind that the unconscious mind accepts it and is activated by it. This releases powerful internal forces that can bring about astonishing changes in the life of the person who is doing the imaging.<sup>8</sup>

## Pursue Quality Instead of Quantity

SELF-DIRECTION

How has money affected the way we define goals?

Over time, Peale's pristine image of a goal has been diluted by the dollar sign. Everyone, it seems, is out to make money. Look at the crowds thronging the racetracks, the casinos, the state lotteries, and even the frequently bubbling stock market. Apparently this "money idea" has steadily seeped into the career goals of students. According to a poll conducted by consulting firm KPMG (Klynveld, Peat, Marwick, Goerdeler), New York, three out of four college students expect to become millionaires.<sup>9</sup>

What advice does John Rau give his students?

The siren song of money may be difficult to ignore, but is it really the key to happiness or the true mark of success? John Rau, who has been the CEO of three corporations, dean of Indiana University's business school, and no stranger to success himself, offers a straight-shooting sanity check for students who are thinking of

<sup>7</sup>Norman Vincent Peale, *Positive Imaging*. Copyright © 1982. Published by Revell, a division of Baker Publishing Group. Used with permission. <http://www.bakerpublishinggroup.com>

<sup>8</sup>Ibid.

<sup>9</sup>Pamela Sebastian, *The Wall Street Journal* (March 25, 1999), p. A1.

What does Dr. Williams conclude about defining your goals?

sacrificing quality in the pursuit of quantity. “Unless you’re doing the stuff you like,” he cautions, “you can burn out.”<sup>10</sup>

In line with Rau’s succinct pronouncement, Dr. David G. Williams pulls no punches. Few people know more about “burnout” than medical doctors. After years of treating people who were experiencing burnout, Dr. Williams wrote this compelling article on choosing a career that will enhance the possibilities of living a healthier life.

### What Do You Want to Be When You Grow Up?

If you’re like me, the last time someone asked you this question was quite some time ago. Most of us guys probably responded with something like a fireman, forest ranger, cop, race car driver or even the President. I’m not being sexist (I’m not even sure there was such a word when someone last asked me the question), but if you’re female you probably answered the above question with occupations like a model, flight attendant, school teacher or movie star. You chose these answers because at the time you thought these endeavors would be enjoyable. You could visualize being happy. Maybe a more appropriate question than “What do you want to be when you grow up?” would have been “What would make you happy?” And since the answer to this question changes throughout your life, it’s a question we really need to ask ourselves more often.

When was the last time you actually got away by yourself and seriously thought about what you needed to be happy? Maybe it’s time to do so.

As hectic as life has become, we see happiness as a luxury. Surveys have shown that most people really don’t believe it’s possible to be happy the majority of the time. They think that true happiness is an unobtainable goal. It’s an unpredictable, fleeting sensation over which one has little control. But accepting this idea, that you have no or little control over your own happiness, can have serious health consequences. Happiness is just as important, if not more so, to good health as proper nutrition and adequate exercise. Happiness is a powerful healing force. On the opposite side of the coin we have stress. There seems to be an inverse relationship between stress and happiness. In other words, less happiness leads to more stress. And stress can be an extremely powerful destructive force. Stress is one of the best examples of the power the mind can have over the body.

In animal studies, French researchers at the University of Bordeaux have recently shown that depression and anxiety in adults can be a direct result of placing the mother under stress prior to birth. Stress causes the adrenal glands to produce more of the “stress hormone,” corticosterone. Corticosterone easily passes from the mother to the fetus through the placenta. Consistently high levels of corticosterone desensitize brain receptors, altering the feedback system and making it more difficult to shut down the excess

<sup>10</sup>Quoted in Hal Lancaster, “Managing Your Career,” *The Wall Street Journal* (May 6, 1997), p. B1.

corticosterone production. After birth these receptors in the brain remain desensitized, which can lead to suppression of the immune system, depression and anxiety later in life. (*J Neurosci* 96;15[1 Pt1]:110-6.)

In an amazing study recently performed at Columbia University, New York, researchers found that young girls who suffer from undue stress grow up to be 5 cm. (2 in.) shorter than their happier contemporaries. Stress stunts their growth by depressing the levels of growth hormone in the body.

Volumes have been written on the detrimental effects of stress. And while I won't bore you with all the detailed research here, stress has been linked to everything from asthma and cardiovascular disease to cancer and practically every disease in between. The point to be made here is that happiness replaces and counteracts stress. Probably more than any other single factor, discovering and acting on what makes you happy can improve both the quality and length of your life.

Over the next few hours, days and weeks, I urge you to invest some time in seriously deciding what you want out of life. What would make you happy? I am not talking about what would make you happy for a moment or a day, but instead, what you want and need to be happy for the long term. I can assure you it will be one of the most productive things you will ever do.

Discovering what it would take for you to be happy is, without a doubt, one of the most powerful tools you'll ever possess. It defines your basis for living. It gives you a purpose and provides the answers to life's day-to-day problems. It almost miraculously provides direction at each of life's crossroads. It crystallizes and clarifies your day-to-day goals and activities. It allows you to focus your talents and energies toward achieving the rewards that are most important to you.

If you can't honestly verbalize what you *need* to make you happy, you're going to wander aimlessly throughout life. The clock keeps ticking whether you decide to answer "what would make me happy" or not. Instead of participating and reveling in life, you end up simply reacting to situation after situation. You unquestionably embrace the idea that your own happiness is out of your control. You then begin to believe that it will suddenly appear just as soon as someone or something in your life changes. Unfortunately, that's like playing the state lottery. Your chances of getting hit by lightning are far better than finding real happiness and meaning in your life.

Most of us (I'm as guilty as anyone, if not more so) have a tendency to take life much too seriously. When we were younger it was easier to be less serious. It reminds me of a Bob Dylan song, in which he says, "If you ain't got nothing, you ain't got nothing to lose." The older and more responsible we become, the more we feel we have to lose. We begin to perceive changes in our lives as risks rather than opportunities. As such, we try to avoid change. But in reality, change is not something over which we have any control.

I'm sure you've heard the saying that there are only two things you can count on: death and taxes. Well, there are actually a couple more. One is that your surroundings will change. Technology changes. Weather changes. People change. Everything changes. Always has.

Always will. Accept it. Accept the fact that people and situations are *always* going to be changing throughout your life. Fighting change is like swimming against the current in a river. You're so busy trying to keep your head above water that you never get a chance to see or enjoy what's on the bank. The quicker you accept the fact that everything will change, the quicker you can get out of the water. You can sit on the bank, relax for a moment and evaluate your surroundings. In a life that's always too short, you can then decide how best to spend your remaining time. This brings up the other thing you can always count on—the God-given, human ability to make choices.

Through changes in your thinking, your actions and your lifestyle, you can choose to live your life in a state of unhappiness or in a state of happiness. It's totally up to you.

Although it was several decades ago, I remember sitting at my desk in Mrs. Bengner's first-grade class back in Friona, Texas. Above the chalkboard there were two large handwritten signs. One read, "Act the way you want to be and soon you'll be the way you act." It's probably one of the more lasting lessons I've learned in life thus far. (The other sign said, "One who thinketh by the inch and talketh by the yard should be kicketh by the foot." [I'm still working on that one.])

Before you can "act the way you want to be," and before you can expect to find happiness, you must answer that one simple question. "What would make me happy?" It's a difficult question, probably the most difficult you'll ever have to answer. Getting the answer will require some time and serious thinking. Strangely, there's no right or wrong answer. And even stranger is the fact that only you know the answer. Don't think of this as some kind of test. Nobody is going to give you a grade or set any time limits. The only way you can really fail is aimlessly wandering through life and simply not answering the question at all.

So "What do you want to be when you grow up?" "What would make *you* happy?"

Dr. David G. Williams, "What Do You Want to Be When You Grow Up?" from *Alternatives for the Health Conscious Individual*, Vol. 6, No. 15, September 1996: 119–120. Copyright © 1996, Mountain Home Publishing. Reproduced with permission of Healthy Directions.

## Change the Meaning of GPA

What is the best way to become a success?

"If you want to make it in college, your GPA is the key." Students who tell you this are talking about your grade point average, your report card, the number of As and Bs you get in relation to the number of Cs, Ds, and Fs. Grades are certainly important, but they aren't as important as another GPA: your goal, your plan, and the action you take. If you really want to make it, *that's* the GPA you should strive for. If you are able to set a specific goal in your life, if you can come up with an efficient plan for that goal, and

if you have the discipline to take action, there's an excellent chance that you will be headed down the road to success.

## Define Your Goal

FOCUSING

What is the purpose of a goal?

Where are you headed? That's the question that your goal is designed to answer. Imagine throwing ingredients into a mixing bowl without any idea of what you are making. Think of running around on the basketball court with no knowledge of the object of the game. The best cooks and the best basketball players know what they are doing and why they are doing it. They have a clear idea of where they are headed. In short, they have a goal in mind.

### IT'S YOUR Q

Although winning a basketball game and baking a cake can both be seen as goals, it can be easier to think of your goal as a kind of destination. A lot of our common expressions use this idea. "Making it to the top," "climbing the corporate ladder," and even "reaching for the stars" portray the goal as a place in the distance that you are trying to reach. Of course, some goals really are destinations. When American pioneers declared that their goal was "Pike's Peak or Bust" and tacked signs to their wagons that said so, they were talking about an actual destination hundreds of miles to the west and more than fourteen thousand feet above sea level. When John F. Kennedy made the moon the country's goal in 1961, he was aiming for a destination that was about 238,900 miles out into space. Although Pike's Peak has long since been reached and climbed, climbing a mountain remains a vivid metaphor for reaching one's goal, and although President Kennedy's speech was delivered almost half a century ago, to this day it remains one of the best examples of a clearly defined goal that was achieved through planning and action.

How do minor goals help?

### Set Minor Goals

Your life should be full of both major and minor goals. Most of us set minor goals all the time. Passing a test can be seen as a minor goal. So can completing a homework assignment or even finishing a chapter before dinnertime. Having minor goals can be a great help. Each time we reach a minor goal, we get a small sense of victory that helps spur us on toward something even bigger.

Notice in a basketball game how the crowd cheers and the scoring team's pace quickens each time a basket is made. Everyone knows that one basket by itself won't win the game, but when the score is added up, each basket can prove to be crucial. The same is true in school. Although no one has gained success by virtue of a single test or paper, these little victories will add up and help you move toward your major goal. In the meantime, minor goals provide the encouragement you need to cheer yourself on and quicken your pace.

How do you choose your major goal?

### Set Major Goals

Choosing a major goal will come naturally for some, while it may be an agonizing process for others. For every person who says, "I've always wanted to be a doctor" or "I



**Figure 1.1**  
**The Sky's the Limit.**  
 President Kennedy's  
 ambitious lunar goal  
 remains a model for  
 goal-setting to this  
 day.

**A FAMOUS GOAL, PLAN, AND ACTION**

The Goal

*First, I believe that this nation should commit itself to achieving the goal, before this decade is out, of landing a man on the moon and returning him safely to earth.*

*President John F. Kennedy  
 before a joint session of Congress  
 May 25, 1961*

The Plan

The Mercury Program:	Each rocket would send a single astronaut into space.
The Gemini Program:	Each rocket would send two men into space to orbit the earth, to practice docking with other spacecraft, and to test human beings' ability to withstand prolonged periods in space.
The Apollo Program:	Each rocket would send three men into space in order to leave the earth's orbit, to orbit the moon, and eventually to land on the moon and explore it.

The Action

The United States sent twenty manned flights into space between May 1961 and June 1969. In July 1969, eight years and two months after President Kennedy set the country's original goal, astronauts Neil Armstrong and Edwin "Buzz" Aldrin set foot on the moon and returned safely to earth.

know that teaching others is what really matters to me," there are those who complain, "There's really nothing I'm interested in" or "I'm interested in practically everything; how am I ever going to choose?" Although goals may vary widely from person to person, they all grow out of the same source: the things we want and need. Therefore, choosing your goal means deciding what you value most in life.

Your major goal should be large and distant. It should be a target that you can aim for, something to inspire you. Don't let short-term minor goals such as finishing an assignment, passing an exam, and simply getting through the day mark the limits of your dreams. Aim high, but at the same time be sure that the goals you set are specific and distinct. Health, happiness, security, love, and money are all ideals that people aim for, but they are far too vague to be considered goals. On the other hand, "discovering a cure for cancer" and "becoming the best possible parent" are both admirable and specific goals that can help you approach the broad ideals we all share.

#### IT'S YOUR Q



### Make Your Goal Official

What should you do with your goal once you've chosen it?

If the goal you have chosen is a clear one, you should have no trouble writing it down. Goals that stay only in your head have too great a chance of remaining vague. Furthermore, once you write down your goal, that written record can act as a constant reminder. If you're feeling discouraged, a quick look at your goal can inspire you. (That's what the signs on the covered wagons did.) And if for some reason you forget your goal, a written description can refresh your memory.

What should you do if your priorities change?

The purpose of a goal is not to force you on a course that you don't want to follow; it is to give you a target so that your efforts can be more focused than they would be if you had nothing to aim for. Time and fate have a way of shifting our priorities. People change, and so do the things they view as important. If the goal you once wrote down no longer matches your ambition in life, come up with another goal to replace it.

## Devise a Plan

PLANNING

How does your plan relate to your goal?

If you think of your goal as your destination, then a plan can be seen as the route that will take you there. Coming up with a plan is like drawing a map. You need to know where you are starting, where you are heading, and where you plan to stop along the way. Most goals will have several possible plans. The challenge comes in choosing the best one.

How can you choose the most efficient plan?

An efficient plan is a balancing act between what you need and want and what you are able to pay. Paying, as far as a plan is concerned, doesn't always mean money. It can mean time and energy as well. For example, a one-week plan for reviewing your notes is "too expensive" if the test is only two days away. In the same way, a plan that forces you to stay up all night will often cost too much because what you gain in knowledge you will lose in sleep. The most efficient plan will meet your goal without being too costly.

What sort of plans are the best?

The best plans aren't always obvious from the outset. For example, many students approach an exam by answering questions as soon as they receive the test. Given the time limit, that plan may seem to make sense, even though it's actually a bad idea. The most efficient strategy is to read the exam directions, look over all the questions, and even come up with a time plan before answering a single question. The first plan is fast but reckless, whereas the second is steady and dependable. Now you have a more structured and efficient approach to test taking. (For more on this plan, see Chapter 12.) When you make an effort to devise a systematic plan, you will usually gain more benefits than you would with a hastily drawn up strategy.

What sort of impact should flexible thinking have on your goal?

Devising the best plan can require flexible thinking. For example, when you look at a map, you may conclude—as commercial airline navigators once did—that the best way to get from Amsterdam to Tokyo is to head in an easterly direction along what is known as the Mediterranean route. But look at a globe instead of a map, and your perspective

may change. Rather than heading east on the Mediterranean route, commercial planes going from Amsterdam to Tokyo now fly north! That's right. They take what is known as the "polar route," flying over the North Pole to Alaska, and then west to Tokyo—for a savings of roughly fifteen hundred miles! The lesson is this: After you've decided on a goal, work vigorously to accomplish it, but keep looking for ways of achieving the goal more efficiently, perhaps from a different angle. This approach is sometimes known as *reframing*.

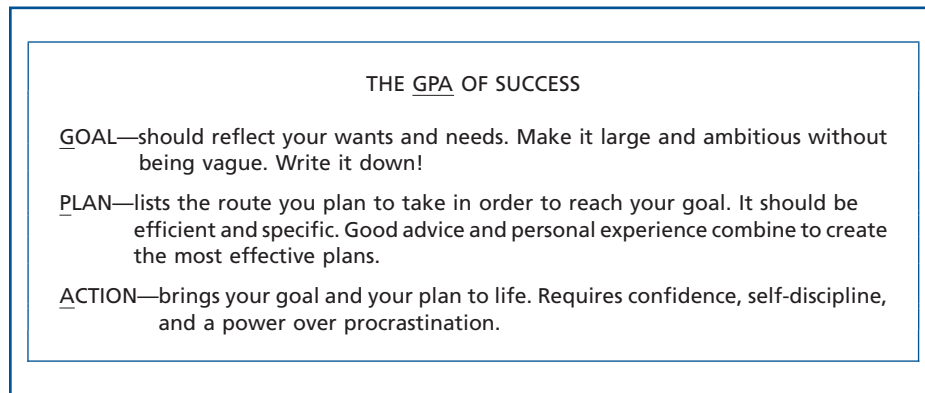
No single plan will work for every goal, and few plans are flexible enough to work for several goals. Using the wrong plan can be inefficient and sometimes even comical. Perhaps you remember the folktale about the lazy son who gets scolded by his mother for losing the money he received as payment from a local farmer. "Next time you get paid," she tells him sternly, "be sure to carry it home in your pocket." But the following day the boy goes to work for a dairy farmer who pays him with a pail of milk instead of money. Anxious not to anger his mother, the boy dutifully pours the milk into his pocket. Although his mother's plan was a good one, it could work only when used in the right circumstance. The same idea applies to your study plans. For example, writing out your notes in full sentences makes sense if the goal is to study a textbook assignment. But if you used the same plan for taking lecture notes, you'd move so slowly that you'd miss most of what the instructor said. The secret is to find a plan that fits the goal you have in mind.

In the same way that good plans may not work for every goal, plans that work for most people may not always work for you. That's why the best way to come up with a plan for success is to balance wise advice with your own experience. This book is full of plans for success and tricks of the trade. All of them have been proven to work, and most should work for you. Use trial and error to determine which plans work best for you, and be prepared to adapt some plans to better fit your needs. Even the best plans can fail if they are used too rigidly. Allow a little breathing room. If things go wrong, don't give up. Adjust and keep on going.

When is a good plan the wrong plan?

#### IT'S YOUR Q

**Figure 1.2**  
A New Way to View  
G.P.A.



## Take Action

SELF-DIRECTION

### What is action?

Goals and plans won't do you any good unless you take some action. Action is the spark that brings your goal and plan to life. Without action, goals and plans are moot. You can decide you want to finish a book, and you can even plan the pages that you need to read each day, but until you actually start reading, all your preparations will be pointless. In the same way, the goal to reach the moon and the plans for the spacecraft were impressive, but they didn't come to life until the first rocket left the launch pad and headed into space.

### What prevents people from taking action?

#### Overcome Your Obstacles

Having a goal and a plan is no guarantee that you will take action. Procrastination stops many people from taking action. Procrastination is the tendency to put things off, to write that paper the night before it is due, to cram for a test instead of studying for it right from the start. Although it is just one of many common bad habits, procrastination may be the single greatest obstacle to success. It is also, as we'll see in Chapter 4, a prime source of stress.

### How can you prevent procrastination?

The first step in fighting procrastination is to develop a goal and a plan. If you have a goal and a plan but you're still procrastinating, you should take aim at your excuses for not getting your work done. Dream up reasons why you can instead of reasons why you can't. That will often be all it takes to pull yourself out of the vicious circle of inactivity and low self-esteem and put yourself on the road to progress and success.

### What does Peale say about taking action?

This chapter would not be complete without more wisdom from Norman Vincent Peale, who expresses the vital importance of *taking action* throughout the entire process of personal goal setting:

I suggest that you write down what you want to do with your life. Until you write a goal, it is only a wish; written, it becomes a focused objective. Put it down on paper. When it is on paper, boil it down to a single sentence: what you want to do, exactly when you intend to start (which should be right now), exactly when you plan to achieve your goal. Nothing fuzzy or hazy. Everything sharp and clear and definite. No reservations or qualifications. Just one strong, simple, declarative sentence ... . I want you to make half a dozen copies of that sentence and put them where you'll see them at least three times a day. I want that pledge to sink down through all the levels of your conscious mind and deep into your unconscious mind, because that is where it will unlock the energies that you will need to achieve your goal.

If setting worthy goals is the first step on the road to success, the second is the belief—the conviction that you are capable of achieving those goals. There has to be in your mind the unshakable image of yourself *succeeding* at the goal you have set yourself. The more vivid this image is, the most obtainable the goal becomes.

Great athletes have always known this. The high jumper “sees” himself skimming over the bar; the place-kicker in football keeps his head down as he kicks, but in his mind's eye

he holds the mental picture of what he wants to happen in the next few seconds .... The more intensely he images this before it happens, the higher his confidence in himself and the better his chances of making it happen.<sup>11</sup>

### Put Theory into Practice

How can you use your understanding of goal, plan, and action?

Now that you have a clearer understanding of the role of a goal and the way in which a plan and action can turn a dream into reality, you are ready to put theory into practice by writing out your own goal or goals. The following four steps are designed to help you in this process.

**Step 1: Brainstorm.** On a clean sheet of paper, do some brainstorming about your goals. Jot down possible goals or words about them that come to mind, and do so quickly and freely. Use brainstorming as an opportunity to explore any aspects of any goals you choose. Don't stop to correct your spelling, polish a phrase, reorganize your notes, or analyze a thought. Just keep going until you've jotted down all that you can think of about your possible goals. Next, look over what you've written and group similar items. Formulate each group into a goal by writing a sentence that summarizes its main idea.

**Step 2: Plan.** Focus in on one of the goals you've arrived at, and write it down as a heading on another clean sheet of paper. Beneath that goal, make a chronological list of all the steps you'll need to take in order to achieve it.

**Step 3: List your strengths.** On another sheet, jot down those academic and personal strengths that will help you achieve your goal. These could include skills you already have or classes you have taken, as well as personal qualities such as discipline and perseverance.

**Step 4: Assess your weaknesses.** Identify any academic weaknesses (such as difficulty writing papers) or personal obstacles (such as financial, family, or health problems) that you will have to overcome to reach this goal, and list them either alongside your strengths or on a separate sheet of paper.

What should you do after you've completed the steps?

Don't be surprised if you feel a great sense of relief once you've completed these steps. Even if you're not certain that your goal and your plan are precisely on target, at last you have something concrete that you can adjust and refine. You also have an excellent starting point for guidance and advice. Talk with your academic adviser or with a counselor in your school's career center. Don't underestimate the value of discussing your goals and your plans for achieving them. Get as much feedback as you can. Then, if necessary, modify your goals and plans into realistic, attainable maps for your future. By getting into the goal-setting mode, you can put yourself in control not only of your academic life but also of your life after college.

<sup>11</sup>From Norman Vincent Peale, *Positive Imaging*. Copyright © 1982. Published by Revell, a division of Baker Publishing Group. Used with permission. <http://www.bakerpublishinggroup.com>

## FINAL WORDS

---

What should you do if you're worried that your goals are going to change?

Goals can change. There's no rule that you can't rethink your objectives after you've defined them. One student seemed genuinely irked that she had to check in with an academic adviser before registering for her first semester of classes. She knew without a doubt that she wanted to go into dentistry and didn't feel that she needed advice from anyone. But the adviser pointed out something she had overlooked. She needed to take an English course in order to meet the college's distribution requirement. That course was a revelation. She fell in love with literature and shifted sharply toward a career in publishing, a goal she pursued with the same passion, determination, and planning that she had originally devoted to dentistry. Yes, goals can change. But that's no excuse to settle for murky, ill-defined objectives. The skills you develop and the lessons you learn in defining your goals will serve you well, no matter where they wind up taking you.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

- Based on many of our common expressions, it seems that a goal is considered a \_\_\_\_\_.  
**promise**                      **destination**                      **liability**
- The best way to come up with a plan is to balance wise advice with your own personal \_\_\_\_\_.  
**shortcomings**                      **experience**                      **success**
- Goals and plans won't do you any good without \_\_\_\_\_.  
**action**                      **education**                      **discussion**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| _____ 1. Frankl   | a. Warned that "burnout" may result if you aren't doing "the stuff you like"                   |
| _____ 2. Thoreau  | b. Defined a clear goal of putting Americans on the moon and returning them safely to Earth    |
| _____ 3. LeBon    | c. Suggested that we should regularly ask ourselves what would make us happy                   |
| _____ 4. Gould    | d. Suggested that those who seem out of step may just hear a different drummer                 |
| _____ 5. Peale    | e. Noticed the collective mindset that emerges when people become part of a crowd              |
| _____ 6. Rau      | f. Reported that 85 percent of students who attempted suicide said that "life was meaningless" |
| _____ 7. Williams | g. Used the shout of "fire" in a theater as an illustration of crowd psychology                |
| _____ 8. Kennedy  | h. Advocated vividly picturing a desired goal or objective in your conscious mind              |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

1. T F It's not a good idea to discuss your goals with close friends and family.
2. T F When you join a crowd, your individual thinking is replaced by crowd psychology.
3. T F Norman Vincent Peale was a nineteenth-century naturalist and philosopher who lived in the woods near Walden Pond.
4. T F The purpose of a goal is to give you an idea of where you are headed.
5. T F Health, happiness, and security are all excellent career goals.

## MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.

1. When it comes to setting goals, GPA stands for a goal, a plan, and an
  - a. acumen.
  - b. article.
  - c. average.
  - d. action.
2. Passing a test is generally considered to be a
  - a. minor goal.
  - b. major goal.
  - c. common excuse.
  - d. scholastic requirement.
3. Once you arrive at a goal, you should
  - a. stick with it.
  - b. keep it a secret.
  - c. write it down as a reminder.
  - d. come up with a backup goal.
4. Coming up with a plan is like
  - a. running a race.
  - b. building a fire.
  - c. drawing a map.
  - d. none of the above.

5. One of the greatest obstacles to success is
  - a. procrastination.
  - b. lack of money.
  - c. education.
  - d. boredom.

**REFLECTION**

*Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter, and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.*

1. Most of us think of ourselves both as individuals and as members of at least one larger group. In what ways do you follow Thoreau's advice to march to the beat of a different drummer? In what ways do you adhere to LeBon's observations about crowds?
2. Of the three parts of GPA—a goal, a plan, and action—which is the hardest for you personally? Which is the easiest? Explain.
3. If you haven't done so already, follow the four steps for writing out your own goal. What did you learn about yourself when you did this? Did anything about this process surprise you?

**IT'S YOUR Q**

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

**VOCABULARY IN ACTION**

The English language is alive. It is constantly growing and changing. The same can be said for your own personal vocabulary. To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, it is vital to continually grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary. The three exercises that follow are designed to help you with this fascinating, lifelong pursuit.

**SAY WHAT?**

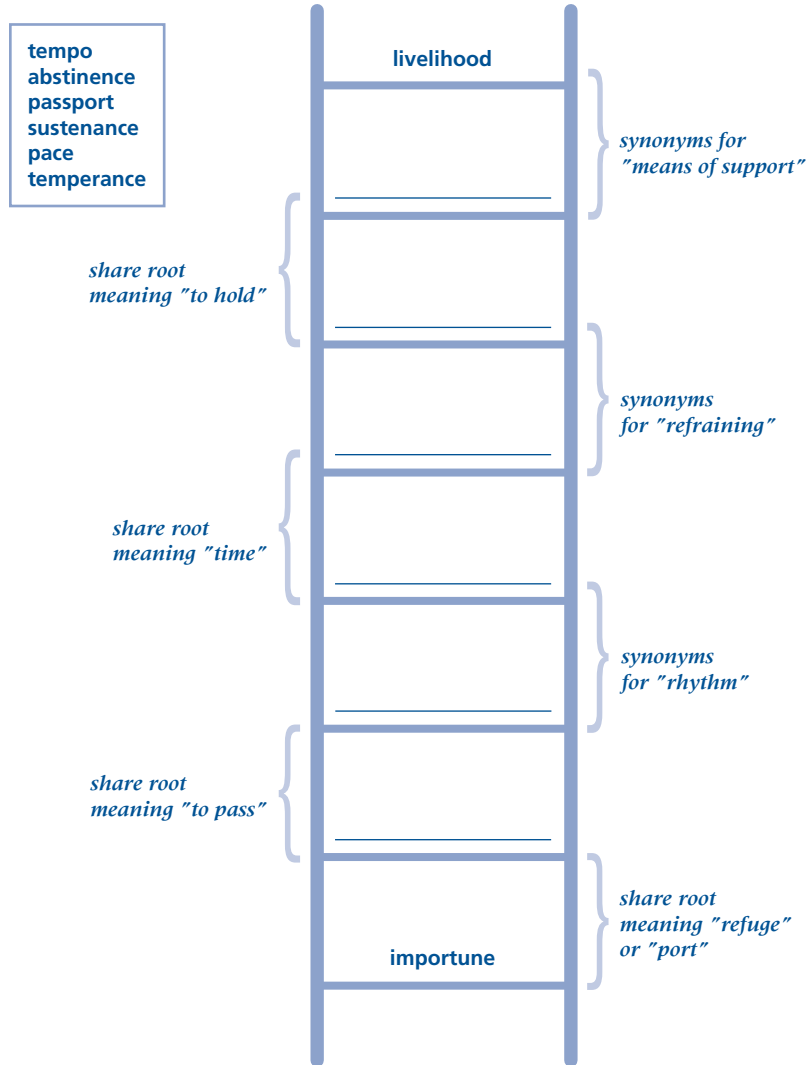
*To gain lasting insight from a quotation, you need a precise understanding of the words it comprises. From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.*





## VOCAB-U-LADDER

Seemingly unrelated words in our language often share numerous connections. Use your knowledge of word synonyms, prefixes, and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.




**backstory.**

Words seldom emerge full-blown into the language. Instead they evolve over time to become the terms we recognize and use today. Each word has a backstory, a sometimes twisted, often entertaining history of how it came to be. Here's the backstory for a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

### **Goal** Can you transform obstacles into goals? That's what history did.

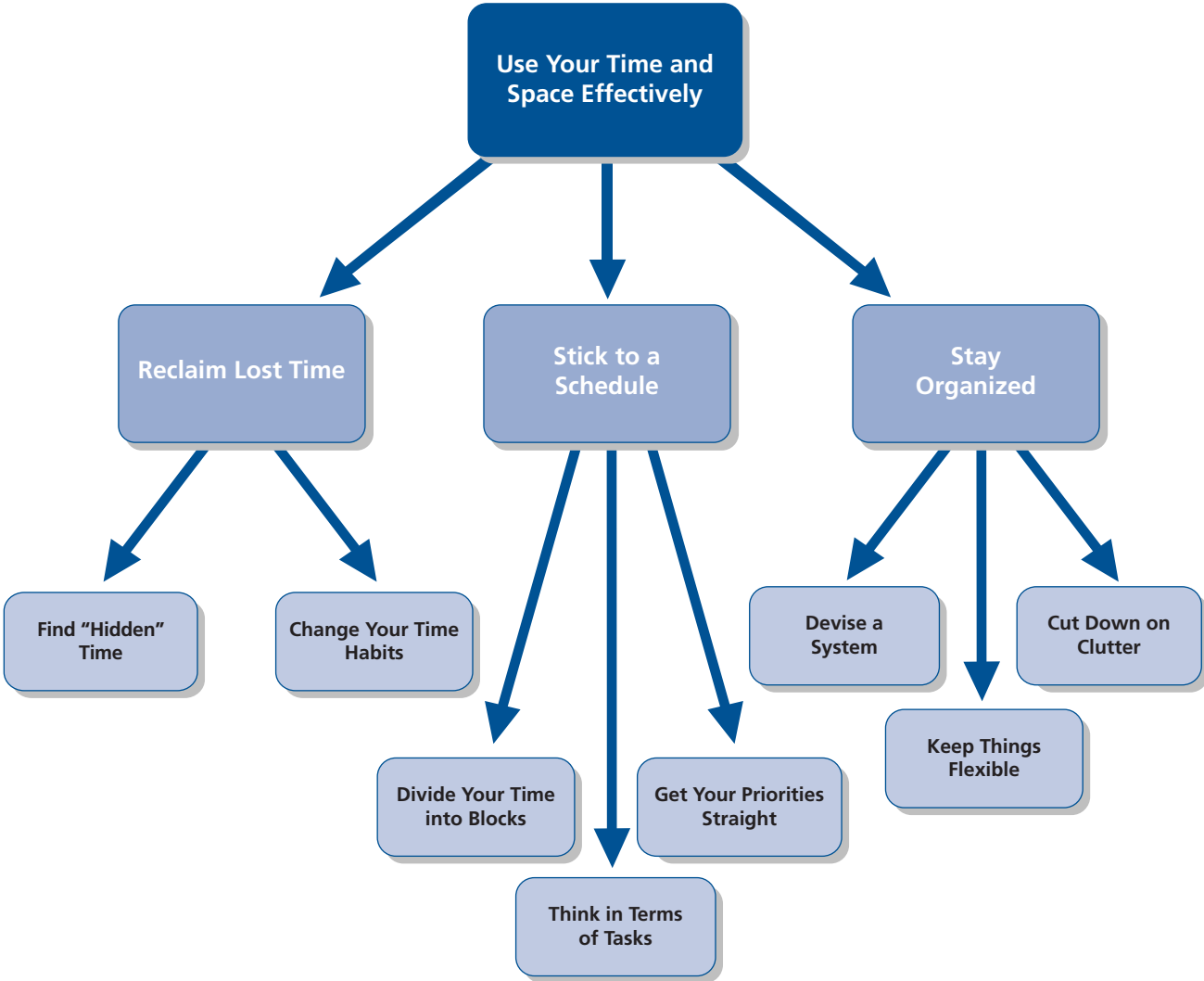
**goal** *gōl* *n* 1. The purpose toward which an endeavor is directed; an objective. 2. *Sports* a. The finish line of a race. b. A specified structure or zone into or over which players endeavor to advance a ball or puck. c. The score awarded for such an act. 3. *Linguistics* A noun or noun phrase referring to the place to which something moves.\*

If you think you know the relationship between *goals*—the things you strive for—and *obstacles*—the things that get in your way—you may be in for a bit of a surprise. Although the history of the word *goal* is not nearly as clear as a good *goal* should be, there's ample evidence that our modern word *goal* originated with the idea of an obstacle. Running as a sport has been with us for centuries. But old race courses weren't as sophisticated as modern tracks. Runners would set off from the same spot and finish when they reached a marker that got in their way. Sometimes it was a mound of dirt. Sometimes it was a pillar. Sometimes it was a fence or wall. What all these finish lines shared in common is that they were all obstacles that not only signaled the end of a race but made it difficult if not impossible to go any farther. The Old English word *gal* meant an obstacle or barrier and the related word *gælan* meant "to hinder." It's out of these words that we get the word *goal*. One person's mound, pillar, or wall is another's indication of victory and accomplishment.\*\*

\* Adapted from "goal." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/goal> (accessed May 12, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from "goal." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/goal> (accessed May 12, 2009.); "goal." *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=goal> (accessed May 12, 2009.); "goal, *n.*" *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; "goal, *n.*" *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50096268> (accessed May 12, 2009).





*For every minute spent  
in organizing, an hour is  
earned.*

Source unknown

# Use Your Time and Space Effectively

Time flies, but that's no reason for you to go through each day simply "winging it." Through conscientious use of time and commonsense planning, you can make the most of your day. This chapter ticks off the important elements of effectively managing your time and organizing your space, including how to:

- Find "Hidden" Time
- Change Your Time Habits
- Divide Your Time into Blocks
- Think in Terms of Tasks
- Get Your Priorities Straight
- Stay Organized

How important is time management to your academic success?

Time is a precious and irreplaceable commodity. As she lay on her deathbed, Queen Elizabeth I of England (1533–1603) reportedly said, “All my possessions for a moment of time.” How you use time can determine your success or failure in college. If you use time wisely, you’ll prosper. If you use it poorly, you’ll fail in the job you came to do. That’s why the management of time is the number-one skill to master in college.

How can you gain extra time?

Although many people waste time needlessly and habitually, you needn’t put yourself in the same position. You can gain extra time by reclaiming lost time, by sticking to a schedule, and by staying organized, which will help you use your time more efficiently.

## Reclaim Lost Time

How can you put your time to better use?

All of us have claimed that we don’t have enough time to accomplish what we need to do. But the fact is that everyone is allotted the same amount of time: twenty-four hours a day. Many of us allow a lot of this time to go to waste by failing to realize it is available in the first place. In addition, it’s often our day-to-day habits—activities we no longer notice—that save time or waste it. You can put your time to better use by pinpointing areas of “hidden” time and cultivating time-saving habits.

## Find “Hidden” Time

SELF-DIRECTION

What is “hidden” time?

There’s a lot of valuable time in your day that is being overlooked simply because you didn’t realize it was time you could use. For those who flush tiny slivers of soap down the drain or toss small scraps of cloth into the wastebasket, there are others who combine those slippery bits and pieces into a whole new bar of soap or stitch discarded shreds into a comfortable quilt. Think of all the time you spend standing in line or even waiting for a traffic light to change. If you could find ways to make use of this “hidden” time, you could almost certainly add hours to each week.

How does pocket work use hidden time?

- *Carry Pocket Work* Many situations may leave you with a few moments of unexpected free time—a long line at the bank or supermarket, a delayed bus or train, a wait at the doctor’s office, a lunch date who arrives late. If you make a point to bring along a book, a photocopied article, index cards on which you’ve written key concepts, vocabulary words, or formulas, you’ll be able to take advantage of otherwise frustrating experiences.

When is your mind free for studying?

- *Use Your Mind When It’s Free* Some activities may afford an overlooked opportunity for studying if you’re prepared. For example, if you’re shaving, combing your hair, or washing dishes, there’s no reason you can’t be studying at the same time. Because

How can recording information use hidden time?

many of us tend to “zone out” in such situations, they are excellent opportunities to use time that might otherwise be squandered. Attach small metal or plastic clips near mirrors and on walls at eye level. Place a note card in each clip. Do a math problem or two, or master some new vocabulary words as you eat a sandwich at work.

What is spare-time thinking?

- *Record Study Information* Another way of using hidden time is by listening to information you’ve recorded on MP3 files or burned onto CDs. Recorded information enables you to keep studying in situations where you’re moving about or your eyes are otherwise occupied, such as when you’re getting dressed or driving. In addition, recorded information can provide a refreshing change from written material.

How can you use your subconscious to save time?

- *Employ Spare-Time Thinking* You can make the most of the moments immediately before or after class by recalling the main points from the last lecture as you’re heading to class or by quickly recalling the points of a just-completed lecture as you’re leaving class.

- *Use Your Subconscious* At one point or another, you have awakened during the night with a bright idea or a solution to a problem that you had been thinking about before bedtime. Your subconscious works while your conscious mind is resting. If you want to capture the ideas or solutions produced by your subconscious, write them down as soon as you wake up; otherwise, they’ll be lost. Many creative people know this and keep a pad and pencil near their beds. For example, Nobel Prize winner Albert Szent-Györgyi said, “I go to sleep thinking about my problems all the time, and my brain must continue to think about them when I sleep because I wake up, sometimes in the middle of the night, with answers to questions that have been eluding me all day.”<sup>1</sup>

## Change Your Time Habits

SELF-DIRECTION

REFRAMING

What’s a good way to begin saving time?

Habits, by their very nature, are things we do routinely without even thinking. Most of us are unaware of our habits unless someone or something draws attention to them. A good way to take inventory of your time habits is by keeping a daily activities log. From the time you wake up to the time you go to sleep, note all your major activities, the time you started and finished each, and the time each activity consumed. With your day itemized on paper, you can gain a clearer picture of where your time is being spent and where it’s being wasted. The activities log in Figure 2.1 shows one student’s daily routine and how he decided to put his time to better use.

Once you have the concrete evidence of a daily activities log before you, you can begin to eliminate your time-wasting habits and develop or reinforce the time-saving ones.

<sup>1</sup>Originally published in *Some Watch While Some Must Sleep*, by William C. Dement, as a volume in The Portable Stanford series published by the Stanford Alumni Association. Copyright © 1972. Reprinted by permission of the author.



**Figure 2.1**  
**Record of One Day's**  
**Activities and**  
**Suggestions for**  
**Making Better Use**  
**of Time**

Time		Time Used	Activity - Description	
Start	End			
7:45	8:15	:30	Dress	← Paste index cards on mirror: laws of economics; psychological terms; statistical formulas. Study while brushing teeth, etc.
8:15	8:40	:25	Breakfast	
8:40	9:00	:20	Nothing	← Look over textbook assignment and previous lecture notes to establish continuity for today's psychology lecture.
9:00	10:00	1:00	Psychology - Lecture	
10:00	10:40	:40	Coffee - Talking	← Break too long and too soon after breakfast. Work on psychology notes just taken; also look over economics assignment.
10:40	11:00	:20	Nothing	←
11:00	12:00	1:00	Economics - Lecture	
12:00	12:45	:45	Lunch	
12:45	2:00	1:15	Reading - Magazine	← Rework the lecture notes on economics while still fresh in mind. Also, look over biology assignment to recall the objectives of the coming lab.
2:00	4:00	2:00	Biology Lab	
4:00	8:00	4:00	Work (includes 1/2 hour dinner break)	
8:00	8:50	:50	Study - Statistics	
8:50	9:20	:30	Break	← Break is too long.
9:20	10:00	:40	Study - Statistics	
10:00	10:50	:50	Chat with Bob	← Good as a reward if basic work is done.
10:50	11:30	:40	Study - Accounting	← Insufficient time allotted, but better than no time.
11:30	11:45	:15	Ready for bed	← While brushing teeth, study the index cards. Replace cards that have been mastered with new ones.
11:45	7:45	8:00	Sleep	

**What can you learn from Parkinson's Law?**

**Defy Parkinson's Law** Parkinson's Law says that work expands to fit the time allotted.<sup>2</sup> To avoid running out of time, work Parkinson's Law in reverse: For each task, set a deadline that will be a challenge to meet, and strive to meet that deadline. Each time you achieve your goal, reward yourself with some small but pleasant activity. Take a break. Chat with a friend. Stroll around the room. Have a special snack you've saved just for the occasion. If you fail to meet a deadline, don't punish yourself. Just hold back your reward and set another goal. Positive reinforcement is powerful in effecting a change in behavior.

<sup>2</sup>C. Parkinson, *Parkinson, the Law* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1980).

Why is it so important to obey your alarm?

**Obey Your Alarm Clock** How many times do you hit the snooze button on your alarm clock before you finally get out of bed? Even one time is too many. Set your alarm for the time you want to get up, not for the time you want to *start* getting up. If you can't obey your alarm, you'll have a hard time sticking to your time schedule. After all, it doesn't even buzz.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

What is the value of taking time out?

**Limit Texting, E-mail, and Internet Time** As marvelous as they can be, text messages, e-mail, as well as the Internet in general can all be tremendous "time sinks," swallowing up hours in a typical day. Rather than checking it constantly, designate specific times during the day when you read and send e-mail or cell phone text messages. It's true that e-mail and texting have sped up communication, but it's a rare message that can't wait a while before being read or sent. The same applies to any Web surfing you may do, whether for schoolwork or pleasure. Time has a tendency to fly by as you click from one link to the next. You can help keep things under control by setting a timer when you surf and returning to your studies when the timer goes off.

How can understanding circadian rhythms affect your scheduling?

**Take "Time Out"** Reward yourself with regular short breaks as you work. Learning in several small sessions, rather than in one continuous stretch, increases comprehension. In one study, students who practiced French vocabulary in three discrete sessions did 35 percent better on an exam than those who tried to learn the words in one sitting.<sup>3</sup> So take a breather for ten minutes every hour, or rest for five minutes every half-hour. Whichever method you choose, keep your breaks consistent. This way, you'll study with more energy and look forward to your regular rests. When you return to your desk, you'll find that you feel more refreshed.

**Listen to Your Body** All of us are subject to circadian rhythms. That is, we have periods when we're most wide-awake and alert and other periods when we're sluggish or drowsy. In general, we're sleepest a few hours before dawn and twelve hours later, in mid-afternoon. In keeping with these natural cycles, we're widest awake about every twelve hours, usually at mid-morning and again in mid-evening. Knowing this can help you plan the day's activities more strategically.

1. *Schedule cerebral tasks for mornings and evenings.* Reading, writing, problem solving, and other "thinking tasks" should be done when you're likely to be most alert.
2. *Save active behavior for mid-afternoon.* Fieldwork, lab work, exercise, and errand running are best done at this time of day, when more sedentary activities may make you feel drowsy. If you're not a heavy coffee drinker, a cup of coffee might get you through the afternoon slump.

<sup>3</sup>Kristine C. Bloom et al., "Effects of Massed and Distributed Practice on the Learning and Retention of Second-Language Vocabulary," *Journal of Educational Research* 74, no. 4 (March–April 1981): pp. 245–248.

3. *Resist the temptation to sleep in on the weekends.* Changing your sleep schedule on the weekends can have a chain reaction effect on the following week. You may find yourself feeling jet-lagged on Monday or Tuesday if you sleep in on Saturday or Sunday.
4. *Read in the morning; review in the afternoon.* Scientists have discovered that short-term memory peaks at about nine o'clock in the morning and that long-term memory is strongest at about three o'clock in the afternoon.

## Stick to a Schedule

What is the function of a time schedule?

A time schedule is a game plan, a written strategy that spells out exactly what you hope to accomplish—during a day, a week, or even the entire term—and how you plan to do it. Committing yourself to planning and keeping to a schedule can seem a bit frightening at first, but following a schedule soon becomes a source of strength and a boon to your life. There are several benefits to a schedule.

How will a schedule provide greater control?

*A schedule provides greater control.* A thoughtfully constructed time schedule can increase your sense of control in four ways. First, because your schedule is written down, your plans seem more manageable. You can start working without delay. Second, you know you'll study all your subjects—even those you dislike—because you've allotted time for them in your schedule. There's less of a temptation to skip disliked subjects when study time has already been set aside for them. Third, a schedule discourages laziness. You've got a plan right in front of you, and that plan says, "Let's get down to business!" Fourth, you can schedule review sessions right from the start and avoid last-minute cramming for tests.

How does a schedule encourage relaxation?

*A schedule encourages relaxation.* At the same time, because your plan is written down instead of floating around in your head, your mind is freed for other things. There's no time wasted worrying about what to do next. It's all there on paper. There's no guilt either. Both work and play are written into your schedule. This means that when you take a break, you know you deserve it.

Why are some students reluctant to use time schedules?

Despite these benefits, many students are reluctant to start using time schedules. They feel not only that a schedule will do them little good but also that keeping track of time will turn them into nervous wrecks. Neither worry is warranted.

How does a schedule save you time?

*A schedule saves time.* Yes, it takes time to devise a schedule, but that time is rewarded. You will be able to shift smoothly from one activity to another, without wondering what to do next.

How does a schedule provide freedom?

*A schedule provides freedom.* Scheduling frees you from time's control. The people you see dashing from class to library to gym, or eating lunch on the run, are slaves to

time. The students who schedule time, who decide how time will be used, are the masters of time.

In what way does scheduling increase flexibility?

Which schedule type is best: time-based or task-based?

*A schedule increases flexibility.* Disorganized people often waste so much time that there's no room for flexibility. People who use schedules free their time for a variety of activities and are therefore more flexible.

If you are a full-time student or have considerable control over the hours in your day, your best bet is to rely on traditional schedules that divide your time into manageable blocks. If, however, you are juggling your academic life with the responsibilities of a job or the demands of raising a family, you're probably better off using schedules that focus on tasks instead of on time. Each approach has advantages, but both provide an opportunity to tackle tasks with a genuine game plan instead of flailing at them haphazardly. Regardless of the approach you take, it's important to use your scheduling system not simply as a tool for efficiently filling up your days but as an instrument to help you get your priorities straight.

## Divide Your Time into Blocks

FOCUSING

What does the story of the sticks illustrate about time?

A father once tied a bundle of small, thin sticks together with a strand of twine, handed the bundle to his youngest son, and said, "Son, break these sticks in half." The boy used his hands and knees but could not break the bundle. Sadly, he handed it back to his father. Without a word, the father untied the twine, and using only his fingers, snapped each stick one by one.

What is the advantage of dividing your time into blocks?

When the sum total of your obligations and academic assignments seems overwhelming, it helps immensely to split them up into small, manageable units. By dividing each day into blocks, time schedules break up your responsibilities and allow you to deal with them one by one. Assigning a block of time to each activity ensures that you will work at peak efficiency.

What are the components of the three-part scheduling system?

Using time blocks, you can create a three-part scheduling system consisting of (1) a master schedule, (2) a weekly schedule, and (3) a daily schedule. Each plays an integral role in managing your time. The master schedule serves as a basic structure for organizing your activities, the weekly schedule adds specific details to the master schedule, and the daily schedule puts the weekly schedule into a portable form. Although each schedule performs a different function, all three follow the same basic scheduling guidelines.

What is the best way to use big blocks of time?

1. *Don't waste big blocks.* If you have a big block of time, use it for a big assignment. There's a strong tendency to say, "I'm going to get these smaller assignments out of the way before I tackle the big assignment." This is a poor decision. Instead, use the large block of time for a large and time-intensive assignment, and save your small assignments for the little slivers of time.

When it comes to studying, what is prime time?

How does the type of class influence when you should study for it?

Why should you shy away from making your schedule too detailed? What sorts of nonacademic activities belong in your schedule?

What is the purpose of the master schedule?

What does a master schedule look like?

How does a master schedule help?

What is the purpose of a weekly schedule?

2. *Study during prime time.* For most of us, prime time is daytime. In fact, research has shown that each hour used for study during the day is equal to an hour and a half at night. Even so, you may find that you have dead hours during the day when you are less productive than you'd like to be. Schedule less-demanding tasks for these hours.
3. *Study before recitation classes and after lecture classes.* A study session before a recitation or discussion class (a foreign language course or a psychology seminar, for example) helps warm you up. When you walk into class, the material is fresh in your mind. For lecture classes, use the time immediately after class to fill in any gaps in your notes and to review the information you've just learned.
4. *Don't let details tie your hands.* Account for all your time, but don't be overly detailed. The time you'd take to make an overly meticulous schedule can be better used in studying a subject directly, and the chances of your following such a strict plan are slim.
5. *Include nonacademic activities.* Always set aside time for food, sleep, and recreation as well as the other activities of your life. Cheating yourself out of a meal, a good night's sleep, a swim, a family get-together, or a meeting with friends won't save you time in the long run. In fact, it may cost you time because all these activities are necessary for your overall mental and physical well-being. Make your plan for living, not just for studying.

### Lay a Foundation with a Master Schedule

A master schedule provides an agenda of fixed activities around which your varying activities are arranged. Unless changes occur in your basic program, you need to draw up a master schedule only once per term.

A master schedule grid lists the days of the week at the top and the hours of the day down the left side. The boxes in the grid are filled in with all your required activities: sleep, meals, job, regular meetings, community activities, sports, and, of course, classes. The empty boxes that remain represent your free time. Figure 2.2 provides an example of a typical master schedule.

A master schedule, on a five-by-eight-inch card taped over your desk or carried in your notebook, unclutters your mind. More important, it enables you to visualize actual blocks of time into which you can fit necessary activities.

### Account for Changing Details with a Weekly Schedule

The weekly schedule is built on the foundation of the master schedule. To construct it, photocopy or print out another copy of your master schedule, and fill in the empty blocks with the activities you have planned for the upcoming week. If you have a math test on Friday, for example, you will need to schedule a little extra study time for math. Next week you may be assigned a research paper. If so, you'll probably want to leave

**Figure 2.2**  
**A Master Schedule**  
**with Work**

	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.	Sun.
7-8	← Dress and Breakfast →						
8-9	Bio-Sc		Bio-Sc		Bio-Sc	Dress & Breakfast	
9-10		Yoga		Yoga		Yoga	Dress & Breakfast
10-11	History		History		History		
11-12		Spanish		Spanish		Spanish	
12-1	← Lunch →						
1-2	Math	Graphics Lab	Math	Graphics Lab	Math		
2-3	English		English		English		
3-4		Work-study Prog.		Work-study Prog.			
4-5	Work-study		Work-study		Work-study		
5-6							
6-7	← Dinner →						
7-8							
8-9							
9-10							
10-11							
11-12	← Sleep →						

space in your schedule for library or Internet research. The weekly schedule helps you adapt your time to your changing priorities. Keep it posted by your desk or pasted on the inside cover of your notebook.

A sample weekly schedule is shown in Figure 2.3. The lists that follow show how the guidelines for scheduling were used to set it up.

### **Monday Through Friday/Saturday**

- 7–8 a.m.      Avoid the frantic dash and the gobbled (or skipped) breakfast by getting up on time.
- 12–1 p.m.    Take a full, leisurely hour for lunch.
- 5–6            Relax before dinner—your reward for a day of conscientious work.
- 7–9            Keep up with current notes and assignments through systematic studying.
- 9–10          To forestall cramming at quiz and examination times, give some time every day to a review of previous assignments and ground covered to date.
- 10             A cease-study time of 10 p.m. provides an incentive for working hard during the day and early evening.
- 10–12        Devote some time every day to reading books that truly interest you. Recreational reading and conversation help you unwind for a good night's sleep.

### **Tuesday/Thursday/Saturday**

- 8–9 a.m.      Because chemistry (10–11) is your hardest subject, build your morning study program around it. An hour's study before class will make the class period more meaningful.
- 11–12 p.m.   Another hour's study immediately after chemistry class will help you remember the work covered in class and move more readily to the next assignment.

### **Special**

- Tuesday      2–5 p.m. Library: paper
- Sunday        7–9 p.m. English paper
- For some assignments you will need to schedule blocks of time to do research or to develop and follow up on ideas.
- Saturday      From noon on, Saturday is left unscheduled—for recreation, for special projects to which you must devote a concentrated period of time, for extra work on difficult subjects, for thorough review.

**Figure 2.3**  
A Detailed Weekly  
Schedule Based on a  
Master Schedule

Time	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.	Sun.
7-8	←		Dress and Breakfast		→		↑
8-9	History	Study Chem.	History	Study Chem.	History	Study Chem.	
9-10	Study History	Swimming	Study History	Swimming	Study History	Swimming	Religious Service, Recreation, Conversation, Recreational Reading
10-11	Study French	Chem.	Study French	Chem.	Study French	Chem.	
11-12	French	Study Chem.	French	Study Chem.	French	Study Chem.	
12-1	←		Lunch		→		
1-2	Math	Intro to Research	Math	Intro to Research	Math		
2-3	Study Math	Library: Paper	Study Math	↑ Chem. Lab.	Study Math	↑ Recreation, Special Projects, Reading, Extra Work on Difficult Subjects Through Review	
3-4	Study English	Library: Paper	Study English	↓	Study English		
4-5	English	Library: Paper	English		English		
5-6	←		Recreation		→		
6-7	←		Dinner		→		↓
7-8	Study English	Study Math	Study English	Study Math	Study English		English Paper
8-9	Study French	Study History	Study French	Study History	Study French		English Paper
9-10	Review English	Review French	Review History	Review Math	Review Chem.		Study History
10-11	←		Recreational Reading		→		
11-12	←		Conversation, Sleep		→		



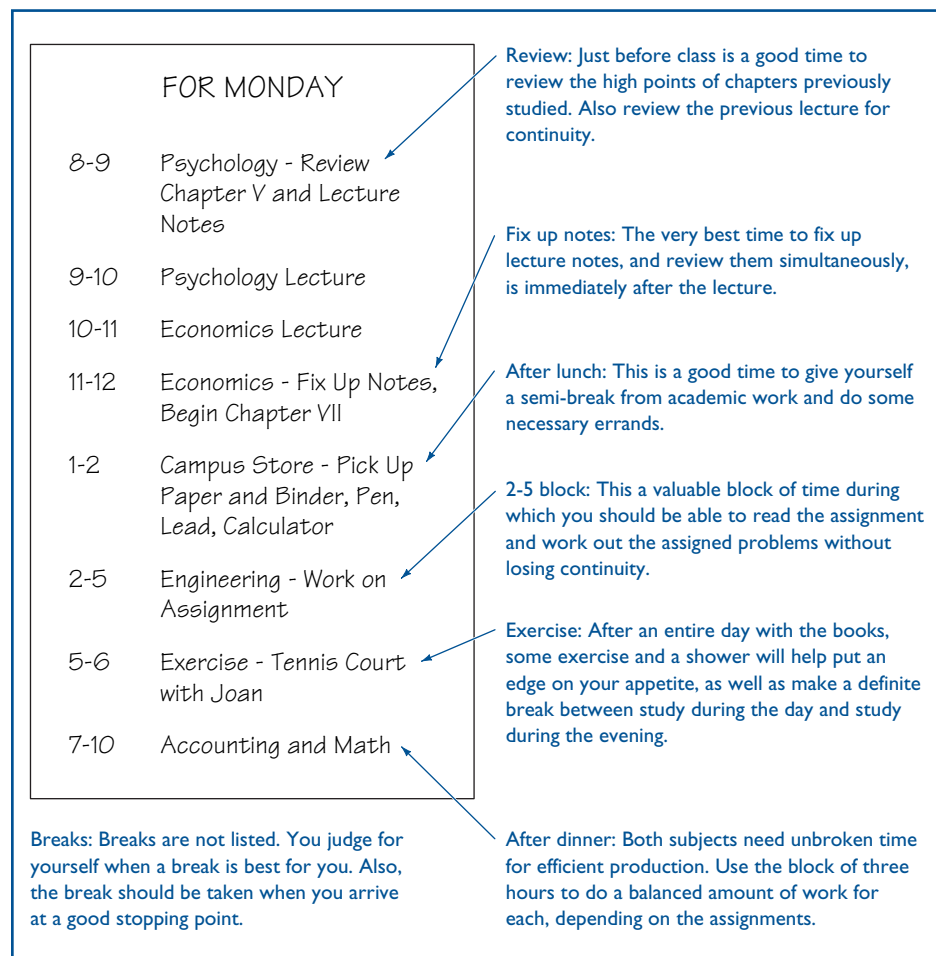
Sunday This is your day until evening. Study history before you go to bed because it is the first class you'll have on Monday morning.

What goes into a daily schedule?

### Provide a Portable Game Plan with a Daily Schedule

A daily schedule is a brief yet specific list of the day's tasks and the time blocks you plan to accomplish them in. You should be able to fit all this information on an index card that you can carry around with you all day. Make up your daily schedule each night before you go to bed. Once you have put your worries and concerns on paper, your mind will be free for sleep. You will also have thought through your day and will be better prepared when the morning comes. Figure 2.4 shows one student's daily schedule and explains why it is effective.

**Figure 2.4**  
A Daily Schedule



What are the pros and cons of special scheduling tools?

### Use Scheduling Tools If You Feel Comfortable with Them

These days, you can choose from a growing variety of tools and utilities, from computer software to personal digital assistants to Internet applications to hefty loose-leaf notebooks, all designed to make scheduling your time both easier and more intelligent. These tools may provide the breakthrough that some students need to finally begin to appreciate the importance of keeping a schedule. For other students, they are an elaborate, costly, time-intensive distraction that does little to control or organize time. Index cards and blank sheets of paper may not be all that sophisticated, but they are extremely inexpensive, refreshingly flexible, and breathtakingly simple, and they can usually provide all you need to get a firm grasp on your available time. If you swear by your PDA or your store-bought appointment book, that's fine. As long as you keep in mind that your goal is managing time, you can make just about any system work. The essential component is not the tool, but rather the person who is using it.

### Think in Terms of Tasks

FOCUSING

When is it preferable to use task-based scheduling?

Because of the way a schedule based on time blocks divides the day into manageable bite-sized segments, it is often preferable for most students. But some of us don't have the luxury of predictably structuring our days from top to bottom. If your days are largely unpredictable or your free time is fluid, you may need schedules that emphasize tasks instead of blocks of time. In addition, long-term assignments, which can't always be squeezed into time blocks, may require a task-based approach.

How did Ivy Lee demonstrate the value of tasks?

Anyone who's ever had the satisfaction of systematically crossing items off a lengthy to-do list has at least an inkling of the effectiveness of a task-based approach. During the first half of the twentieth century, legendary management consultant Ivy Lee demonstrated just how effective—and lucrative—it could be to view things in terms of tasks.

Charles Schwab, then chairman of the Bethlehem Steel Company, challenged Lee: "Show me a way to get more things done with my time, and I'll pay you any fee within reason." Lee thought for a while, then said,

- Every *evening* write down the six most important tasks for the next day in order of priority.
- Every *morning* start working on task #1 and continue until you finish it; then start on task #2, and so on. Do this until quitting time and don't be concerned if you have finished only one or two tasks.
- At the end of each day, tear up the list and start over.

When Schwab asked how much he owed for this advice, Ivy Lee told him to use the plan for a few weeks, then send in a check for whatever he thought it was worth.<sup>4</sup> Three weeks later, Lee received a check for \$25,000, which is equal to about \$250,000 in today's dollars!

<sup>4</sup>T. W. Engstrom and R. A. Mackensie, *Managing Your Time* (Grand Rapids, MI: Zondervan, 1967).

**Figure 2.5**  
**A Task-Based Master**  
**Schedule**

	Psychology Research Paper April 21	Train for Amateur Triathlon May 1	Self-Paced Data Mgmt Course
Feb. 7	<del>Select Three Topic Ideas</del>	<del>Up Minimum to 60 Laps</del>	<del>Complete Ch. 1-3</del>
Feb. 10	Do Preliminary Research	Try Ride Up Satyr Hill	
Feb. 14	Make Final Topic Choice	Run 30 Miles Per Week	Complete Ch. 4-6
Feb. 18	Complete Bibliography		
March 15	Finish First Draft		Mid-term Exam
March 18	Begin Rewriting		
April 21	Paper Due		Final

What sort of schedules do you need for a task-based approach?

Of course, just as a daily schedule would provide only a limited view of your tasks, a single to-do list is not sufficient for a task-based approach to help you through the entire semester. Whether it hinges on time blocks or tasks, a three-part scheduling system still makes sense. If you're focusing on tasks, you'll need (1) a task-based master schedule and (2) a weekly assignment-oriented schedule in addition to (3) a daily to-do list.

How does a task-based master schedule differ from a standard master schedule?

### Develop a Task-Based Master Schedule

A task-based master schedule enables you to keep track of one or more assignments or goals over an extended period of time. Figure 2.5 provides an example of a task-based schedule. Across the top of the schedule, instead of listing the days of the week, write out the major goals you hope to accomplish or the assignments you plan to complete. Deadlines for subgoals may be written down the left side, where the hours of the day would normally be written in a standard master schedule.

How do you divide your goals into subgoals?

Now divide each goal or long-term assignment into manageable subgoals. List them in a column beneath the task they refer to. For example, if you've been assigned a research paper, you may arrive at the following subgoals: do preliminary research, choose topic, plan outline, conduct research, complete first draft, and revise first draft. As you reach each milestone on the way to completing your assignment, cross it off your schedule. As you do, you provide yourself with visual evidence of and positive feedback for the progress you've made.

When should you use an assignment-oriented weekly schedule?

### Make Your Weekly Schedule Assignment-Oriented

If the span of your goal or assignment is a week or less, you can use an assignment-oriented weekly schedule as a supplement to your master schedule. Figure 2.6 shows such a schedule. The format is simple. Draw a horizontal line to divide an  $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ -inch sheet of paper in half. In the top half, list your subjects, assignments, estimated study times, and due dates. Then, with the due dates and estimated times as control factors, check your master schedule for available time. Allocate enough hours to do the job, and write them on the appropriate line on the bottom half of the sheet. Stick to your schedule. As long as you give study hours top priority, your remaining hours will be truly free.

How should you adjust your daily schedule when your time is unpredictable?

### Turn Your Daily Schedule into a To-Do List

Your daily study schedule should simply be a list of things to do arranged in order of priority on an index card. In this case, assigning specific times is likely to lead to frustration.

Figure 2.7 shows a typical daily list. To be successful, you need to develop a habit of referring to your list continually throughout the day. Cross off the tasks as you complete them.

## Get Your Priorities Straight

FOCUSING

REFRAMING

When can schedules create a false sense of security?

Even the best schedules can create a false sense of security and accomplishment if they're filled with tasks that may take time but aren't top priorities.

**Figure 2.6**  
**A Weekly Schedule**  
**Based on Assignments**

Subject	Assignment	Estimated Time	Date Due	Time Due
Electronics	Chapter V - 32 pp. - Read	2 hr.	Mon. 13 <sup>th</sup>	8:00
English	Paper to Write	18 hr.	Mon. 20 <sup>th</sup>	9:00
Math	Problems on pp. 110-111	3 hr.	Tues. 14 <sup>th</sup>	10:00
Industrial Safety	Make Shop Layouts	8 hr.	Fri. 17 <sup>th</sup>	11:00
Web Development	Generate Website Prototype (6-10 pages)	6 hr.	Fri. 17 <sup>th</sup>	1:00
Electronics	Chapter VI - 40 pp. - Read	2 1/2 hr.	Weds. 22 <sup>nd</sup>	8:00

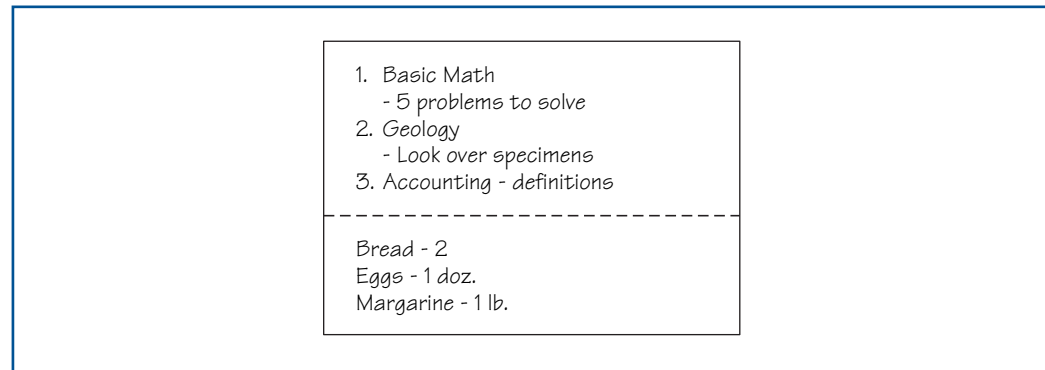
Day	Assignment	Morning	Afternoon	Evening
Sun.	Electronics - Read Chap V English - Find a Topic			7:30-9:30 9:30-10:30
Mon.	English - Gather Notes Math - Problems		2:00-6:00	7:00-10:00
Tues.	English - Gather Notes Industrial Safety	8:00-10:00	3:00-6:00	7:00-10:00
Wed.	English - First Draft Web Development		2:00-6:00	7:00-10:00
Thurs.	Industrial Safety English - Paper Web Development	8:00-10:00	3:00-6:00	7:00-10:00
Fri.	English - Final Copy Electronics		2:00-6:00	7:00-9:30
Sat.				

**What's the difference between efficient time management and effective time management?**

Efficient time management is often mistaken for effective time management. Although it's admirable to work efficiently, that is, to accomplish as much as possible in the time allotted, your efficiency will be wasted if you are focusing on the wrong tasks. As Tom Connellan, an author and consultant, put it, "There's no point in doing well what you should not be doing at all."<sup>5</sup> To manage time effectively, you need to allocate your energy and attention to those tasks that are most important.

<sup>5</sup>Dorothy Lehmkuhl and Dolores Cotter Lamping, *Organizing for the Creative Person* (New York: Crown, 1993), p. 46.

**Figure 2.7**  
A Things-to-Do List



What is the purpose of the urgency-importance matrix?

Why are nonurgent, unimportant tasks considered time wasters?

Well-known author, consultant, and time-management expert Dr. Stephen Covey devised a simple, much-imitated matrix to help you to gain a better understanding of the relative values of the tasks you're faced with on a regular basis. The matrix has "urgency" on the vertical axis and "importance" on the horizontal one (see Figure 2.8). Tasks that are urgent demand your immediate attention. Important tasks are tasks that will help you to achieve your goal.<sup>6</sup>

The real time wasters are tasks that are neither urgent nor important. They can be easily ignored and do little or nothing to help you achieve either your short-term or long-term goals. These are the sorts of things we often refer to as busywork. If, for example, you are working on the computer but you still take time out to sharpen all your pencils, you're focusing on a task that isn't urgent or important. This is clearly the sort of thing that can wait.

**Figure 2.8**  
An Urgency-Importance Matrix  
Source: From *Organizing for the Creative Person* by Dorothy Lehmkuhl and Dolores Cotter Lamping. Copyright © 1993 by Dorothy Lehmkuhl and Dolores Cotter Lamping. Reprinted by permission of Random House, Inc.



<sup>6</sup>Ibid., pp. 44–45.

Where do common interruptions fall in the matrix?

Common interruptions—such as a phone call, a text message, or a friend who drops by unexpectedly while you’re studying—tend to fall into the urgent but unimportant category. These things rarely relate to your goals, but they’re hard to ignore. If you need to get work done, it’s generally a good idea to put yourself in a position in which you are less susceptible to these sorts of interruptions. (See Chapter 3.)

How should you handle tasks that are both urgent and important?

Urgent and important items are tasks you can’t ignore and shouldn’t ignore. They include things such as scheduled classes or looming deadlines, as well as more spectacular unscheduled tasks, such as dodging projectiles or escaping burning buildings. If you have a class that starts in five minutes, then that’s urgent and important. You need to attend the course, and you can’t be late. If your paper is due tomorrow, and you’ve hardly started, then you’ve really got no choice but to work until you finish it. All items in this category should get top priority on your task list.

What sorts of tasks are important but not urgent?

The most valuable quadrant in the entire matrix in Figure 2.8 is the one for tasks that are important but aren’t yet urgent. This is where your long-range planning occurs. The more you accomplish in this area, the more successful and organized you’re likely to be. What are some examples of important but not-yet-urgent tasks? Mastering the notes for a recent textbook reading assignment is one. Beginning research on a paper that isn’t due for another month is another. Mastering your notes will put you in a good position the next time a test or quiz is announced (or sprung upon you by surprise). Getting a head start on your paper will prevent you from having to compete with fellow students for limited resources at the library (see Chapter 14) or from having to put in an all-nighter before the paper is due. Some urgent and important tasks (like attending class or leaving the building when a fire alarm sounds) are unavoidable, but, in general, the more time you devote to important but not urgent tasks, the more likely you’ll be able to avoid the tasks that increase your stress, force you to cram, or make you skip sleep.

How should the urgency-importance matrix affect the way you plan out your time?

When planning out your time, tackle the tasks in quadrant 1 first, but see if you can keep them to a minimum, and spend the bulk of your time on tasks in quadrant 2. Avoid adding tasks from quadrant 3 or 4 to your task list. The former are typically going to be unexpected interruptions. Try to establish a study environment where you are less likely to encounter these. And as for the items in quadrant 4, they really don’t belong on any task list. If you find you’re spending time on tasks that are neither urgent nor important, make a point to avoid doing so in the future. Adding such items to your schedule or task list is likely to give you a false sense of accomplishment and distract you from completing truly important tasks.

How can you put the matrix to practical use with task-oriented schedules?

Once you’ve figured out the urgency and importance of each task you plan to accomplish, you can use this information in a number of ways.

1. Go back to a task list you may have already written and number each item depending on whether it’s urgent and important, important but not urgent, and so on.
2. Use the urgency-importance matrix as your actual task list. Looking at which quadrant has more crossed off items will provide a snapshot of how truly productive your day has been.

3. Position your tasks in the matrix first and then create a standard task list, ordering the items by priority based on where you placed them in the matrix.

How can you put the matrix to practical use with a traditional three-part schedule?

If you are using a traditional schedule, the matrix can help you decide how to budget your available time blocks. Begin by using the master schedule as your template, just as you normally would, adding in any tasks or events for the week that already have specific time frames. Then use your matrix to help you decide how to fill in the remaining blocks in your schedule. The weekly view provides excellent reinforcement for those important but not urgent tasks that call for long-term planning.

## Stay Organized

What does staying organized have to do with managing time?

Of course, the effort you devote to finding “hidden” time, changing your time habits, and sticking to a schedule will be squandered if the tools you use to tackle your tasks are in a state of disarray. A huge part of being a successful student has to do with being able to find exactly what you need as quickly and efficiently as possible. After all, what good is a carefully planned schedule if you spend the first twenty minutes of the hour you planned to use for mastering your notes, searching for those very notes under a pile of papers or in a maze of nested computer directories? To stay organized and thereby make the best use of that time you’ve so carefully plotted, you need to devise a system, keep it flexible, and cut down on clutter.

## Devise a System

CLUSTERING

PLANNING

What sort of organizational system do you need to devise?

Like so many successful study techniques, organizing your work area depends on a system. To a great extent, the kind of system you use doesn’t matter just as long as you have one and it works for you. But in general, it pays to follow the old saying “A place for everything and everything in its place” by designating a logical home base for all the materials you are likely to encounter in your work area. In addition, it makes sense to organize things intelligently, so the materials you need most often are easiest to reach and those you need least are well out of your way. And finally, it helps to logically label items so you can tell at a glance what they contain and where they belong.

### Find a Place for Everything

Why is it important to find a place for everything?

There are several reasons why papers, books, and other materials may be obstructing your workspace and even littering your floor, but one of those reasons is so painfully obvious that it’s amazing that it doesn’t occur to those students who have to wade through a sea of supplies each time they try to do some work: *You never found a place for them.* Although some people may be too tired or lazy to put things away, more people



leave things lying about simply because they never figured out where to put them in the first place.

How can you gradually find places for your possessions?

If the prospect of designating a place for everything you own seems complicated and scary, start gradually by designating broad areas for things: bookshelf for your books, drawer for your notebooks, file box for your papers, basket for you mail, jar for your pencils and pens, and so on. Using that as a starting point, start to subdivide your broader areas by, for example, putting this semester's books on the easiest-to-reach shelf and last semester's books on another or by putting science and math books on the first shelf, history and English books on the second. As you refine your system, you'll find it easier to go directly to what you need. But even from the very beginning, you will be in the right ballpark each time you go to look for what you need.

How do you organize things intelligently?

### Organize Things Intelligently

Have you ever reached into the refrigerator at breakfast and found that a ketchup bottle, a covered casserole dish, and half an apple are all blocking your access to the carton of milk? Some people have a workspace that is similarly arranged, where the materials they don't need are right there in front of them, and the supplies they do need take some effort to reach. The ketchup, the casserole, and the apple are all things you can use at some point. You just don't need them now. It makes sense to arrange things so they're where you need them when you need them.

How does the CIA system help you arrange your materials?

Just as you arrange your tasks in order of their priority, you should arrange you supplies in a similar fashion. CIA creates a mnemonic to remind you how to arrange things intelligently; that is, they should be arranged according to whether they are current, imminent, or archived.

- *Current.* Current items are the notes and materials you're using right now. They usually belong on your desktop or somewhere close by. They should all be within easy reach. And there's another implied message in this routine: Before you settle down to study, not only should you have the things you need at your fingertips, but also you should get those things you don't need *out of your way*.
- *Imminent.* Imminent items are those you aren't using right now, but plan on using shortly. These are typically the notes and materials from your other classes this semester. In addition, imminent items may include textbooks or materials from previous semesters if they provide background, support, or context for your current semester's work. Imminent items typically sit on a nearby shelf or in a desk drawer.
- *Archived.* Archived items are those you've used in past semesters that may help you this semester or in some future semester but that aren't necessary for your day-to-day work. This would include your notes from previous classes as well as any textbooks from those classes that you've held onto. Because these items don't have to be easy to reach, you can place them on a less accessible shelf in your bookcase, in a file cabinet, or in banker's boxes. If you do put these items in boxes, be very specific in the way

you label them so that you can still find the right book or set of notes if it turns out that you need them.

### Choose Logical Labels

What good are labels?

Imagine how difficult it would be to pick out the right book from a shelf if all the books were shelved backward. Although we depend a great deal on labeling, we frequently take it for granted. Labels are designed to make it easier to recognize and find what you need and to organize things systematically, whether by alphabetizing or by some other system.

What should you label?

Label notebooks, individual note pages, and computer files. If you're putting things in a file cabinet, label those folders as well. If you're burning files onto CDs, be sure to label the CDs so that you can quickly differentiate one disk from another. Anything you're likely to sort through, organize, or search for should be labeled. It just takes a second, and it can save you a lot of time. There are lots of good reasons to label your materials and few if any not to do so.

What should the labels say?

How you choose to label your materials is basically up to you as long as you label things consistently. The idea is to be able to find what you need as quickly as possible. That said, here are some suggestions you may want to adopt:

How do you label folders or computer directories for a course?

*Label folders or directories according to the course identifier.* Rather than labeling a folder or directories with the title of your course (e.g., "Introduction to Macroeconomics"), it's usually better to start with the course identifier (e.g., "ECON102"), which should be easier to locate when you are rifling through a notebook or cabinet or searching through a computer directory. Also, it will mean that all folders from the same subject when alphabetized will wind up in the same basic location.

How should you organize the different kinds of materials for each course?

*Use separate labeled folders or dividers for different parts of a class.* Keep class notes, lab notes, textbook notes, handouts, and any other course materials in separate labeled sections of your notebook or in their own subfolders in your file cabinet or computer directory.

What sorts of labels do your notes need?

*Add enough information to each note page or file so that it can stand alone.* It's almost inevitable that your notes will get shuffled at some point. In fact, there are some situations in which you may deliberately want to shuffle them (see Chapter 11). To ensure that your notes don't get easily mixed up, label each note sheet with a course identifier (e.g., "BIO203" or "Biology 203"), the date you took the notes, and the page number. Put the information on an outside corner, so it's easy to flip through and find what you need. With the Cornell System (see Chapter 10), the outside upper corner is probably best because the label is less likely to get in the way of your summary area jottings or marginal cues. To make any notes you've taken on your computer easier to find, name the file after the date (expressed numerically by year, month, and day) and the course identifier. So, for notes you took on February 12, 2010, for a reading in your Biology 203 class, the file name might be 20100212-bio203. If this type of label seems complicated or a little unfriendly to you now, you'll soon get used to it. And you'll discover how much easier it is to quickly find the notes you need.

How can you keep file folders better organized?

*Provide an index for any file folders.* If you're keeping materials in a file cabinet, create an alphabetical list of the all the folder names and attach it to the cabinet door. That way you'll be able to search for the right folder before you even open the drawer. Also, it should make it easier to tell if you accidentally have two folders serving the same purpose (such as "Lecture Notes" and "Class Notes").

## Keep Things Flexible

REFRAMING

CLUSTERING

Why should you keep your organization system flexible?

Perhaps somewhere there's a gigantic landfill devoted to obsolete organizers, to partially completed plans, to filing systems gone awry, and to calendars that were abandoned or ignored. Why do so many of these systems wind up on the trash heap? It's true that in many cases people simply lose interest, but it's just as likely that the systems were far too rigid and demanding. Ultimately, a simple, bare-bones system that works is more powerful than a complex, powerful one that fails. You can keep your organization system going for the long haul if you keep things flexible, by doing things like using loose-leaf paper instead of spiral notebooks and by keeping each class in a separate binder instead of combining them all into one.

### IT'S YOUR Q

#### Use Loose-Leaf Paper

You want any notes you take to be as flexible as possible. Spiral-bound notebooks may seem appealing, but they put your notes into sort of a straitjacket, limiting the things you can readily do with your notes once you've taken them. Of course, you can tear out sheets from a spiral-bound notebook, but that leaves a residual of paper bits that can sometimes have a negative psychological effect on your productivity. Lined-paper tablets are also popular with some students, and although these tablets aren't quite as messy and limiting as spiral notebooks, they still force you to go through your notes in order. If you do write on lined-paper tablets, buy the three-hole kind and then carefully tear off the pages of notes once you've taken them and store them in a loose-leaf binder. As you'll discover in Chapter 11, being able to separate your notes into individual sheets instead of keeping them as part of a notebook or pad will prove to be a real advantage when it comes time to prepare for a test or quiz. Also, if you keep blank sheets of loose-leaf paper in each notebook, you'll always be prepared, even if you make the mistake of bringing the wrong notebook to class.

Why should you have a different notebook for each class?

#### Limit Each Notebook to One Class

Standard loose-leaf notebooks can be large and unwieldy, not to mention kind of expensive. Luckily, you don't really require anything so elaborate for your class. All you really need are three rings and a cover. Full-sized, soft-sided notebooks still hold standard-sized paper. But these are thinner and less expensive and enable you to use a different notebook for each class instead of putting the materials from several, often unrelated classes in a single binder. Then you can take only what you need when

you head to class. Why do you need your economics notes when you're in class taking notes for sociology? Besides, most of the loose-leaf additions that improve the organization of a large notebook—pockets, dividers, graph paper, and so on—work just as well in a thinner, more flexible notebook. In fact, thinner notebooks often come with a pocket on the inside of the front and back covers. Also, you can buy a notebook of a different color for each class, making it easy to distinguish one from another.

## Cut Down on Clutter

CLUSTERING

FOCUSING

What causes clutter and how can you reduce it?

Although getting organized involves far more than just minimizing clutter, clutter is generally what most people think of when they imagine disorganization. The cause of clutter is pretty straightforward. It usually results when too many things are out of place. If you reduce your level of “stuff” and make a routine of putting the things that remain back in their place, you should go a long way to reducing clutter.

What does the OHIO rule suggest?

### Use the OHIO Rule for Papers and E-mail

The acronym OHIO stands for “Only Handle It Once.”<sup>7</sup> When you get a new piece of paper, do something with it right away. Read it and then throw it out, file it, or if it's something that requires your immediate attention, act on it. Many people needlessly pick up the same sheets of paper again and again without doing anything decisive. That wastes time and it usually leads to clutter. By the way, the same advice applies to e-mail. If your inbox is filled with e-mail messages, you're creating electronic clutter. Delete the message, file it in a directory, or act on it right away if it's urgent. But don't leave it sitting in your inbox, to be scrolled past day in and day out or repeatedly opened and closed.

Why is it a good idea to avoid printing out materials?

### Don't Print It Out If You Can Avoid It

One simple way to reduce the paper-based clutter on your desk or work area is to limit the things you print out. In many colleges, your syllabus, your assignments, and other course materials, sometimes including tests and texts, come to you via e-mail or through a website or a course management system. Some students go through “paper withdrawal” and have a tough time keeping all their materials on the computer instead of in a stack of sheets on their desk. There may still be some materials that you prefer to have on paper, but don't be like the person who salts her food without tasting it first. Try to refrain from automatically printing out your materials. Of course, if your course materials are only available in hard copy, you have no choice.

<sup>7</sup>Edward M. Hallowell, “Overloaded Circuits: Why Smart People Underperform,” *Harvard Business Review* (January 2005): 60.

What's the last thing you should do at the end of the study day?

#### IT'S YOUR Q

What if your desktop is a computer desktop?

What's the advantage of setting out your materials in advance?

### Allow Time for Cleanup and Setup

When you reach the end of your study day, instead of abruptly getting up from your chair and moving on to something else, take just a few minutes to stow away the things you've been working on in their proper places and to set out the things you plan to be working on the next time you sit down.

Anything you leave lying around from the previous day is likely to interfere with the work you do the following day. Also, things you leave over have a tendency to pile up. After all, no one plans to have a messy desk or work area. It tends to happen over time. Most cluttered surfaces are covered with items that were left there just "temporarily." Take a few minutes to put books, notebooks, and other supplies back in their places. The few minutes you devote to this end-of-study ritual will ensure that your well-organized work area remains organized. If you feel as though you're too tired, or you're concerned that it will take too much time, try an experiment: Look at your watch or a stopwatch as you go through the process of logging off your computer, reshelving books, and putting away pens, pencils, and papers. You are almost certain to find that the routine doesn't take long at all. And yet it can save you a good deal of time in the long run.

The practice of straightening your desktop is still helpful, even if that desktop is a computer desktop. In fact, it's usually a lot easier to straighten your computer desktop. The process of moving, storing, and deleting files is much faster when those files are computer files.

If you gather together materials that you plan to use the next day, you'll have an important head start. If you have a class the first thing in the morning and there's a risk that you may have to head out the door a little faster than you'd like, the few minutes you spent the night before, calmly getting everything together, should minimize the risk that you will forget something if you're in a hurry. Also, setting out the next day's materials has an important psychological effect. It gets you to think about the following day's activities and helps to put you in the proper mindset. Finally, assembling tomorrow's materials in advance helps to counteract inertia and discourage procrastination. When you wake up the next day and find that everything you need is there waiting for you, you should find it easier to hit the ground running instead of just spinning your wheels.

## FINAL WORDS

Why do people who understand the importance of time continue to waste it?

Let's face it. Most people understand the supreme importance of time and the value of sticking to a schedule, yet many of us continue to waste time needlessly. Why? Perhaps it is because we are human beings, not machines. Learning to use time wisely after years of wasting it doesn't happen by simply flipping a switch. Controlling your time is

ultimately a matter of developing the right mindset. If the dying words of Queen Elizabeth and the compelling evidence of this chapter haven't been enough to convince you to change your time-wasting ways, perhaps the following tidbits about time will finally make things click.

### Seven Valuable Tidbits About Time

1. One of America's greatest composers, jazz giant Duke Ellington, still wasn't ashamed to admit, "Without a deadline, I can't finish nothin'."
2. Be a contrarian. Go to the library when almost nobody is there. Get into the dining-hall line before the crowd. Get the reserved books before the line forms. The time you save will add up quickly.
3. Make decisions wisely by asking, "What are the alternatives?" Make a list of the alternatives, and then put pluses and minuses alongside them. Learn this process. It will save lots of time.
4. Don't spread yourself thin by attempting to become an "information junkie." This scattershot approach takes up a great deal of time and can still leave you feeling stressed and dissatisfied. Just make sure that you gain a firm grip on your own field.
5. When you're really through studying, spend an extra fifteen minutes studying just a little bit more.
6. If the thought of saving time sounds sensible but uninspiring, ask yourself this simple question: What do I want to save time for? Suddenly, the efficient use of time may take on a significance that it never had before.
7. A Sanskrit proverb puts everything in proper perspective:

Today well lived  
Makes every yesterday a dream of happiness  
And every tomorrow a vision of hope  
Look well therefore to this day.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

- A time schedule functions as a \_\_\_\_\_.  
reward                      game plan                      punishment
- When it comes to studying, “prime time” is usually \_\_\_\_\_.  
daytime                      mid-afternoon                      flexible
- A master schedule should normally be drawn up once a \_\_\_\_\_.  
day                      week                      term

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| _____ 1. Pocket work     | a. Work expands to fit the time allotted                           |
| _____ 2. E-mail          | b. Method for minimizing paper clutter                             |
| _____ 3. Master schedule | c. Nobel Prize winner who used sleep time to solve problems        |
| _____ 4. OHIO            | d. Provides a basic structure for organizing the term’s activities |
| _____ 5. CIA             | e. Rhythms that influence your body’s cycle of sleeping and waking |
| _____ 6. Szent-Györgyi   | f. Productivity boon that can sometimes be a “time sink”           |
| _____ 7. Parkinson’s Law | g. Supplies study material for unexpected free time                |
| _____ 8. Circadian       | h. Method for arranging your study materials                       |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

- T    F    Taking breaks has a detrimental effect on comprehension.
- T    F    Schedules don’t have to be effective as long as they’re efficient.
- T    F    Using a time schedule can make you a slave to time.
- T    F    Scheduling saves time that might otherwise be wasted.
- T    F    An hour of daytime work is usually more productive than an hour at night.

## MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.

1. When your obligations and assignments begin to seem overwhelming, it helps to
  - a. take a nap.
  - b. divide your time into blocks.
  - c. use Parkinson's Law.
  - d. all of the above.
2. "Hidden" time is time that you
  - a. aren't allowed to use.
  - b. managed to overlook.
  - c. reserve for recreation.
  - d. leave off your schedule.
3. The most *valuable* quadrant of the urgency-importance matrix is
  - a. urgent but not important.
  - b. important but not urgent.
  - c. not urgent and not important.
  - d. none of the above.
4. The master schedule provides
  - a. an alternative to a weekly schedule.
  - b. an excuse for increased recreation.
  - c. a basic structure for organizing your activities.
  - d. a solution to the problem of hidden time.
5. A task-based schedule may be your best bet if
  - a. your days are unpredictable.
  - b. your free time is fluid.
  - c. you have a full-time job.
  - d. all of the above.



**REFLECTION**

Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.

1. Identify at least two instances of “hidden” time in your typical week and suggest some ideas you’ve arrived at after reading this chapter for putting that time to better use.
2. Explain which type of schedule you think will be the most effective for your particular needs and why.
3. Use the urgency-importance matrix (see Figure 2.8) to arrange your own tasks in the four quadrants. Which of your quadrants contains the most tasks? Which has the fewest? Were you surprised by the results? If so, why? If not, why not?

**IT’S YOUR Q**

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You’ll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it’s your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

**VOCABULARY IN ACTION**

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

**SAY WHAT?**

From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.

The most *erroneous* stories are those we think we know best – and therefore never *scrutinize* or question.

—Stephen Jay Gould (1941–2002), American paleontologist and evolutionary biologist

- |                      |           |            |            |
|----------------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. <i>erroneous</i>  | misguided | inaccurate | misleading |
| 2. <i>scrutinize</i> | inspect   | see        | criticize  |

## Chapter 2: Use Your Time and Space Effectively

53

Any good piece of material like Shakespeare ought to be open to *reinterpretation*.

—Denzel Washington (1954–), American actor and director

3. *reinterpretation*                      translation                      rethinking                      duplication

*Gentility* is what is left over from rich ancestors after the money is gone.

—John Ciardi (1916–1986), American poet and critic

4. *gentility*                              refinement                      large debts                      large family

Those who make the worst use of their time are the first to complain of its *brevity*.

—Jean de La Bruyère (1645–1696), French writer and moralist

5. *brevity*                                      briefness                              dullness                              wastefulness

## VOCAB-U-LADDER

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.

indisposition  
coherence  
insist  
expose  
consistency  
hesitancy

share root  
meaning "to stand"

share root  
meaning "to cling"

share root  
meaning  
"to put or place"

importune

synonyms  
meaning "beg"

synonyms for  
"agreement"

synonyms for  
"reluctance"

synonyms for  
"reveal"

divulge



Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

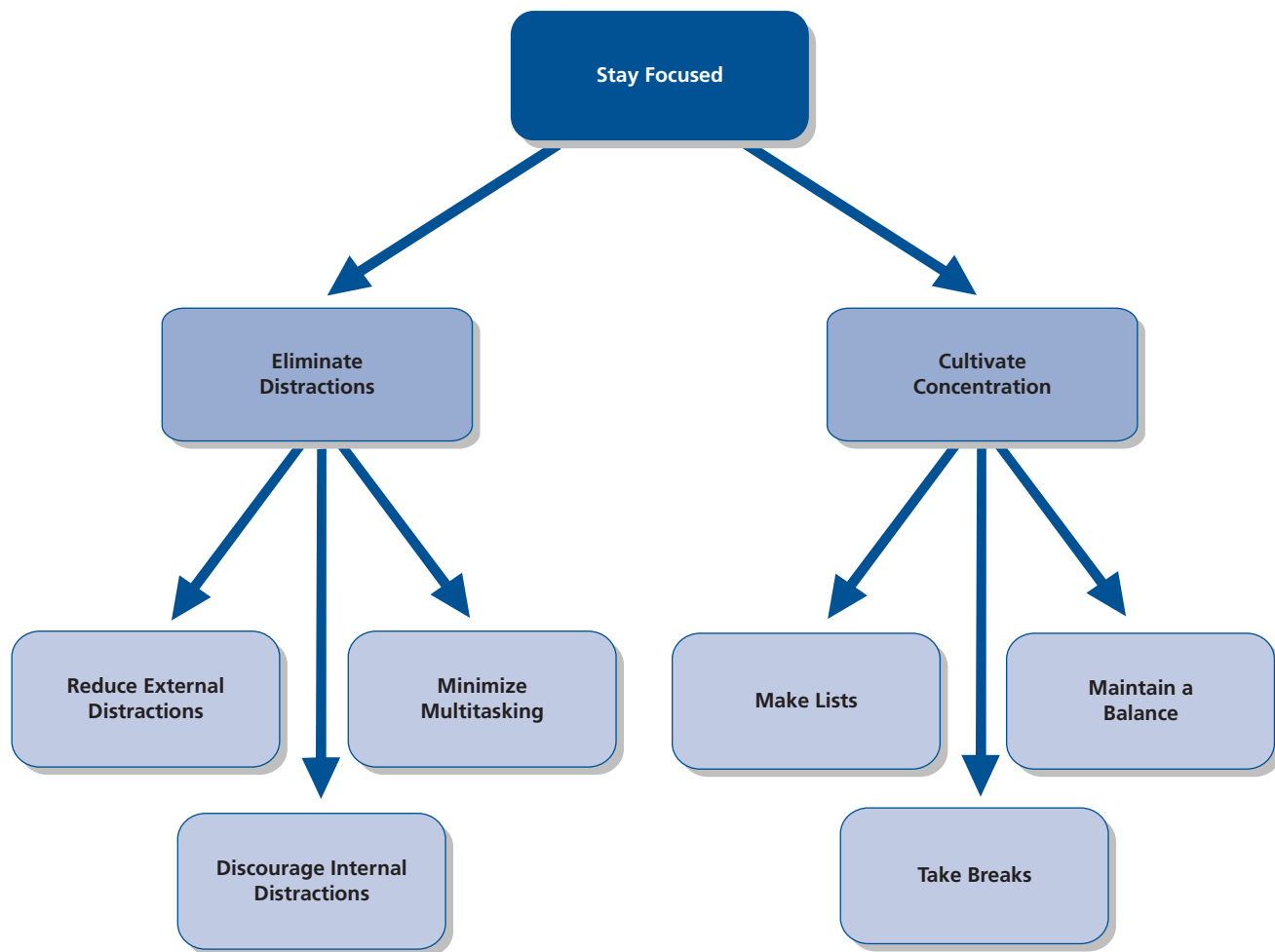
**Deadline** Facing a deadline can still be stressful. But once it meant risking your life.

**deadline** *děd' līn' n.* 1. A time limit, as for payment of a debt or completion of an assignment.  
2. A boundary line in a prison that prisoners can cross only at the risk of being shot.\*

These days we typically think of a deadline as a due date. In fact, that's been the word's predominant meaning since journalists adopted it in the early twentieth century. But where did the newspapers find the term in the first place? In prison. During the American Civil War, one of the most notorious prisons was Andersonville, a stockade in Sumter County, Georgia, where captured Union soldiers were detained under appalling conditions. The stockade itself was little more than a large plot of land, open to the elements but surrounded by a 15-foot wooden wall. Because Confederate guards feared their Union prisoners would try to vault the wall, they erected a second, smaller fence, roughly four feet tall and about three feet inside the stockade's main wall. This fence was known as the "dead-line." Any prisoner caught trying to cross it would be shot dead. Thanks to the country's vibrant newspaper business, which covered the Civil War extensively, Andersonville and its "dead-line" were soon infamous. Dead-line traveled from prison to printing press, where it was used to describe the border that each page of type had to fit within in order to be printed properly. If your type crossed the dead-line, those words wouldn't show up on the page. In time, the word went upstairs to the newsroom where editors turned "dead-line" into "deadline" and began to use it as a colorful term to describe a time limit that shouldn't be crossed by their reporters.\*\*

\* Adapted from "deadline." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/deadline> (accessed May 2, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from "deadline." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/deadline> (accessed May 2, 2009).; "deadline." *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=deadline> (accessed May 2, 2009).; "dead-line, n." *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; "dead-line, n." *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50058086> (accessed May 2, 2009).; "Andersonville Prison, Georgia, August 17, 1864 – Southwest view of stockade showing the dead-line" *Old Pictures*. 2006-2008. <http://www.old-picture.com/civil-war/Andersonville-Southwest-deadline-stockade.htm> (accessed May 2, 2009).



*Concentrate all your thoughts upon the work at hand. The sun's rays do not burn until brought to a focus.*

**Alexander Graham Bell**  
(1847–1922), Scottish-born  
Canadian scientist and inventor

## Stay Focused

Everyone—from astronauts to athletes, from merchants to musicians—appreciates the value of being able to focus on the task at hand. Yet few of us know how to attain and then sustain this kind of concentration. Although concentration does not appear at the snap of the fingers, there are ways you can improve the conditions for concentration. To help you stay focused, no matter what your task may be, you need to:

- **Reduce External Distractions**
- **Overcome Internal Distractions**
- **Minimize Multitasking**
- **Cultivate Concentration**

What are some examples of concentration in sports?

What are some examples of concentration in academics?  
How valuable is concentration?

What makes concentration elusive?

What does Figure 3.1 tell us about concentration?

**Figure 3.1**  
**A Goblet or Two Profiles?**

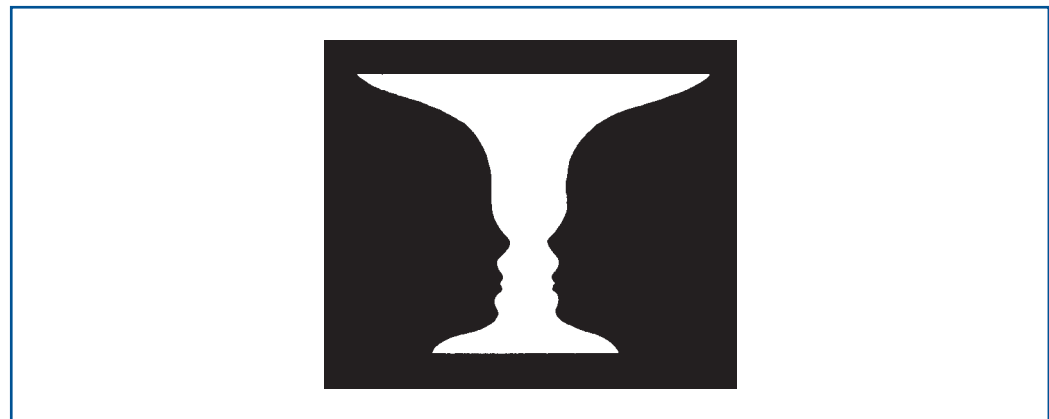
Concentration can sometimes be easier to describe than to define. Watch a good bowler as she takes her position and directs all her thoughts on knocking down the pins at the end of the alley. Watch a quarterback as he focuses on getting a pass to an open receiver, even while linebackers rush in on him from several directions. That's concentration! Or as world-famous tennis star Serena Williams once put it, "If you can keep playing tennis when somebody is shooting a gun down the street, that's concentration."

Of course, concentration isn't limited to sports. Have you ever become so absorbed in your textbook that you find yourself actually "talking" to the author? Have you ever been studying your notes so intently that when you finally look up, you realize that hours have passed since you last checked the clock? That's concentration!

Although concentration may be difficult to define, its value is crystal clear. American poet and essayist Ralph Waldo Emerson wrote that "Concentration is secret of strength," while management consultant Peter Drucker singled it out as "the key to economic results." Novelist Kurt Vonnegut called total concentration "the secret to success in any human endeavor," while legendary book editor Michael Korda described it as "the magic key that opens the door to accomplishment."

Concentration is focused thinking. Just as light waves can be focused into a single powerful beam—a laser—concentration can focus the power of your thoughts, enabling you to think with greater precision and penetrate difficult ideas. But powerful as it can be, concentration has an elusive quality. In fact, concentration comes only when you don't think about it. Ironically, if you were thinking deeply about a subject and suddenly realized that you were concentrating, at that moment you would have broken your concentration. Such prolonged, undivided attention can be difficult to achieve. After all, in normal circumstances there are dozens of things competing for your attention. Thoughts and ideas constantly bang, rattle, and knock on the door of your consciousness, trying to gain entry.

Figure 3.1 provides a vivid illustration of the natural tendency to divide attention. As you gaze at this picture, you'll probably discover that your visual focus is shifting



every few seconds so that you first see a goblet, then two profiles, and then the goblet again. Once you're aware of both images, it is difficult for your eyes to focus on one and ignore the other. Similarly, it is hard for your mind to focus on one idea at a time. People who can focus exclusively on the task before them have a much better chance of completing that task more quickly and accurately than those who divide their attention even when they don't mean to do so.

How can you concentrate if you can't do it directly?

So how do you stay focused? Because you can't strive for concentration directly, you must instead try to improve the conditions that promote concentration. That involves eliminating distractions and adopting strategies to cultivate concentration.

## Eliminate Distractions

What's the first step in eliminating distractions?

Trouble concentrating may come from external distractions, such as sights or sounds that compete for your attention; from internal distractions, such as worries or daydreams; and from multitasking, which can splinter your concentration into unproductive pieces. Once recognized, these obstacles to concentration can be overcome.

### Reduce External Distractions

FOCUSING

What is an external distraction?

Anything that stimulates your senses and in the process disrupts your concentration can be considered an external distraction. Study halls and living quarters are overflowing with such distractions, with everything from banging doors to baking bread. To work in a way that is compatible with concentration, you need the proper environment as well as the right equipment.

What elements make up a proper study environment?

#### Select the Proper Environment

Your study environment should be used exclusively for study. In addition, it should be quiet and well lighted. You can take your work to a place that is already designed for study, or you can create your own study environment.

What is the best environment for studying?

**Find a Workshop** You'd be hard-pressed to find an environment more suitable for high-quality concentration than a library. It offers a minimum of nonacademic distractions, a quiet atmosphere (usually as a matter of policy), and sufficient lighting. Get in the habit of studying at the library right away, on the first day of class. Even the walk to the library can be used productively as a review session or a refreshing break.

Why is it important to use your study area for studying only?

Whether you choose to work in the library or somewhere else, make sure your study area is reserved for studying. Psychologists emphasize that a conditioning effect is created between you and the desk: If you nap or daydream a lot while sitting at the desk, the desk can act as a cue for napping or daydreaming. By the same token, if you read or



What other steps can you take to ensure a proper study environment?

#### IT'S YOUR Q

What can you do to eliminate noise when you study?

How does music affect concentration?

What can you do to prevent e-mail and the Internet from becoming distractions?

work in bed, you make it difficult to work energetically and fall asleep easily. To avoid this negative conditioning, use your desk only for studying. When you feel the urge to nap or daydream, leave your desk to nap or daydream elsewhere.

Your study area should be your workshop, a place where you feel secure and comfortable. You can ensure that you have the proper environment for study and concentration if you minimize visual distractions, avoid or eliminate distracting noises, refrain from playing music, tune out text messages and the Internet, control the impulse to be disrupted by distractions, and provide the area with plenty of light.

**Minimize Visual Distractions** A sheet of notes or a page from a textbook can seem dull compared with a glimpse of a softball game being played on a nearby diamond or a view of gently falling snow. To improve your chances of concentration, avoid competition for your eyes' attention. Study by a window so you can take advantage of the natural light, but keep your head turned away from the potentially distracting view. Of course, not all visual distractions lie on the other side of the windowpane. If your study area contains photographs you're liable to look at, gadgets you're likely to fiddle with, or books you'll be tempted to pick up and read, remove them until you have completed your work.

**Eliminate Noise** If you need a quiet spot for efficient study, do your utmost to find one. Noise can be one of the most serious obstacles to effective study. Nothing is more wasteful than going over the same paragraph again and again because the noise makes it impossible to absorb what you are reading. If the library is the right place for you, make an effort to study there whenever you can. If you study at home, achieving quiet can sometimes be as simple as closing a door or inserting earplugs.

**Turn Down the Loud Music** When studying, loud music, especially vocal music, can break your concentration. To keep your concentration from bouncing between the music and your books, you expend energy that could be put to better use. However, some students can tolerate music better than others. If you find music nonintrusive, then instrumental music—played softly—could potentially form a pleasing background, and such a background can actually muffle some external, intermittent noises.

**Tune Out Messaging and the Internet** Avoid the temptation to surf the Web or constantly check messages by keeping your screen out of your line of sight and your phone out of range. If you are working on your computer, log out of e-mail and limit your Web surfing to the work at hand. If you're expecting important e-mail, set a timer for an hour or so, and work without interruption before checking. When the timer goes off, check for mail, then start the timer again. Do the same for cell phone text messages. Or simply let them wait until after you're done.

What does the spider technique involve?

**Try the Spider Technique** A vibrating tuning fork held close to a spider's web sets up vibrations in the web. After the spider makes a few hurried investigations and finds no fly in the web, it learns to ignore the vibrations. The next time you are studying in the library and the door opens, don't look up. Controlling your impulse to look up will disturb your concentration the first few times. But very soon, like the spider, you'll learn to ignore these external disturbances.

What is the most important piece of concentration equipment?

### Use the Right Equipment

Because proper lighting is an important component of your study environment, the right light should head your list of equipment to promote concentration and reduce external distractions.

What is the best kind of light for studying?

**Find the Right Light** Whether it comes from incandescent light bulbs, fluorescent tubes, or compact fluorescent bulbs, the best light for studying is bright, even, and steady (remember B, E, and ST).

*Bright.* The emission of light is measured in lumens. For studying, you need at least 2,500 lumens. Two incandescent 100-watt bulbs (1,750 lumens each) will meet that requirement. So will a double-tube fluorescent lamp or two compact fluorescent bulbs of approximately 25 to 30 watts each. Fluorescents cost more than standard bulbs, but they can be just as bright and can last up to 100 times longer!

*Even.* Shadows in your work area or "hot spots" caused by glare will tire your eyes and make concentration difficult. Get rid of glare by shielding your lamp with a shade and by using a light-colored, nonglossy blotter on your desk. Eliminate shadows by using two lamps, fluorescent light, or diffuse light.

*Steady.* A constant flicker will undermine concentration. If you use fluorescent light, compact fluorescent bulbs are less likely to strobe than traditional fluorescents. If you are using incandescent light, make sure the bulb is screwed in properly.

What are the drawbacks of studying under bad light?

Good lighting makes for good studying. By contrast, poor lighting causes eyestrain, general tension, headaches, and sleepiness—irritations that interfere with concentration. If you study under good light but your eyes still bother you, have them examined by an ophthalmologist or optometrist. Clear and comfortable vision is essential to good studying.

What is the pencil technique?

**Use a Pencil to Catalyze Concentration** A technique that does not fail is the simple, humble *pencil technique*. The technique is this: *Whenever you are working to learn, study with a pencil in hand.* And use it! For example, if you are reading a textbook chapter, stop after several paragraphs and very briefly, in your own words, write down the key points made by the author. If, after reading several paragraphs, you find that no words come to you,

you have no recourse but to go back and read the passage again. This time, read with determination and concentration to make sure you learn the key points. The secret: Activity promotes and almost ensures concentration. The pencil provides the activity!

What is the best kind of chair for promoting concentration?

**Find the Right Kind of Chair** More ink and more words have been wasted extolling the virtues of a straight-backed, hard-seated hickory chair than on any other single piece of study equipment. Forget it: Use a comfortable, well-cushioned chair. Staying awake or falling asleep does not depend on your chair; rather, it depends primarily on your method of study, your attitude and self-discipline, the light, the room temperature, and, of course, on how much sleep you've been getting. A hard, often uncomfortable straight-backed chair can't take the place of these basic requirements.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

**Use a Bookstand** An extremely practical piece of equipment is a bookstand—not a bookshelf or bookends, an actual stand placed on your desk that holds the book in a tilted position and holds the pages down so that they do not flip over. Older ones are made out of metal. Newer ones come in plastic. A bookstand can work for you in many ways. First, and very important, it can give you a feeling of readiness to study—a feeling of being a scholar in the traditional sense. This alone is worth many times the price of the stand. Second, the stand provides physical freedom. It eliminates the strain of continually holding the book open, pressing down on two sides to keep the pages from flipping over, tilting the book to avoid glare, and trying to find something heavy enough to hold the book open so you can free your hands to make notes. It permits you to sit back with arms folded, to contemplate and reflect on the meaning of what you are reading.

What other equipment can be helpful for concentration?

**Keep Other Equipment Nearby** Remember the mnemonic for intelligently organizing your workspace: CIA (Current, Imminent, and Archived; see Chapter 2). Make sure your current materials include any basic equipment that will help you to study without interruption. Depending on the classes you are taking and your personal preferences, that may mean a dictionary, a calculator, a clock, a calendar, paper, notebooks, paper clips, tape, rubber bands, pencils, pens, erasers, and index cards. If you make it a habit to keep your desk well stocked, you won't derail your concentration with unplanned emergency trips to obtain necessities.

## Discourage Internal Distractions

FOCUSING

SELF-DIRECTION

What are internal distractions?

Internal distractions are distractions that *you* create: daydreams, personal problems, anxiety, indecision, forgetfulness, and unrealistic goals. These distractions are as disruptive as the sights, sounds, and smells that make up the external variety, even though in this case the only one aware of them is you. Because internal distractions come from within, you have the power to eliminate or at least control them.

What is a concentration scoresheet?

### Use a Concentration Scoresheet

Keep a sheet of paper handy. Whenever you catch your mind wandering, keep score by putting a check mark on the sheet. The mere act of doing this reminds you to get back to work. Students report that when they first tried this system, they accumulated as many as twenty check marks per textbook page, but after one or two weeks, they were down to one or two check marks per page.

How does keeping score help you concentrate?

The concentration scoresheet encourages self-observation. Making note of your breaks in concentration—when they happen, how often they occur, and what triggers them—will help you realize just how intrusive the lapses are and will enable you to gradually eliminate them.

What is the purpose of a worry pad?

### Put Stray Thoughts on a Worry Pad

Although pleasant plans and diverting daydreams can be major sources of internal distraction, nagging worries and obligations can also take your mind off your work. The concentration scoresheet will alert you to these breaks in your attention, but it won't address the problems that prompted the distractions. To prevent the same worries from interfering with your concentration again and again, you must address them. A worry pad provides an excellent short-term solution to the problem.

How do you use a worry pad?

When an intrusive thought disrupts your concentration, write it down on your worry pad with the idea that you will attend to it just as soon as you get the chance. Then with your conscience clear and your bothersome thought recorded on paper, you can get back to the business of concentration. After you have finished studying, read over your list and give these concerns your full attention. If you cannot alleviate them yourself, get the help of friends or counselors.

What is the Stop! technique?

### Use the Stop! Technique

Of course, not all distractions are worth writing down. Sometimes thoughts will flit into your mind that seem to have no other purpose than to throw you off course. The Stop! technique, suggested by authors Judith Greenbaum and Geraldine Markel in their book *Finding Your Focus*,<sup>1</sup> is a red light for distractions. It's designed to arrest any dark thoughts or daydreams before they have a chance to gain momentum.

How do you use the Stop! technique?

The Stop! technique is a simple and powerful tool that relies on what psychologists call self-talk. Whenever you find that you're heading in the wrong direction because of distractions or you feel you've been spinning your wheels, just tell yourself "Stop!" That's right. Say the word. Do it out loud and with authority if you can. Letting yourself know you're aware that your focus has been drifting and that you don't intend to let it go any further is often enough to set you right back on the road to concentration. Try it.

<sup>1</sup>Judith Greenbaum and Geraldine Markel, *Finding Your Focus* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006), pp. 36–37.

## Minimize Multitasking

FOCUSING

SELF-DIRECTION

### IT'S YOUR Q

As we've seen, distractions are unwanted intrusions that vie for your attention and make concentration difficult if not impossible. Now imagine if you deliberately subjected yourself to several distractions at once. Sounds crazy, eh? That may be so, and yet many of us do it all the time. We call it multitasking. Although we might think of each concern as a task, not a distraction, when you're focusing on one task, all the others are distractions. For example, if you're doing research for a term paper, answering e-mail, listening to the radio, and finishing your lunch all at once or in rapid succession, you're almost certainly multitasking. *Multitasking* means working on several tasks simultaneously or rapidly shifting back and forth between them. The term comes from computer operating systems, which are able to keep several applications running at the same time. The difference, of course, is that people are not machines. Sometimes mistakenly held up as a model of efficiency, multitasking is not only less productive than working on one task at a time, it's also a troubling source of stress.<sup>2</sup> Luckily, there are a handful of simple steps you can take to avoid it.

Why does multitasking make you less productive?

What are the costs of multitasking?

### Multitasking Makes You Less Productive

Dividing your brainpower between several tasks at once has a predictable effect. As a study published in the *Journal of Experimental Psychology* concludes, people who multitask are less efficient than people who don't. According to the study's coauthor, Dr. David Meyer, "There's scientific evidence that multitasking is extremely hard for somebody to do, and sometimes impossible."<sup>3</sup>

Of course, in spite of the evidence, thousands of people continue to multitask and would appear to be doing so successfully. "It doesn't mean you can't do several things at the same time," says Dr. Marcel Just, codirector of Carnegie-Mellon University's Center for Cognitive Brain Imaging. "But we're kidding ourselves if we think we can do so without cost."<sup>4</sup> According to studies by Dr. Just, Dr. Meyer, and others, those costs include forgetfulness and difficulties in concentrating.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>2</sup>Christina Tibbits, "Just Throw 'Multitasking' Out Your Window of Work," *Austin Business Journal* (online), (June 10, 2002), available at <http://austin.bizjournals.com/austin/stories/2002/06/10/smallb3.html>.

<sup>3</sup>Sue Shellenbarger, "Juggling Too Many Tasks Could Make You Stupid," *Wall Street Journal Online* (February 28, 2003), available at <http://208.144.115.170/columnists/workfamily/20030228-workfamily.html>.

<sup>4</sup>Ibid.

<sup>5</sup>Melissa Healy, "We're All Multi-tasking, But What's the Cost?," *Los Angeles Times* (July 19, 2004), available at <http://articles.latimes.com/2004/jul/19/health/he-multitasking19>.

How does multitasking result in forgetfulness?

*Forgetfulness.* Chronic multitaskers often feel that their memories are failing them when in fact the converse is true: They are failing their memories. A 2006 UCLA study using functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) confirmed this. It showed that attempting to learn while multitasking actually employs a different part of the brain called the striatum instead of the hippocampus, which is normally important for retaining facts and concepts. As a result, although the subjects of the study were able to sort index cards while multitasking, their ability to recall information from those cards was markedly reduced.<sup>6</sup>

What is it about multitasking that makes concentration difficult?

*Difficulty in concentration.* With multitasking, regardless of what you're working on, there's a good chance that at least part of your mind will be elsewhere. Nothing is as concentrated as it was initially when it's been diluted, and that includes the power of your thinking. Or, as Dr. Meyer explains, "No matter how hard you try, you will never be as good multitasking as you are concentrating on one [task]."<sup>7</sup>

### Multitasking Increases Stress

Why does multitasking increase stress?

Not surprisingly, the drain on productivity results in an increase in the potential for stress.<sup>8</sup> You are compelled to struggle against the inevitable forgetting that occurs and fight to maintain your concentration in a climate of relentless distractions. Moreover, multitasking forms an unhealthy alliance with two major culprits in stress—procrastination and loss of control—and can sometimes start you on a vicious cycle of insomnia as well. And some multitaskers have been exhibiting symptoms that are similar to those of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder.

What is the connection between multitasking and procrastination?

*Procrastination.* Another notorious source of self-imposed stress—procrastination—often works hand in hand with multitasking. (For more on procrastination and stress, see Chapter 4.) After all, one technique that procrastinators frequently use to put off assignments is to shift back and forth between several tasks instead of focusing on a single one. Avoid multitasking and you may succeed in discouraging procrastination in the same stroke.

Why does multitasking sometimes lead to a loss of control?

*Loss of control.* As we'll learn in Chapter 4, your sense of control can have a dramatic effect on your level of stress. Students, even overworked students, feel less stress when they are able to maintain a sense of control over what they are doing.

<sup>6</sup>Stewart Wolpert, "Don't Talk to a Friend While Reading This; Multi-Tasking Adversely Affects the Brain's Learning Systems, UCLA Scientists Report," available at <http://newsroom.ucla.edu/portal/ucla/Don-t-Talk-to-a-Friend-While-Reading-7212.aspx>.

<sup>7</sup>Amanda S. Fox, "Tallying the Cost of Doing Too Much," *CIO Magazine* (March 15, 2000).

<sup>8</sup>Larry Rosen and Michelle Weil, "Multitasking Madness," *Context* (Fall 1998), available at <http://www.contextmag.com/archives/199809/InnerGameOfWork.asp>.



Multitasking robs you of that control. All your activities and obligations are moving targets, and thus maintaining equilibrium becomes difficult for most and impossible for some.

### IT'S YOUR Q

How does multitasking lead to attention-deficit trait (ADT)?

What are the symptoms of ADT?

How does ADT differ from attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)?

*Insomnia.* People who multitask—or attempt to—are often compelled to shift into a kind of mental overdrive that doesn't necessarily downshift when the day's work is done.<sup>9</sup> A troubling side effect of multitasking, according to Drs. Larry Rosen and Michelle Weil, coauthors of the book *Technostress*, "is an inability to sustain a peaceful night's sleep or to enjoy what used to be calming, recreational times."<sup>10</sup> As we'll see in Chapter 4, sleep loss not only results from stress, but can in turn be the source of *more* stress.

### Multitasking Can Lead to Attention-Deficit Trait

Multitasking can short-circuit the sophisticated, reasonable area of your brain and hand control over to the ancient "fight or flight" region, an area fueled primarily by fear. As Dr. Edward Hallowell, an expert on attention-deficit trait (ADT) explains, "Fear shifts us into survival mode and thus prevents fluid learning and nuanced understanding."<sup>11</sup> The attempt to overload what are known as the brain's executive functions with too many tasks at once sends a distress signal to the primitive part of the brain, which abruptly takes over.<sup>12</sup> One minute you're a student, the next you're a cave man or cave woman, fleeing an unwelcome lion—all without even leaving your desk!

With ADT, your patience grows short, your thinking becomes black and white, your intelligence falters, and you are unable to effectively focus on the tasks at hand.<sup>13</sup> In other words, for a student it spells disaster. According to Dr. Hallowell, "People with ADT have difficulty staying organized, setting priorities, and managing time."<sup>14</sup>

Students with ADT sometimes mistake their symptoms as being those of the attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD). Although people with ADT and those with ADHD share many of the same symptoms, there is a crucial difference. ADHD is a neurological disorder with a genetic component, whereas ADT springs entirely from your surroundings.<sup>15</sup> If you have ADHD, you will probably always have ADHD. But with ADT, a change of scene and strategy can make the symptoms disappear. As Dr. Hallowell explains, "ADT can be controlled only by creatively engineering one's environment and one's emotional and physical health."<sup>16</sup> One way to do this is by

<sup>9</sup>Ibid.

<sup>10</sup>Ibid.

<sup>11</sup>Edward M. Hallowell, "Overloaded Circuits: Why Smart People Underperform," *Harvard Business Review* (January 2005): p. 58.

<sup>12</sup>Ibid.

<sup>13</sup>Ibid.

<sup>14</sup>Ibid, p. 56.

<sup>15</sup>Ibid.

<sup>16</sup>Ibid, p. 59.

adopting the strategies for managing stress outlined in Chapter 4, which include eating well, exercising, and getting enough sleep. The other is to minimize multitasking.

### Multitasking Can Be Minimized

What can you do to minimize multitasking?

Obviously, some multitasking is arguably beyond your control. If you're in the middle of an assignment and the phone rings or someone comes to your door, it's natural to want to answer. But most factors that lead to multitasking are well within the realm of your control. You can reduce the risk that multitasking will break your concentration by slowing down and planning your day carefully, by making a point to finish one task before beginning another, and by keeping a pad handy to deal with the distractions that may lead to multitasking in the first place.

How does slowing down help if you're feeling overloaded?

Given that many people multitask because they feel pressed for time, it might seem strange to suggest that slowing down can actually help improve both your attention and your productivity. But it can. If you move too quickly, you're apt to grow flustered and confused. If your executive functions get overloaded and succumb to your stone-age side, you're unlikely to get any quality studying done. On the other hand, if you take the time to figure out what's what, to listen carefully, ask questions, and think deeply, your tension should diminish and your attention should increase. You may be moving more deliberately, but you'll also be working more productively.

Why does a plan discourage multitasking?

*Plan your day.* Use the time-based scheduling outlined in Chapter 2 to inoculate yourself against multitasking. For many people multitasking provides a way of getting to work without ever having to decide which task is the most urgent, or the most interesting, or the most important. If each block of time has a specific task associated with it, you're less likely to bounce back and forth between several tasks.<sup>17</sup>

What can you do to make sure you work to completion?

*Work to completion.* Don't start a new task until you've finished the old one.<sup>18</sup> This may be difficult with long-term tasks. But with short-term tasks, it should be achievable. If you do have a task that is stretched out over a longer period of time, try to create sub-tasks that you can tackle and complete before moving on.

What does a nearby pad do to prevent multitasking?

*Keep a pad handy.* The worry pad (page 63) is an excellent antidote to multitasking. It is designed to serve as a temporary holding area for pending ideas and concerns and can also be used to arrest early impulses to multitask. It's common to "task-shift" when there's a concern that "if I don't take care of it now, I never will." That's an understandable worry with a simple solution. Write it down, and get back to the task at hand. When you've finished the first job, you'll have the pad to remind you of what to do next.

<sup>17</sup>Rosen and Weil, "Multitasking Madness."

<sup>18</sup>Ibid.



## Cultivate Concentration

What sorts of strategies will encourage concentration?

Although the best way to encourage concentration is usually to discourage distractions and keep multitasking to a minimum, you can also take positive actions to improve your concentration. Get into the habit of making lists, taking regular breaks, and maintaining a balance between the challenge of a particular assignment and your skill level.

### Make Lists

PLANNING

What is the value of lists?

As we have seen, keeping random thoughts and information in your head instead of writing them down is a primary impediment to concentration. Lists allow you to free up your mind without losing important information. Use lists to remind yourself of day-to-day obligations and to catalog all the study equipment you're likely to need.

How can you prevent goals and appointments from distracting you? Are hand-held computers good tools for keeping lists?

To avoid worrying about the possibility of missing personal appointments and forgetting those things you've set out to do, write them down on your daily schedule (see Figure 2.4, page 36). This should enable you to shift smoothly from one activity to the next without breaking your concentration.

Some students may prefer to keep their lists on hand-held personal digital assistants (PDAs) that can be easily stowed in a pocket or purse. If you have a PDA and are comfortable using it, fine. But if you don't have a PDA, don't feel that you are somehow at a disadvantage. In general, it's quicker and more convenient to jot your list of items down on an ordinary paper pad. PDAs excel when you've got information you want to keep around for an extended period of time, but they aren't usually as time-efficient for making short-term lists. The tiny typewriter keypads or the handwriting recognition software that some PDAs employ may be ingenious, but they aren't flawless, and they do take some practice to perfect. It's important not to let keeping your list become its own distraction. This can be a danger with a handwritten list, but it's an even greater risk with a PDA.

### Take Breaks

FOCUSING

How important is it to take breaks?

Breaks can sometimes be as vital as the work itself. Although some students with short attention spans may be tempted to take a rest after only a brief time of working, others have the exact opposite problem. As tempting as it may be to put your nose to the grindstone and just keep working until all of your assignments are completed, this sort of strategy can often be a recipe for distraction and burnout.

What happens if you don't take breaks?

If you allow physical energy to build up unabated, your mind will race. If you keep repressing concerns that compete for your attention, those concerns will eventually triumph and scuttle your concentration. And if you persist in denying such a basic instinct as hunger, ultimately all you'll be able to think of is food.

What are the benefits of taking a break?

If, however, you take a few minutes to defuse these distractions, stand up and stretch, address a problem you've been avoiding, or grab a healthy snack to tide you over, you can return to your work ready to concentrate.

How often should you take breaks?

Breaks are essential. But like almost anything beneficial, they're susceptible to abuse. If you're making progress, it's important not to take an open-ended break that interrupts your momentum. And if you're not making progress, don't let a break serve as an excuse for evasion. Be as precise about allocating your breaks as you are about scheduling your work time. In general, keep a ratio of no less than five to one between work time and break time. In other words, work for fifty minutes and then take a ten-minute break. Or work for twenty-five minutes and take a break of five minutes.

## Maintain a Balance

SELF-DIRECTION

REFRAMING

How do you obtain the most rewarding kind of concentration?

Psychologist Mihaly Csikszentmihalyi believes that the most intense and rewarding kind of concentration (which he calls "flow") comes about when you develop a balance between the challenge of the work you are doing and the level of skills you possess.<sup>19</sup> If the challenge of an assignment overwhelms your skill level, anxiety—no concentration—is likely to result. Conversely, if your skills are at a high level but the assignment isn't challenging, you're apt to become bored and easily distracted. Finally, if both your skill level and the challenge of an assignment are low, you'll probably grow apathetic and have no desire to concentrate (see Table 3.1).

How can you cultivate the balance of challenge and skills that lead to "flow"?

When your challenge and skill levels seem out of balance, there are several solutions to help get them in sync:

- *If your skill level is low*, you may need academic assistance. Your college should have a tutoring service. If not, see if you can get help from a classmate or even the instructor. If you recognize that you're having a problem, it's better to arrange for a tutor now instead of letting the problem fester. Occasionally, a perceived low skill level is just a matter of overly high expectations. Don't try to be an overnight success. Work methodically and patiently and there's a good chance that things will click. If after a time you still find you're floundering, then you may need a tutor's help.

<sup>19</sup>Richard Flaste, "The Power of Concentration," *The New York Times Magazine* (October 8, 1989), p. 26.

**Table 3.1**  
**Achieving Concentration by Balancing Challenge and Skills**

Status	Symptom	Solution
Challenge and skill level low	Apathy	Group study; Tutoring
Skill level exceeds challenge	Boredom	Group study; Alternate text
Challenge exceeds skill level	Anxiety	Tutoring; Rethink goals
Challenge and skill level balanced	Concentration	No solution necessary: <i>Optimal condition for “flow”</i>

- *If your challenge level is low, you probably need some outside stimulus to boost your interest either in a class or for the text. Studying in groups can be a great way to liven up a course that doesn't seem to challenge or excite you. The enthusiasm of other students can often prove infectious. An alternate solution is an alternate text. It may be that the voice, the style, or the organization of the required text doesn't interest you. Reading another text on the same topic or using related workbooks or programmed materials that encourage active participation may boost your interest and put you in a better frame of mind for giving your course text another try. (For more on group study and alternate texts, see Chapter 8.)*

## FINAL WORDS

---

How is learning to concentrate like gardening?

Ultimately, learning to concentrate is like learning to be a good gardener. Anyone who has had experience raising flowers, fruits, or vegetables knows that you can't actually make them grow. The plant takes care of that, not you. All you can do is improve the conditions for growth. That requires skill, planning, and a little bit of luck. It's the same with concentration.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words or phrases listed below each sentence.

- Concentration is focused \_\_\_\_\_.  
**light**                      **thinking**                      **intensity**
- The best light for studying is bright, even, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
**strong**                      **stylish**                      **steady**
- It's important not to let your efforts at keeping a list become their own \_\_\_\_\_.  
**distraction**                      **advantage**                      **list**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| _____ 1. "Flow"       | a. Self-talk technique that discourages distractions        |
| _____ 2. Library      | b. Tires the eyes and makes concentration difficult         |
| _____ 3. Stop!        | c. Provides physical freedom and promotes readiness         |
| _____ 4. Glare        | d. Involves working on several things at once               |
| _____ 5. Bookstand    | e. Temporary measure for dealing with internal distractions |
| _____ 6. Multitasking | f. Helps you keep track of breaks in your concentration     |
| _____ 7. Worry pad    | g. Describes an especially rewarding kind of concentration  |
| _____ 8. Check mark   | h. Best environment for high-quality concentration          |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

- T F Concentration only occurs when you're not thinking about it.
- T F Anything that stimulates the senses is a potential external distraction.
- T F E-mail and the Internet both have a positive influence on concentration.
- T F Whether you stay awake or fall asleep depends on the type of chair you use.
- T F Multitasking generally makes you more productive.

**MULTIPLE CHOICE**

*Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.*

1. Trouble concentrating is due primarily to
  - a. internal and external distractions.
  - b. boredom.
  - c. anxiety.
  - d. poor eyesight.
2. The face-goblet image in Figure 3.1 illustrates our natural tendency to
  - a. forget faces.
  - b. divide attention.
  - c. recognize people.
  - d. focus thoughts.
3. Although concentration is powerful, it is often
  - a. unnecessary.
  - b. elusive.
  - c. underestimated.
  - d. time consuming.
4. Multitasking can interfere with
  - a. sound sleep.
  - b. concentration.
  - c. consolidation.
  - d. all of the above.
5. When the challenge is high but your skill level is low, you will probably experience
  - a. concentration.
  - b. boredom.
  - c. anxiety.
  - d. apathy.

**REFLECTION**

*Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.*

1. We don't all react in the same way to distractions. Which kinds of external distractions are most likely to break your concentration? What are some strategies you hope to use in the future to prevent them from causing you to lose your focus?

- Of all the techniques mentioned in this chapter for encouraging concentration, which seems as though it will be most useful for you personally. Why?
- Think of one of your more difficult classes, explain its current challenge/skill level relationship, and suggest actions you might take to bring things into better balance.

**IT'S YOUR Q**

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

**VOCABULARY IN ACTION**

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

**SAY WHAT?**

*From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.*

Any reviewer who expresses rage and *loathing* for a novel is *preposterous*. He or she is like a person who has put on full armor and attacked a hot fudge sundae.

—Kurt Vonnegut (1922–2007), American writer

- |                        |            |          |            |
|------------------------|------------|----------|------------|
| 1. <i>loathing</i>     | resentment | contempt | hatred     |
| 2. <i>preposterous</i> | absurd     | stupid   | misleading |

Let's not be so *elitist* that we can't honor good, hard, dignified, *ennobling* work.

—Van Jones (1968–), American civil rights leader and environmentalist

- |                     |               |           |               |
|---------------------|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| 3. <i>elitist</i>   | condescending | wealthy   | narrow-minded |
| 4. <i>ennobling</i> | royal         | honorable | manual        |

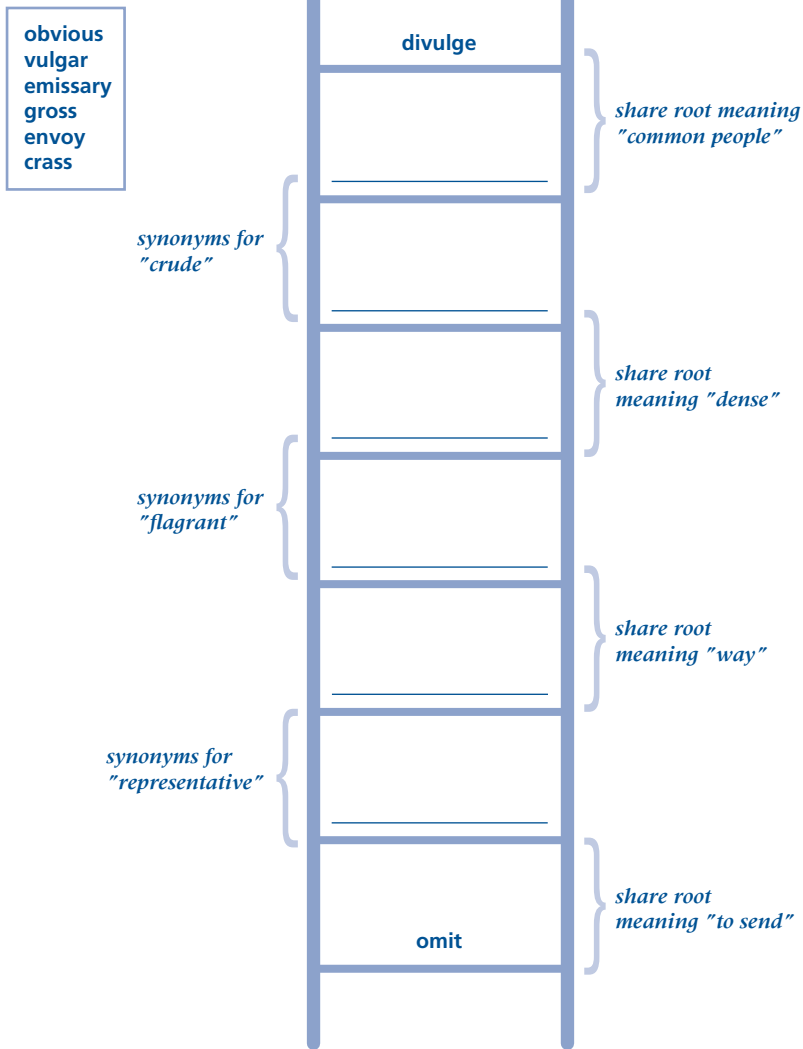
There is always an easy solution to every human problem—neat, *plausible* and wrong.

—H. L. Mencken (1880–1956), American editor and critic

- |                     |            |       |              |
|---------------------|------------|-------|--------------|
| 5. <i>plausible</i> | reasonable | smart | advantageous |
|---------------------|------------|-------|--------------|

## VOCAB-U-LADDER

Use your knowledge of word synonyms, prefixes, and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

### **Focus** The warm fire behind our word for concentration

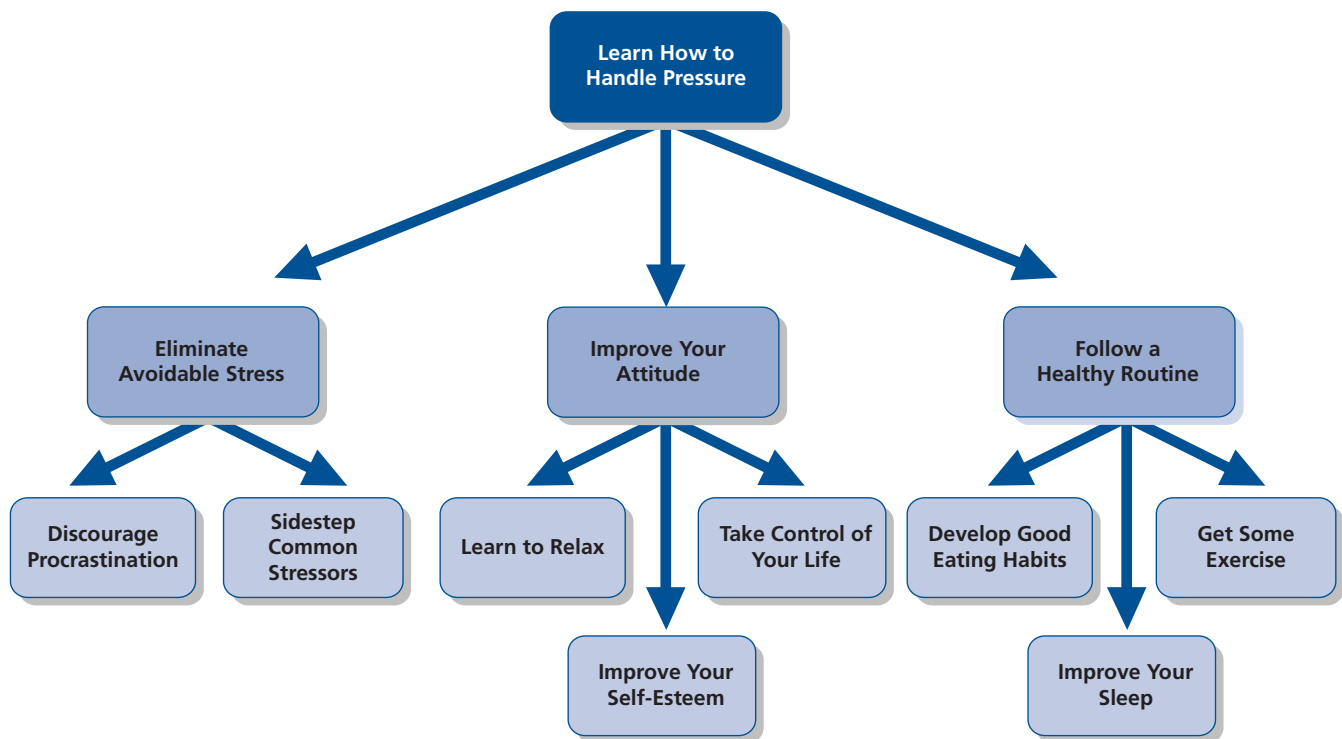
**focus** fō- kəs *n.* 1. A point in which the rays of light meet, after being reflected or refracted, and at which the image is formed. 2. A point so related to a conic section and certain straight line called the directrix that the ratio of the distance between any point of the curve and the focus to the distance of the same point from the directrix is constant. 3. A central point; a point of concentration.\*

Four hundred years ago, “maintaining your focus” meant throwing another log on the fire. It’s puzzling even for some lexicographers to realize that our modern word *focus* came from a Latin word for hearth or fireplace. Even now, the transition is a bit of a mystery, although most experts acknowledge that it was German astronomer Johannes Kepler (1571–1630) who started the word *focus* on its modern path. Because he devoted his life—or you might say, his focus—to understanding the stars and the planets, Kepler was also interested in lenses and light, publishing a book called *The Optical Part of Astronomy* in 1604. It was in this book—now recognized as ushering in the modern study of optics—that Kepler first used the word *focus* to describe the point on a lens where light waves converge. Why did he give it that name? No one knows for certain, but as anyone who’s ever used the sun and a magnifying glass to burn a dry leaf knows, if you can bring together the strength of the sun’s rays at a single point, you can start a fire. According to the *Oxford English Dictionary*, it took almost another two hundred years for this term that dealt with light and waves to finally acquire its figurative meaning of “the center of activity, or area of greatest energy.” And that’s what we mean today when we use focus as a synonym for concentration.\*\*

\* Adapted from “focus.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/focus> (accessed May 1, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from “focus.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/focus> (accessed May 1, 2009).; “focus.” *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=focus> (accessed May 1, 2009).; “focus, *n.*” *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; “focus, *n.*” *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50087189> (accessed May 1, 2009).





# Learn How to Handle Pressure

*The greatest weapon against stress is our ability to choose one thought over another.*

**William James** (1842–1910),  
American psychologist and  
philosopher

Stress, writes Dr. Hans Selye, a pioneer in its study, is “the spice of life or the kiss of death—depending on how we cope with it.”<sup>1</sup> Unfortunately, most of us cope with it poorly. We worry too much, criticize too much, get angry too often, and become too tense. But if you can deflect the stress that comes your way, if you can learn how to handle the pressure that seems to be an inescapable part of academic life, you can thrive both as a student and as a human being. This chapter helps by telling you how to:

- **Eliminate Avoidable Stress**
- **Improve Your Attitude**
- **Follow a Healthy Routine**

<sup>1</sup>Hans Selye, “How to Master Stress,” *Parents* 52 (November 1977): p. 25.

When can stress be a good thing?

Mere mention of the word *stress* is enough to make most people anxious. It brings to mind images of frayed nerves, shortened tempers, and rising blood pressure. But being under stress isn't always a bad thing. In fact, stress can prompt us to respond effectively to a tough situation, to rise to the occasion when a paper comes due or a test is handed out. According to Marilyn Gist, a professor at the School of Business Administration of the University of Washington, "A certain amount of stress is healthy and beneficial; it stimulates some to perform, makes them excited and enthusiastic."<sup>2</sup>

What is the medical definition of stress?

"Stress," according to Dr. Hans Selye, "is the nonspecific response of the body to any demand made upon it."<sup>3</sup> In other words, it is the body's attempt to adjust to a demand, regardless of what the demand may be. You undergo stress when you run or walk at a brisk pace. Your body responds to the demand for more oxygen by increasing your breathing and causing your heart to beat faster. Yet most people view exercise not as a source of stress, but as a means of stress relief. Likewise, watching a quiz show or doing a crossword puzzle can be considered stressful. In each case, the brain responds with increased mental activity. Yet most people undertake these activities specifically for relaxation.

What makes stress a problem?

The problem is that we don't always respond to the sources of stress (known as *stressors*) in a positive fashion. If instead of running for exercise, you're racing to catch a bus, or instead of solving a crossword puzzle, you're struggling with a math test that you didn't study for, your reaction is apt to be quite different. Rather than experiencing the exhilaration of exercising or the stimulation of solving a puzzle, you may wind up feeling exhausted or intimidated.

How can we better manage stress?

That's the two-sided potential of stress. Instead of compelling us to rise to the occasion, stress can sometimes plunge us into a sea of anxiety, worry, hostility, or despair. The way we respond to stress, whether we use it as a boon or a burden, depends on two major factors: our overall approach to life, and the number of stressors we face at any one time. To better manage the stress in your life, it helps to eliminate the avoidable sources of stress, improve your overall attitude, and maintain a healthy routine.

## Eliminate Avoidable Stress

What can you do to eliminate avoidable stress?

Not all stress is unavoidable, of course. But a lot of it is. You can work to eliminate needless stress by discouraging procrastination and by sidestepping some of the other common sources of stress.

<sup>2</sup>Quoted in Pam Miller Withers, "Good Stress/Bad Stress: How to Use One, Lose the Other," *Working Woman* (September 1989): p. 124.

<sup>3</sup>Hans Selye, *Stress Without Distress* (New York: J. B. Lippincott, 1974), p. 27.

Image removed due to copyright restrictions

## Discourage Procrastination

SELF-DIRECTION

PLANNING

How can you avoid procrastination?

“Nothing [is] so fatiguing as the eternal hanging on of an uncompleted task.”<sup>4</sup> These words of William James, distinguished American psychologist, strike at the hearts of us all. Everyone has had bouts with procrastination. The best way to avoid future ones is to learn why people procrastinate and what you can do to prevent procrastination.

What are the common sources of procrastination?

### Learn Why You Procrastinate

There’s no single explanation for why people procrastinate. Nevertheless, many of the stressors that are discussed in this chapter can trigger procrastination. Here’s a list of common sources:

How does fear of failure prompt procrastination?

*Fear of failure.* Many students hesitate to begin a task because they’re afraid they won’t be able to complete it successfully. Have some faith in yourself. Think back to past successes, and realize that if you’ve achieved success before, you can achieve it again. If you’ve failed in similar situations in the past, think of times when you’ve succeeded in other areas and apply the confidence you gained then to face the present challenge.

Why would fear of success make you put things off?

*Fear of success.* Some students put tasks off because they are afraid of succeeding. A person might be afraid of success for at least two reasons. First, successful people are a minority. There is a kind of loneliness in success. Some students unconsciously procrastinate because they don’t want to be resented by people who aren’t as successful. Second, success brings responsibility and choices. When a person succeeds, doors suddenly open. That should be good news, but some students view these opportunities as threats and burdens instead of challenges and choices. The solution involves a shift in attitude—to embrace success instead of fleeing from it.

What’s at the heart of the problem of lack of time as a cause of procrastination?

*Lack of time.* If you used all the time you’ve been spending worrying about the time you don’t have, you’d be well on your way to completing the task you’ve been putting off. This is a problem of control. Realize that how you budget your time is up to you

<sup>4</sup>Criswell Freeman, ed. *Wisdom Made in America* (Nashville, TN: Walnut Grove Press, 1995), p. 97.

(see Chapter 2). If you feel in control, you'll find it easier to complete the jobs that need to be done.

Why does poor organization sometimes lead to procrastination?

*Poor organization.* Perhaps you begin each day determined to get started on that task you've been putting off. But when nighttime comes, you find that despite your best intentions, you didn't get around to it. If that's your trouble, the cause may be a lack of priorities and/or poor organization. Draw up a to-do list and use the urgency-importance matrix (explained in Chapter 2) to help you put your priorities in perspective.

How can you prevent procrastination?

### Devise Ways to Prevent Procrastination

Although the roots of procrastination are varied, the following methods of preventing procrastination should work regardless of the cause:

How does publicizing your plans discourage procrastination?

*Make your plans a part of the public record.* When you have a job that has to be completed or a goal that you want to reach, write it down. Or announce your intentions to close friends or family members. For example, "I plan to finish the bibliography for my research paper this weekend." Once you've made your intentions official, you're less likely to put them off. Procrastinators commonly fall into the habit of deceiving themselves, but they are less likely to deceive the people around them.

How do progress checks keep procrastination from getting out of hand?

*Step back and check your progress from time to time.* One way many people procrastinate is by getting needlessly entangled in the details of their work. If, as you're working, you periodically step back and measure your progress, it will be easier to tell if you've gotten unnecessarily bogged down. If you discover that you have, you should be able to pick up your pace so you can reach your goal in the allotted time.

What is the five-minute plan?

*Use the five-minute plan.* William J. Knaus, author of *Do It Now: How to Stop Procrastinating*, recommends what he calls the "five-minute plan."<sup>5</sup> Tackle a long-neglected task by agreeing to work on it for only five minutes. When the five minutes are up, decide whether you want to keep going. You usually will. The hardest part of almost any job is just getting started. The five-minute plan takes the sting out of that painful first step.

How can you use momentum to halt the progress of procrastination?

*Let your momentum work for you.* If you've successfully completed a task that you were eager to finish, let your momentum carry over to an activity that you aren't as enthused about. Your extra energy can help you get started on the dreaded task, and once you've begun (the hardest part), completion will become much easier.

Why is a timer more effective than a watch for beating procrastination?

*Use a timer instead of a watch.* Clock-watching is a time-honored technique of perpetual procrastinators. If you want to keep to a schedule but avoid disrupting your concentration

<sup>5</sup>Quoted in Emrika Padus, *The Complete Guide to Your Emotions and Your Health* (Emmaus, PA: Rodale Press, 1986), p. 393.

by constantly checking your watch or clock, use a timer instead. Many watches come with them. If your watch doesn't have one, an ordinary kitchen timer should do.

How can being specific prevent you from putting things off?

*Be specific.* A task is almost always more intimidating and stressful when it looms large and undefined. Instead of constantly telling yourself, "I've got to start writing that research paper," zero in on a specific aspect of your paper, such as choosing the topic or compiling a working bibliography. Suddenly your goal becomes more concrete, more doable, and thus much easier to complete. Or as James R. Sherman, author of *Stop Procrastinating*, puts it, "A job well defined is a job half done."<sup>6</sup>

What happens when you verbalize your reasons for procrastination?

*Verbalize your excuses.* You may think you've got perfectly good reasons for putting off what needs to be done. If you let your excuses see the light of day by writing them out or explaining them to a friend, you'll often find that your reasoning isn't nearly as logical as you'd thought.

How does imagining success fight procrastination?

*Visualize success or completion.* Take a moment to imagine yourself accomplishing a task, passing a test, or achieving a goal. Through visualizing, you chart a course in your mind's eye. That course gives you a tangible game plan. The positive outcome you've imagined provides an incentive to follow that course until you reach the point of completion.

## Sidestep Common Stressors

SELF-DIRECTION

PLANNING

What are some other tips for sidestepping stress?

In addition to procrastination, there are several other sources of stress that can be sidestepped relatively easily. Here are some suggestions for doing so:

*Wake up a half-hour earlier.* If you find yourself skipping breakfast or taking your last bite just as you race out the door, you're starting your day on a stressful note. Although getting an adequate amount of sleep is crucial, waking up a half-hour earlier than usual won't significantly affect your sleeping habits but can do wonders to ease the pace of your morning preparations.

*Allow yourself plenty of travel time.* High-strung travelers are easily aggravated by slow drivers or long traffic lights. But slow drivers and long lights are facts of every commute. Factor them into your travel time.

*Never wait empty-handed.* The stress that comes from standing in line or waiting in traffic stems from boredom and from irritation about wasting time. Both problems have the same easy solution: Bring a book to read or some notes to review the next time you're

<sup>6</sup>James R. Sherman, *Stop Procrastinating* (Los Altos, CA: Crisp Publications, 1989), p. 38.

kept waiting, and the time will fly by. Simply listening to the radio while waiting may be relaxing for some, but in general it won't provide the same sense of accomplishment.

*Eat dinner early.* If you eat at a college dining hall, it's usually wise to get there early. The trivial but real stress that comes from waiting in line, searching for a seat, or racing to get a second helping before the kitchen closes can be eliminated if you show up soon after the dining hall opens. Whether you eat your meals at home or at school, an early dinner gives you more time before bed to be productive.

*Don't take your work to bed with you.* Your bed is for relaxation. Don't mix your mind's signals by turning it into an auxiliary workspace. If you establish a clear boundary between where you work and where you sleep, your work will become more productive, and your sleep will be more restful. And both activities will tend to improve your approach to life's stressors.

*Stay calm, cool, and in queue.* Try this Buddhist "loving kindness" meditation to help maintain a positive attitude while waiting in ticket or baggage lines. Take a few deep breaths and say these words slowly and silently several times: "May I be peaceful. May I be happy. May I be free from harm." Then say this blessing for each person in line one by one: "May you be peaceful," and so on. By the time you've reached the front of the line, you'll likely feel more generous and forgiving.<sup>7</sup>

## Improve Your Attitude

What did James, Lange, and Peale suggest about attitude?

You can't turn away disaster simply by keeping a smile on your face, but there are now abundant indications that your overall attitude can have a powerful influence on the outcome of potentially upsetting or stressful situations. The first evidence was offered near the end of the nineteenth century, when American philosopher and psychologist William James and Danish psychologist Carl Lange simultaneously developed a remarkable theory of emotion. You don't cry because you're sad, they suggested. You're sad because you cry. This revolutionary reversal of the apparent cause and effect of emotions briefly sent the scientific community into an uproar. As the twentieth century progressed, the controversial proposal, known as the James-Lange theory, was scoffed at by most members of the mainstream scientific community and was advocated instead by "inspirational" writers and speakers such as Dr. Norman Vincent Peale, who championed the virtues of "positive thinking." Now the James-Lange theory has been vindicated, and Peale's ideas, bolstered by recent scientific evidence, have garnered mainstream defenders.

<sup>7</sup>Andrew Weil, "A Healthier Way to Fly," *Self Healing* (August 2000), p. 4.

How did one study test the effect of facial expressions?

As part of a study conducted by Paul Ekman, Robert W. Levenson, and Wallace V. Friesen from the department of psychiatry at the University of California, San Francisco, subjects were given specific instructions for contracting various facial muscles to imitate six basic emotions: happiness, sadness, disgust, surprise, anger, and fear.<sup>8</sup> Instead of being told, for example, to “look scared,” the subject was instructed to “raise your brows and pull them together, now raise your upper eyelids and stretch your lips horizontally, back toward your ears.”<sup>9</sup> Expressions were held for ten seconds, while electronic instruments measured the subjects’ physiological responses.

What effect did the facial expressions have on the subjects’ bodies?

The results were fascinating. Simply imitating an emotional expression was enough to trigger the physiological changes normally associated with that emotion. The most interesting contrast was between expressions for anger and for happiness. The average subject’s heart rate and skin temperature increased more with anger than they did with happiness. Yet the subjects weren’t truly angry or happy: They were just imitating the expressions associated with the two emotions.

How can you improve your attitude?

We can conclude from this study that simply putting on a happy face may make you feel happier and that taking a dim or overly pessimistic view can lead to the discouraging outcome you expected. But managing stress shouldn’t simply be a fuzzy-headed smile-at-all-your-troubles strategy. Improving your attitude should be done systematically by learning to relax, by improving your self-esteem, and, above all, by *taking control of your life*.

## Learn to Relax

### SELF-DIRECTION

What does relaxation mean?

The regular use of relaxation techniques, according to studies at the Mind/Body Medical Institute of Harvard Medical School, reduces stress and the prevalence of stress-related illness.<sup>10</sup> But many of us don’t consider using such techniques because we misinterpret what the word *relaxation* means. Relaxation doesn’t necessarily mean that you’re about to fall asleep. In fact, some World War II pilots used relaxation techniques not to prepare themselves for sleep or to “take it easy,” but to stay alert and avoid fatigue during bombing missions.<sup>11</sup>

What effect does relaxation have on your muscles?

Nor is relaxation a synonym for lethargy. “Relaxation,” wrote psychologists Edward A. Charlesworth and Ronald G. Nathan in *Stress Management*, “simply means doing nothing with your muscles.”<sup>12</sup> Relaxation is relief from wasted effort or strain, an absence of tension. Indeed, explains author Emrika Padus, “Tenseness wastes energy;

<sup>8</sup>Paul Ekman, Robert W. Levenson, and Wallace V. Friesen, “Autonomic Nervous System Activity Distinguishes Among Emotions,” *Science* 221 (1983): 1208–1210.

<sup>9</sup>Ibid., p. 1208.

<sup>10</sup>Stephanie Wood, “Relax! You’ve Earned It,” *McCall’s* 118 (July 1991): 50.

<sup>11</sup>Edward A. Charlesworth and Ronald G. Nathan, *Stress Management* (New York: Atheneum, 1984), p. 41.

<sup>12</sup>Ibid., p. 42.



- tenseness causes anxiety. . . . The best performances come when the mind and body are *floating*, enjoying the activity just as we did when we were young children, completely absorbed in the experience and unaware of any consequences of the actions. This is true relaxation.”<sup>13</sup>
- There’s nothing mystical about relaxation. Two simple techniques—breathing deeply and using progressive relaxation—can help you get the hang of this life-sustaining practice.
- Breathe Deeply**
- There is a strong connection between the way you breathe and the way you feel. When you’re relaxed, your breaths are long and deep, originating from your abdomen. When you’re anxious, your breathing is often short and shallow, originating from high in your chest.
- The link between breathing and emotion operates in both directions. Just as the way you feel affects the way you breathe, the way you breathe affects the way you feel. A handful of experiments have established this connection. Dr. James Loehr found that when relaxed subjects were asked to take short, rapid, and irregular breaths for two minutes—in other words, to pant—nearly everyone interviewed felt worried, threatened, and panicky.<sup>14</sup> Simply by imitating the response of an anxious person, the subjects had made themselves anxious.
- Luckily, this principle can be used to encourage relaxation as well. By breathing slowly, steadily, and deeply, and by beginning your breaths in your abdomen instead of up in your chest, you can encourage a feeling of relaxation. So just before an exam, an interview, or a dental appointment, when your palms are sweating, your body is tense, and your breath is short and shallow, try the count-of-three method to induce a more relaxed state. Count slowly and calmly through each step:
1. Inhale slowly through your nose while silently counting to three.
  2. Hold your breath for the count of three.
  3. Exhale slowly through your nose while silently counting to three.
  4. With your breath expelled, count to three.
  5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 several times. (Once you have the rhythm, you need not continue counting; but maintain the same timing and the same pauses.)
- Use Progressive Muscle Relaxation**
- A big advantage of the count-of-three method is that it can be done inconspicuously almost anywhere, including in an exam room. But if you have some time, a quiet place, and a little privacy, you may want to try progressive muscle relaxation (PMR), a method for systematically tensing and relaxing the major muscles in your body.

<sup>13</sup>Emrika Padus, *Complete Guide to Your Emotions and Your Health*, p. 490.

<sup>14</sup>James E. Loehr and Peter J. McLaughlin, with Ed Quillen, *Mentally Tough* (New York: M. Evans and Company, 1986), pp. 141–142.

What is the history of PMR?

PMR was developed more than eighty years ago by Edmund Jacobson, a doctor who saw the connection between tense muscles and a tense mind. PMR works by helping you become aware of the difference between how your muscles feel when they're tensed and how they feel when they're relaxed.

What are the steps involved in progressive muscle relaxation?

Start PMR by assuming a comfortable position, either sitting or lying down, and by closing your eyes. Make a tight fist with your right hand, and at the same time tense your right forearm. Hold this position for five seconds, feeling the tension in both your hand and arm, and then slowly release that tension, letting it flow out of you as you unclench your fist. Repeat the procedure with your left hand, noting the difference between how this hand feels tensed compared with your right hand and arm, which are now relaxed. Continue by separately tensing your shoulder muscles, your neck, and the muscles in your face. Then start with your feet and toes, moving up each leg; finish by tensing the muscles in your abdomen and chest. Once you've tensed and released every muscle group in your body, take a moment to savor the overall feeling of relaxation. Then open your eyes and end the exercise.

## Improve Your Self-Esteem

SELF-DIRECTION

What is self-esteem?

*Self-esteem* is your personal assessment of your own value. Unfortunately, many of us are our own toughest critics. We overlook our positive attributes and forget our successes, emphasizing our shortcomings instead and providing ourselves with a silent but constant stream of discouraging dialogue. The stress that results from this inner discouragement is far worse than criticism from a nagging parent, an insulting instructor, or an overly demanding boss.

What can you do to improve your self-esteem?

A healthy level of self-esteem is crucial to keeping stress at bay. If your self-esteem needs improvement, rewrite the potentially destructive inner dialogue that haunts you throughout the day and take some time to dwell on your successes.

What's the first step in rewriting your inner dialogue?

### Rewrite Your Inner Dialogue

You can't rewrite your inner dialogue unless you've seen the script. So, the first step in eliminating the destructive thoughts that undermine your self-esteem is to become aware of them.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

Most of us talk silently to ourselves almost continually. Psychologists commonly refer to this inner conversation as *self-talk*. Although you may have learned to ignore the sound of your self-talk, the effect it has on your overall attitude can still be damaging. In other words, you may not hear it but you're probably still listening. So when you enter a new situation or are faced with a difficult challenge, take a moment to express your apprehensions to yourself. Then listen to your self-talk. Whenever you have a negative thought, counteract it with a positive one. Remember that the thoughts you have are your own and are under your control. You can open the door of your mind to whatever thoughts you want. Admit only the positive ones, and leave the negative ones out in the cold.

How do you build on your past success?

### Build on Your Success

All of us have experienced success at one time or another. When you feel your self-esteem slipping, remember when you did a job you were proud of, when you overcame an obstacle in spite of the odds, or when everything seemed to go smoothly. It helps to congratulate yourself from time to time, to put yourself in an achieving frame of mind so that you can achieve success again.

## Take Control of Your Life

SELF-DIRECTION

How does self-esteem relate to your sense of control?

One of the results of increased self-esteem is an increased sense of control, a quality that both medical doctors and psychologists are finding can have a measurable effect on your physical well-being and state of mind. According to the *Wellness Letter* from the University of California, Berkeley, “A sense of control may, in fact, be a critical factor in maintaining health.”<sup>15</sup> When you’re in control, you act; you set your own agenda instead of reacting to the wishes or whims of others or resigning yourself to what we often call “fate.”

How did Norman Cousins use control to change his life?

### Appreciate the Significance of Control

In the early 1960s, writer and magazine editor Norman Cousins was stricken with a painful life-threatening illness. Determined not to let the illness control his life and sentence him to death, Cousins fought back. He watched movie comedies, one after another. The laughter the films elicited made the sleep that had eluded him come more easily and ultimately reversed the crippling illness.<sup>16</sup> In fact, the results so impressed the medical community that Cousins, who had no medical background, was awarded an honorary degree in medicine by the Yale University School of Medicine and was appointed adjunct professor in the School of Medicine at the University of California, Los Angeles.

What quality do many survivors of stress share?

Norman Cousins is not the only person who has demonstrated the importance of a sense of control. Author Richard Logan investigated the lives of people who were able to survive extreme stress—such as imprisonment in a concentration camp—and found that they all had at least one quality in common: a belief that their destiny was in their own hands. In other words, they had a sense of control.<sup>17</sup>

What did one experiment show about the relationship between control and the hormone cortisone?

The importance of control was reinforced in a study that provided a physiological insight into the phenomenon. When your body is under stress, your adrenal glands release *cortisone*, a hormone that in small doses can fight allergies and disease but that

<sup>15</sup>“Healthy Lives: A New View of Stress,” University of California, Berkeley, *Wellness Letter* 6, no. 9 (June 1990): 4.

<sup>16</sup>*Managing Stress—From Morning to Night* (Alexandria, VA: Time-Life Books, 1987), p. 21.

<sup>17</sup>Mihaly Csikszentmihalyi, *Flow: The Psychology of Optimal Experience* (New York: Harper & Row, 1990), p. 203.

What are the long-term effects of lack of control?

in larger amounts can impair the body's ability to fight back. When the two groups of employees who made up the study worked almost to the point of exhaustion, only one group experienced a significant increase in cortisone production. Those employees with high levels of cortisone had jobs that allowed them very little control. Employees who experienced no increase in cortisone held positions with a high level of control.<sup>18</sup>

How did a button affect the stress level of office workers?

Lack of control can result in a sense of helplessness almost guaranteed to bring about the frayed nerves, tense muscles, and overall feeling of panic normally associated with short-term stress. If these conditions persist, they can have an adverse effect on your body's immune system, making you more susceptible to illness. Robbed of your sense of control, you not only react instead of acting but also overreact. Turned outward, this overreaction may surface as anger. Turned inward, it can lead to fear, anxiety, and general depression.

In *The Joy of Stress*, Dr. Peter Hanson described an experiment in which two groups of office workers were exposed to a series of loud and distracting background noises. One group had desks equipped with a button that could be pushed at any time to shut out the annoying sounds. The other group had no such button. Not surprisingly, workers with the button were far more productive than those without. But what's remarkable is that no one in the button group actually *pushed* the button. Apparently, the knowledge that they could shut out the noise if they wanted to was enough to enable them to work productively in spite of the distractions. Their sense of control resulted in a reduction in stress and an increase in productivity.<sup>19</sup>

How can you gain a better sense of control?

### Understand How Attitude Affects Control

Dr. Hanson's story of the control button underscores an important element of control: Taking control is primarily a matter of adjusting your attitude. As a student, you can achieve a sense of control by changing the way you view your courses, assignments, and exams.

What can you do to change your attitude about your classes and assignments?

Taking control of your classes and assignments means viewing them as choices instead of obligations. The stressed-out, overwhelmed student looks to the next lecture or reading assignment with dread. The student who feels in control (and feels more confident as a result) understands that attending lectures and completing assignments are a matter of choice and that the benefits derived from both are not only practical but also enjoyable. According to psychologist Mihaly Csikszentmihalyi, "Of all the virtues we can learn, no trait is more useful, more essential for survival and more likely to improve the quality of life than the ability to transform adversity into an enjoyable challenge."<sup>20</sup>

What's a good way to cope with out-of-control circumstances?

### Learn to Cope with Out-of-Control Circumstances

Clearly, a great many situations in life are out of your control. But even in unavoidable or unpredictable situations, you can still exercise some degree of influence. Psychologists

<sup>18</sup>Robert M. Bramson, *Coping with the Fast Track Blues* (New York: Doubleday, 1990), p. 217.

<sup>19</sup>Peter Hanson, *The Joy of Stress* (New York: McMeel & Parker, 1985), pp. 15–16.

<sup>20</sup>Csikszentmihalyi, *Flow*, p. 200.

have found that as your coping resources increase (both in number and variety), so does your sense of control. Thus, a person with multiple coping strategies, instead of just one plan, is better able to adapt to the inevitable surprises that can accompany almost any undertaking.

How can you increase your sense of control over an upcoming exam?

For example, you have no control over whether an upcoming exam will be made up of essay or multiple-choice questions. If the instructor doesn't tell you which type it will be, you can increase your coping resources by preparing for both types of questions. Then, regardless of the type of question the instructor chooses, you will be ready. You will have a feeling of control.

How can you apply a sense of control to mundane annoyances?

The same strategy can be applied to a number of mundane situations that often generate unwanted stress. An unexpected line at the bank or the grocery store can leave you feeling helpless and anxious. You can't make the line disappear or move more quickly, but you can control the situation by reading a book or reviewing a set of vocabulary cards while you wait. As you can see, even a small degree of control can be used to minimize a large amount of stress.

## Follow a Healthy Routine

What can you do to your physical self to minimize the effects of stress?

Stress isn't all in your head. It has a noticeable effect on your body and can often be avoided through changes in your physical routine. If you make a concerted effort to develop good eating habits, improve your sleep, and get some exercise, you'll make yourself more stress-resistant and decrease your chances of being subjected to stress in the first place.

## Develop Good Eating Habits

SELF-DIRECTION

How are stress and eating interconnected?

Stress may harm your immune system, and eating well can restore it. But that connection doesn't stop there. There is a destructive, cyclical nature involving stress and eating that you want to work hard to avoid. If you develop poor eating habits, the negative effect on your body may make you more susceptible to stress. And there's ample evidence that a by-product of stress is poor eating habits. Because stress is so demanding, your body needs extra energy to address it. According to Dr. Robert Sapolsky, we expend between 10 and 23 percent of our energy on digestion.<sup>21</sup> It's not surprising, then, that when your body undergoes stress, it often robs energy from the digestive process. In response to stress, corticotropin releasing factor (CRF) shuts down your digestion. This accounts not only for the lack of appetite, but also for the dry mouth that many of us

<sup>21</sup>Robert M. Sapolsky, *Why Zebras Don't Get Ulcers* (New York: W. H. Freeman, 1998), p. 64.

How does the length of the stress affect your appetite?

How can you break the cycle of stress and bad eating habits?

How do erratic meal schedules affect stress?

What's the best way to restore a sensible eating routine?

What are some other nonnutritional benefits of meals?

Why is it a bad idea to work while you eat?

What is the difference between eating quickly and rushing your meal?

experience in a stressful situation. But stress also triggers glucocorticoids, which enter your bloodstream at a slower pace. Whereas CRF depresses your appetite, glucocorticoids actually stimulate it and, according to Sapolsky, serve as the means for recovering from the stress response.<sup>22</sup>

“Thus, lots of short stressful events should lead to overeating,” Dr. Sapolsky explains, “while one long, continuous stressor should lead to appetite loss.”<sup>23</sup>

If you're overfed or undernourished, you may be putting an extra strain on your body that could be resulting in stress. And with that, the cycle continues. The way to break this vicious cycle is by taking time out for meals, rather than letting stress dictate whether you eat, and by eating in a way that counteracts stress instead of contributing to it.

### Take Time Out for Meals

Stress can diminish or deplete certain vitamin and mineral supplies. An erratic meal schedule can aggravate this problem. According to nutritionist Jane Brody:

Millions of Americans have fallen into a pattern of too-late-for-breakfast, grab-something-for-lunch, eat-a-big-dinner, and nibble-nonstop-until-bedtime. They starve their bodies when they most need fuel and stuff them when they'll be doing nothing more strenuous than channel-surfing or flipping through pages of a magazine. When you think about it, the pattern makes no biological sense.<sup>24</sup>

The simplest way to put some sense back into your eating routine is by beginning each day with breakfast. Breakfast stokes your body's furnace so you have energy to burn for the rest of the day. Lunch and dinner simply throw a few coals on the fire; breakfast gets that fire burning.

Meals not only provide needed nutrients; they also supply you with a necessary break from the stresses of school or work. Here are some stress-relieving suggestions for mealtime:

*Don't work as you eat.* Time will have been wasted, and you won't have gained the break you deserved when you sat down to eat. As a result, you'll probably feel more stressed than you were before you ate.

*Eat quickly, but don't rush.* There's a difference. If you have a lot of work to do, you won't have time for a leisurely lunch. But if you keep one eye on your sandwich and the other on the clock, you'll increase your chances of getting indigestion and stress without significantly speeding up your meal.

<sup>22</sup>Ibid., p. 78.

<sup>23</sup>Ibid., p. 79.

<sup>24</sup>Jane E. Brody, *Jane Brody's Good Food Book* (New York: W. W. Norton, 1985), p. 187.



What are the drawbacks of the USDA's food pyramids?

### Eat the Right Foods

Almost twenty years ago, the U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) unveiled the Food Guide Pyramid, which was designed to provide consumers with easy-to-follow nutritional guidelines. Unfortunately, in an effort to keep things simple, the USDA created considerable confusion. For example, people who saw the pyramid or read the recommendations were likely to conclude that fat is bad and that complex carbohydrates are good. That's only partially true. Not all fats are bad, and not all complex carbohydrates are good. In 2005, the USDA replaced its Food Guide Pyramid with a multicolored diagram called MyPyramid. Although the new pyramid looks good and has corrected some of the flaws of its predecessor, it lacks the kind of specifics that many consumers require to make sensible food choices. Between the demise of the Food Guide Pyramid and the arrival of MyPyramid, two professors at the prestigious Harvard Medical School, Walter C. Willett and Meir J. Stampfer, set out to clarify and refine the USDA recommendations.<sup>25</sup>

What is the simple math behind calorie consumption?

**Curb Your Consumption of Calories** Strictly speaking, fat doesn't make you fat. Calories do. The confusion lies in the fact that there are more calories in a gram of fat than in the same amount of protein or carbohydrate. Thus, some people overcompensate by avoiding fats and piling up calories from proteins and carbohydrates instead. Ultimately, it's a matter of simple math. If you consume more calories than you use up, you will gain weight. If you burn up more than you consume, you will have a "caloric deficit" and will lose weight as a result. Over the past few decades there has been an alarming rise in the incidence of obesity in the United States. Not everyone is destined to be as skinny as a rail. Nor should they be. But if you're above or below your natural weight, you may be putting extra stress on your body. The way to control that weight is by watching your calories.<sup>26</sup>

What are the drawbacks of butter, red meat, and refined carbohydrates?

**Avoid Butter, Red Meat, and Refined Carbohydrates** Just because fats can't be entirely blamed for obesity doesn't mean that some of them don't have faults. The old pyramid treated all fats as bad in order to discourage people from eating those that are bad. The "bad fats" are saturated fats, most commonly found in butter and red meat. It's their content, not their calories, that causes trouble. Saturated fats are high in low-density lipoprotein (LDL), also known as "bad cholesterol" and associated with an increased risk of heart disease. Refined carbohydrates, such as white rice, white bread, sugar, and even potatoes, have an indirect link to cholesterol that is potentially troubling. Because these carbohydrates break down so quickly, they can spark a rapid rise in both glucose (blood sugar) and insulin, the hormone designed to keep glucose in check.<sup>27</sup> According to Willett and Stampfer, "High levels of glucose and insulin can have negative effects

<sup>25</sup>Walter C. Willett and Meir J. Stampfer, "Rebuilding the Food Pyramid," *Scientific American* (January 2003).

<sup>26</sup>Ibid.

<sup>27</sup>Ibid.

on cardiovascular health.”<sup>28</sup> In addition, there’s evidence that the sudden drop in glucose that results when insulin washes it away can make you feel hungrier faster, thus prompting you to eat more than you need.<sup>29</sup>

## IT’S YOUR Q

**Emphasize Healthy Fats and Whole-Grain Foods** The big losers in the previous pyramid were probably unsaturated fats, which got unfairly swept up in the “fat is bad” barrage. As it turns out, polyunsaturated fats (found in flax seeds and some fish) and monounsaturated fats (found in nuts, olive oil, and other vegetable oils) are actually quite good for you. Unlike eating their saturated siblings, consuming these fats can result in a reduced risk of heart disease.<sup>30</sup> Similarly, the whole grains you find in brown rice, whole-wheat flours, and a handful of other whole foods are far superior to the stripped-down, fast-acting refined version of these same foods. For one, they take longer to metabolize and thus do not trigger potentially damaging glucose and insulin spikes. In addition, they hold on to the valuable vitamins and nutrients that are normally removed when carbohydrates are refined.

What are the advantages of fruits and vegetables?

**Eat Lots of Fruits and Vegetables** Despite the heated disagreements between nutritionists on a wide variety of topics, very few have anything bad to say about fruits and vegetables. High in fiber, high in vitamins, and low in the sort of “gotchas” that seem to dog almost every other type of food, fruits and vegetables may well be the most beneficial foods to eat in abundance.

What is so important about water?

**Drink Plenty of Water** Our world and our bodies are primarily made up of water. Second only to air as the source of our survival, water is the medium for every bodily process and the primary means by which toxins are expelled. It is absolutely essential to remain properly hydrated. Depending on your size, age, and body weight, doctors generally recommend consuming at least six to eight 8-ounce glasses of water per day.<sup>31</sup>

Why can’t other beverages be used as a substitute for water?

Don’t mistakenly assume that you are meeting your body’s need for fluids by consuming liquids other than water, such as coffee, tea, alcohol, or soft drinks. Many of these beverages contain harmful ingredients that offset or undermine plain water’s beneficial effect. Among these, the worst offenders are soft drinks, which have become the drink of choice in the United States. In 2001, Americans consumed more than fifty gallons of soft drinks per person per year and only forty gallons of water.<sup>32</sup> What’s more, a typical 12-ounce can or bottle of soda is sweetened by a whopping ten teaspoonfuls of

<sup>28</sup>Ibid.

<sup>29</sup>Ibid.

<sup>30</sup>Ibid.

<sup>31</sup>Dr. Fereydoon Batmanghelidj, *Global Health Discoveries* 5, no. 1: 4.

<sup>32</sup>Wine Institute, *Wine and Other Beverage Consumption in America*, available at <http://www.beekmanwine.com/prevtopat.htm>.



sugar,<sup>33</sup> empty calories that are almost certainly contributing to the epidemic of obesity in this country. Making matters worse, tests done in 2006 on soft drinks in Britain and France found that they contained dangerous levels of benzene, a compound known to cause cancer.<sup>34</sup> If you're congratulating yourself for drinking diet soda instead, not so fast. Common artificial sweeteners can actually increase your appetite for sugar and carbohydrates and may be metabolizing into dangerous carcinogens!<sup>35</sup> All these ominous findings reaffirm that clean, cool, fresh water is best.

## Improve Your Sleep

SELF-DIRECTION

How does the sleep we typically get compare to the sleep we actually need?

If your morning starts with the sound of an alarm clock, you're probably not getting the sleep you need. According to Dr. Wilse Webb, a psychologist at the University of Florida, Gainesville, "If that's how you wake up every day, you're shortening your natural sleep pattern."<sup>36</sup> And yet an alarm clock is a part of most people's lives. Does that mean all of us are cheating ourselves on sleep? Perhaps not all, but most Americans are getting less sleep than they need. In fact, according to an article in the *New York Times*, "Sleep scientists insist that there is virtually an epidemic of sleepiness in the nation."<sup>37</sup>

What are the dangers of sleep loss?

The image of a nation filled with semiconscious citizens may seem comical, but in reality the effects of widespread sleep deprivation are seldom humorous and sometimes deadly. The U.S. Department of Transportation estimates that up to 200,000 traffic accidents each year are sleep related.<sup>38</sup> Furthermore, the worst nuclear power emergency in this country's history, at Three Mile Island, occurred at night, when workers were most susceptible to the effects of insufficient sleep.<sup>39</sup>

How does sleep loss affect learning?

Of course, sleep loss isn't usually deadly for students, but it can be damaging. Dr. Charles Czeisler, director of circadian and sleep disorders medicine at Brigham and Women's Hospital in Boston, outlined some of the penalties that people pay when they get too little sleep: "Short term memory is impaired, the ability to make decisions is impaired, the ability to concentrate is impaired."<sup>40</sup> Clearly, a student who can't remember, can't make decisions, and has trouble concentrating will have a tough time surviving in an academic setting. Furthermore, the struggle to overcome the disabilities that sleep loss creates frequently leads to an even more pervasive problem: stress.

<sup>33</sup>Donald S. McAlvany, *The McAlvany Health Alert*, 2, Issue 4 (April 2002).

<sup>34</sup>Rajeev Syal, "Soft Drinks Found to Have High Levels of Cancer Chemical," *London Times* (March 2, 2006), available at <http://www.timesonline.co.uk/article/0,,8122-2065539,00.html>.

<sup>35</sup>Dr. William Campbell Douglass, "NutraSweet Is Not So Sweet," *Second Opinion* VI, no. 3: pp. 1–4.

<sup>36</sup>Quoted in Natalie Angier, "Cheating on Sleep: Modern Life Turns America into the Land of the Drowsy," *New York Times* (May 15, 1990), pp. C1, C8.

<sup>37</sup>*Ibid.*, p. C1.

<sup>38</sup>Anastasia Toulexis, "Drowsy America," *Time* (December 17, 1990): p. 80.

<sup>39</sup>Angier, "Cheating on Sleep," p. C8.

<sup>40</sup>Quoted in *ibid.*

What is the connection between weariness and stress?

“Weariness corrodes civility and erases humor,” reads an article in *Time* magazine. “Without sufficient sleep, tempers flare faster and hotter at the slightest offense.”<sup>41</sup> The day-to-day challenges and inconveniences of going to school and of living in the modern world are potentially stress inducing. Add habitual sleep loss, and you turn a chronic problem into an acute one. Dr. Ernest Hartmann’s study of “variable sleepers” (patients whose sleep and wake-up times are not consistent) revealed that people under stress tend to need more sleep than do those who lead lives relatively free of anxiety and change. Yet stress often triggers insomnia, which leads to less sleep and the possibility of even more stress.<sup>42</sup> The results can be a vicious circle of stress and sleeplessness.

How do you break the circle of stress and sleeplessness?

You can work to break this circle by getting the right amount of sleep, by following a regular sleep schedule, by avoiding naps, and by taking steps to improve the quality of your sleep.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

What is the impact of “sleeping in” on the weekend?

#### Get the Right Amount of Sleep

Are you getting enough sleep? In general, your overall alertness provides a pretty good indicator. If you are getting the right amount of sleep, you should be able to stay awake through twenty minutes of darkness at midday. Students in art history and film courses, where slides or movies are commonly shown, often complain that a darkened auditorium or classroom makes them sleepy. These situations don’t create sleepiness. They simply reveal a problem of insufficient sleep and should serve as a warning to get more rest. Sleep behavior experts tell us that, on average, most people fall short of their needed amount of sleep by sixty to ninety minutes each night.<sup>43</sup> Aggravating this daily deficit is the fact that sleep loss is cumulative; it adds up. If you feel tired on Monday morning, you’re apt to feel even more so when Friday rolls around.<sup>44</sup>

Although sleep loss adds up, sleep does not. You can’t stash away extra hours of sleep like money in the bank. You need to get sufficient sleep seven nights a week. Just as so-called weekend athletes engage in strenuous exercise only on Saturday and Sunday and thereby jeopardize their hearts and their overall health in their effort to “stay fit,” people who “sleep in” on weekends don’t eliminate the effects of a week of sleep deprivation. In fact, they complicate the problem by disturbing their rhythm of sleeping and waking.

What effect do circadian rhythms have on sleep?

#### Keep to a Schedule

Achieving full alertness isn’t simply a matter of getting enough sleep. It’s equally important to do your sleeping at the right time of day. Thanks to *circadian rhythms*, the body’s natural pattern of wakefulness and sleep, when morning arrives you instinctively

<sup>41</sup>Toulexis, “Drowsy America,” p. 80.

<sup>42</sup>Lynne Lamberg, *The American Medical Association (Straight-Talk, No-Nonsense) Guide to Better Sleep*, rev. ed. (New York: Random House, 1984), p. 35.

<sup>43</sup>Angier, “Cheating on Sleep,” p. C1.

<sup>44</sup>*Ibid.*, p. C8.

become more alert in anticipation of the day that lies ahead. With the advent of evening, signals in your brain begin preparing you for needed sleep. You go to sleep, and when you wake up the process is repeated.

How can you take advantage of circadian rhythms?

The way to make the most of these circadian rhythms is to maintain a regular sleep/wake schedule. Sleeping late on the weekends or going to bed at widely varying times throws your circadian rhythms out of whack. You find yourself feeling drowsy when you should be alert and wide-awake when you should be fast asleep.<sup>45</sup> If you consistently rise at the same time regardless of when you went to bed, you'll keep your circadian rhythms in tempo.<sup>46</sup> Furthermore, an unwavering wake-up time should help discourage you from staying up too late.

What are the drawbacks of taking naps?

### Recognize the Truth About Naps

Students and others who have flexible schedules often see naps as the solution to sleep deprivation. Unfortunately, naps fall far short of their reputation and actually create a number of problems: They're impractical; they adversely affect learning; they harm both sound sleep and the sleep cycle; and they act as a convenient excuse for chronic procrastinators.

What do you lose by taking a nap?

In addition, naps generally deprive you of two of sleep's more important components: dream, or rapid eye movement (REM), sleep, the period in which all our dreaming occurs; and deep sleep (also called *delta sleep*), which many sleep experts believe recharges our batteries and increases our overall alertness.<sup>47</sup> Therefore, if you take a nap, you may be adding to the quantity of your sleep but you'll probably be lacking the dream and deep sleep your body requires. According to Dr. William Douglass, "There is no doubt that this deep sleep is essential to health. Muramyl peptides, which are vital to tissue renewal and immune enhancement, are only released during deep, slow-wave sleep."<sup>48</sup>

How do naps affect your sleep/wake cycle?

As you might expect, naps also interfere with your sleep/wake cycle. Unless you take a nap every day at the same time and for the same duration, you'll probably wind up with stay-at-home jet lag and have difficulty falling asleep at night.

What is the connection between naps and procrastination?

Finally, the temptation to misuse naps can be great. Many students give in to the urge to sleep, rationalizing that when they awaken they will feel refreshed and perform more productively. Unfortunately, few students report this happy result. The harsh reality is that if you try to escape a mountain of work by taking a nap, you will wake up to face the same amount of work, and you'll have less time in which to do it. It is far better to combat the desire to sleep, get the work done, and go to bed at your usual time with a clear conscience. You'll get the sleep you need; you'll minimize disruptions to your body's circadian rhythms; you'll feel healthier and more alert; and you'll be less susceptible to the potentially corrosive effects of stress.

<sup>45</sup>Richard M. Coleman, *Wide Awake at 3:00 a.m.* (New York: W. H. Freeman, 1986), p. 149.

<sup>46</sup>Robert K. Cooper, *The Performance Edge* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1991), p. 222.

<sup>47</sup>Dianne Hales, *The Complete Book of Sleep* (Menlo Park, CA: Addison-Wesley, 1981), p. 18.

<sup>48</sup>William Campbell Douglass, M.D., *Second Opinion* 4, no. 12 (December 1994): p. 7.

What are the advantages of optimal sleep?

Why is sleeping in a dark room so important?

What other steps can you take to improve sleep?

### Take Solid Steps for Better Sleeping

Optimal sleep promotes not only a more alert, energetic, zestful life but also, according to some studies, a longer life. If you're not concentrating, if you're dozing off in class and at your desk, or if you're feeling dragged out, take steps to put yourself on the right track.

The right track means deep sleep in a dark room, which activates secretion of melatonin by the pineal gland. According to Dr. Alexander Grant's *Health Gazette*, "Melatonin not only helps us to sleep, but also may help to prevent tumors since it stimulates our tissues to destroy oxidants, chemical pollutants that produce cancer."<sup>49</sup> Also, under these favorable conditions, the pituitary gland releases large quantities of growth hormone into the blood. The hormone travels throughout the body to restore and rebuild body tissue. When you don't give the rebuilding process enough time, you upset the body's processes. For example, in a sleep-deprived state, the rate that the brain metabolizes glucose slows down; thus thinking slows down. Researchers calculate that a sleep-deprived person takes about one hour to do the work that could be done in forty-five minutes during the feeling-good stage.

You can incorporate a few simple practices into your daily life to optimize the quality of your sleep:

*Don't use caffeine after 4 p.m.* Caffeine can often result in insomnia and thus throw your sleep/wake schedule off.<sup>50</sup> In addition, laboratory studies show that from 200 to 500 milligrams of caffeine per day may produce headaches, nervousness, and gastrointestinal disturbances, symptoms that can trigger or exacerbate stress. Keep in mind that coffee is not the only substance that contains caffeine. There's also caffeine in tea, some soft drinks, chocolate, and some nonprescription drugs.

*Don't drink alcohol after 8 p.m.* Although it has a reputation for making you drowsy, alcohol actually upsets your body's sleep pattern, first by reducing your REM sleep and then by triggering a "REM rebound," which can result in excessive dreaming and/or nightmares.<sup>51</sup>

*Reserve your bed for sleeping.* Eating, doing coursework, and even worrying in bed can scramble your body's contextual cues. If your bed becomes a multipurpose area, you may find it more difficult to fall asleep when the time comes.

*Exercise!* In addition to the benefits it provides to your heart, muscles, and self-esteem, exercise also enhances both the waking and sleeping phases of your circadian rhythms. Twenty minutes or more of vigorous aerobic exercise will boost your alertness in the

<sup>49</sup>Dr. Alexander Grant's *Health Gazette* 18, no. 2 (February 1995).

<sup>50</sup>Milton K. Erman and Merrill M. Mitler, *How to Get a Good Night's Sleep* (Phillips Publishing, 1990).

<sup>51</sup>Coleman, *Wide Awake at 3:00 a.m.*, p. 124.

daytime and improve the quality of your sleep at night. People who exercise regularly have been found to enjoy more deep sleep than people who don't.<sup>52</sup>

## Get Some Exercise

SELF-DIRECTION

What does research show about the relationship between exercise and stress?

According to respected American cardiologist Dr. Paul Dudley White, “Vigorous . . . exercise is the best antidote for nervous and emotional stress that we possess.”<sup>53</sup> In study after study, experts are corroborating the finding that exercise decreases stress and anxiety. Many other researchers report that regular exercise raises self-esteem and well-being and decreases depression. A study of forty-eight students who had been suffering from test anxiety found that their anxiety was reduced after meditative relaxation and exercise.<sup>54</sup> In another study, both prisoners and prison guards took part in a carefully monitored exercise program. After a regimen of aerobic exercise, participants on both sides of the law found that they were able to sleep better, that their sense of well-being and self-esteem often improved, and that they experienced less tension and depression.<sup>55</sup>

What effect does exercise have on depression?

The effect of exercise on depression, one of the most damaging emotional outgrowths of prolonged stress, led psychologist William Morgan, past president of the American Psychological Association's Division of Exercise and Sport Psychology, to suggest “that running should be viewed as a wonder drug, analogous to penicillin, morphine and the tricyclics [drugs used to treat depression]. It has a profound potential in preventing mental and physical disease and in rehabilitation after various diseases have occurred.”<sup>56</sup> And the most effective exercise is that done regularly and aerobically.

### Exercise Regularly

What are the advantages of exercising regularly?

You don't have to be an Olympic athlete to reap the benefits of exercise. Exercising three or more times per week is usually enough to improve your overall conditioning, although many students who follow an exercise routine look forward to the time away from their desks and exercise between five and seven times per week. Aside from its well-documented benefits, one of the reasons that exercise is so effective in reducing stress is a simple one. Like eating, sleeping, or any other type of recreation, it provides a welcome break from studying and recharges your mental and physical batteries.

<sup>52</sup>Ibid., p. 146.

<sup>53</sup>Quoted in Robert K. Cooper, *Health and Fitness Excellence* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1989), p. 100.

<sup>54</sup>Kenneth H. Cooper, *The Aerobics Program for Total Well-Being* (New York: Bantam Books, 1982), p. 186.

<sup>55</sup>Ibid.

<sup>56</sup>Quoted in Keith W. Johnsgård, “Peace of Mind,” *Runner's World* 25, no. 4 (April 1990): p. 81

### Caffeine: A Poor Substitute for Sleep

Caffeine is the most widely used drug in the United States. Many people drink a cup of coffee or a can of caffeinated soda to produce the feeling of alertness normally associated with sound sleep. Ironically, though, caffeine can actually lead to sleepiness.



- Although morning coffee can mean morning alertness, afternoon coffee may cause afternoon blahs.
- Regular use of caffeine reduces its ability to stimulate alertness.
- Large quantities of caffeine can induce behavioral depression, which results in sleepiness and decreased performance.
- Caffeine burns calories (energy) as it stimulates insulin production, leading to a sudden drop in blood sugar and feeling of lethargy.
- Drinking only 250 mg of caffeine can produce symptoms associated with clinical anxiety.

Sources: Richard M. Coleman, *Wide Awake at 3 a.m.* (New York: W. H. Freeman & Co., 1986); Susan Perry and Jim Dawson, *The Secret Our Body Clocks Reveal* (New York: Rawson Associates, 1988); Jere E. Yates, *Managing Stress* (New York: AMACOM, 1979).

Why is aerobic exercise especially important?

### Exercise Aerobically

Although all exercise can provide relief from stress, only aerobic exercise can actually prevent the harmful effects of negative stress. Aerobic exercise is any activity that causes a steady, prolonged increase in your breathing and heart rate. A quick sprint across a football field or a dash from home plate to first base is certainly exercise, but it isn't aerobic exercise. You are inhaling lots of oxygen and speeding up your heart, but you are doing so for only a few seconds, probably not at a steady rate, and definitely not for a prolonged period of time. If, however, you swim twenty-five laps or so, pedal your bike steadily for several miles, or take a brisk thirty-minute walk, you are getting aerobic exercise.

What is the greatest benefit of aerobic exercise?

#### IT'S YOUR Q

Perhaps the greatest benefit of aerobic exercise is that it lowers your heart rate. Once your heart muscle has been strengthened through exercise, it acts more efficiently, beating fewer times to circulate the same amount of blood. And if anxiety should strike, the increase in the heart rate of an aerobically fit person is not as drastic or potentially dangerous as it is in someone who gets little or no aerobic exercise.<sup>57</sup> If your heart rate remains comparatively low when subjected to stress, you are less likely to overreact physically or emotionally.

Exercise provides a perfect example of good stress. It works as a stimulant to release the hormone *norepinephrine*, which promotes enhanced awareness, and *endorphins*, morphinelike hormones that provide the euphoric feeling commonly referred to as “runner’s high.” According to Dr. Kenneth Cooper, if you exercise at the end of the day when stress levels are traditionally highest, “you can continue to work or play much later into the evening than might be possible otherwise.”<sup>58</sup> Exercise leaves you feeling simultaneously alert and relaxed, a nearly ideal state for efficient, prolonged, and stress-free study.

## FINAL WORDS

---

Why are the stress habits you develop in college so important?

Many students are tempted to write off their college days as a time when anything goes. They eat too much (or too little), drink too much, rob themselves of sleep, and subject their bodies to an extraordinary amount of stress. As removed as college may seem to be from the “real world,” the habits you develop in school may well set the tone for the rest of your life. Health doesn’t take a holiday simply because you’re at school. By all means, work hard and enjoy yourself. But do so in a healthy and sensible way. Keep in mind that you are gaining more than academic expertise while you’re in school. You’re also learning how to live your life. And in the grand scheme of things, that is the grade that truly matters.

<sup>57</sup>Cooper, *The Aerobics Program for Total Well-Being*, p. 189.

<sup>58</sup>*Ibid.*, p. 191.



## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

- Sources of stress are called \_\_\_\_\_.  
**lesions**                      **endorphins**                      **stressors**
- Self-esteem is your personal assessment of your own \_\_\_\_\_.  
**intelligence**                      **value**                      **finances**
- The “bad fats” are \_\_\_\_\_.  
**polyunsaturated**                      **saturated**                      **monounsaturated**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| _____ 1. Timer           | a. Has a silent effect on self-esteem                       |
| _____ 2. Panting         | b. Developed progressive muscle relaxation                  |
| _____ 3. Jacobson        | c. Illustrates the U.S. government’s nutritional guidelines |
| _____ 4. Cortisone       | d. Defined as “doing nothing with your muscles”             |
| _____ 5. Self-talk       | e. Released when body undergoes stress                      |
| _____ 6. Caloric deficit | f. Tool to counteract clock-watching                        |
| _____ 7. Relaxation      | g. Has been shown to cause feelings of panic                |
| _____ 8. MyPyramid       | h. Necessary for weight loss                                |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

- T    F    You can undergo stress when you run or walk at a brisk pace.
- T    F    Caffeine is the most widely used drug in the United States.
- T    F    Fear of success is one cause of procrastination.
- T    F    Some artificial sweeteners may actually increase your appetite for sugar.
- T    F    “Sleeping in” should eliminate the effects of sleep deprivation.



**MULTIPLE CHOICE**

*Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.*

1. Stress is the body's attempt to adjust to a
  - a. crisis.
  - b. test.
  - c. demand.
  - d. situation.
2. One way to counteract procrastination is by
  - a. taking a cat nap.
  - b. eating complex carbohydrates.
  - c. using the five-minute plan.
  - d. all of the above.
3. The simplest way to put some sense back into your eating routine is by
  - a. avoiding fats.
  - b. eating breakfast.
  - c. drinking water.
  - d. taking vitamins.
4. A typical 12-ounce can of soda contains
  - a. a generous supply of nutrients.
  - b. five grams of fat.
  - c. ten teaspoons of sugar.
  - d. all of the above.
5. Exercise has been shown to
  - a. improve self-esteem.
  - b. increase well-being.
  - c. reduce depression.
  - d. all of the above.

**REFLECTION**

*Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.*

1. Is procrastination a problem for you? If so, which of the four common sources (see page 79) lies at the heart of your procrastination? If you don't procrastinate often, explain the techniques you use to avoid this common pitfall.

2. Do you use relaxation techniques such as exercise, yoga, or the methods outlined in this chapter? If so, explain which technique you use and its effect on your level of stress. If not, explain which relaxation technique seems to be the most practical for your purposes.
3. This chapter contains a great deal of information about eating, sleeping, and exercise. Cite a specific fact or technique you read in this chapter that you think will be the most useful in your own efforts at managing stress and explain why.

**IT'S YOUR Q**

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

**VOCABULARY IN ACTION**

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

**SAY WHAT?**

*From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.*

I'm a perfectionist. I'm pretty much *insatiable*. I feel there's so many things I can improve on.

—Serena Williams (1981-), American tennis player

1. *insatiable*                      always hungry                      never satisfied                      impatient

The ideals which have lighted my way, and time after time have given me new courage to face life cheerfully, have been Kindness, Beauty, and Truth. The *trite* subjects of human efforts—possessions, outward success, luxury—have always seemed to me *contemptible*.

—Albert Einstein (1879–1955), German-born American theoretical physicist

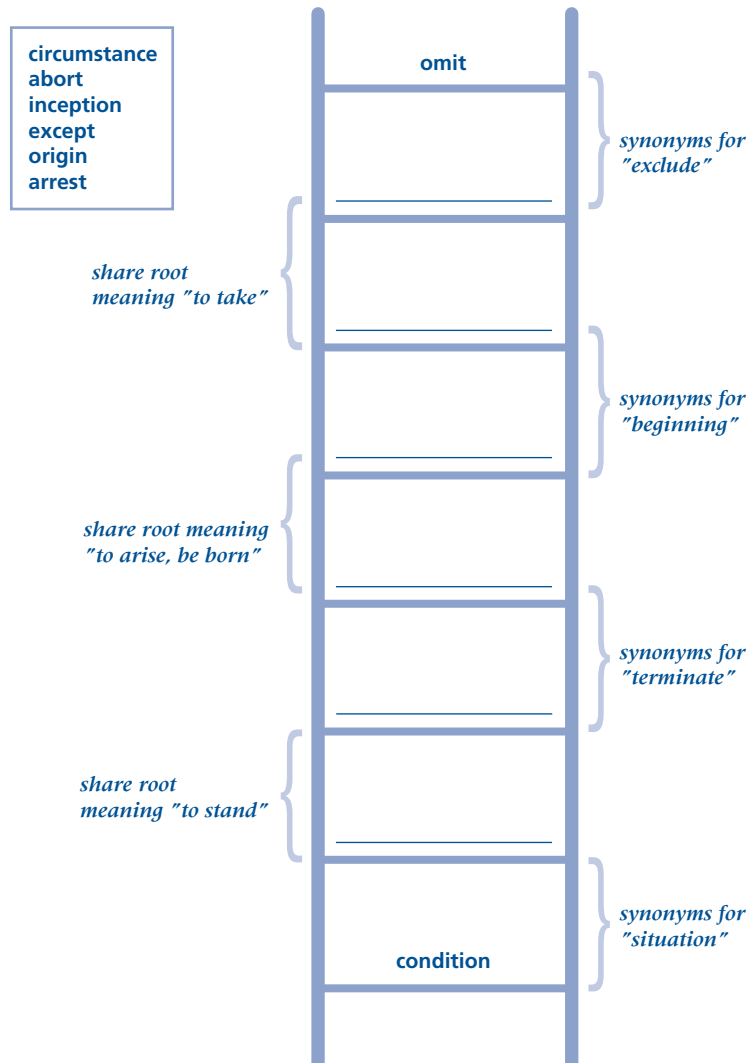
- |                        |           |            |          |
|------------------------|-----------|------------|----------|
| 2. <i>trite</i>        | concise   | precise    | stale    |
| 3. <i>contemptible</i> | temporary | despicable | probable |

Insult: a *callous* or *contemptuous* statement or action; a verbal attack upon another person.  
—dictionary definition

- |                        |             |               |          |
|------------------------|-------------|---------------|----------|
| 4. <i>callous</i>      | thoughtless | unfeeling     | careless |
| 5. <i>contemptuous</i> | disdainful  | inconsiderate | impolite |

**VOCAB-U-LADDER**

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

### **Circadian rhythm** It's not about bugs with drums

**circadian rhythm** sə-r-kā' dē-ən rīth-əm *n.* A daily rhythmic activity cycle, based on 24-hour intervals, that is exhibited by many organisms.\*

The similarity between the words *cicada* and *circadian* can sometimes create confusion, especially since many *cicadas* (such as the erroneously named “17-year locusts”) appear and disappear with a predictable rhythm. But the “r” in *circa*- and the “i” in *-dian* make all the difference and provide some helpful clues to the meaning of circadian that even the casual word sleuth may be able to uncover. If you know Spanish, for example, then you're already well on your way to understanding *circadian*. The *-dian* in *circadian* has the same origin as the *dias* in *buenas dias* or the *dia-* in the English word *diary*. In each case, it means “day.” (A diary is a daily record.) And what about *circa*? It shares the same root with *circle* and in this case means “around or about.” (When we say “*circa* 1934” we mean around that particular year.) So *circadian* simply means “about a day.” Adding the word *rhythm* from the Greek word *rhuthmos* for “recurring motion” just makes it clearer that our *circadian* rhythms happen over and over again.\*\*

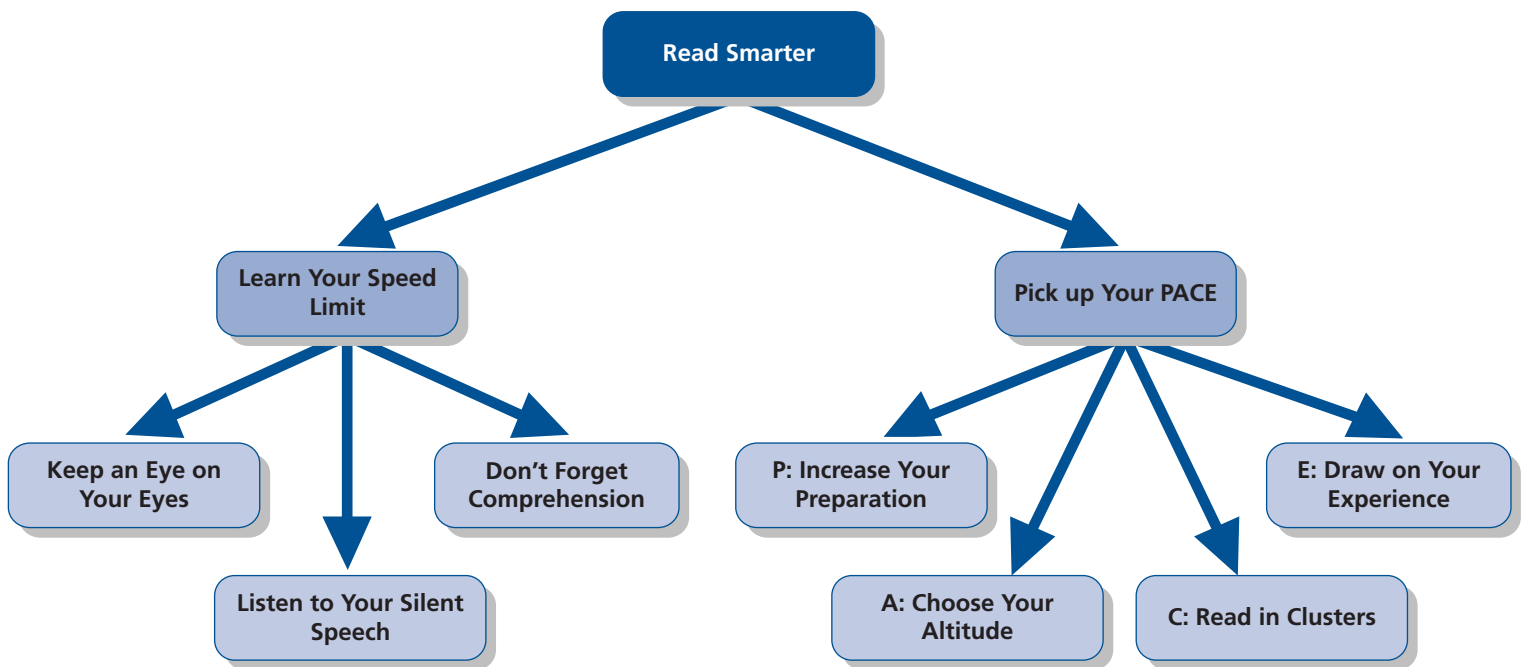
\* Adapted from “circadian rhythm.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/circadian+rhythm> (accessed May 26, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from “circadian rhythm.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/circadian+rhythm> (accessed May 26, 2009).; “circadian, a.” *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=circadian> (accessed May 26, 2009).; “rhythm.” *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=rhythm> (accessed May 26, 2009).; “rhythm.” *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; “rhythm.” *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50040061> (accessed May 26, 2009).

# Gaining Information

You can't hold onto something if you don't have it to begin with. Before you can retain and explain information, you need to *gain* it. That means ferreting out and understanding the most valuable facts, ideas, and concepts that you encounter in lectures and texts, on websites, in discussions, and even in images and firsthand observations. This part helps you to:

- 5 Read Smarter**
- 6 Extend Your Word Frontier**
- 7 Use Questions to Zero in on Valuable Information**
- 8 Learn Through Multiple Channels**



*When we read too fast or too slowly, we understand nothing.*

**Blaise Pascal** (1623–1662),  
French philosopher, mathematician, and scientist

# Read Smarter

At this point in your life, a chapter about reading might seem as helpful as a chapter about tying your shoes. After all, you've been reading for most of your life. What else could you possibly need to know? Actually, you may be surprised. This chapter explains how to:

- **Learn Your Speed Limit**
- **Pick up Your PACE**



How can you improve your reading?

The simple question “How can I improve my reading?” does not have a simple answer. There are many different purposes in reading, many different reading techniques that can be used, and many ways in which reading can be “improved.” However, when students ask this question, it usually means “How can I speed up my reading so I can finish my homework in half the time with high comprehension and almost complete retention?” There is no easy way to do so, despite the numerous brochures, newspaper and magazine articles, and television programs that extol the marvels of “speed-reading.” To truly improve your reading, you need to learn your own speed limit and then, given that limit, develop ways that you can sensibly, naturally pick up your pace.

## Learn Your Speed Limit

Why can't you read at the rates that the speed-reading advocates promise?

Many students, as well as the general public, are convinced that speed-reading is an easy-to-learn technique that can be used with any page of print. Unfortunately, speed-reading is virtually useless to anyone who desires to learn from the printed page. It's certainly possible for you to read faster. But slowed down by your eyes, by your vocal cords, and by the necessity to both comprehend and consolidate what you've read, you'll never be able to come close to some of the spectacular claims that the speed-readers make.

## Keep an Eye on Your Eyes

SELF-DIRECTION

What do recent experiments tell us about how we read?

State-of-the-art computerized measurement of eye movements during reading confirm what reading researchers have long suggested. Your eyes don't glide along the words in a fluid motion. They jerk their way across the page, alternating fast, forward movements with momentary pauses. These pauses (called *fixations*) are absolutely necessary, for they allow the eyes to focus on the type, to get a clear image of it. When the eyes are in motion (known as *saccades*), they record nothing but a blur on the retinas.

What sort of speeds do speed-readers claim?

Keep this in mind as you consider the claims of speed-reading courses, some of which boast graduates who read thousands of words per minute, always making the point, “with nearly 100 percent comprehension.”

What is the basic premise of speed-reading?

The basic premise of speed-reading advocates is this: The eye is able to see a vast number of words in one fixation. Some advocates say the eye can see phrases at a glance; others say entire lines; still others say paragraphs at a time; and a few say the eye can see an entire page at a glance. Get out your calculator and let's look at the facts.

## IT'S YOUR Q

How fast can a better-than-average reader read?

What is Cunningham's attitude toward speed-reading rates?

Eye-movement photography shows that the average college student makes about four eye fixations per second. Good readers take in an average of about six to eight usable letters per fixation: four letters to the left of the center of fixation and five or six letters to the right of the center of fixation.<sup>1</sup> (Figure 5.1 shows the fixations of a typical reader.) There is no evidence, by the way, that anyone's eyes can see a whole line of type "at a glance." So any advice to run your eyes down the middle of a page or column in order to speed-read the page is nonsense. All you'll get is a word or two from each line—a handful of scrambled words.

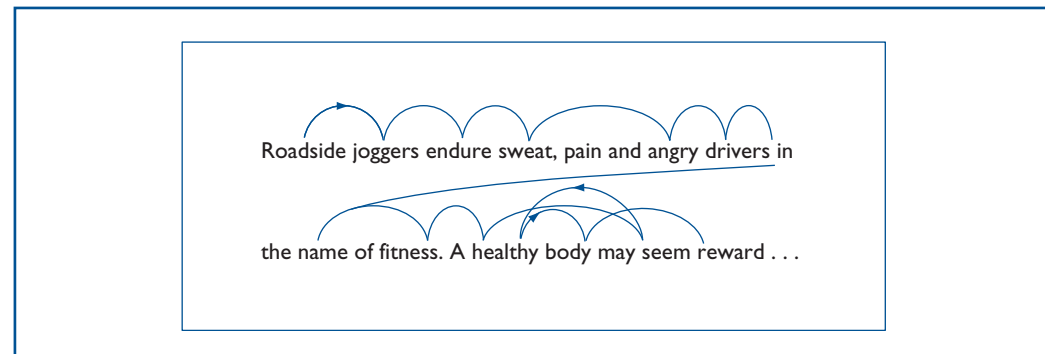
These facts indicate that only a most unusual person can see 10 words per second (2.5 words per fixation at 4 fixations per second). So, in sixty seconds it is arithmetically possible for the eye to take in 600 words. This calculation does not include the time needed to return the eyes to the beginning of each line and to turn pages. It also doesn't include *regressions*, the regular, imperceptible backtracks the eyes make (10 to 15 percent of the time) to reread a word or phrase. Nor does it allow time for comprehension and consolidation. These factors make some speed-reading claims sound even more absurd, if not outright unethical. In fact, in 1998, the United States Federal Trade Commission charged a well-known, heavily advertised speed-reading system with making claims for their products that were false or unsubstantiated.<sup>2</sup>

Anne Cunningham, a professor of education at the University of California at Berkeley, is not quite as optimistic. She points to tests that put the speed-reading ceiling at closer to 300 words per minute.<sup>3</sup> Then what of the claims of speed-reading entrepreneurs, who trumpet per-minute totals in the thousands or tens of thousands of words? "People who

**Figure 5.1**  
Typical Eye Fixations  
Through a Reading  
Passage

The eyes move in fits and starts—both backward and forward—through a textbook page.

Source: Kevin Larson, "The Science of Word Recognition," Microsoft typography, available at <http://www.microsoft.com/typography/ctfonts/WordRecognition.aspx>.



<sup>1</sup>John M. Henderson and Fernanada Ferreira, "Effects of Foveal Processing Difficulty on the Perceptual Span in Reading: Implications for Attention and Eye Movement Control," *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Learning, Memory and Cognition* 16, no. 3 (1990): pp. 417–429.

<sup>2</sup>Quackwatch, <http://www.quackwatch.org/02ConsumerProtection/FTCActions/trudeau.html>.

<sup>3</sup>Quoted in Blair Anthony Robertson, "Speed-reading Between the Lines," *Sacramento Bee* (October 21, 1999), p. A1.

purport to read 10,000 words a minute,” Cunningham explains, “are doing what we call skimming.”<sup>4</sup>

## Listen to Your Silent Speech

SELF-DIRECTION

### What is vocalization?

There’s another factor that affects reading speed: your voice. Reading experts refer to this as *vocalizing* or “silent speech.” It seems that all of us use our voices in one way or another as we read, even when we’re reading silently. Some of us move our lips, some of us actually whisper the words, while others move only our vocal cords or simply think the sound of each word as we read it. Here’s a case where the speed-reading advocates may be right. Vocalizing actually *does* seem to decrease your reading speed. But they overlook a key point: No matter what form our vocalization takes, it appears to be an important part of the reading process. This means speed-reading courses that train you to resist vocalizing may be interfering with your ability to understand and remember what you’re reading. Recent reading research suggests that as you’re silently reading a word, you’re simultaneously sounding it out. This provides a kind of double-check for each word as you identify it visually. Your eyes attempt to identify the word while the sounds you process confirm that you’ve identified that word correctly. And if for some reason you aren’t able to recognize the word visually, the sounds may jump in and identify it for you instead.<sup>5</sup>

### What is Hall’s opinion on vocalization?

Robert A. Hall, Jr., an internationally known linguist, has this to say about vocalization, or silent speech:

It is commonly thought that we can read and write in complete silence, without any speech taking place. True, many people learn to suppress the movements of their organs of speech when they read, so that no sound comes forth; but nevertheless, inside the brain, the impulses for speech are still being sent forth through the nerves, and only the actualization of these impulses is being inhibited on the muscular level, as has been shown by numerous experiments. No act of reading takes place without a certain amount of subvocalization, as this kind of “silent speech” is called, and we normally subvocalize, when we write, also.<sup>6</sup>

### What did Edfeldt’s research conclude about “silent speech”?

Åke Edfeldt, of the University of Stockholm Institute of Reading Research, studied vocalization with a team of medical doctors who used electrodes to detect movement in the lips, tongues, and vocal cords of volunteer readers. After exhaustive medical tests, Edfeldt concluded:

<sup>4</sup>Ibid.

<sup>5</sup>Carol Fraser, “Reading Fluency in a Second Language,” *UTP Journals* 56 (1999).

<sup>6</sup>Robert A. Hall Jr., *New Ways to Learn a Foreign Language* (New York: Bantam Books, 1966), pp. 28–29.

On the basis of the present experimental results, earlier theories concerning silent speech in reading may be judged. These theories often appear to have been constructed afterwards, in order to justify some already adopted form of remedial reading. In opposition to most of these theories, we wish to claim that silent speech occurs in the reading of all persons.

In any case, it seems quite clear that all kinds of training aimed at removing silent speech should be discarded.<sup>7</sup>

What does more recent research say about Edfeldt's conclusions?

Edfeldt's conclusions, now half a century old, have been borne out repeatedly since then. In fact, engineers at the U.S. National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) have recently embraced silent speech as a potential communications breakthrough. By attaching sensors under a subject's chin, they are able to do more than just measure the presence of silent speech; they are able to understand it. According to Chuck Jorgensen, a member of the NASA team, "A person using the subvocal system thinks of phrases and talks to himself so quietly, it cannot be heard, but the tongue and vocal cords do receive speech signals from the brain."<sup>8</sup>

## Don't Forget Comprehension

SELF-DIRECTION

What does recent research tell us about how the mind handles words?

Even if you could take in words at a phenomenal rate, would it do any good? Probably not. After all, the primary reason for reading is comprehension. Just because you *see* doesn't mean you *understand*. Research at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology concluded that "even the skilled reader has considerable difficulty forming a perception of more than one word at a time."<sup>9</sup> What's more, as researchers Just and Carpenter discovered, your eyes continue to fixate on a word not simply until you *recognize* that word but until you *understand* it.<sup>10</sup>

Why does it seem that we read words in rapid succession?

But how can this be? After all, most of us get the feeling as we read that we are taking in words in a smooth and rapid sequence with no fits or starts. In that respect, reading is almost like watching a movie. Although each film frame is a still picture, you "see" motion and action when the film is projected at a rate of twenty-four frames per second. Similarly, words projected on the brain at the rate of seven or eight words per second give the impression of living, moving ideas. Nevertheless, the brain is "viewing" only one word at a time.

<sup>7</sup>Åke W. Edfeldt, *Silent Speech and Silent Reading* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1960), p. 154.

<sup>8</sup>"NASA Develops System to Computerize Silent, 'Subvocal Speech,'" available at [http://www.nasa.gov/home/hqnews/2004/mar/HQ\\_04093\\_subvocal\\_speech.html](http://www.nasa.gov/home/hqnews/2004/mar/HQ_04093_subvocal_speech.html).

<sup>9</sup>Paul A. Kollers, "Experiments in Reading," *Scientific American* 227, no. 1 (July 1972): pp. 84–91.

<sup>10</sup>M. A. Just and P. A. Carpenter, *Theory of Reading: From Eye Fixations to Comprehension*, " *Psychological Review* 87, no. 4 (1980): pp. 329–354.

## Pick Up Your PACE

### IT'S YOUR Q

With all of these factors putting the brakes on your reading speed, how can you ever hope to read faster? Your hope lies not in lengthening your saccades, shortening your fixations, or even lessening vocalization. Your best chance of success depends on the all-important comprehension step. If you can reduce the time it takes to extract meaning from what you're reading, you'll boost your comprehension and increase your speed, the very essence in almost everybody's book of improving your reading. You can do this—you can pick up your PACE—by increasing your preparation, choosing your altitude, reading in clusters, and drawing on your experience.

### P: Increase Your Preparation

OVERVIEWING

Why is it risky to begin reading when you aren't well prepared?

Although it might seem to save time in the short run, it's unwise in the long term to begin reading without investing some effort to warm up first. Beginning to read unprepared will often mean that you have to stop and reread a portion that was unclear, or, worse, that you will overlook or misunderstand crucial information because you weren't properly prepared for it. What does preparing for your reading entail? The bare-bones approach is a quick overview of the assignment. If you want to increase your preparation, try following the example of a navigator, a surgeon, or an investigative reporter.

What does it mean to read like a navigator?

#### Read Like a Navigator

A good navigator looks at the whole map before plotting a course. In the same way, you should prepare for a reading assignment by conducting a quick overview of your reading "territory." (Chapter 10 discusses this approach in greater detail.) In most cases, that means understanding captions, headings, subheadings, and portions of paragraphs well enough to locate key concepts in the chapter. This kind of overview provides you with the lay of the land. It helps you to pick out landmarks in an assignment, enables you to see the relative importance of each part to the whole, and places you in a powerful position to organize information more readily and rapidly once you begin exploring the reading landscape in earnest.

How do you read like a surgeon?

#### Read Like a Surgeon

Think of the classic operating room scene that you've witnessed in countless movies and TV shows. The surgeon, face covered by a mask, eyes concentrating on the task at hand, has a nearby tray of tools, a carefully arranged array of shiny medical instruments, ready in case she should need them. The great English historian Edward Gibbon (1737–1794), author of *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, took a similar approach that

he called “the great recall.” Before reading a new book, and before beginning to write on any subject, Gibbon would spend hours alone in his study, or he would take a long walk alone to recall everything that he knew about the subject. In a sense, like a surgeon, he was assembling his mental tools, preparing them for his intellectual operation. Gibbon’s system was highly successful. His old ideas were brought to the forefront of his mind so they could be used to understand new ideas and new information. Nearly two centuries later, reading research provides scientific support for Gibbon’s method. His activation of prior relevant knowledge has been found to enhance comprehension.<sup>11</sup>

### Read Like a Reporter

How do you read like a reporter?

Good investigative reporters tackle a story, backed up by research, armed with questions, and looking for answers. Although Daniel Webster (1782–1852) was an American statesman and orator, like a top-notch reporter, he placed a premium on this kind of preparation. After scanning the book’s table of contents, reading the preface, and flipping through some of its pages, Webster would make lists of (1) questions that he expected to be answered in the book, (2) the knowledge he expected to gain from his reading, and (3) where the knowledge would take him. The three lists provided a strong prescription for preparation. They guided him through the book and ensured that his attention and concentration were intense.

## A: Choose Your Altitude

REFRAMING

What does altitude refer to when it comes to reading?

It’s a waste of time to read everything with the same attention to detail. Different texts and different situations require different types of reading. There are some situations in which simply scanning will do, in which you’re content to take the 35,000-foot view of a reading assignment, just enough to spot a name, date, word, or phrase, without paying any real attention to its meaning. There are others in which you’ll want to fly in a little closer, to clip the treetops, to go beyond the faint outline of letters and skim the text to glean the meanings that the letters hold. Skimming at this level comes in handy if you’re searching for clues in your text or trying to gain the gist of an article or book. And, finally, there are occasions when you want to be right there at ground level, grasping the meaning of every word and combining them to comprehend each sentence, paragraph, and page. Of course, the closer you get to the ground, the more information you glean. But the closer you get, the slower you go.<sup>12</sup> In other words, it’s a tradeoff. That’s why it’s important to establish your purpose in reading a particular passage and then choose your altitude accordingly.

<sup>11</sup>P. Carrell, J. Devine, and D. Eskey (eds.), *Interactive Approaches to Second Language Reading* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1988), p. 4

<sup>12</sup>R. P. Carver, *Reading Rate: A Review of Research and Theory* (San Diego, CA: Academic Press, 1990).

When does scanning at 35,000 feet come in handy?

### Scan at 35,000 Feet to Look for Specific Words

If you want to find a specific name, date, word, or phrase in a textbook or an article, you need to focus on individual words. Searching may be used because it is recognition, not comprehension, that will give you the answer. To ensure that you do not overlook the word or fact you seek, concentrate on it, keeping it in mind as your eyes run over the pages. Concentration will trigger your mind to pick it out of the sea of words. Once you have located the specific word or fact, pause and read the sentence or paragraph surrounding it at a normal rate to make sure, through context, that you have found what you were looking for.

What is the purpose of skimming at the treetops?

### Skim at the Treetops to Search for Clues or Get the Gist

When you are seeking specific information but do not know in what words the information may appear or when you are looking over a passage or chapter to glean its basic idea, you must use a slower reading method. In this case, you're looking for more than just characters; you're searching for meaning.

How do you use this kind of skimming to search for clues?

In this kind of searching, you must infer the answer. For example, after reading an article about Paul Bunyan, a legendary giant lumberjack and folk hero, a student was asked a question about Paul Bunyan's birthplace. The answer was Canada, yet nowhere in the article did the word *Canada* appear. The answer had to be inferred from a sentence that stated that Paul Bunyan was born at the headwaters of the St. Lawrence River. Because the student discovered on a map that the headwaters are in Canada, she could answer the question.

How do you use treetop skimming to get the gist of an article or book?

To get the gist of an article, read both introduction and summary rapidly. Then skim any paragraphs that have topic sentences indicating that they contain important data. To get the gist of a book, look at its table of contents, or select a chapter with a title related to your topic, and skim it for its outstanding ideas. This skimming method can help when you have a term paper to write. After you've arrived at a list of books that seem related to your topic, skim through each to eliminate those that are not pertinent and to keep those that are. Obviously, you would waste time and energy if you attempted to read all the books on your list. But if you skim them instead, you should glean just enough meaning to determine which of the books will require closer reading.

When should you read instead of scan or skim?

### Read at Ground Level with the Goal of Comprehension

With scanning, you look only for a letter combination, whether it is a particular word or a name. With skimming, you seek out meaning, either to ferret out clues from a chapter or passage or to gain the gist of an article or book. The majority of the reading you'll do, however, will be what most of us associate with normal, ordinary reading. You'll be gleaning the meaning of individual words and then piecing them together into complete thoughts. Your goal will be complete comprehension. The influential educational psychologist and reading researcher Ronald Carver called this ground-level reading *reading* in order to distinguish it from scanning and skimming, both of which



he considered types of reading as well. How fast does a typical college student read? Carver measured the rate at roughly three hundred standard words per minute, where a standard word is considered to be six letters long.<sup>13</sup> As you'll see, reading in clusters (see below) and drawing from experience (see page 117) may help you to pick up the pace of your normal reading, but in general, if you are reading for the purpose of comprehension, you're going to be reading relatively slowly. That's why it helps to be selective about when you settle down to read, scanning or skimming instead when you can.

## C: Read in Clusters

CLUSTERING

SUMMARIZING

How does clustering relate to the way in which we learn to read?

We group our letters into words without even thinking about it. Remember back to when you were first learning to read, how you sounded out a word one letter at a time until you ultimately came to recognize a growing number of words without having to break them down into their component parts? Given the size of the textbook assignments you probably face today, trying to understand what you're reading one letter at a time would be almost unimaginable. But is reading an assignment one word at a time all that much better? If you consider a ten-page assignment with an average of three hundred words per page, that's thirty thousand words to keep track of and comprehend.

How can clustering be used to help improve your comprehension?

Although, as we've learned, you can't really transcend the eye's limitations of one or two words per fixation, you can make it easier to grasp what you've read by clustering those words into larger and thus fewer groups. If instead of moving word by word, you work on understanding your assignments a phrase at a time, a paragraph at a time, and even a page at a time, you'll find that your level of comprehension improves considerably.

What role can intonation play in helping you read better?

### Read a Phrase at a Time

As we've seen, research has shown that some level of vocalization is inevitable. So, rather than denying it, why not embrace it? Why not use it to improve your reading instead of interfering with it? The most efficient use of vocalization, to read faster with a high degree of comprehension, is through *intonation*, which is the rise and fall of the voice in speaking. Intonation provides a natural means for combining individual words into meaningful mental "bites" that are a little larger than the word-sized ones we're used to taking. To use this system, read silently but with expression. In doing so, you will be replacing the important *rhythm*, *stress*, *emphasis*, and *pauses* that were taken out when the words were put into written form. This allows groups of words to hold together in clusters in a way they couldn't when the expression was removed. To make silent intonation a regular habit, start by reading aloud in the privacy of your room. Spend ten or fifteen minutes on one chapter from a novel. Read it with exaggerated expression, as if you were reading a part in a dramatic play. This will establish your

<sup>13</sup>Ibid.



own speech patterns in your mind, so that you will “hear” them more readily when you read silently. Using this sort of intonation encourages what is known as “reading fluency.” By naturally arranging the words in meaningful bites, it enables you to decode passages more quickly and automatically, allowing your brain to focus on all-important comprehension instead.<sup>14</sup>

### Read a Paragraph at a Time

Intonation helps you cluster words into meaningful phrases. You can expand those clusters to paragraph size by stopping at the end of each textbook paragraph to summarize and condense it down to a single sentence. To do this, you must understand the functions of the three main types of sentences: the topic or controlling-idea sentence, the supporting sentences, and the concluding sentence. Figure 5.2 shows these three types of sentences in an actual paragraph.

How do you read when you approach an assignment in terms of paragraphs?

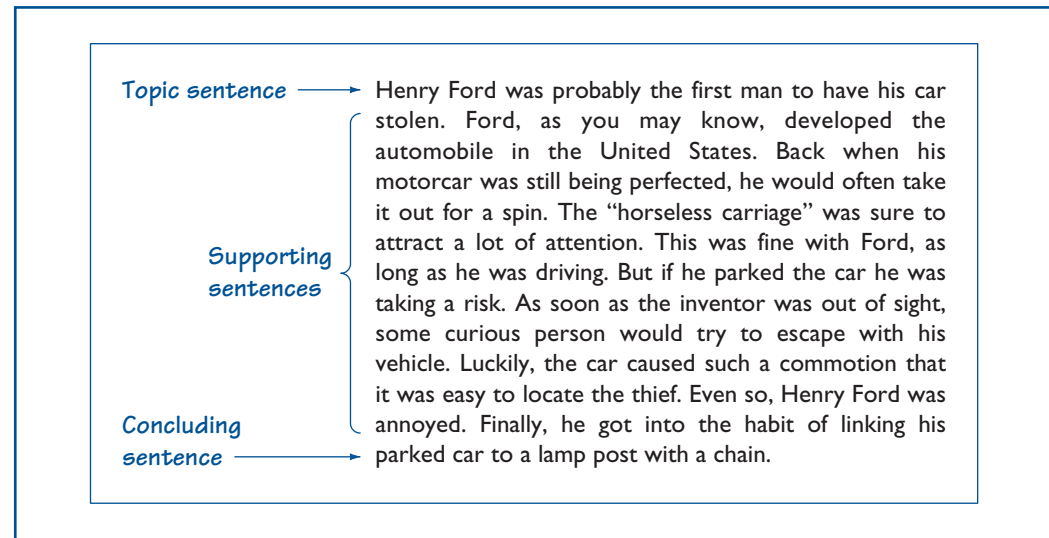
What is the purpose of the topic sentence?

What role do the supporting sentences play?

The *topic* sentence announces the topic (or the portion of the topic) to be dealt with in the paragraph. Although the topic sentence may appear anywhere in the paragraph, it is usually first—and for good reason. This sentence provides the focus for the writer while writing and for the reader while reading.

The bulk of an expository paragraph is made up of *supporting* sentences, which help explain or prove the main topic. These sentences present facts, reasons, examples, definitions, comparisons, contrasts, and other pertinent details. They are important because they sell the ideas.

**Figure 5.2**  
The Three Elements of an Expository Paragraph



<sup>14</sup>Carol Fraser, “Reading Fluency in a Second Language,” *UTP Journals* 56 (1999).

What is the function of the concluding sentence?

How does it help to understand the three basic sentence types?

The last sentence of a textbook paragraph is likely to be a *concluding* sentence. It is used to sum up a discussion, to emphasize a point, or to restate all or part of the topic sentence so as to bring the paragraph to a close.

An understanding of these three sentence types leads in turn to an understanding of each paragraph as a whole. Suddenly, instead of viewing things in terms of words, phrases, or sentences, you're clustering by paragraph, improving your comprehension and even your speed as a result.

### IT'S YOUR Q

#### Read a Page at a Time

Imagine the embarrassing predicament of Thomas Babington Macaulay (1800–1859), a learned English statesman, historian, and poet and author of *The History of England*, which when it was published actually outsold all books except the Bible. Macaulay had been reading voraciously since the age of three. But after consuming shelf after shelf of books, he suddenly came to a discouraging realization: Although he understood every word of every book he'd read, he was often unable to summarize the ideas presented or even describe, in general terms, what the writer had written. Macaulay described his solution to this problem as follows:

At the foot of every page I read I stopped and obliged myself to give an account of what I had read on that page. At first I had to read it three or four times before I got my mind firmly fixed. But I compelled myself to comply with the plan, until now, after I have read a book through once, I can almost recite it from the beginning to the end.

What was Macaulay's simple solution?

There's something very basic, honest, and refreshing in the Macaulay way. His simple solution was to make the page his fundamental unit of meaning. There are no complicated formulas to follow. You simply stop at the bottom of a page and ask yourself, "In brief, what did the writer say on this page?" And as you'll see in Chapter 11, clustering by page is also a bedrock technique in reviewing your textbook assignments.

### E: Draw on Your Experience

#### CLUSTERING

How would lack of experience affect your reading rate?

Think how long it would take to read a chapter if you had to look up every word in the dictionary. Not just multisyllabic fifty-cent words. Every single word. Or what if a casual reference to "freedom of speech" or "Pearl Harbor" or "1984" or "Judas" sent you rushing off to the library in search of an explanation? At that rate, a single assignment might take days to read and complete.

How does your experience come into play as you read?

Luckily, even difficult assignments don't normally take days to read. That's because you can count on a certain level of experience each time you begin reading. The definitions of words you might have struggled with in elementary school have long since

become hard-wired in your brain. You added more in high school and continue to add words as you go through college. You read them, unconsciously look them up in your mind's internal dictionary, and keep moving. A maneuver that might have taken minutes if you actually had to flip through the pages of a hard-copy dictionary or surf through the screens of an online one takes a fraction of a second instead.

What do authors assume?

The same applies to historical or cultural references. Many of them have become part of your personal body of knowledge. Authors know this and can use these references as a kind of shorthand to efficiently express complicated ideas in just a word or two.

How can you increase your experience?

It follows that you can improve both comprehension and speed by minimizing your "lookup time" when you read. The way to do that is by drawing on experience. And the way to increase your experience is to build on your background and to boost your vocabulary.

Why will reading good books improve your reading?

### **Bolster Your Background**

You can improve your reading tremendously by reading good books. The first reason for this is that you'll be getting a lot of practice. Even more important, you'll be storing up a stock of concepts, ideas, events, and names that will lend meaning to your later reading. This kind of information is used surprisingly often. Find books that both interest and challenge you. Once you begin reading, your interests should widen naturally. The more good books you read, the easier reading becomes, because with an expanded background, you can more readily and rapidly understand the ideas and facts in other books.

What does Ausubel point to as the most important prerequisite for learning?

Psychologist David Ausubel says that the most crucial prerequisite for learning is your already established background of knowledge.<sup>15</sup> Ausubel means that to understand what you read, you must interpret it in the light of knowledge (background) you already have. A background is not something you are born with. You accumulate one through both direct and vicarious experiences. The vicarious experiences, of course, are those you acquire by listening, seeing films, and reading books. Always keep in mind what Mark Twain once said: "The man who doesn't read good books has no advantage over the man who can't read them."

What is the relationship between vocabulary and reading speed?

### **Beef Up Your Vocabulary**

The fastest readers, according to Berkeley's Cunningham, have excellent "recognition vocabularies." They not only see words faster; they understand them more quickly.<sup>16</sup> In a precise vocabulary, every word is learned as a concept. You know its ancestry, its principal definition as well as several secondary definitions, its synonyms and the subtle differences among them, and its antonyms. Then, when you encounter the word in

<sup>15</sup>D. R. Ausubel, J. D. Novak, and H. Hanesian, *Educational Psychology: A Cognitive View*, 2nd ed. (New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1978).

<sup>16</sup>Robertson, "Speed-reading Between the Lines," p. A1.

your reading, this vast store of knowledge flashes before you, illuminating the sentence, the paragraph, and the idea the author is trying to convey. This transfer from word to concept to understanding is quick, automatic, and powerful. Maryanne Wolf, the director of Tufts University's Center for Reading and Language Research, put it simply: "The more you know about a word, the faster you can read it."<sup>17</sup> For more on vocabulary building, refer to the next chapter.

## FINAL WORDS

---

### What constitutes victory for readers?

If you're frustrated by the slow pace of your reading, that's understandable. Keep working, and you should steadily improve. We live in a world where everyone wants to get there first. Even so, it pays to remember the famous fable about the tortoise and hare. Slow and steady will often win the race. Fast readers may move through the assignment at a faster pace, but victory comes with comprehension and true understanding, not speed.

<sup>17</sup>"Best Practices: Teaching Fluency with Maryanne Wolf," available at <http://teacher.scholastic.com/reading/bestpractices/fluency/understand.htm>.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

- In a precise vocabulary, every word is learned as a \_\_\_\_\_.  
**concept**                      **synonym**                      **noun**
- The pauses your eyes make as they read are known as \_\_\_\_\_.  
**saccades**                      **fixations**                      **stops**
- Intonation helps you cluster words in terms of meaningful \_\_\_\_\_.  
**phrases**                      **pages**                      **paragraphs**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| ___ 1. Lookup time | a. Encouraged by reading with intonation                   |
| ___ 2. Fixation    | b. Helps you cluster words into meaningful phrases         |
| ___ 3. Rauding     | c. Slows down your overall reading speed                   |
| ___ 4. Fluency     | d. Geared up for a topic by recalling all he knew about it |
| ___ 5. Gibbon      | e. Allows the eyes to focus                                |
| ___ 6. Background  | f. Imperceptible backtracks your eyes make as you read     |
| ___ 7. Regressions | g. Most crucial prerequisite for learning                  |
| ___ 8. Intonation  | h. Carver's term for "normal" reading                      |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

- T    F    There's only one method of skimming.
- T    F    Daniel Webster prepared for reading by drawing up lists.
- T    F    Macaulay's technique is a mainstay of textbook reviewing.
- T    F    Research suggests that as you recognize each word, you sound it out as well.
- T    F    One sign of a speedy reader is a good "recognition vocabulary."

## MULTIPLE CHOICE

*Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.*

1. When your eyes are in motion, the words on the page
  - a. are clearer.
  - b. seem larger.
  - c. are a blur.
  - d. seem smaller.
2. Moving your lips as you read is a form of
  - a. fixation.
  - b. vocalization.
  - c. saccade.
  - d. preparation.
3. The goal when you cluster by paragraphs is to come up with a single, summarizing
  - a. word.
  - b. sentence.
  - c. paragraph.
  - d. idea.
4. Subvocalization is sometimes called
  - a. silent speech.
  - b. skimming.
  - c. saccades.
  - d. undertone.
5. The bulk of an expository paragraph is made up of
  - a. topic sentences.
  - b. supporting sentences.
  - c. concluding sentences.
  - d. prepositional phrases.

## REFLECTION

Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.

1. As the chapter points out, many speed-reading claims can be readily debunked by scientific data. And yet many students still enroll in speed-reading courses. Imagine you have a friend who is thinking of taking a speed-reading course. Write a note to that friend explaining in your own words what you've learned about speed-reading from this chapter.
2. The chapter uses a navigator, a surgeon, and an investigative reporter as three models for reading preparation. Which model seems to suit your particular needs? Explain.
3. Which level of clustering what you read—phrases, paragraphs, pages—seems to be the most promising for improving your reading comprehension? Explain why and how you hope to add it to your reading routine.

## IT'S YOUR Q

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

## VOCABULARY IN ACTION

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

## SAY WHAT?

From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.

We can work together for a better world with men and women of goodwill, those who radiate the *intrinsic* goodness of humankind.

—Wangari Maathai (1940–), Kenyan environmentalist and Nobel Peace Prize Laureate

- |                     |         |           |          |
|---------------------|---------|-----------|----------|
| 1. <i>radiate</i>   | convey  | irradiate | warm up  |
| 2. <i>intrinsic</i> | implied | essential | internal |

Definitions are the guardians of *rationality*, the first line of defense against the *chaos* of mental *disintegration*.

—Ayn Rand (1905–1982), Russian-American novelist and philosopher

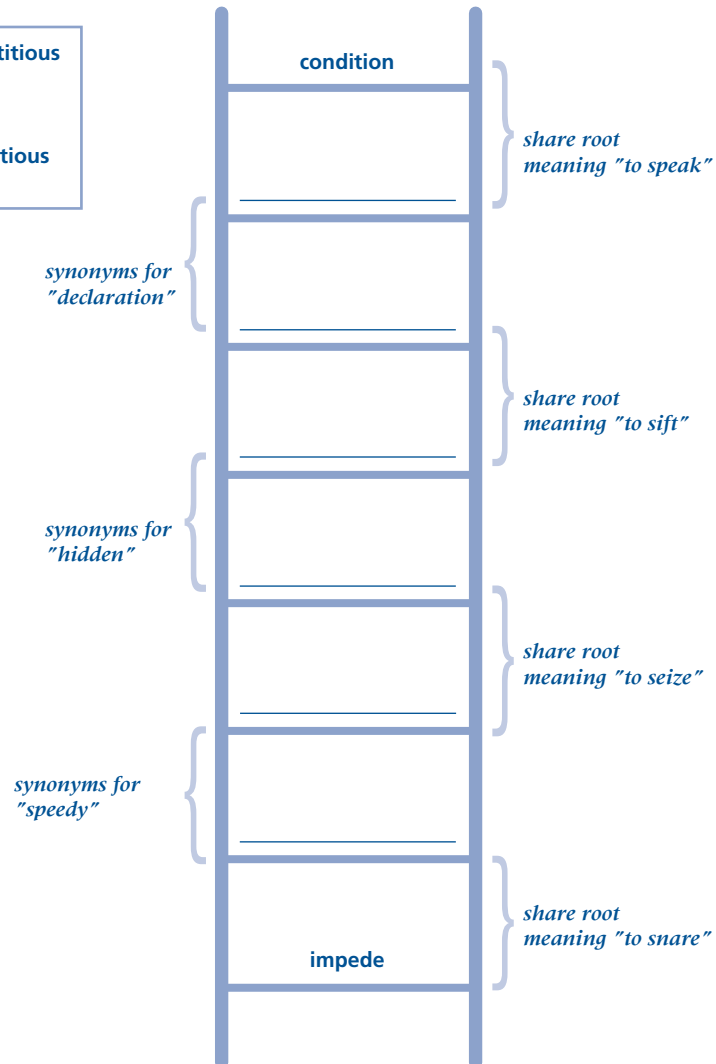
- |                          |               |            |                  |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------|------------------|
| 3. <i>rationality</i>    | reason        | thrift     | limitation       |
| 4. <i>chaos</i>          | complexity    | disorder   | swirl            |
| 5. <i>disintegration</i> | fragmentation | demolition | decentralization |



## VOCAB-U-LADDER

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.

surreptitious  
edict  
rapid  
decree  
expeditious  
secret





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

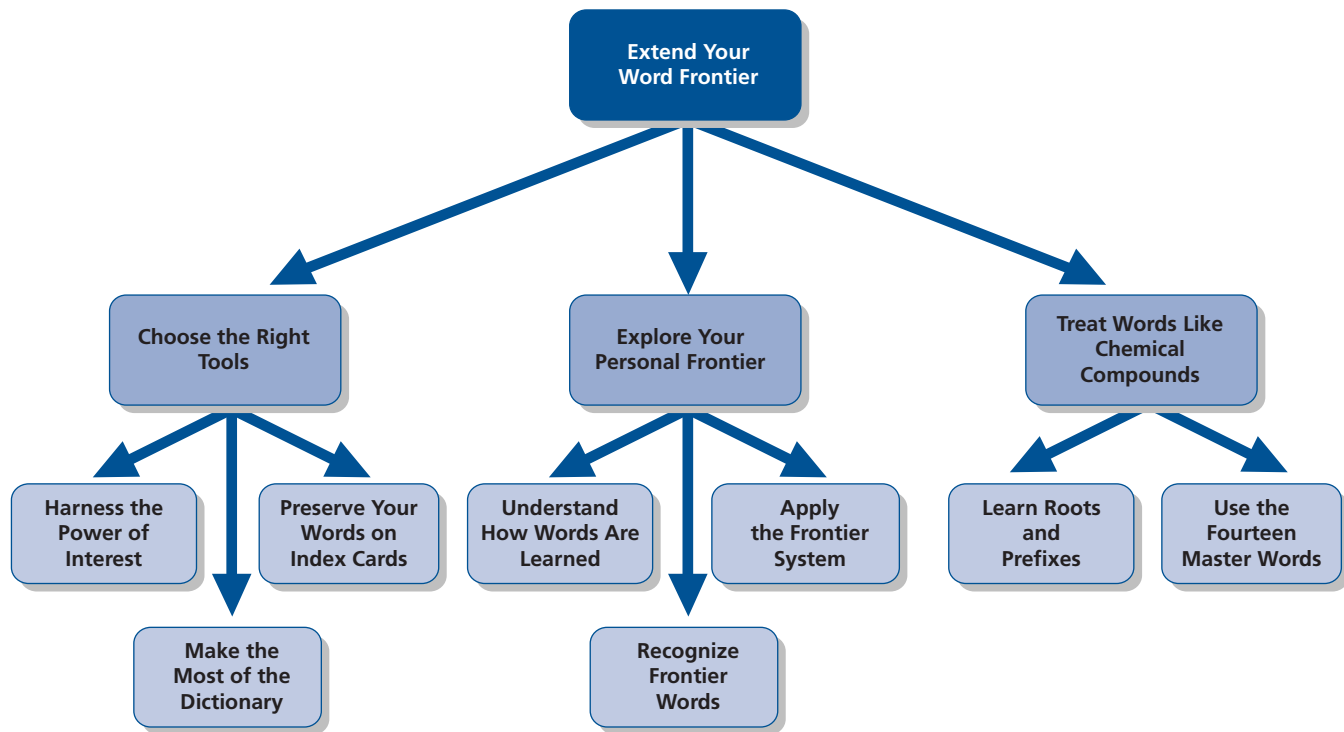
### **Fixation** Where your eyes are glued

**fixation** fik-sā' shən *n.* 1. The act or process of fixing or fixating. 2. An obsessive preoccupation. 3. *Psych.* A strong attachment to a person or thing.\*

Some words have simple meanings and yet a seemingly endless number of interpretations. The *fix* that lies at the root of *fixation* is a classic example. As we've seen, eye fixations are the points during reading where your eyes stop moving long enough to take in a few words of your text. Fix comes from a Latin word for "to fasten," and the "fix" in eye fixations was actually one of the word's earliest meanings in English. When the poet John Lydgate wrote more than 500 years ago, "Hyr eyen she fixethe on him," he was basically talking about the same sort of unwavering gaze that is a part of our reading. Of course, the eyes of the heroine in Lydgate's poem weren't literally fastened to her man any more than your eye fixations physically glue you to your textbook page. This symbolic tone has stuck with subsequent meanings of fix throughout the word's history. When a navigator *gets a fix* on a plane, she is able to attach the craft to a specific location. When you *fix breakfast*, you are taking all the components for the morning meal and putting them together. When you *fix a broken piece of pottery*, you may actually use glue, but you can fix other things with string or a screwdriver instead. If you find yourself *in a fix*, it seems as though you're stuck. And if an addict *craves a fix*, he probably feels as though he needs the drug just to hold him together. Even a *prefix* (literally "fix in front") sticks with the pattern. It's fastened to the beginning a word. Now that you know the story behind fixation, there's a good chance it will stick with you.\*\*

\* Adapted from "fixation." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/fixation> (accessed May 1, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from "fixation." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/fixation> (accessed May 1, 2009).; "fixation." *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=fixation> (accessed May 1, 2009).; "fixation." *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; "fixation." *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50085406> (accessed May 1, 2009).



# Extend Your Word Frontier

*One forgets words as one forgets names. One's vocabulary needs constant fertilizing or it will die.*

**Evelyn Waugh**  
(1903–1966), English writer

Accumulating a large and precise vocabulary can be an adventure. If you're equipped with the right tools and a sense of curiosity, you'll have an exciting journey. And as on most adventures, you'll experience the joy of serendipitous discoveries. When you discover a word you like, increase the pleasure by learning all you can about its ancestry. The territory may seem strange at first, but in time you'll be living in a community of interrelated words where you'll always be genuinely at home. This chapter tells you how to:

- **Choose the Right Tools**
- **Explore Your Personal Word Frontier**
- **Treat Words Like Chemical Compounds**

What is the relationship between thinking and vocabulary?

The quality of our vocabulary can have a direct effect on the quality of our thought. True, some of our thoughts come in images, but we do much of our thinking in words. If we come across a person who is muttering, we're inclined to say, "He's talking to himself," when what we really should be saying is, "He's thinking out loud." Whether spoken or silent, words are the impulses sent over the electrical pathways of the mind. When you're thinking, you're probably talking. It logically follows that the more powerful and precise your vocabulary, the more powerful and precise your thoughts will be.

How can you improve the quality of your vocabulary?

To improve the quality of your vocabulary and with it the quality of your thoughts, you need to choose the right vocabulary-building tools, explore the boundaries of your existing vocabulary, and learn the components that are used for constructing a variety of words.

## Choose the Right Tools

What sort of tools do you need to build your vocabulary?

To build something, you usually need the right tools. One of the great things about building a lasting vocabulary is that it requires so few tools to do so. You don't need to take a class, use computer software, or purchase some other special book or device. All you really require is a decent dictionary and a generous stack of index cards, but above all, you need a genuine interest.

## Harness the Power of Interest

SELF-DIRECTION

What role does interest play in building your vocabulary?

Imagine trying to build something using a power drill and a power saw but without any electricity. It wouldn't work. In the same way, a good dictionary and some index cards are practically useless without the addition of one indispensable tool: your own interest. Interest provides the electricity that powers all learning. In many cases, that interest comes from a motivation to get better grades, a better job, or perhaps to delight your friends, your family, or yourself with your knowledge. In other cases, it may be activated by a fear of ridicule or failure. When it comes to building your vocabulary, your interest can go much deeper. It can come from a desire to make your life richer and more meaningful. A powerful vocabulary can transform the way you view the world, the way you understand others, and the way in which you form your thoughts and express your ideas.

What should you do if you don't already have an interest in words?

But what if you personally don't have an interest in words? Although all of us use words in one form or another to think and communicate, we aren't all born "word people." If words don't already interest you, don't be discouraged. You can cultivate an interest in words, just as you can cultivate concentration (see Chapter 3) or teach yourself to manage stress (see Chapter 4). To encourage your interest in words, seek out the

inspiration and examples of others whose lives have been changed by words, and look to words all around you, even in ordinary places, as potential sparks to activate your own interest.

### Seek Out the Examples of Others

How can developing an interest in words change your life?

Developing an interest in words can change your life. In the case of Malcolm X, that change was dramatic. In fact, it altered the course of American history. In the case of a Depression-era caddy, although the change wasn't as momentous, it made his life richer, not just in terms of money but in his appreciation for the power and pleasure of language.

**Malcolm X** While in a penitentiary, Malcolm X was unable to answer letters from his brother and sister because he could not write a sentence or spell a word. He felt helpless. In his spare time, he listened to lectures by Bimbi, a self-educated black man.

What fascinated me with him most of all was that he was the first man I had ever seen command total respect with his words.<sup>1</sup>

Other men commanded respect because of their strength or cunning, the number of robberies they had committed, and so forth. But Bimbi was different. Malcolm X developed a strong desire to be like Bimbi—to learn and use words. He reasoned that the best way to learn words was by studying a dictionary. So he borrowed one from the prison school and took it to his cell. He described his first encounter:

In my slow, painstaking, ragged handwriting, I copied into my tablet everything printed on that first page. I believe it took me a day. Then, aloud, I read back to myself, everything I'd written. Over and over, aloud, to myself, I read my own handwriting. I woke up the next morning thinking about those words.<sup>2</sup>

Either Malcolm X shaped his life around words, or the words took over and shaped his life. Either way, he was a winner—he became a “thinking man.” He had words with which to think.

Malcolm X went on to become an outstanding leader, preacher, and public speaker. He even lectured to law students at Harvard University. With a wide and exact vocabulary, he was able to express his thoughts and ideas forcefully and intelligently. He earned and commanded respect all over the world. Sadly, his life was cut short by an assassin's bullet in 1965.

<sup>1</sup>Alex Haley and Malcolm X, *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (New York: Ballantine Books, 1964), p. 428.

<sup>2</sup>Ibid.

**A Caddy's Tale** During the Great Depression of the 1930s, jobs were hard to find. Caddying at the nearby golf course provided some income for high school boys growing up in Branford, Connecticut. Among the caddies, one fellow always got bigger tips than the others. When asked by a friend, he reluctantly divulged his secret.

On the golf course as well as on the street, one common topic of conversation is the weather. It often begins like this: The golfer would say, “Do you think it will rain this morning?” Almost all the caddies would answer “Yep!” or “Nope!” That would be the end of the conversation. But this one fellow had a better scenario. He’d say, “I’m optimistic; there’s a bit of blue in the sky. It won’t rain.” If he were to predict rain, he’d say, “I’m pessimistic today. The clouds are gathering. It’ll rain.” The magic, of course, was in the words *optimistic* and *pessimistic*. These are college-type words, and they made the caddy the mental equal of the golfer. Psychologically, the golfer wouldn’t degrade himself in the eyes of the caddy by tipping him the mere minimum. When his friend learned his secret, he tried it out, and it worked. The story sounds mercenary, but there’s a more important dimension; that is, using college-type words creates within you a healthy self-concept—yes, self-esteem.

### Look for Interest in Ordinary Places

Of course, you certainly don’t have to serve time in prison or even work on a golf course in order to develop an interest in words. There are words all around you that have the potential to ignite your own personal interest. You just need to keep your eyes open and your mind engaged.

In print or online, newspapers are a prime and readily accessible source for the clever use of words. Newspaper copy editors, who spend much of their time adding punctuation and correcting grammar, have a real flair for words and a genuine love of language. It is in writing headlines that they get a chance to exhibit their superior skills and even have a little fun in the process. When you catch on to what these copy editors are up to, your interest in words is likely to increase, and with it a desire to strengthen your own vocabulary. To illustrate, the following came from a paper in Springfield, Illinois:

Woman Who Wouldn’t Wear Pants Wins Suit

A headline in an Atlanta paper dismissed the notion that children pay attention to height when choosing their friends:

Short-Kid Stereotypes Found to Be Tall Tales

There is nothing earthshaking in these headlines—only the personal delight that comes when you see and appreciate what the writer is doing, using words such as “suit” and “tall” that we’d expect to find in an article about clothes and height but then turning our expectations on their heads. Pick up a paper or go online and find some

Where can you look for words to ignite your interest?

How can newspapers boost your interest in words?

examples for yourself. Once you become aware of these headlines, it's like discovering treasure that's been hidden in plain sight.

Even the writers at the stately *New York Times* seem to enjoy using mind-catching headlines. An article on the popularity of digital cameras was topped off with this ingenious entreaty:

You Ought to Be in Pixels

Here the writer took the old song about Hollywood called "You Ought to Be in Pictures" and puckishly replaced "pictures" with "pixels," which are the tiny dots that make up a digital photograph.

How do you acquire an interest in words?

The question now is how to acquire an interest in words. The creative use of words in newspaper headlines may work for you. Then again, it may not. There is no neat formula. You just need to keep your eyes and ears open. Different people acquire interest in different ways. Within all of us, there is a desire to lift our self-esteem; that is, we want to feel good about ourselves. And a good vocabulary is one excellent way to achieve this.

### Use Backstories to Bring Words to Life

What are the benefits of learning a word's backstory?

Words are vibrant, dynamic things, each with a history, a story of its own. If you learn the life history of a word, the chances are great that you'll grow to *like* the word, not simply *learn* it. To help you in this endeavor, each chapter in this book ends with an intriguing and often entertaining history of a word that has figured prominently in that chapter. These "backstories" not only provide a definition for each word, they also establish a bond.

For example the backstories for two common words in a college context—*scholar* and *sophomore*—are entertaining examples of how histories can strengthen your understanding and appreciation of the words around you.

What is the connection between the word *scholar* and *leisure*?

*Scholar.* Although we generally think of a scholar as a hard-working, serious student, the word has a surprisingly different history. *Scholar* comes from the ancient Greek word for leisure. That's because the only people who had the luxury of learning were the children of the privileged classes. Everyone else was expected to work. In time, the connection with leisure was lost, and most scholars would bristle at any suggestion that they are simply taking it easy.

How does the origin of *sophomore* convey the status of a second-year student?

*Sophomore.* The word *sophomore* may be viewed as a rather harmless label for a second-year student, but its derivation provides a fascinating insight into how students partway through their education are viewed. The word originates from the Greek word *sophos* for "wise," but also from *moros*, which means stupid! So, although sophomores may feel as though they know it all, the people who coined the word *sophomore* must have felt these students still needed a little humility.



Where can you learn more about the histories of words?

There are dozens of books that relate the often-fascinating histories of words. Here's a list of books both in and out of print that tell the backstories of some well-known words. You should be able to find many of the books in library catalogs. The books still in print should also be available for purchase in stores or online.

### Books Still In Print

Almond, Jordan. *Dictionary of Word Origins: A History of the Words, Expressions and Clichés We Use*. Citadel Press, 1995.

American Heritage Dictionary Editors. *Word Mysteries and Histories: From Abracadabra to Zeus*. Houghton Mifflin, 2004.

American Heritage Dictionary Editors and Barry Moser. *Word Mysteries and Histories: From Quiche to Humble Pie*. Houghton Mifflin, 1987.

Ayto, John. *Dictionary of Word Origins*. Arcade, 1993.

Funk, Charles Earle. *Thereby Hangs a Tale: Stories of Curious Word Origins*. Collins, 2002.

Hendrickson, Robert. *The Facts on File Encyclopedia of Word and Phrase Origins*. Checkmark, 2000.

Isil, Olivia A. *When a Loose Cannon Flogs a Dead Horse There's the Devil to Pay: Seafaring Words in Everyday Speech*. International Marine/Ragged Mountain Press, 1996.

Lieberman, Anatoly. *Word Origins . . . and How We Know Them: Etymology for Everyone*. Oxford University Press, 2005.

Morris, Evan. *The Word Detective: Solving the Mysteries Behind Those Pesky Words and Phrases*. Algonquin, 2000.

Quinion, Michael. *Ballyhoo, Buckaroo, and Spuds: Ingenious Tales of Words and Their Origins*. Smithsonian Books, 2004.

Rees, Nigel. *Cassell's Dictionary of Word and Phrase Origins*. Cassell Academic, 2002.

### Out-of-Print Books

Ernst, Margaret S. *In a Word*. Alfred A. Knopf, 1939.

*Picturesque Word Origins*. G. & C. Merriam, 1933.

## Make the Most of the Dictionary

SELF-DIRECTION

PLANNING

Aside from interest, what is your best vocabulary-building tool?

Beyond your own sense of interest, the best tool for building your vocabulary is a good dictionary. Keep one close to your elbow or bookmarked in your browser and use it whenever uncertainty arises. Gliding over a word that you don't quite know can be costly. Consider this sentence: "The mayor gave *fulsome* praise to the budget committee." What does *fulsome* mean? If you think it means "full of praise," you're mistaken. Look it up.

What are the limitations of using context to learn new words?

Sometimes, you can get some idea of the meaning of a new word from its context, but sometimes you can't. Lee C. Deighton of Columbia University points out three limitations to context: (1) It provides only the meaning that fits that particular situation. (2) You

often end up with a synonym, which is not quite the same as a definition. (3) When you have to infer the meaning of a word, you can be slightly (or greatly) in error.<sup>3</sup> Your safest bet is to avoid all the guesswork and go straight to your dictionary.

What should you do when you come across a word you don't understand?

As you study, consult your dictionary whenever you come to a word that you don't know precisely. Find the exact meaning you need; then go back to your textbook and reread the paragraph, with the meaning substituted for the word. If you become interested in a particular word, write it along with the sentence it occurred in on an index card. Later, go back to the dictionary and investigate the word. But don't break into your studying for a long session with the dictionary; save that for later.

### Carry a Pocket Dictionary

When does a pocket dictionary come in handy?

Follow the example of thousands of successful people. Get yourself a pocket dictionary such as *Webster's II New Riverside Pocket Dictionary*, and always carry it with you. Instead of reading the print on cereal boxes, or looking at advertising placards on buses and subways, or staring into space, take out your dictionary and *read* it. Its definitions will be terse, consisting mainly of synonyms, but its value lies in its ability to spark a lifelong interest in words as well as increase your vocabulary. Of course, a pocket dictionary is no substitute for a larger desk dictionary, but as a portable learning tool, the pocket dictionary is worth its weight in gold.

How do you read a dictionary?

If the idea of simply reading a dictionary sounds boring or difficult, it's neither. To illustrate how a dictionary is read, let's study Figure 6.1, which is a page from a pocket dictionary.<sup>4</sup> When you open to page 1 and your eyes drift down the column of words, an internal conversation takes place: You think about what you already know about the word and you think about the other aspects of the word, such as the syllable that must be accented, the precise definition, and how you could use the word in your writing and speaking.

What are the pros and cons of pocket electronic dictionaries?

A number of dictionaries are available for personal digital assistants (PDAs), such as the Palm or the PocketPC, or smartphones, such as the iPhone or BlackBerry. If you're already carrying one of these electronic devices, adding a dictionary may make sense. But don't buy a handheld computer just for the dictionary. Also, be aware that some electronic dictionaries do not include all the regular elements that you find in a standard pocket dictionary, such as detailed information on pronunciation. The convenience you gain from storing your dictionary on a handheld computer can be offset if the information is incomplete or inadequate. Also, depending on the sophistication of the application and the resolution of your screen, you may lose some of the helpful elements—such as boldface, italics, type size, and color—that can make a printed pocket dictionary so easy to consult.

<sup>3</sup>Lee C. Deighton, *Vocabulary Development in the Classroom* (New York: Teachers College Press, 1959), pp. 2–3.

<sup>4</sup>*Webster's II New Riverside Pocket Dictionary* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1991), p. 1.

Figure 6.1

### How to Read a Dictionary

Source: Copyright © 1991 by  
Houghton Mifflin Company.  
Reproduced by permission  
from *Webster's II New  
Riverside Pocket Dictionary*,  
Revised Edition.

A

The Chinese used this device from ancient times

Strong, simple word

Somewhat similar to abridge

King Edward VIII Throne of England

Preferred accent on 1st syllable

"Exception" to the rule

In law: to "aid & abet"

**a**, **A** (ā) *n.* The 1st letter of the English alphabet.

**a** (ə; emphatic ā) *indef. art.* One; any.

**a•back** (ə-bāk') *adv.* —**take aback.** To startle; confuse.

**a•bac•cus** (ab'ə-kə's) *n., pl. -cuses* or **-ci.** A manual computing device with rows of moveable beads.

**a•ban•don** (ə-ban'dɒn) *v.* **1.** To give up; forsake. **2.** To desert. —*n.* A complete surrender of inhibitions. —**a•ban•doned** *adj.* —**a•ban•don•ment** *n.*

**a•base** (ə-bas') *v.* **abased, abasing.** To humble; humiliate. —**a•base•ment** *n.*

**a•bate** (ə-bat') *v.* **abated, abating.** To reduce; lessen. —**a•bate•ment** *n.*

**ab•bey** (ab'e) *n., pl. -beys.* A monastery or convent. —**a•bre•viate** (ə-bre've-at') *v. -ated, -ating.* To make shorter. —**a•bre•via•tion** *n.*

**ab•di•cate** (ab'di-kat') *v. -cated, -cating.* To relinquish (power or responsibility) formally. —**ab'di•ca•tion** *n.*

**ab•do•men** (ab'd-m n, ab-do'm n) *n.* The part of the body between the thorax and the pelvis. —**ab•dom'i•nal** *adj.*

**ab•duct** (ab-duct') *v.* To kidnap. —**ab•duc•tion** *n.* —**ab•duc•tor** *n.*

**ab•er•ra•tion** (ab'ra'sh n) *n.* Deviation or departure from the normal, typical, or expected. —**ab•er•rance**, —**ab•er•ran•cy** *n.* —**ab•er•rant** *adj.*

**a•bet** (ə-bet') *v.* **abetted, abetting.** **1.** To encourage; incite. **2.** To assist. —**a•bet•tor**, **a•bet•ter** *n.*

**a•bey•ance** (ə-ba'ns) *n.* Temporary suspension.

**ab•hor** (ab-hor') *v. -horred, -horringly.* To dislike intensely; loathe. —**ab•hor•rence** *n.* —**ab•hor•rent** *adj.*

**a•bide** (ə-bid') *v.* **abode** or **abided, abiding.** **1.** To wait. **2.** To tolerate; bear. **3.** To remain; last. —**abide** *by.* To conform to; comply with. —**a•bide•ing** *adj.*

**a•bil•ity** (ə-bil'i-te) *n., pl. -ties.* **1.** The power to perform. **2.** A skill or talent.

**abroad**

Looks like object but far off

In unabridged dictionary: "He abjured all titles, preferring 'Mr.'"

Personal rights. Abdicate — national power

Usually connected to Snowmen of the Himalayas

Usually applied to original people of Australia

"The mosquitoes abound in swamps"

Rubbing, scraping as in friction

Big dictionary — unabridged

**ab•ject** (əb'jekt', əb-jekt') *adj.* **1.** Contemptible; base. **2.** Miserable; wretched. —**ab•jec•tion** *n.* —**ab•ject•ly** *adv.*

**ab•jure** (əb-joor') *v. -jured, -juring.* To renounce under oath; forswear.

**a•ble** (ə'bəl) *adj.* **abler, ablest.** **1.** Having sufficient ability. **2.** Capable or talented. —**a•bly** *adv.*

**ab•ne•gate** (ab'ni-gat') *v. -gated, -gating.* To deny to oneself; renounce. —**ab•ne•ga•tion** *n.*

**ab•nor•mal** (ab-nor'məl) *adj.* Not normal; deviant. —**ab•nor•mal•ity** *adv.*

**a•bode** (ə-bod') *v. p.t. & p.p. of abide.* —*n.* A home.

**a•bol•ish** (ə-bol'ish) *v.* To put an end to; annul. —**ab•oli•tion** *n.* —**ab•oli•tion•ist** *n.*

**ab•om'i•na•ble** (ə-bom'i-nə'bəl) *adj.* Detestable; loathsome. —**ab•om'i•nably** *adv.* —**ab•om'i•nate** *v.* —**ab•om'i•na•tion** *n.*

**ab•origi•ne** (ab'rij'ne) *n.* An original inhabitant of a region. —**ab•origi•nal** *adj. & n.*

**a•bort** (ə-bort') *v.* To terminate pregnancy or full development prematurely. —*n.* Premature termination of a rocket launch or space mission. —**a•bor•tive** *adj.*

**a•bor•tion** (ə-bor'sh n) *n.* **1.** Induced premature termination of pregnancy or development. **2.** Something malformed. —**a•bor•tion•ist** *n.*

**a•bound** (ə-bound') *v.* To be great in number or amount; teem.

**a•bout** (ə-bout') *adv.* **1.** Approximately. **2.** Toward a reverse direction. **3.** In the vicinity. —*prep.* **1.** On all sides of. **2.** Near to. **3.** In or on. **4.** Concerning. **5.** Ready. —*adj.* Astir.

**a•bove** (ə-buv') *adv.* **1.** Overhead. **2.** In a higher place, rank, or position. —*prep.* **1.** Over. **2.** Superior to. **3.** In preference to. —*n.* Something that is above. —*adj.* Appearing or stated earlier.

**a•bove•board** (ə-buv'bord', ə-bord') *adv.* Without deceit. —**a•bove•board** *adj.*

**ab•ra•sion** (ə-brə'zh n) *n.* **1.** A wearing away by friction. **2.** A scraped or worn area. —**a•brade** *v.* —**a•bra•sive** *adj. & n.*

**a•bridge** (ə-brij') *v.* **abridged, abridging.** To condense; shorten. —**a•bridg•ment, a•bridge•ment** *n.*

**a•broad** (ə-brod') *adv.* **1.** Out of one's own country. **2.** Out of doors. **3.** Broadly; widely.

What advantages does an abridged dictionary provide over a pocket dictionary?

### Keep an Abridged Dictionary at Your Desk

Unless you're really strapped for cash, don't settle for one of those paperback abridged dictionaries, as they are only slightly better than most pocket dictionaries and are too bulky to easily carry around. If you know you're going to stay put, a full-sized abridged dictionary is your best bet. Rather than simply providing pronunciation and bare-bones definitions, good abridged dictionaries tell you far more about the words you are investigating. With an abridged dictionary, you usually get more definitions, more information on a word's derivation, and in some instances information about a word's synonyms, usage, and history. Buy and use the best abridged dictionary that you can afford, but be aware that no word is ever fully defined, even by a good abridged dictionary. Words have multiple shades of meaning that add richness to our language. These various shades will become apparent to you as you keep reading, listening, and trying to use words in a variety of contexts.

Good abridged desk dictionaries include the following:

*The American Heritage Dictionary* (Houghton Mifflin)

*Webster's New Collegiate Dictionary* (Merriam-Webster, Inc.)

*Webster's New World College Dictionary*, 4th ed. (Webster's New World)

What are some of the features of the *American Heritage Dictionary*?

Of these three, the *American Heritage Dictionary* has some distinct advantages. Unlike most abridged dictionaries, it offers many of the special features—such as synonyms, usage notes, and word histories—that you normally would expect to find only in unabridged dictionaries. (See Figure 6.2.)

#### IT'S YOUR Q

**Synonyms** Synonyms not only help clarify the meaning and usage of the word you initially looked up, but also provide an opportunity to weave more strands into your background. Finding a cluster of synonyms is like finding a cache of gold nuggets. But watch out. Not all words in a cluster are interchangeable. Each word has a color, flavor, and niche of its own. It fits perfectly in a specific context where its meaning, feeling, and tone are just right.

Take, for example, this cluster of common synonyms: *eat*, *consume*, *devour*, *ingest*. The central meaning shared by these verbs is “to take food into the body by mouth.” Now, notice the appropriate contexts:

ate a hearty dinner; greedily consumed the sandwiches; hyenas devouring their prey;  
whales ingesting krill<sup>5</sup>

Nothing can give greater precision to your words than knowing the fine differences among synonyms.

<sup>5</sup>*The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000), p. 564.



## Figure 6.2 A Page from *The American Heritage Dictionary*

Source: Copyright © 2010 by Houghton Mifflin Harcourt Publishing Company. Adapted and reproduced by permission from *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language, Fourth Edition*.

**poli·ti·cian** (pŏl'i-ti-shən) *n.* **1a.** One who is actively involved in politics, especially party politics. **b.** One who holds or seeks a political office. **2.** One who seeks personal or partisan gain, often by scheming and maneuvering: "Mothers may still want their favorite sons to grow up to be President, but . . . they do not want them to become politicians in the process" (John F. Kennedy). **3.** One who is skilled or experienced in the science of administration of government.

**po·lit·i·cize** (pŏ-lit-i-sīz') *v.* **ci·zed, ci·zing, ci·zes** —*intr.* To engage in or discuss politics. —*tr.* To make political: "The mayor was given authority to appoint police commissioners and by virtue of that power was able to politicize the department" (Connie Paige). —**po·lit·i·ci·za·tion** (-si-zā'shən) *n.*

**poli·tick** (pŏl'i-tik) *intr.v.* **tick·ed, tick·ing, ticks** To engage in or discuss politics. [Back-formation from *politicize*, engaging in partisan political activity, from *POLITIC*.] —**pol·it·ick·er** *n.*

**po·lit·i·co** (pŏ-lit'i-kŏ') *n., pl. -cos* A politician. [From Italian or from Spanish *politico*, both from Latin *politicus*, political. See *POLITIC*.]

**poli·tics** (pŏl'i-tiks) *n.* **1.** (used with a *sing. verb*) **a.** The art or science of government or governing, especially the governing of a political entity, such as a nation, and the administration and control of its internal and external affairs. **b.** Political science. **2.** (used with a *sing. or pl. verb*) **a.** The activities or affairs engaged in by a government, politician, or political party: "All politics is local" (Thomas F. O'Neill, Jr.). "Politics have appealed to me since I was at Oxford because they are exciting morning, noon, and night" (Jeffrey Archer). **b.** The methods or tactics involved in managing a state or government: "The politics of the former regime were rejected by the new government leadership. If the politics of the conservative government now renders on the repressive, what can be expected when the economy falters?" **3.** (used with a *sing. or pl. verb*) Political life; studied law with a view to going into politics; felt that politics was a worthwhile career. **4.** (used with a *sing. or pl. verb*) Intrigue or maneuvering within a political unit or group in order to gain control or power: "Partisan politics is often an obstruction to good government. Office politics are often debilitating and counterproductive." **5.** (used with a *sing. or pl. verb*) Political attitudes and positions: "His politics on that issue is his own business. Your politics are clearly more liberal than mine." **6.** (used with a *sing. or pl. verb*) The often internally conflicting interrelationships among people in a society.

**Usage Note** *Politics*, although plural in form, takes a singular verb when used to refer to the art or science of governing or to political science: *Politics has been a concern of philosophers since Plato*. But in its other senses *politics* can take either a singular or plural verb. Many other nouns that end in *-ics* behave similarly, and the user is advised to consult specific entries for precise information.

**poli·ty** (pŏl'i-tē) *n., pl. -ties* **1.** The form of government of a nation, state, church, or organization. **2.** An organized society, such as a nation, having a specific form of government: "His alien philosophy found no roots in the American polity" (New York Times). [Obsolete French *politie*, from Old French, from Late Latin *politia*, the Roman government. See *POLICE*.]

**Polk** (pŏk), **James Knox** 1795–1849. The 11th President of the United States (1845–1849), whose term was marked by the establishment of the 49th parallel as the country's northern border (1846).

**pol·ka** (pŏl'kə, pŏk'ə) *n.* **1.** A lively dance originating in Bohemia and performed by couples. **2.** Music for this dance, having duple meter. —*intr.* **-kaed, -ka·ing, -kas** To dance the polka. [Czech, probably from Polish, from *Polka*, Polish woman, feminine of *Polak*, Pole. See *pele* in Appendix I.]

**polka dot** *n.* **1.** One of a number of dots or round spots forming a pattern, as on cloth. **2.** A pattern or fabric with such dots.

**poll** (pŏl) *n.* **1.** The casting and registering of votes in an election. **2.** The number of votes cast or recorded. **3.** The place where votes are cast and registered. Often used in the plural with *the*. **4.** A survey of the public or of a sample of public opinion to acquire information. **5.** The head, especially the top of the head where hair grows. **6.** The blunt or broad end of a tool such as a hammer or ax. **✦** **polled, poll·ing, polls** —*tr.* **1.** To receive (a given number of votes). **2.** To receive or record the votes of: *polling a jury*. **3.** To cast (a vote or ballot). **4.** To question in a survey; canvass. **5.** To cut off or trim (hair, horns, or wool, for example); clip. **6.** To trim or cut off the hair, wool, branches, or horns of: *polling the sheep*; *polling the trees*. —*intr.* To vote at the polls in an election. [Middle English *poll*, head, from Middle Low German or Middle Dutch.] —**poll·er** *n.*

**pollack** also **pol·lock** (pŏl'ŏk) *n., pl. pollack or -lacks also **pol·lock or -locks** A marine food fish (*Pollachius virens*) of northern Atlantic waters, related to the cod. [Alteration of Scots *podlak*.]*

**pollard** (pŏl'ard) *n.* **1.** A tree whose top branches have been cut back to the trunk so that it may produce a dense growth of new shoots. **2.** An animal, such as a pig, goat, or sheep, that no longer has its horns. **✦** *tr.* **-lard·ed, -lard·ing, -lards** To convert or make into a pollard. [From *lard*.]

**polled** (pŏld) *adj.* Having no horns; hornless.

**pol·len** (pŏl'ən) *n.* The fine powderlike material consisting of pollen grains that is produced by the anthers of seed plants. [Latin, fine flour.]

**pol·len·ate** (pŏl'ən-āt') *v.* Variant of *pollinate*.

**pollen count** *n.* The average number of pollen grains, usually of ragweed, in a cubic yard or other standard volume of air over a 24-hour period at a specified time and place.

**pollen grain** *n.* A microspore of seed plants, containing a male gametophyte.

**pol·len·if·er·ous** (pŏl'ən-īf'ər-əs) *adj.* Variant of *polliniferous*.

**pollen mother cell** *n.* The microsporocyte of a seed plant.

**pol·len·o·sis** (pŏl'ən-ŏ'sis) *n.* Variant of *pollinosis*.

**pollen sac** *n.* The microsporangium of a seed plant in which pollen is produced.

**pollen tube** *n.* The slender tube formed by the pollen grain that penetrates an ovule and releases the male gametes.

**pol·lex** (pŏl'leks') *n., pl. pol·li·ces (pŏl'i-'sēz') See *thumb* (sense 1). [Latin, thumb, big toe.]*

**pollin-** *pref.* Variant of *pollin-*.

**pol·lin·ate** also **pol·len·ate** (pŏl'ən-āt') *tr.v.* **-lin·at·ed, -lin·at·ing, -lin·ates** also **-len·at·ed, -len·at·ing, -len·ates** To transfer pollen from an anther to the stigma of (a flower). [New Latin *pollen, pollin-*, pollen (from Latin, fine flour) + *-ATE*.] —**pol·lin·a·tion** *n.* —**pol·lin·a·tor** *n.*

**pollin-** or **pollin-** *pref.* Pollen: *polliniferous*. [From New Latin *pollen, pollin-*, pollen. See *POLLINATE*.]

**pol·lin·if·er·ous** also **pol·len·if·er·ous** (pŏl'ən-īf'ər-əs) *adj.* **1.** Producing or yielding pollen. **2.** Adapted for carrying pollen.

**pol·lin·i·um** (pŏ-lin'ē-əm) *n., pl. -ia* (-ē-ə) A mass of coherent pollen grains, found in the flowers of orchids and milkweeds. [New Latin, from *pollen, pollin-*, pollen. See *POLLINATE*.]

**pol·lin·ize** (pŏl'ən-īz') *tr.v.* **-nized, -niz·ing, -nizes** To pollinate.

**pol·lin·i·za·tion** (-nī-zā'shən) *n.* —**pol·lin·i·z·er** *n.*

**pol·li·no·sis** also **pol·len·o·sis** (pŏl'ən-nŏ'sis) *n.* See *hay fever*.

**pol·li·wog** also **pol·ly·wog** (pŏl'ē-wŏg', -wŏg') *n.* See  *Tadpole*.

[Variant of *polliwig*, from Middle English *polwige*: *pol*, head; see *POLL* + *wiglen*, to wiggle; see *WIGGLE*.]

**pol·lock** (pŏl'ŏk) *n.* Variant of *pollack*.

**Pol·lock** (pŏl'ŏk), **Jackson** 1912–1956. American artist. Using his drip technique of painting, he became a leader of abstract expressionism.

**poll·ster** (pŏl'stər) *n.* One that takes public-opinion surveys. Also called *polltaker*.

**Word History** The suffix *-ster* is nowadays most familiar in words like *pollster, jester, huckster*, where it forms agent nouns that typically denote males. Originally in Old English, however, the suffix (then spelled *-stere*) was used to form feminine agent nouns. *Hoppester*, for example, meant "female dancer." It was occasionally applied to men, but mostly to translate Latin masculine nouns denoting occupations that were usually held by women in Anglo-Saxon society. An example is *bacceter*, "baker," glossing Latin *pistor*; it survives as the Modern English name *Baxter*. In Middle English its use as a masculine suffix became more common in northern England, while in the south it remained limited to feminines. In time the masculine usage became dominant throughout the country, and old feminines in *-ster* were refashioned by adding the newer feminine suffix *-ess* (borrowed from French) to them, such as *seamster* remade from *seamster*. In Modern English, the only noun ending in *-ster* with a feminine referent is *spinster*, which originally meant "a woman who spins thread."

**pol·it·ak·er** (pŏl'i'tā'kər) *n.* See *pollster*.

**poll tax** *n.* A tax levied on people rather than on property, often as a requirement for voting.

**pol·lut·ant** (pŏ-lūt'ənt) *n.* Something that pollutes, especially a waste material that contaminates air, soil, or water.

**pol·lut·e** (pŏ-lūt') *tr.v.* **-lut·ed, -lut·ing, -lutes** **1.** To make unfit for or harmful to living things, especially by the addition of waste matter. See synonyms at *contaminate*. **2.** To make less suitable for an activity, especially by the introduction of unwanted factors: "The stadium lights polluted the sky around the observatory." **3.** To render impure or morally harmful; corrupt. **4.** To make ceremonially impure; profane: "Churches and altars were polluted by atrocious murders" (Edward Gibbon). [Middle English *polluten*, from Latin *polluere, poll* *t.*,] —**pol·lut·er** *n.*

**pol·lu·tion** (pŏ-lŏ'ŷhən) *n.* **1.** The act or process of polluting or the state of being polluted, especially the contamination of soil, water, or the atmosphere by the discharge of harmful substances. **2.** Something that pollutes; a pollutant or a group of pollutants: "Pollution in the air reduced the visibility near the airport."

**Pol·lux** (pŏl'ŏks) *n.* Greek *Mythology* **1.** One of the Dioscuri. **2.** A bright star in the constellation Gemini. [Latin *Poll* *x*, from Greek *Polluxēs*.]

**Pol·ly·an·na** (pŏl'i-ān'nə) *n.* A person regarded as being foolishly or blindly optimistic. [After the heroine of the novel *Pollyanna*, by Eleanor Hodgman Porter (1868–1920), American writer.]

**pol·ly·wog** (pŏl'ē-wŏg', -wŏg') *n.* Variant of *polliwog*.

**po·lo** (pŏ'lŏ) *n.* **1.** A game played by two teams of three or four players on horseback who are equipped with long-handled mallets for driving a small wooden ball through the opponents' goal. **2.** Water polo. [Balti (Tibeto-Burman language of Pakistan), ball.] —**po·lo·ist** *n.*

**Po·lo** (pŏ'lŏ), **Marco** 1254–1324. Venetian traveler who explored Asia from 1271 to 1295. His *Travels of Marco Polo* was the only account of the Far East available to Europeans until the 17th century.

**polo coat** *n.* A loose-fitting, tailored overcoat made of camel's hair or a similar material.

**pol·o·naise** (pŏl'ŏ-nāz', pŏ'lŏ-') *n.* **1.** A stately, marchlike Polish dance, primarily a promenade by couples. **2.** Music for or based on the traditional rhythm of this dance, having triple meter. **3.** A woman's dress of the 18th century, having a fitted bodice and draped cutaway skirt, worn over an elaborate underskirt. [From feminine of *polonais*, Polish, from Medieval Latin *Polonia*, Poland.]

**pol·o·ni·um** (pŏ-lŏ-nē-əm) *n.* Symbol **Po** A naturally radioactive metallic element, occurring in minute quantities as a product of radium

politician | polonium

ā pat	oi boy
ā pay	ou out
ār care	ōō took
ā father	ōō boot
ē pet	ū cut
ē be	ūr urge
ī pit	th thin
ī pie	ih this
īr pier	hw which
ō pot	zh vision
ō toe	ā about, item
ō paw	♠ regionalism

Stress marks: / (primary); ' (secondary), as in dictionary (dīk'shə-nēr'ē)

What is the purpose of usage notes?

**Usage Notes** It's possible to learn a word's definition and still use it incorrectly. For example, a student who learned that the word *incite* means "to stir up" mistakenly wrote: "The cook incited the soup." Usage notes provide clarification that goes beyond standard definitions. A form of this category is found in almost all unabridged dictionaries, but rarely in abridged dictionaries. Such notes are interesting and instructive. Here is an example:

USAGE NOTE: The verbs *founder* and *flounder* are often confused. *Founder* comes from a Latin word meaning "bottom" (as in *foundation*) and originally referred to knocking enemies down; it is now also used to mean "to fail utterly, collapse." *Flounder* means "to move clumsily, thrash about," and hence "to proceed in confusion." If John is *foundering* in Chemistry 1, he had better drop the course; if he is *floundering*, he may yet pull through.<sup>6</sup>

Usage notes impart information in an easy-to-read, nontechnical, nonobfuscating manner.

What is the value of knowing a word's history?

**Word History** There are many books devoted to the history and origin of words, but the word history items you can find in the *American Heritage Dictionary* as well as in most unabridged dictionaries can serve as very good substitutes. A plus factor is that these histories are written in an easy-to-read narrative manner. Here's a sample:

Worrying may shorten one's life, but not as quickly as it once did. The ancestor of our word, Old English *wyrigan*, meant "to strangle." Its Middle English descendant, *worien*, kept this sense and developed the new sense "to grasp by the throat with the teeth and lacerate" or "to kill or injure by biting and shaking." This is the way wolves or dogs might attack sheep, for example. In the 16th century *worry* began to be used in the sense "to harass, as by rough treatment or attack," or "to assault verbally," and in the 17th century the word took on the sense "to bother, distress, or persecute." It was a small step from this sense to the main modern senses "to cause to feel anxious or distressed" and "to feel troubled or uneasy," first recorded in the 19th century.<sup>7</sup>

What are the pros and cons of electronic dictionaries?

**Electronic Dictionaries** Many dictionaries, including the *American Heritage Dictionary*, may be available in an electronic form. Electronic dictionaries—the ones you get on CD or find online—have become increasingly sophisticated in their presentation, navigation, resolution, and design. For example, instead of having to flip through paper pages, you can often go directly to the word you're looking for and jump to the definition of a synonym just by clicking on a link. Some of the dictionaries allow you not only to read a word's pronunciation, but also to hear it pronounced correctly. If you spend a lot of your study time on the computer, these dictionaries can be very convenient.

<sup>6</sup>Ibid., p. 694.

<sup>7</sup>Ibid., p. 1983.

On the other hand, each electronic dictionary may have a slightly different (and often copyrighted) system for navigating its words. And, of course, you lose some of the tactile experience of turning pages and the serendipity of stumbling upon one fascinating word while looking up another. Ultimately, it's a question of personal taste.

### IT'S YOUR Q

How do definitions in the two types of dictionaries differ?

**Dig Deeper with an Unabridged Dictionary** Although abridged dictionaries occasionally provide interesting and important details about words, for intensive word study, there is no substitute for an unabridged dictionary. Locate the unabridged dictionaries in your library—usually they are in the reference room—and use them to supplement your abridged desk dictionary. An unabridged dictionary provides more definitions, more about the derivations of words, and more on usage. Good one-volume unabridged dictionaries include *Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language* and the *Random House Dictionary of the English Language*. The *Oxford English Dictionary*, in twenty volumes plus supplements, is indispensable for the historical study of words but is more detailed than you will need for most purposes.

Whereas synonyms, usage notes, and word histories are considered extras in abridged dictionaries, they are standard in most unabridged dictionaries. In addition, for words that have multiple meanings, an unabridged dictionary will include all the definitions instead of just the most common ones.

That fact came in handy when a friend wrote a letter about attending a seminar on Vladimir Nabokov, the Russian-born American writer who was best known for the satirical novel *Lolita*. “All the experts were there,” he explained in his letter. “Lots of discussion, but it was too precious for me.” Too precious? The sentence was startling. After all, *precious* is commonly used to refer to something valuable. But a quick look at the word's definitions helped clear up the mystery. Here they are:

1. Of high cost or worth; valuable
2. Highly esteemed; cherished
3. Dear; beloved
4. Affectedly dainty or overrefined: *precious mannerisms*<sup>8</sup>

The fourth definition was the one that slid into the context of the letter perfectly. “Overrefined” was the answer. By reading all the definitions of a word, we weave more strands into the background of each word we look up. This will enable us to later use and understand such words with greater correctness and precision.

What makes the *Oxford English Dictionary* special?

**The Oxford English Dictionary** When it comes to unabridged dictionaries, the *Oxford English Dictionary* (popularly known as the *OED*) is in a class by itself. It presents the words that have formed the English vocabulary from the time of the earliest records to the present day. Five million excerpts from English literature were amassed during preparation of the work; about 1,800,000 quotations were actually printed.

Work began on the *OED* in 1878, and the last page was delivered to the press on April 19, 1928. It took fifty years to produce all the volumes. On its completion in 1928,

<sup>8</sup>Ibid, p. 1381.

it was presented to King George V, and a copy was also officially provided to Calvin Coolidge, the president of the United States.

Here is a brief sample of information gleaned from the *Oxford English Dictionary*. The word is *acre*.

- a. The historical spellings of *acre* are: acer, aker, & akre.
- b. The historical meanings of *acre*, in order of time, are:
  - (1) a piece of tilled land.
  - (2) as much as a yoke of oxen could plow in a day.
  - (3) consists of 32 furrows of the plow, a furlong in length. [A furlong is about 220 yards.]<sup>9</sup>

The ruling king had the power to stipulate weights and measures. For example, under Henry VIII, an acre was forty poles long and four poles wide. The measures, though varied, were somewhat similar throughout history.

Over the years, with each printing, the *OED* has increased in size. The latest edition, printed in 1989, consists of twenty volumes, made up of 22,000 pages. Use this prodigious dictionary with gratitude and respect.

## Preserve Your Words on Index Cards

PLANNING

How do you make new words a permanent part of your vocabulary?

Once you find the words you need or that interest you, you'll want to hold onto them. Using the word in a sentence is a common suggestion, and it's good as far as it goes. But if you want to make sure that each new word becomes a permanent part of your vocabulary, you have to go a little further. The only sure way to master words is to *overlearn* them by using the undisputedly best memory-enhancing technique of *recitation*.

What should you write on each vocabulary card?

### Write One Word per Card

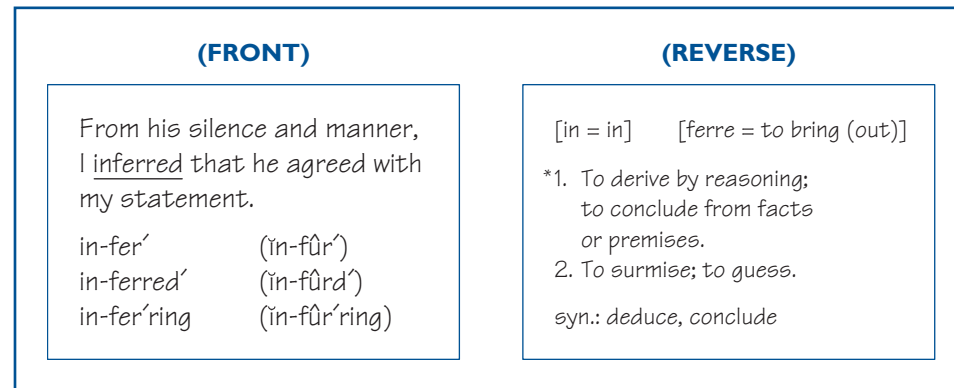
To get started, all you need is a dictionary and a stack of index cards (see Figure 6.3). On the cards, write the difficult words that you find in your textbooks and hear in the classroom. These are words you need to know to understand your coursework. Here are the steps to make the system work for you:

1. *Consider its context.* When you select a word, write it on the front of an index card. But don't just write it in isolation. To provide a meaningful context, write the complete sentence in which the word occurs and underline the word so that it stands out.
2. *Sound it out.* Look the word up in a dictionary and, on the front of the card, write the word out in syllables, including accent and diacritical marks, so that you can pronounce it correctly. If you can't pronounce it and spell it correctly in the first place, you are less likely to use it later.

<sup>9</sup>*Oxford English Dictionary*, vol. 1, 2nd ed. (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1989), pp. 117–118.



**Figure 6.3**  
Index Card System



The front and back of this vocabulary card for the word *inferred* demonstrates the format of the index card system. Notice that the front of the card shows the new word underlined in a complete sentence. It also shows how to pronounce the word. The reverse of the card defines prefixes and roots and gives important dictionary definitions of the word. An asterisk is placed beside the definition that most nearly matches the use of the word on the front of the card. Synonyms are also given.

3. *Break it down.* On the back of the card, write the prefix and root that make up your word. The prefix and root will help you remember the word by showing you its logical linguistic structure.
4. *Find its meaning.* Still on the back of the card, write several pertinent definitions of the word. You might as well extract the maximum in meanings while you're at it! Then put an asterisk beside the definition that best fits the meaning of your word in its specific context.

How should you handle vocabulary cards for technical terms?

Technical terms can be handled in almost the same way. However, for these words you may want to rely on the definitions in your textbook. Special terms are usually defined in a glossary or when they are first introduced. Even for a special term, record any information you find about its derivation on the reverse side of the card. Often, you'll have to consult an unabridged dictionary.

### Master Each Word

How do you master the words you've collected on index cards?

In the above four steps, we covered how to construct cards for the index system. Now, we'll present the steps for using the cards efficiently and effectively. You've put in a lot of work. Get the maximum learning from it. To master the words on the cards, do the following:

1. *Start with the front.* Always look first at the front of the card. Begin by pronouncing the word aloud and correctly. Then read the sentence aloud and think about it momentarily. Next, define the word—not necessarily in a dictionary's language, but in

your own words. Read the sentence aloud. All this should be done before you look at the definition on the back. Reading and speaking aloud forces you to think alertly, and hearing the word brings your auditory memory into play. Thus, seeing, saying, hearing, and thinking are all working together for you.

2. *Check your work.* After you have defined the word to the best of your ability, turn the card over to check the accuracy of your definition.
3. *Say it again.* If you are not satisfied with your definition, keep reciting until your definition is correct. For memory's sake, you must, in order to extract it later, enter into your mind a correct, crisp, concise meaning for the word.
4. *Mark the difficult ones.* When you fail to define the word correctly on your first try, place a dot in the upper-right-hand corner of the front of the card. The next time you go through your cards, the dot will remind you that you missed the word on a previous try. When a card has three dots, it is time to give that word extra attention by determining why you keep getting it wrong.
5. *Try another stack.* After you have mastered a small stack of cards, place them in a shoebox and put together another small stack for studying.
6. *Conduct a review.* From time to time, review the words that you have mastered. Reviewing mastered words will take much less time than learning unmastered ones. The erosive power of forgetting is working day and night. A quick periodic review will foil this relentless force.

**IT'S YOUR Q**

Although you might be tempted to type your new vocabulary words into a computer instead of writing them on index cards, here is a case where the “old-fashioned” method is still superior. The advantage of index cards is that they are convenient to carry around for study at odd moments. At all times, carry a few blank cards on which to record interesting words. Learning words that intrigue you will be immeasurably more valuable than memorizing a list made up by someone else. Finally, as you master the precise meaning of each word, there will be a corresponding advance in your reading, writing, speaking, and thinking. The index card system doesn't exhaust its usefulness when your college education ends. Successful people, including company presidents, frequently carry around a small stack of vocabulary cards.

**Explore Your Personal Frontier**

How can you increase your vocabulary systematically?

What did Johnson O'Connor conclude about how we learn words?

Consulting the dictionary whenever you encounter a word you don't know can help increase your vocabulary a word at a time. But it can be an inconsistent and unpredictable process. One highly effective way to increase your vocabulary more systematically is by using the Frontier Vocabulary System developed by Johnson O'Connor.

From his analytical research, O'Connor concluded that learning new words is much like learning any other skill. We progress from simple words to more difficult ones in an orderly sequence. The difficulty or ease of learning a word does not depend on the length of the word, its frequency of use, its geographic origin, or its pronunciation—or

[www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e](http://www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e)

on teachers, books, or parents. Instead, difficulty in learning a word depends on the complexity of the *idea* that the word stands for. Defining words with simple synonyms does not provide the learner with a background sufficient to think with the words. Because words stand for ideas, the ideas behind them must also be learned.

What was Hayakawa's view on vocabulary building?

S. I. Hayakawa, the noted semanticist, shared this view. He questioned the old-fashioned notion that the way to study words is to concentrate exclusively on words. Hayakawa suggested that words should be understood in relationship to other words—not only other words on the same level but also words at a higher (more abstract) level and words at a lower (more concrete) level.

### Understand How Words Are Learned

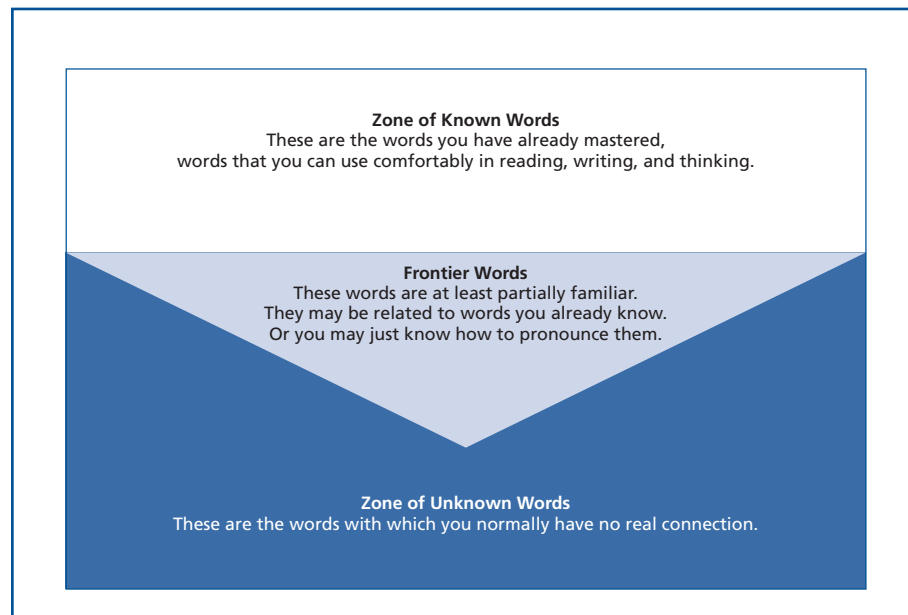
PLANNING

What principles underlie the Frontier Vocabulary System?

The following findings by O'Connor form the basis of the Frontier Vocabulary System:

1. The easiest words are learned first; then the harder ones are learned.
2. At the forward edge of the mass of all the words that have been mastered is the individual's *frontier*. Only a very few words *beyond the frontier* have already been mastered.
3. The greatest learning takes place in the frontier area, which lies between the zone of known words and the zone of totally unknown words (see Figure 6.4).
4. The most significant characteristic of the words in the frontier area is that they are, to some extent, familiar. The maximum advancement in a person's mastery of words takes place in the frontier area, where hundreds of almost known words need only a slight straightening out to make them familiar.
5. Learning becomes extremely inefficient and may actually break down when a person skips the frontier area and tries to learn totally unknown words.

Figure 6.4  
The Concept of Frontier Words



What is the value of being familiar with words in the frontier area?

Familiarity with a word in the frontier area means that you already know something about the word or its definition. You may, for example, know its general meaning and how to pronounce it. Or you may know one of its several meanings. The important point is this: By singling out a frontier word and learning its specific meaning, or its several definitions, you can master the word with minimal time and effort. By working continually in the frontier area, you can rapidly master words. At the same time, you will continually be discovering new frontier words to conquer. As the process continues, your frontier area will push further into the zone of what were once totally unknown words.

### Recognize Frontier Words

PLANNING

How can you find your own frontier words?

To find your own frontier words, first become aware of your daily speech, and make a list of the unusual words you use. Next, be on the lookout for words that you recognize in reading but do not use in speaking and writing. From this source choose *only* the words that appeal to you. Listen attentively while other people speak. The chances are great that you will recognize and know the general meaning of all the words you hear. From this stream of speech, choose the words that appeal to you—words that you would like to incorporate into your own speech.

What is the value of learning a word's antonym?

Later, after writing out the definition for each of your frontier words, look for its antonym (opposite). If it interests you, learn that word, too. Learning pairs of contrasting words creates the strong force of spontaneous suggestion—either word suggests the other.

### Apply the Frontier System

CLUSTERING

PLANNING

How do you master your frontier words?

After you have selected words from your own frontier, you must have a system for memorizing them. Luckily, you already have one. There is no better system than the one already explained in detail: the index card system (see Figure 6.3 on page 122). As you master the precise meaning of each frontier word, there will be a corresponding advance in your reading, writing, speaking, and thinking.

## Treat Words Like Chemical Compounds

### IT'S YOUR Q

The Frontier System paints a picture of realms or regions of words. But what about the individual words themselves? It's not unusual to think of a word as being indivisible, like an atom, the smallest part of a sentence. In some cases this is true. In English, words such as *who*, *what*, *where*, *when*, and *why* can't be broken down any further. But many other words in our language—most of them in fact—are products of smaller components that, when pieced together in different combinations, can provide a variety of different words. In that sense, a word can be compared to a chemical compound, a single unit made up of individual atoms or elements. With words, these elements are known as roots, prefixes, and suffixes.

[www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e](http://www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowToStudy10e)

## Learn Roots and Prefixes

CLUSTERING

How can you learn whole clusters of words?

It has been estimated that 60 percent of the English words in common use are made up partly or entirely of prefixes or roots derived from Latin and Greek. If you would like to learn whole clusters of words in one stroke, you should get to know the most common roots, prefixes, and suffixes. A word *root* is the core of a word, the part that holds the basic meaning. A *prefix* is a word beginning that modifies the root. A suffix is an element tacked on to the end of a word that alters or refines its meaning. Table 6.1 lists some common word roots, and Table 6.2 lists some common prefixes.

What is the value of learning prefixes and roots?

The value of learning prefixes and roots is that they illustrate the way much of our language is constructed. Once learned, they can help you recognize and understand

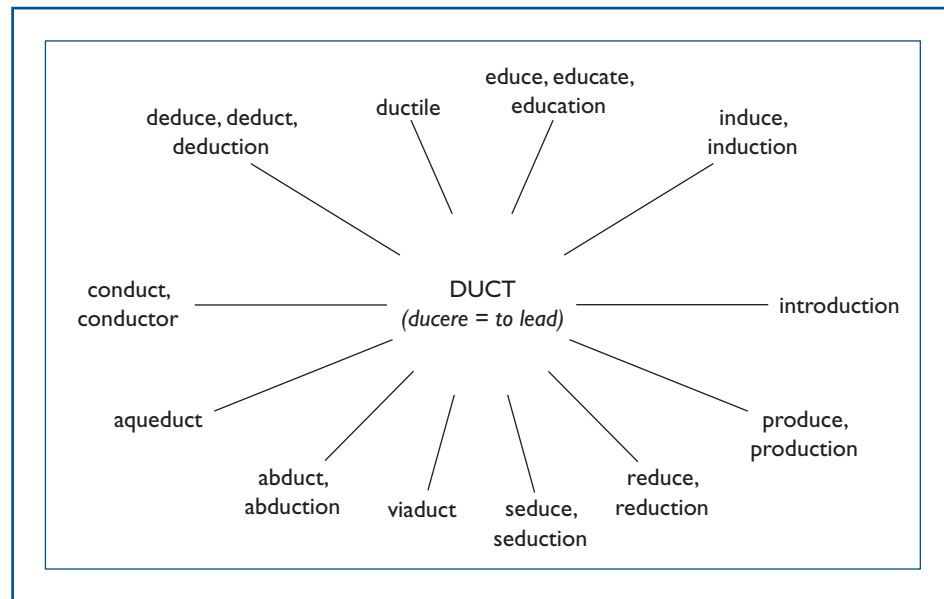
**Table 6.1**  
Common Word Roots

Root	Meaning	Example	Definition
agri	field	Agronomy	<i>Field</i> —crop production and soil management
anthropo	man	anthropology	The study of <i>humans</i>
astro	star	astronaut	One who travels in interplanetary space ( <i>stars</i> )
bio	life	Biology	The study of <i>life</i>
cardio	heart	Cardiac	Pertaining to the <i>heart</i>
chromo	color	chromatology	The science of <i>colors</i>
demos	people	democracy	Government by the <i>people</i>
derma	skin	epidermis	The outer layer of <i>skin</i>
dyna	power	dynamic	Characterized by <i>power</i> and energy
geo	earth	geology	The study of the <i>earth</i>
helio	sun	heliotrope	Any plant that turns toward the <i>sun</i>
hydro	water	hydroponics	Growing of plants in <i>water</i> reinforced with nutrients
hypno	sleep	hypnosis	A state of <i>sleep</i> induced by suggestion
magni	great, big	magnify	To enlarge, to make <i>bigger</i>
man(u)	hand	manuscript	Written by <i>hand</i>
mono	one	monoplane	Airplane with <i>one</i> wing
ortho	straight	orthodox	Right, true, <i>straight</i> opinion
pod	foot	pseudopod	False <i>foot</i>
psycho	mind	psychology	Study of the <i>mind</i> in any of its aspects
pyro	fire	pyrometer	An instrument for measuring high temperatures
terra	earth	Terrace	A raised platform of <i>earth</i>
thermo	heat	thermometer	Instrument for measuring <i>heat</i>
zoo	animal	zoology	The study of <i>animals</i>

**Table 6.2**  
Common Prefixes

Prefix	Meaning	Example	Definition
ante-	before	antebellum	<i>Before</i> the war; especially in the U.S., before the Civil War
anti-	against	antifreeze	Liquid used to guard <i>against</i> freezing
auto-	self	automatic	<i>Self</i> -acting or <i>self</i> -regulating
bene-	good	benefit	An act of <i>kindness</i> ; a gift
circum-	around	circumscribe	To draw a line <i>around</i> ; to encircle
contra-	against	contradict	To speak <i>against</i>
de-	reverse,	defoliate	<i>Remove</i> the leaves from a tree remove
ecto-	outside	ectoparasite	Parasite living on the <i>exterior</i> of animals
endo-	within	endogamy	Marriage <i>within</i> the tribe
hyper-	over	hypertension	<i>High</i> blood pressure
hypo-	under	hypotension	<i>Low</i> blood pressure
inter-	between	intervene	Come <i>between</i>
intra-	within	intramural	<i>Within</i> bounds of a school
intro-	in, into	introspect	To look <i>within</i> , as one's own mind
macro-	large	macroscopic	<i>Large</i> enough to be observed by the naked eye
mal-	bad	maladjusted	<i>Badly</i> adjusted
micro-	small	microscopic	So <i>small</i> that one needs a microscope to observe
multi-	many	multimillionaire	One having <i>two</i> or <i>more</i> million dollars
neo-	new	neolithic	<i>New</i> stone age
non-	not	nonconformist	One who does <i>not</i> conform
pan-	all	pantheon	A temple dedicated to <i>all</i> gods
poly-	many	polygonal	Having <i>many</i> sides
post-	after	postgraduate	<i>After</i> graduating
pre-	before	precede	To go <i>before</i>
proto-	first	prototype	<i>First</i> or original model
pseudo-	false	pseudonym	<i>False</i> name; esp., an author's pen-name
retro-	backward	retrospect	A looking <i>back</i> on things
semi-	half	semicircle	<i>Half</i> a circle
sub-	under	submerge	To put <i>under</i> water
super-	above	superfine	<i>Extra</i> fine
tele-	far	telescope	Seeing or viewing <i>afar</i>
trans-	across	transalpine	<i>Across</i> the Alps

**Figure 6.5**  
**A Constellation of**  
**Words from One Root**



many words without resorting to a dictionary. With one well-understood root word as the center, an entire “constellation” of words can be built up. Figure 6.5 shows such a constellation, based on the root *duct*, from the Latin *ducere* (“to lead”). Notice that it makes use of some of the most common prefixes and of other prefixes and combining words as well as various word endings. This constellation does not exhaust all the possibilities either; you should be able to think of several other words growing out of “duct.”

**What role should learning prefixes and roots play in building your vocabulary?**

Although knowing the meanings of prefixes and roots can unlock the meanings of unfamiliar words, this knowledge should supplement, not replace, dictionary use. Over the centuries many prefixes have changed in both meaning and spelling. According to Lee Deighton, “Of the 68 prominent and commonly used prefixes there are only 11 which have a single and fairly invariant meaning.”<sup>10</sup> The remaining 57 common prefixes have more than one meaning each.

For example, the prefix *de-* means “of” or “from”; yet the dictionary lists four different meanings for it:

1. It means “down” as in *descend*, which means to pass from a higher to a lower place.
2. It indicates separation as in *dehumidify*, which means to separate moisture from air,

<sup>10</sup>Deighton, *Vocabulary Development in the Classroom*, p. 26.

or in *decapitate*, which means to behead—that is, to separate the head from the rest of the body.

3. It indicates reversal as in *decode*, which means to convert from code into ordinary language, or in *depreciate*, which means to lessen in value.
4. It may be used to intensify as in *demonstrate*, which means to show or prove publicly, or in *declare*, which means to announce.

Where do suffixes come in?

In some ways, suffixes can be more helpful than prefixes in understanding words. And—the best part—learning and remembering a handful of suffixes is relatively easy.

For example, we come across many medical words, such as *laryngitis* and *tonsillitis*. Once we know that the suffix *-itis* means “inflammation or disease of,” we see how logically the words were put together, and their meanings become obvious—with hardly any work at all.

Once we know that the suffix *-ectomy* means “surgical removal,” the words *laryngectomy* and *tonsillectomy* are no longer the sole possession of doctors. We, too, know and can use them.

Take the suffix *-cide*, which means “killer.” Now the words *insecticide* and *germicide* become fully understandable.

What is the key benefit of learning prefixes, roots, and suffixes?

Learn as many of the common prefixes, roots, and suffixes as you can, but learn them for better and more precise understanding of words you already know and words that you have yet to look up in the dictionary. The key benefit of learning these components comes from the precision they provide. When you go to the dictionary, make sure to spend some time on the prefixes and roots that make up each word. You will soon become convinced that a word is not an assemblage of letters put together like an anagram, but the true and natural outcome of evolution.

## Use the Fourteen Master Words

CLUSTERING

What are the Fourteen Master Words?

Recognizing our reliance on Latin and Greek for the components of many English words, Professor James I. Brown of the University of Minnesota decided to find out which prefixes appear most frequently in English. To do so, he recorded the number of times certain word-elements appeared in an unabridged dictionary. He found that twenty prefixes and fourteen roots were part of 14,000 relatively common English words and of an estimated 100,000 words in that dictionary. He then compiled a list of common English words that contained the twenty prefixes and fourteen roots. These words he called the *Fourteen Master Words* (see Table 6.3).<sup>11</sup> The value of this list is that it

<sup>11</sup>Professor Brown’s findings are described in detail in “Reading and Vocabulary: 14 Master Words,” which appeared in the May 1949 issue of *Word Study*, published by G. & C. Merriam Co., Springfield, MA.



**Table 6.3**  
**Fourteen Master**  
**Words: Key to Mean-**  
**ings of More Than**  
**14,000 Words**

Words	Prefix	Common Meaning	Root	Common Meaning
precept	pre-	(before)	<i>capere</i>	(take, seize)
detain	de-	(away, from)	<i>tenere</i>	(hold, have)
intermittent	inter-	(between)	<i>mittere</i>	(send)
offer	ob-	(against)	<i>ferre</i>	(bear, carry)
insist	in-	(into)	<i>stare</i>	(stand)
monograph	mono-	(alone, one)	<i>graphein</i>	(write)
epilogue	epi-	(after)	<i>logos</i>	(say, word)
aspect	ad-	(to, toward)	<i>specere</i>	(see)
uncomplicated	un-	(not)	<i>plicare</i>	(fold)
	com-	(together with)		
nonextended	non-	(not)	<i>tendere</i>	(stretch)
	ex-	(out of)		
reproduction	re-	(back, again)	<i>ducere</i>	(lead)
	pro-	(forward)		
indisposed	in-	(not)	<i>ponere</i>	(put, place)
	dis-	(apart from)		
oversufficient	over-	(above)	<i>facere</i>	(make, do)
	sub-	(under)		
mistranscribe	mis-	(wrong)	<i>scribere</i>	(write)
	trans-	(across, beyond)		

James I. Brown "A Master-Word Approach to Vocabulary." Reprinted by permission from the May 1949 issue of WordStudy © 1949 by Merriam-Webster, Inc. Publishers of the Merriam-Webster © Dictionaries.

illustrates the way much of our language is constructed. If learned, it can help you recognize and understand many words without resorting to a dictionary. With one well-understood root word as the center, an entire "constellation" of words can be built up, as was shown in Figure 6.5.

## FINAL WORDS

---

How does strengthening your vocabulary relate to learning career skills?

Thus far in this book, you've seen how words shaped the life of Malcolm X and improved the lot of a golf caddy. Words can shape your life and career as well. It's natural to focus most of your academic energy on preparing for your future career and employment. But let the success stories at the beginning of this chapter be a constant reminder of the importance of a lasting vocabulary. Once you are established in your career, professional progress will depend, of course, on your work skills; but your ability to use words—to express yourself clearly and convincingly—may be the real propellant in climbing the ladder. So, let strengthening your vocabulary go hand in hand with building your career skills.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

1. Building your vocabulary can increase your \_\_\_\_\_.  
**self-esteem      self-consciousness      self-promotion**
2. A chief advantage of vocabulary cards is their \_\_\_\_\_.  
**completeness      convenience      complexity**
3. The most significant characteristic of a frontier word is its \_\_\_\_\_.  
**difficulty      familiarity      pronunciation**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| _____ 1. Interest      | a. Has limitations as a means of learning new words                  |
| _____ 2. 60            | b. Provides clarification that goes beyond a word's definition       |
| _____ 3. Constellation | c. Percentage of English words derived from Latin or Greek           |
| _____ 4. 20            | d. Can be a powerful motivator for strengthening vocabulary          |
| _____ 5. Context       | e. Greatest learning takes place here                                |
| _____ 6. Usage         | f. Number of volumes in the current <i>Oxford English Dictionary</i> |
| _____ 7. Serendipity   | g. A group of words with a common root                               |
| _____ 8. Frontier area | h. Can be lost when you use an electronic dictionary                 |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

1. T F Quality of vocabulary can have a direct effect on quality of thought.
2. T F The creative use of words can generate interest in an audience.
3. T F Not all electronic dictionaries contain the features that you find in a pocket dictionary.
4. T F Words are not always fully defined in an abridged dictionary.
5. T F Unabridged dictionaries normally include only the most common definition for each word.

## MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.

1. After he left prison, Malcolm X went on to become an outstanding
  - a. leader.
  - b. preacher.
  - c. public speaker.
  - d. all of the above.
2. Frontier words are
  - a. inexhaustible in their supply.
  - b. the easiest words to master.
  - c. familiar in one way or another.
  - d. all of the above.
3. From his analytical research, Johnson O'Connor determined that learning new words
  - a. requires an above-average memory.
  - b. is much like learning any other skill.
  - c. interferes with your ability to concentrate.
  - d. enables you to clarify your career goals.
4. With some electronic dictionaries, a word's pronunciation can actually be
  - a. incorrect.
  - b. heard.
  - c. abridged.
  - d. none of the above.
5. Three dots on a vocabulary card indicate that the word
  - a. has three different definitions.
  - b. may require extra attention.
  - c. has been properly mastered.
  - d. consists of a common prefix and root.

## REFLECTION

Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.

1. Where do you typically acquire most of your new words? Why do you think this is so?

2. Do you normally use a hard-copy dictionary or an online one? Why do you prefer one over the other?
3. What aspect of learning a new word do you usually find the most difficult? Its spelling? Its pronunciation? Its definition? Its context? What ideas do you have for making this part of learning a new word a little easier for you in the future?

### IT'S YOUR Q

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

## VOCABULARY IN ACTION

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

### SAY WHAT?

*From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.*

*Idealism* is fine, but as it approaches reality, the costs become *prohibitive*.

—William F. Buckley, Jr. (1925–2008), American author and commentator

- |                       |                 |            |            |
|-----------------------|-----------------|------------|------------|
| 1. <i>idealism</i>    | high-mindedness | creativity | paganism   |
| 2. <i>prohibitive</i> | illegal         | burdensome | formidable |

I have a *holistic* need to work and to have huge ties of love in my life. I can't imagine *eschewing* one for the other.

—Meryl Streep (1949–), American actress

- |                     |          |           |            |
|---------------------|----------|-----------|------------|
| 3. <i>holistic</i>  | holy     | deep      | unified    |
| 4. <i>eschewing</i> | avoiding | digesting | discarding |

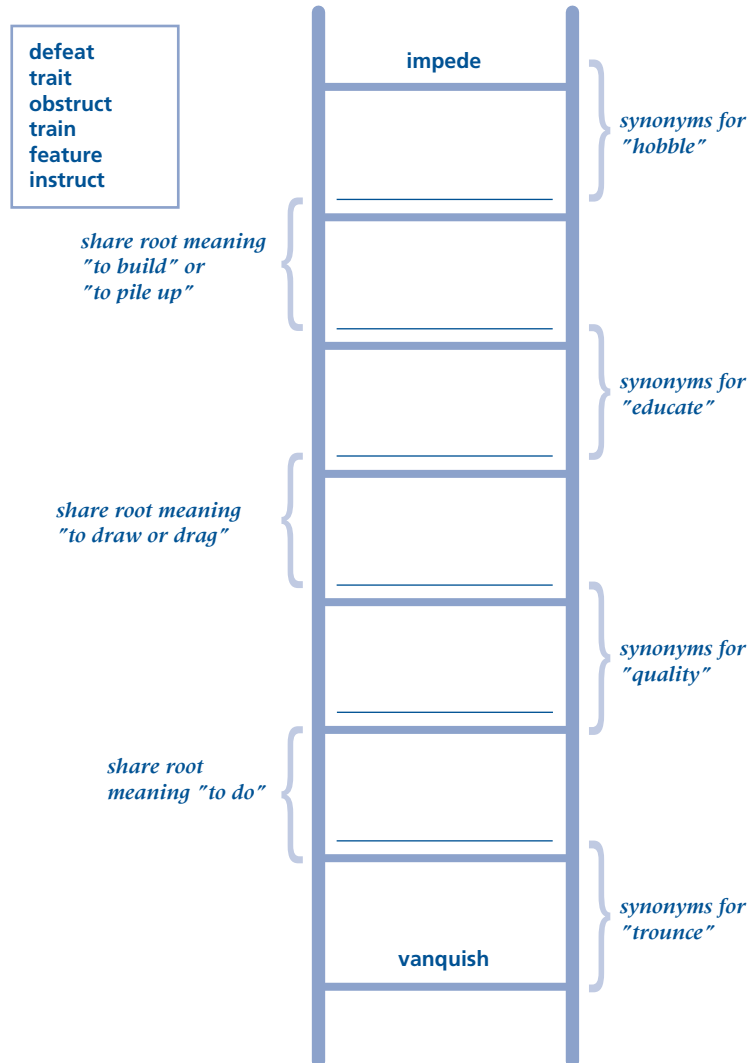
Advertising has *annihilated* the power of the most powerful adjectives.

—Paul Valéry (1871–1943), French poet and philosopher

- |                       |           |          |           |
|-----------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| 5. <i>annihilated</i> | exploited | enhanced | nullified |
|-----------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|

### VOCAB-U-LADDER

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

### **Vocabulary** A place for things you call or name

**vocabulary** vō-kăb' yə-lěr'ē *n.* 1. All the words of a language. 2. The sum of words used by, understood by, or at the command of a particular person or group. 3. A list of words and often phrases, usually arranged alphabetically and defined or translated; a lexicon or glossary. 4. A supply of expressive means; a repertoire of communication.\*

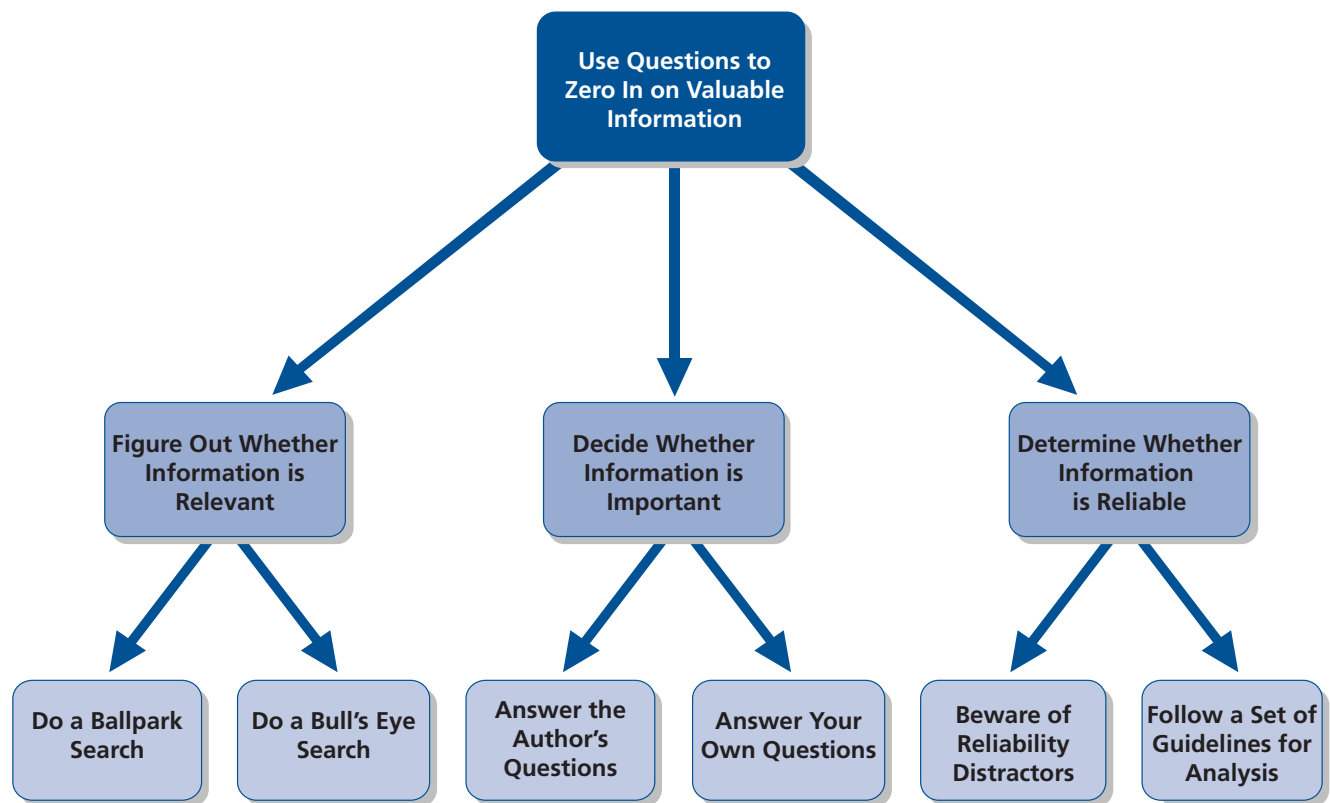
Grain goes in a *granary*, and birds are kept in an *aviary*. So where would you store *vocables*? In a *vocabulary*, of course! But wait a minute. What are *vocables*? *Vocable* comes from the Latin word *vocabulum*, which grew out of the Latin verb *vocare*, meaning “to call or to name.” Sound familiar? It should. *Vocal*, *voice*, *vocation* (your “calling”), and yes, *vocable*, all come from the same family. In fact, there are probably a dozen words you know that all share the same *vocare* root, including *provoke* (“call forth”), *revoke* (“call back”), and *convocation* (“a calling together”) just to name a few. What's a word by any other name? A *vocable*, that's what! Although no one really uses *vocable* anymore to describe a word or term, that's what it meant. And so when you think about it—and now that you know that the *-ary* ending describes a kind of container—it makes sense that a place for storing *vocables* would be called a *vocabulary*. And that's why we still use the word today.\*\*

\* Adapted from “vocabulary.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/vocabulary> (accessed May 3, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from “vocabulary.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/vocabulary> (accessed May 3, 2009); “vocabulary.” *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=vocabulary> (accessed May 3, 2009); “vocabulary, *n.*” *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; “vocabulary, *n.*” *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50278672> (accessed May 3, 2009)







# Use Questions to Zero In on Valuable Information

*You must not only aim right, but draw the bow with all your might.*

**Henry David Thoreau**  
(1817–1862), American author, philosopher, and naturalist

You don't have all day. You've got textbooks to plow through, articles to read, research to do, and lectures to attend. In addition, you might take time to watch the news, read the headlines, check your e-mail, or text a friend. How in the world are you going to retain all this information?

You're not.

The simple fact is that you can't possibly hold on to all the information you're bombarded with on a given day. You have to make some choices. That's why it's essential to be able use questions to zero in on the most valuable information. This chapter explains how to use questions to:

- **Figure Out Whether Information Is Relevant**
- **Decide Whether Information Is Important**
- **Determine Whether Information Is Reliable**

Why is so much information so readily available?

#### IT'S YOUR Q

How do questions aid learning?

How do you pinpoint the most valuable information?

There has never been a time when more information has been more readily available than right now. Thanks primarily to the Internet but also to a wealth of electronic documents and databases, many of us have at our fingertips what students in the past had to walk or drive miles to gain access to. But this mountain of available information has its drawbacks. Author David Shenk calls it “data smog.” As Shenk explains, “We thrive on the information, and yet we can also choke on it.”

So, how can we benefit from all this information without being asphyxiated by it? Questions are the key. Questions turn you from a passive learner into an active one. They provide the engine that drives the whole understanding process. Humans have realized the power of questions for more than twenty-four hundred years when the Greek philosopher Socrates (469–399 BC), found that instead of simply lecturing, he could pose a series of carefully directed questions that enabled the students who answered them to arrive at their understandings or conclusions themselves.

Students have been using questions ever since to activate their learning and make sense out of their studies. Time and time again, questions have provided a needed breakthrough for those who had been struggling with a subject. Instead of expecting meaning to simply pop up magically like a jack-in-the-box, active learners take the initiative, using their own questions to extract meaning from readings and lectures.

By employing this questioning method, you should be able to pierce the thick haze of data to pinpoint what’s truly valuable in the things you read and hear. With questions as your laser beam, you can focus your attention on the information that is relevant, important, and reliable—in other words, on the stuff that’s worth retaining.

## Figure Out Whether Information Is Relevant

How can you tell if information is relevant?

What’s wrong with irrelevant information?

Relevant information has a connection to your focus. If you’re living in Los Angeles, today’s weather in New York probably isn’t relevant. That’s because it has no obvious connection to your life in Los Angeles. On the other hand, the temperature in Los Angeles and the traffic conditions there will probably be relevant, particularly if you’re venturing outside.

Irrelevant information is a little like the distractions described in Chapter 3. It can gum up the works of understanding, making it difficult to concentrate properly, to think clearly, or to make decisions quickly and effectively. Math instructors frequently assign word problems that deliberately contain some irrelevant information. For example, a problem designed to see if you can calculate the distance that a person will be able to travel at a particular rate of speed in a set amount of time may describe the color of the person’s shoes or running shorts. Neither of these details is relevant, because they have nothing to do with the focus of the problem, namely, how far someone can travel at a given speed in a given amount of time.

How can you reduce irrelevant information?

The sharper your focus, the more readily you'll be able to discard irrelevant information. If you want to learn everything you can about the Empire State Building, then the height of the building (1,472 feet) is relevant. But if your purpose is to find what you need to know to visit the Empire State Building, your focus is sharper and the height is no longer relevant. What *is* relevant is the location of the building and how to get there, its hours, and how much it will cost to visit. That's because all of this information has a connection to your purpose: visiting the Empire State Building.

How do you find relevant information?

You can't tell whether information is connected unless you know what it's connecting to. That normally requires a clearly articulated focus. This is where questions come in. The more specific your question, the sharper your focus is likely to be. Asking a question is like pointing a camera at a field of facts. All those facts you can see in the viewfinder are relevant. All those that you can't see are not.

How do you find relevant information using a search engine?

There are lots of books and websites devoted to search engine tips. Most of them devote a fair amount of time to the individual idiosyncrasies of particular search engines, the symbols and keywords that certain engines recognize that will help you focus your search. These details are helpful, although most of them are typically explained in the particular search engine's "advanced search" area. What's more important and more fundamental is to know what you're searching for before you begin searching. Back before the Web was commonplace, it was often possible to do computer-based searches of online databases with the help of a librarian or other trained researcher. These searches took time and in some cases they cost money. Both factors tended to discourage the casual, hit-or-miss approach that has gradually become more common.

What are the differences between a bull's-eye search and a ballpark search?

In general, there are two types of searches: bull's-eye and ballpark. With a bull's-eye search, you are looking for a specific document or fact. With a ballpark search, you are seeking information on a particular topic, but you don't have a specific fact or document in mind.

## Do a Bull's-Eye Search

FOCUSING

QUESTIONING

What approach should you use for a bull's-eye search?

With a bull's-eye search, your best approach is to be as specific as possible. After all, if you know exactly what you're looking for, there's no real value in being vague about it.

How do you do a bull's-eye search in a book?

*Searching in a book.* If you're doing a bull's-eye search in a book, begin with the index. If the index is detailed and your search is sufficiently specific, you should be able to find an entry that takes you straight to the page or pages you're looking for. If the index is sparse or doesn't list what you're searching for, try the table of contents. Based on the chapter titles, find the chapter most likely to contain the information you're looking for, turn to that chapter, and then use the 35,000-foot scanning technique (see Chapter 5) to locate it.

How do you do a bull's-eye search in a magazine or journal?

*Searching in a magazine or journal.* Individual magazine or journal articles are rarely indexed. To do a bull's-eye search in these articles, your only real option is the 35,000-foot scanning technique (see Chapter 5). If the article uses subheadings, they can help to narrow your search. Skim the subheadings first and find the one that seems most likely to contain the information you're searching for. Then focus your attention on that section with your bull's-eye search.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

*Searching online or other electronic text.* Doing a bull's-eye search in a specific online or other electronic text is comparatively easy. Most applications that read electronic documents (web browsers, word processors, portable document readers) have a Find command that should enable you to type in the name, word, or phrase you're seeking and then go straight to it. By the way, these tools don't care if you've typed in the entire word or phrase; they just take the characters you've typed and find a match within the document. So, for example, if you're not sure how to spell the name of German composer Ludwig van Beethoven, you'd be safer searching for a part of his name—such as “hoven”—rather than run the risk of spelling it wrong. (A search for “Ludvig von Baythoven,” for example, would turn up nothing.) On the other hand, if you've spelled your search words correctly and there are several occurrences of them within the text, most tools will normally take you to the first instance of their occurrence and enable you to search again for others.

## Do a Ballpark Search

OVERVIEWING

QUESTIONING

What approach should you use for a ballpark search?

A ballpark search differs from a bull's-eye search in that you don't know exactly what you're looking for. You just have a general idea. Perhaps you're searching for information on Beethoven, but for some reason you don't remember his name. However, you know the person you are thinking of was German and a composer. The more clues you can assemble for a ballpark search, the more focused your search will be. But you have to be careful. If you include a clue that turns out to be incorrect, you may leave the ballpark entirely.

How do you do a ballpark search in a book?

*Searching in a book.* If your ballpark search is in a book in hard-copy format, you'll eventually be doing the treetop skimming described in Chapter 5. Once again, you can start with the index to see if you can find any clues, although it's less likely this time that you'll be able to find something this way. Then move on to the table of contents to see if there's a chapter title that will put you in the ballpark. For example, if you were skimming a book called either “Famous Germans” or “Famous Musicians,” you might find a chapter that would help to refine your search further (perhaps “Germans in Music” in the former and “German Composers” in the latter). If you're lucky enough to be searching a particular chapter, you may be able to zero in even further by reading the chapter subheadings for additional clues. Beyond that point, the treetop skimming begins in earnest as you try to grasp the context that might be likely to surround the information you're seeking.

How do you do a ballpark search in a magazine or journal?

*Searching in a magazine or journal.* Because a magazine or journal probably won't have an index, your only real hope of further narrowing a ballpark search in a magazine or journal article would be in its subheadings. Beyond that, you'll have to do your search using treetop skimming.

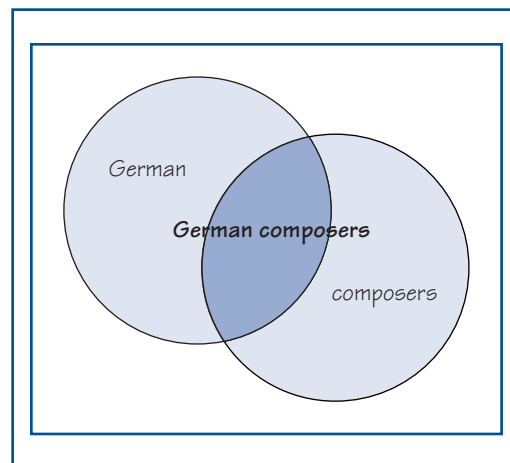
How can you do a ballpark search for an online document or in an electronic text?

*Searching a single online or other electronic text.* It's unlikely that a ballpark search of a specific online or other electronic text document will take you exactly where you want to go. But it may get you in the vicinity. The Find tool in a browser, word processor, or other document reader is not as sophisticated as an Internet search engine. If you're searching for the name of a German composer, it's best to search for either "German" or "composer" in the hopes of finding who you're looking for. (If you were to search for "German composer," you would be successful only if the two words occurred consecutively in the text.) Once the Find tool has you in the right ballpark (and it may take several attempts), you can do treetop skimming to find precisely what you're looking for.

How do you do a ballpark search through multiple documents on the Internet?

*Doing a ballpark search on the Internet.* Although the Find tools you can use to search the pages in a single electronic document are limited, if you're searching several documents and they are all available on the Internet, then you should be able to do more sophisticated searches. Search engines allow you to refine your search by combining several searches into one. This approach, known as Boolean searching, allows you to establish a relationship between two or more search terms (see Figure 7.1). The rules for particular search engines may vary slightly, but in general, if you search using the words "German" and "composer," the search engine will return all the documents that contain "German," all the documents that contain "composer," and, most important (and normally at the top of the list), all the documents that contain "German" *and* "composer."

**Figure 7.1**  
**How Boolean Searching Works**  
Boolean searching can refine your searches by providing the intersection of two or more sets of data.



## Decide Whether Information Is Important

How does important information differ from relevant information?

### IT'S YOUR Q

What happens when you find an answer to the question?

How do you determine what's important?

Of course, just because information is relevant doesn't necessarily mean it's something you want to hold on to. Valuable information is normally both relevant *and* important. Even if you've managed to discard irrelevant information, you may still be left with information of different weights competing for your time and attention. For example, if you had a to-do list that listed "Empty garbage" and "Complete research paper," both tasks would be relevant but they clearly wouldn't have the same weight or importance.

The most important information is the information that responds most directly to a particular question. If you ask, "How do I get to the Statue of Liberty from midtown Manhattan?" the most important information is "To get to the Statue of Liberty from midtown Manhattan, take the subway to the South Ferry station and then catch the Liberty Ferry at Battery Park." But if you asked instead, "Where did the Statue of Liberty come from?" information about the subway and ferry routes would no longer be important. In fact, it wouldn't even be relevant. The most important information would be that "The Statue of Liberty was created by Frederic Auguste Bartholdi and was presented to the United States in 1865 as a gift from France."

Few answers mark an automatic end point. Every answer has the potential to generate new questions. An answer such as "The Statue of Liberty was created by Frederic Auguste Bartholdi and was presented to the United States in 1865 as a gift from France" might prompt you to ask "Who was Bartholdi?" and "Why did France give the United States a statue?" If the authors have anticipated your questions, the sentences or paragraphs that follow may answer them. Or it may turn out that you and the authors hit a fork in the road and move in different directions.

To find what's important, ask questions and then seek to answer them. You can be driven by the engine of the author's questions or by questions of your own.

## Answer the Author's Questions

QUESTIONING

Where do you find the author's questions?

A book can be thought of as the answers to a series of invisible questions. Granted, you can't usually see these questions, but they're there. If this sounds like some sort of fairy tale, think again. Questions are actually built in to the unit that organizes almost everything we read. What unit is that? The paragraph. According to its definition, a paragraph "typically deals with a single thought or topic."<sup>3</sup> Everything in a paragraph points

<sup>1</sup>David Shenk, *Data Smog: Surviving the Information Glut* (New York: HarperCollins, 1997), p. 22.

<sup>2</sup>Edward V. Rickenbacker, *Rickenbacker* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1967), pp. 31–32.

<sup>3</sup>*The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000), p. 1274.

to that thought or topic. All the other sentences in that paragraph are there to support it. If you read a paragraph and ask, “What’s important here?” your answer will be the controlling idea and that should lead you to the invisible question.

The Empire State Building is an impressive symbol of early twentieth century industrial achievement. At 1,454 feet, this massive two-acre office building is the tallest in New York City and the ninth tallest in the world. Started in 1930, it took a total of 7,000,000 work-hours and a little more than a year of almost nonstop work to complete. It weighs 365,000 tons, has 6,500 windows, and boasts a total of 1,860 steps leading from the street level to the 102nd floor.

How are the controlling ideas arranged?

Most information is organized hierarchically. A chapter or an article has a single controlling idea or “thesis,” which answers the question, “What’s the point?” All other ideas grow out of that idea. On a smaller scale, each individual paragraph has its own controlling idea, with the rest of the paragraph acting to support it. Just as the controlling idea of the article answers the question “What’s the point?” for the article, *these* controlling ideas answer a similar question, but for each individual paragraph this time.

How do the chapter maps show the controlling idea relationships?

The maps that open each of the chapters in this book provide a good example of how this arrangement works. Each idea, like each node in the map, is supported by the ideas beneath it. The controlling idea provides the answer to a question; the ideas beneath provide examples and evidence to support it. This pattern of questions, answers, and support is repeated from article to section to paragraph. With more space, the maps could be expanded to include every paragraph in a chapter. The maps would be much bigger, of course, but the basic arrangement would be the same.

How do you find the most important information in an article or chapter?

To find the most important information in an article or chapter, look for the controlling ideas in each paragraph. These ideas in turn are likely to cluster around a controlling idea for a particular section. And those ideas should all support the chapter or article’s controlling idea. Often, the first paragraph of each section provides the controlling idea for that section, and the introductory paragraph for the chapter provides the controlling idea for the entire chapter. Some articles or chapters are better organized than others, but in many cases you should be able to create a framework of controlling ideas that resembles the maps that begin each chapter in this book.

## Answer Your Own Questions

### QUESTIONING

What if what you think is important differs from what the author thinks is important?

Of course, your view of what’s important may differ from the author’s view. Just as the Empire State Building was built around a steel framework, an article or chapter is constructed by the author around a framework of controlling ideas. But these important ideas don’t necessarily have to be *your* important ideas.



How do you find what's important to you?

The way to find the information that is important to you is by asking a focused question and then zeroing in on the area that provides the answer. Depending on the scope of your question, that area might be a sentence, a paragraph, a section, a chapter or article, or even an entire book. The next most important information will be the information that directly supports your original answer.

How can you be sure what you've found is the most important?

Unlike relevance, which has to do with whether a connection exists or doesn't, importance is a relative thing. It has to do with the scope of your topic or question. If relevance can be seen as where the camera lens is pointed, importance is influenced by how far you zoom in or zoom out. The larger something is relative to the other facts around it, the more important it's likely to be. So, if your question asks, "How tall is the Empire State Building?" then its height is likely to be the most important piece of information in your answer. If, on the other hand, your question asks, "How big is the Empire State Building?" then its height would presumably compete with its other dimensions for importance.

What happens to information that is interesting but not important?

Keep in mind that what is important is not always the same as what is interesting. A lot of information (such as the number of steps in the Empire State Building) falls under the general heading of *trivia*. Trivia fascinates some students and bores others. Regardless, it's rarely important. At best it provides support for a controlling idea. If you think trivia is interesting, you may find this motivates you to remember it. It's still better to focus your attention on the important ideas though. When you do, the details that interest you will often remain in the picture. If, on the other hand, you focus on trivia instead, the controlling ideas may be pushed out of frame.

## Determine Whether Information Is Reliable

How can you tell whether information is reliable?

Questions activate your learning and help you to determine which information is relevant and which information is important. But they play one more especially vital role. They help you put the reliability of information to the test. Compared to finding information that's relevant or deciding which information is important, determining whether information is reliable can be a real challenge. It helps to beware of things that can frequently distract from your ability to determine whether information is reliable and to arrive at some guidelines you can use consistently to analyze information for its overall reliability.

### Beware of Reliability Distractors

QUESTIONING

Most of us would like to think that we can determine the reliability of information. However, certain factors such as the echo chamber, confirmation bias, and logical fallacies can sometimes distort our perception of reliability.

What is the echo chamber?

### The Echo Chamber

The echo chamber describes a situation in which information is amplified by constant repetition. If the information is false, it may be mistaken as true. If the information is true, it may appear to be more relevant or important than it actually is. The satirist H. L. Mencken's "bathtub hoax" offers an interesting insight into the echo chamber run amok, whereas urban legends provide more commonplace examples. And because the echo chamber isn't just for false information, it helps sometimes to take a good look at the "news" that everyone is buzzing about.

What was the bathtub hoax?

**The Bathtub Hoax** In 1917, the reporter and satirist Henry Louis Mencken wrote a whimsical, entirely fictional piece for the *New York Evening Mail* called "A Neglected Anniversary," a meticulously fabricated history of the evolution of the bathtub in America and its introduction in the White House during the Millard Fillmore administration in 1850. Unfortunately, many of the people who read the piece must not have been active learners because the joke was lost on them. Soon, Mencken's fictional account of the first White House bathtub made its way into respectable history and reference books. Once the "fact" was available in other sources, the echo chamber effect took hold and the story of the first White House bathtub started popping up in numerous books as though it were the truth. Mencken, who had a distinctly mischievous side, claimed to be astonished by the longevity of his hoax, but given his temperament, he was probably amused by the impact of his stunt, which was an especially colorful illustration of the echo chamber effect.

### IT'S YOUR Q

What makes urban legends convincing?

**Urban Legends** Urban legends are modern myths that once depended almost entirely on word of mouth for their dissemination but have gotten an extra boost with the advent of e-mail. Either method of communication provides the echo chamber. Classic urban legends include the fancy sports car that gets sold for \$50, the unsuspecting tourist in Mexico who buys what he or she thinks is a Chihuahua but once home discovers that the little dog is actually a rat, the well-meaning but absent-minded woman who tragically tries to dry off her wet poodle in a microwave, and the passing motorist who picks up a hitchhiker in a prom dress but learns later that the girl he drove home died several years before on that very night. None of these stories is true, and yet you're likely to hear many of them told again and again as true, albeit with some variations that either bring them up to date or associate them with local landmarks.

How can you detect an urban legend?

What makes urban legends convincing, among other things, is that they are usually told by someone you know who insists that he or she knows someone who knows the person the incident actually happened to. For this reason, urban legends are sometimes called FOAF or "friend of a friend" stories. Ironically, the same thing that initially makes urban legends seem convincing is what ultimately gives them away as false.

If you hear a story from someone who knows someone who has a friend the story "really happened to," that's usually a dead giveaway. Urban legends almost never hold

up to scrutiny if you try to trace them back to the source. Even in those situations in which the legend is based on truth, it inevitably gets distorted or exaggerated. Although e-mail has done a lot to increase the spread of urban legends, the Internet has made it easier to debunk them. Several websites, including *snopes.com*, track urban legends. The websites provide regularly updated listings of legends and, in most cases—although not always—proof that they aren't true. This can be valuable because people who unwittingly pass on an urban legend can often get quite irritable if the reliability of their story is questioned. Actual evidence instead of unsubstantiated disbelief is usually enough to convince most people.

How does the echo chamber affect information that is true?

**The Dangers of Summer** Not all information that gets amplified in the echo chamber is false. Sometimes stories are true but they get blown out of proportion. A good example was the widespread fear of shark attacks and the spread of the West Nile virus in the summer of 2003. From the nervous reactions of some vacationers, you might've gotten the impression that if "Jaws" didn't get them, then the West Nile would. Were the fears of ferocious sharks and a mosquito-borne virus justified? Not according to an article and graphic in the *New York Times* that compared the relative dangers of what it called "The Real Dangers of Summer."<sup>4</sup> The greatest risks, according to the piece, were skin cancer and food poisoning. The former would strike one in 200 people, the latter one in 800. But what of the West Nile virus and sharks? The *Times* statistics showed that these were actually the lowest risks of all summertime hazards, affecting one in 68,500 and one in 6 million, respectively. So why the hysteria? Additional statistics in the same graphic provided a clue. Whereas only 359 newspaper articles had been written the previous summer about the dangers of skin cancer and food poisoning, during the same period a whopping 2,516 articles had dealt with either the West Nile virus or the hungry sharks.

What happens with confirmation bias? What influences whether we tune in or tune out information?

### Confirmation Bias

Some information that's unreliable may be embraced while other information that's reliable may be overlooked. Why? It's called confirmation bias.

Have you ever had the experience of learning the meaning of a word, only to find that suddenly everyone around you seems to be using that same word? Of course, if the word you learned actually *is* a new word (also known as a *neologism*), then it may well be that the number of people using that word is increasing. But if it's a word that's only new for you, it's unlikely that others have suddenly decided to use it more often on your account. What's more plausible is that you've just become more attuned to that word. As we move through our daily lives, the sheer magnitude of information we confront means it's almost inevitable that we will tune in some

<sup>4</sup>David Ropeik and Nigel Holmes, "Never Bitten, Twice Shy: The Real Dangers of Summer," *New York Times* (August 9, 2003), p. A11.

information and tune out some other. When the information relates to something you already know or believe, you're more likely to tune it in. And if the information doesn't relate to something you already know or believe, you're more likely to tune it out.

When is selectivity harmful?

In the case of learning a new word, this tendency is relatively harmless. But the same phenomenon can act to reinforce your particular viewpoint or bias at the expense of other information that may actually contradict or modify your beliefs. This is known as confirmation bias. In the journal *Review of General Psychology*, psychologist Raymond S. Nickerson defines confirmation bias as “the unwitting selectivity in the acquisition and use of evidence.”<sup>5</sup> So, although selectivity is an essential tool in reducing the glut of information you're exposed to, it can also have a negative effect by shielding you from vital information or depriving you of the complete picture.

What did Forer's experiment show?

One of the most famous demonstrations of confirmation bias was an experiment conducted by a psychology professor named Forer, who administered a personality profile test to his students. When Forer received the completed tests, he promptly threw them all out and instead, unbeknownst to the students, returned the identical personality profile to each member of his class, asking each student to read his or her profile and then rate its accuracy on a scale of 0 to 5, with 5 meaning “excellent” and 4 meaning “good.” Incredibly, the personality profile, even though it was written without any of the students in mind, still received a cumulative average of 4.26 for accuracy. What the students didn't realize—until he told them—is that Forer had clipped the profile out of a newspaper horoscope column. The profile was ambiguous but vaguely complimentary. The criticisms were mild. Thanks to confirmation bias, most of the students who read the profile related to its positive elements, ignored those elements that were too negative or didn't relate specifically to them, and then concluded that it was an accurate assessment of their particular personality traits!<sup>6</sup>

What can you do to avoid confirmation bias?

All of us are susceptible to confirmation bias. It's important to be aware of this tendency and to keep your mind open for differing evidence and information that might change your viewpoint. Also, it doesn't hurt to have a set of consistent guidelines that you use to gauge the validity of information.

Why is it risky to make decisions based on your “gut”?

Many people make a decision whether or not to trust information based on their “gut.” And it's true that our hunches and instincts do seem to provide us with clues, although there is very little scientific data to support this. Unfortunately, emotional appeals have a way of short-circuiting common sense. It happens to nearly all of us at times. Articulate, charismatic liars can sometimes trigger a positive response while honest but awkward writing or speaking can sometimes put us on guard.

<sup>5</sup>Raymond S. Nickerson, “Confirmation Bias: A Ubiquitous Phenomenon in Many Guises,” *Review of General Psychology* 2, no. 2 (1998): pp. 175–220.

<sup>6</sup>Robert Todd Carroll, “Forer Effect,” *The Skeptics Dictionary*, available at <http://www.skepDic.com/forer/html>.

What are logical fallacies?

What is an example of a logical fallacy?

#### IT'S YOUR Q

Where can you learn more about fallacies?

### Logical Fallacies

Although your own biases can affect the way you select and interpret information, there are also elements embedded in some arguments that can lead you to unknowingly accept a false conclusion as fact. Usually there is a flaw in an otherwise reasonable argument that renders it invalid. These are commonly known as logical fallacies and are used by writers and speakers sometimes accidentally but often on purpose to lead you to a desired conclusion.

One of the best-known logical fallacies has to do with ice cream sales. It suggests that because an increase in ice cream sales seems to correspond with an increase in crime, ice cream must cause crime. What's tricky about a fallacy is that it's usually made up of a true premise or premises that reach a false conclusion. Therefore, a person who isn't listening or reading critically may notice the true statements but overlook the logical leap that leads to a false outcome. It's true that ice cream sales and crime often increase at the same time. But it's not true that one causes the other. (It's more likely that hot weather is the cause for the increase in both.)

Another common fallacy is known as the straw man. That's a situation in which the writer or speaker uses an opposing example that is either weak or imaginary in order to make his argument appear to gain legitimacy or strength. The straw man is often called "some" or "some people" to present the appearance of a real opposition without ever naming it. So, if the authors of a study skills textbook wanted to appear more courageous and defiant than they actually are, they might write: "Although there are some who may want to do away with study skills textbooks altogether, we were determined to make sure that our book was published." A person who read this might feel increased respect and admiration for these brave authors and might even be tempted to purchase an additional book or two just to spite those who want to do away with study skills textbooks altogether. But there's only one problem. The enemy is never specified. It's a phantom. And that is how the straw man fallacy works.

There are several books and websites devoted to fallacies. All of them are informative, and many are quite entertaining.

### Books

Capaldi, Nicholas. *The Art of Deception: An Introduction to Critical Thinking: How to Win an Argument, Defend a Case, Recognize a Fallacy, See Through a Deception*. Prometheus Books, 1987.

Damer, T. Edward. *Attacking Faulty Reasoning: Practical Guide to Fallacy-Free Arguments*, 5th ed. Wadsworth, 2004.

Engel, S. Morris. *With Good Reason: An Introduction to Informal Fallacies*, 6th ed. St. Martins, 1999.

Gula, Robert J. *Nonsense: A Handbook of Logical Fallacies*. Axios, 2002.

Whyte, Jamie. *Crimes Against Logic*. McGraw-Hill, 2004.

**Websites**

*Fallacies: The Internet Encyclopedia of Philosophy.* <http://www.iep.utm.edu/fallacy/>.

*Fallacies: The Nizkor Project.* <http://www.nizkor.org/features/fallacies/>.

*Logical Fallacies: The Fallacy Files.* <http://www.fallacyfiles.org/>.

*Logical Fallacies and the Art of Debate.* <http://www.csun.edu/~dgv61315/fallacies.html>.

**Follow a Set of Guidelines for Analysis****PLANNING**

How can you avoid being swayed by unreliable information?

Given all the potential ways in which information can be misleading, how do you establish what's reliable and what isn't? One of the most effective ways to guard against being swayed by unreliable information in one instance but unaffected by it in another is to consistently apply standards that allow you to subject everything to the same analysis or test. You can use a test for analyzing all types of information or tailor your analysis for a specific area, such as Internet sites. What's important in either case is to keep your approach systematic and consistent.

What are the four steps for Ruggiero's comprehensive thinking strategy?

**Evaluate Information**

Critical thinking authority Vincent Ruggiero has defined a four-step "comprehensive thinking strategy."<sup>7</sup>

1. *Identify facts and opinions.* If the information is common knowledge or easily verifiable, it's likely to be factual. If not, treat it as opinion.
2. *Check the facts and test the opinions.* If the information is factual, can you verify it? Did the author or speaker seem to leave out anything important? If it's opinion, do the speaker's views stand up to scrutiny or are they easily refuted?
3. *Evaluate the evidence.* If the author or speaker has offered support for any opinions, is this support reasonable and sufficient?
4. *Make your judgment.* Based on the facts and the evidence, rather than your gut feelings or preferences, decide whether you consider the information reliable.

What special challenge does Internet information create?

**Evaluate Internet Sites**

The proliferation of online news, opinion, and reference sites has led some to question the reliability of Internet information. One of the Internet's greatest strengths—its wide-open, inclusive nature—is also a potential weakness. With a few days' work and very little money, a talented person can put together a website that superficially resembles one of the top professional news and information sites and yet ignores the standards for quality and accuracy that traditional news organizations live by. Although

<sup>7</sup>Vincent Ryan Ruggiero, *Becoming a Critical Thinker*, 5th ed. (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1999), pp. 26–27.



the following questions may be especially important to ask about Internet sites, they can also apply to traditional TV, radio, magazines, and newspapers.

1. *Who owns them?* More and more news and information operations are owned by companies whose emphasis is on something other than news. This may affect their tone or approach. Others aren't news organizations at all but lobbies or think tanks organized to promote a particular product or viewpoint but whose publications are designed to look like news. With newspapers, magazines, and websites, you can usually find information about the ownership in the paper or magazine or on the site. With television or radio stations, it can take a little more digging. Most news operations try to maintain a wall (see #3) between their business and editorial operations, but it isn't always possible.
2. *How do they make their money?* A key rule of investigative journalism is to "follow the money," and to some degree these special journalists are professional critical thinkers. Almost no publication or website relies solely on money from subscribers to exist. As disillusioning as it is to realize, financial obligations to owners or advertisers can sometimes influence what a publication or broadcaster does and doesn't cover. For example, a newspaper that relies heavily on automobile ads may be reluctant to cover a scandal at a car dealership, whereas a magazine that runs ads for a local restaurant may feel pressure to give that restaurant a good review. Advertisements are usually pretty easy to notice and the nature of the advertising can sometimes be illuminating. It can tell you something about the viewers, readers, or listening audience and may give you an idea of what topics could test the organization's editorial independence.
3. *Can you tell the difference between news, opinion, and advertising?* In the past, publications and broadcasters have gone to great lengths to distinguish between news and paid advertising, feeling that it serves the public better to make sure that this distinction is clear. In newspapers, this is commonly known as "the wall." Journalists are normally well aware of this wall and are proud of its existence. The wall between news and opinion isn't always as clear, and that can be a problem when one is mistaken for the other.
4. *Where do they get their information?* Some small news operations rely heavily on national and international news wires for most or even all of their information. Larger operations have their own staffs of reporters and columnists. Over time, if you pay attention, you should be able to get a sense of a particular news service or journalist's track record for reliability.
5. *How well presented is the information?* Crudely written or clumsily delivered words can occasionally pack a wallop, but, in general, sloppy writing or speaking should set off alarm bells in your head.
6. *What other information is presented?* You can sometimes learn about the reliability of an article from the company it keeps. This is especially true on the Internet. If someone sends you a link to an Internet news story, see if you can navigate back to the

homepage of the site where the story came from. The “mix” of a site’s stories can be a tip-off. For example, a White House exclusive may not look very reliable if you discover that it’s running alongside a story about a dog with two heads and an article about a miracle weight-loss product.

What is a simpler way for determining whether something is reliable?

A simpler way to determine whether information is reliable or not is basically no different than the strategy for zeroing in on all valuable information: Stay alert, think about your thinking, and above all, ask questions!

## FINAL WORDS

---

What surprising result can zeroing in on valuable ideas sometimes produce?

Not only will zeroing in on what’s valuable enable you to extract the most relevant, important, and reliable information from what you read and hear and make it a part of your personal web of knowledge, but it will also produce a result that may surprise you: It will help you to derive real pleasure out of thinking!



## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

1. Author David Shenk calls the glut of information \_\_\_\_\_.  
**data mining**      **databases**      **data smog**
2. Information in an article or chapter is usually organized \_\_\_\_\_.  
**hierarchically**      **collectively**      **repeatedly**
3. In newspapers, the distinction between news and advertising is commonly known as \_\_\_\_\_.  
**“the gap”**      **“the tower”**      **“the wall”**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| _____ 1. Ballpark   | a. Used questions and answers to promote understanding                                      |
| _____ 2. Socrates   | b. Wrote a fictional story that was adopted as historical fact                              |
| _____ 3. Fallacy    | c. The engine that drives the whole understanding process                                   |
| _____ 4. Mencken    | d. Method of searching for information when you're not exactly sure what you're looking for |
| _____ 5. Forer      | e. Method of searching when you know exactly what you're looking for                        |
| _____ 6. Boolean    | f. Conducted an experiment with his class that demonstrated confirmation bias               |
| _____ 7. Bull's-eye | g. Method that lets you define a logical relationship between two or more search terms      |
| _____ 8. Questions  | h. A flaw in an otherwise logical argument  |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

1. T    F    In the process of understanding, questions are the engine.
2. T    F    Questions change you from an active learner to a passive one.
3. T    F    Sharks and West Nile virus are the greatest summertime hazards.

4. T F Math instructors are careful to keep irrelevant information out of the word problems they assign.
5. T F Most programs that read electronic documents have a Find command.

**MULTIPLE CHOICE**

*Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.*

1. Valuable information should be
  - a. relevant.
  - b. important.
  - c. reliable.
  - d. all of the above.
2. Many books can be thought of as a series of
  - a. answers to invisible questions.
  - b. clues to unsolvable mysteries.
  - c. episodes from timeless stories.
  - d. conclusions to unspoken introductions.
3. The most important information in a paragraph is
  - a. the controlling idea.
  - b. a question.
  - c. the last sentence.
  - d. a detail.
4. The story of the Chihuahua that turned out to be a rat is an example of
  - a. confirmation bias.
  - b. an urban legend.
  - c. a logical fallacy.
  - d. a controlling idea.
5. A key rule of investigative journalism is
  - a. know thyself.
  - b. trust but verify.
  - c. follow the money.
  - d. none of the above.

**REFLECTION**

Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.

1. Explain the distinction between relevant, reliable, and important information. Which of the three poses the biggest challenge for you? Why?
2. Do you use particular tricks or shortcuts to improve your Internet searching? If so, explain your approach in a way that would be useful for others. If not, suggest ideas you've gleaned from this chapter that may help improve your searching in the future.
3. Cite an example of an urban legend, a case of confirmation bias, or an instance of the echo chamber that fooled you at first and then explain how you eventually realized that it was unreliable.

**IT'S YOUR Q**

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

**VOCABULARY IN ACTION**

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

**SAY WHAT?**

From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.

When strangers start acting like neighbors, communities are *reinvigorated*.

—Ralph Nader (1934– ), American lawyer, consumer advocate, and presidential candidate

- |                         |                      |                        |                   |
|-------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. <i>reinvigorated</i> | given new<br>leaders | given old<br>standards | given<br>new life |
|-------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|-------------------|

It's *stasis* that kills you off in the end, not *ambition*.

—Bono (1960— ), Irish musician

- |                    |        |            |           |
|--------------------|--------|------------|-----------|
| 2. <i>stasis</i>   | apathy | inactivity | paralysis |
| 3. <i>ambition</i> | drive  | enthusiasm | greed     |

*Diplomacy* is the art of saying “nice doggie” until you can find a rock.

—Will Rogers (1879–1935), American actor and humorist

- |                     |          |            |      |
|---------------------|----------|------------|------|
| 4. <i>diplomacy</i> | trickery | cleverness | tact |
|---------------------|----------|------------|------|

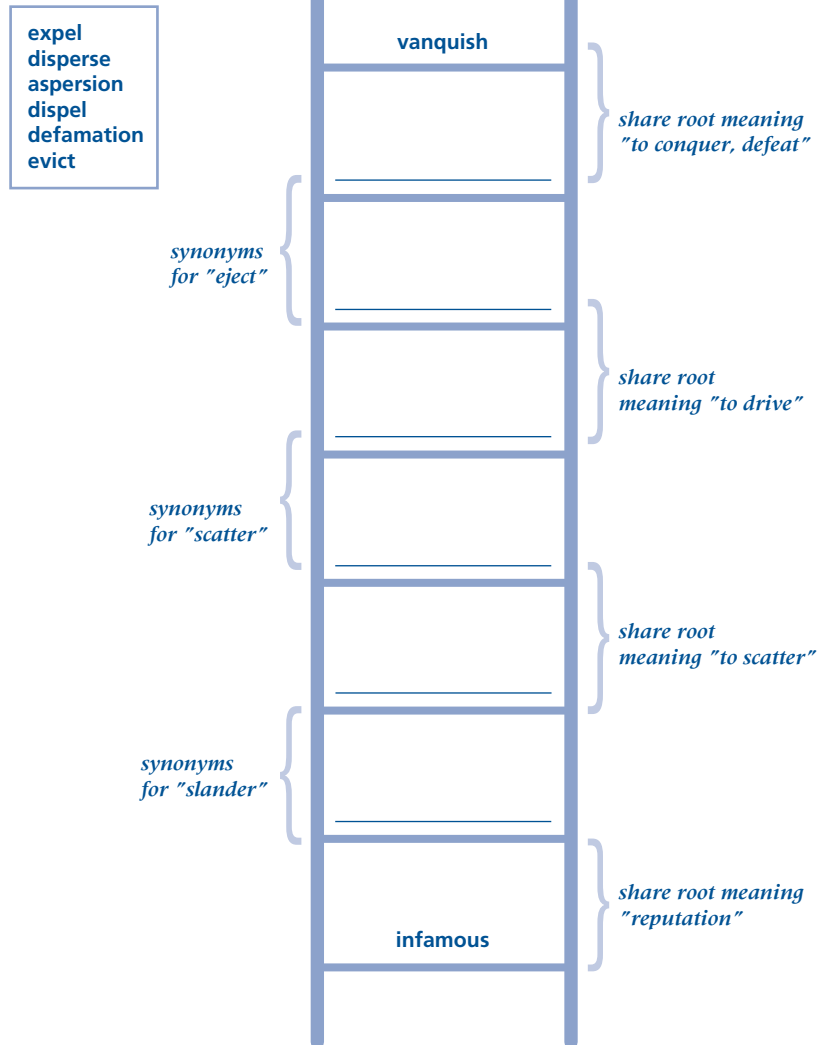
The gambling known as business looks with *austere* disfavor upon the business known as gambling.

—Ambrose Bierce (1842–1914), American author

- |                   |       |          |            |
|-------------------|-------|----------|------------|
| 5. <i>austere</i> | stern | enormous | particular |
|-------------------|-------|----------|------------|

## VOCAB-U-LADDER

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

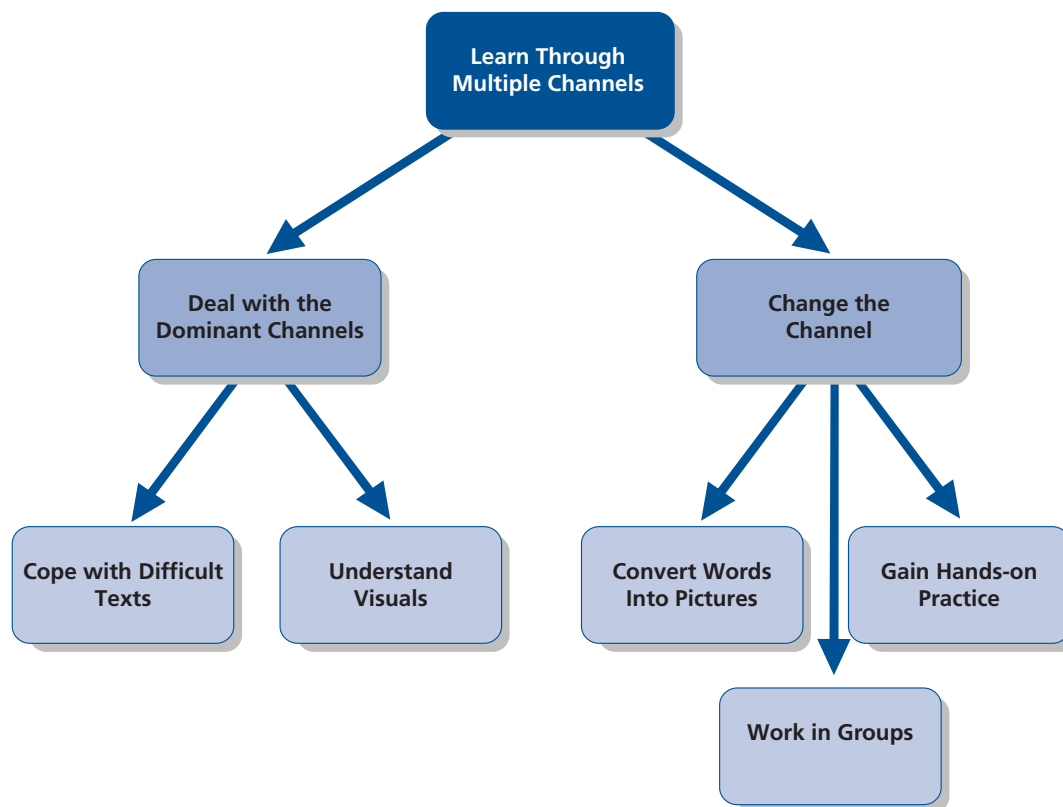
### **Critical** Critical words aren't always critical words

**critical** *krit' i-kəl. adj.* 1. Inclined to judge severely and find fault. 2. Characterized by careful, exact evaluation and judgment. 3. Of, relating to, or characteristic of critics or criticism. 4. Forming or having the nature of a turning point; crucial or decisive.\*

"May I be critical?" Ask someone that, and you're apt to be faced with a frown or maybe even a full-fledged "fight or flight" response. These days, that question can be about as welcome as a punch in the solar plexus. It's a confusing world as far as words are concerned. In some circles, *bad* can mean "good," *cool* can mean "hot," and calling something *sick* can be seen as a compliment. The English language is in an almost constant state of flux. When architect Christopher Wren completed St. Paul's Cathedral in 1710, the Queen told him she thought it was awful. In other words, she loved it. *Awful* meant "awe-inspiring" in Wren's day but now it generally means "horrid." Although somewhere along the way the word *critical* has acquired a primarily negative connotation, it hasn't always been this way. The words *critical* and *criticism* come from the Greek word *krīnein*, which means "to separate, judge, or decide." Both of these words in turn are descendants of *crisis*, which has met a similar fate. A *crisis* is a crossroads, a critical point where paths may separate or when it's time to judge or decide. The welcome end to a high fever is a *crisis*; a thoughtful, detailed analysis of a novel is *criticism*; and a large supply of water can be *critical* on a long hike. But a hurricane is a *crisis*, insults can be *criticism*, and if you thoughtlessly fail to bring water on that hike, the person who scolds you may be accurately described as *critical*. Yes, English words can have slippery meanings. And *critical* is a classic example. A lot depends on the time, the context, and the intentions of the person who uses them. So the next time that someone asks, "May I be critical?" hold your fire, take a deep breath, and think critically before you answer.\*\*

\* Adapted from "critical." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/critical> (accessed May 26, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from "critical." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/critical> (accessed May 26, 2009).; "critical." *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=critical> (accessed May 26, 2009).; "critical, a." *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; "critical, a." *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50054175> (accessed May 26, 2009).



# Learn Through Multiple Channels

*If you wish to advance into the infinite, explore the finite in all directions.*

**Johann Wolfgang von Goethe** (1749–1832), German author, painter, philosopher, scientist, and politician

Instructors don't all teach in the same manner, and students don't all learn in the same way. There are numerous channels for teaching and learning. Some, like words and images, are widespread and unavoidable, whereas others, like group work and hands-on learning, provide alternatives when traditional routes turn out to be tough going. This chapter explains how to tune in to the dominant channels of teaching, how to change the channel to enhance your understanding, and how to make the most of your personal learning style. It provides advice on how to:

- **Cope with Difficult Texts**
- **Understand Visuals**
- **Turn Words into Pictures**
- **Gain Hands-On Practice**
- **Work in Groups**



How will an understanding of learning styles affect your success in college?

Although we may sit in the same classrooms or log on to the same websites, we don't all learn in the same way. Instructors are well aware of this, and most students have at least a vague sense that this is true. Unfortunately, despite the diversity of learning styles, course information is still primarily conveyed on two basic channels: as symbols and as shapes. The symbols are the words and numbers we read and hear. The shapes are the graphs, charts, maps, and other illustrations that often accompany those words. First, it helps to have a good sense of what kind of learner you are. Then, in order to learn and succeed, you must develop strategies to deal with the dominant channels of symbols and shapes and use your preferred learning styles to provide additional support.

## Deal with the Dominant Channels

What are the dominant learning channels?

It's rare that you'll take a college course that doesn't have text you need to read and images you're expected to understand and interpret. With few exceptions, to succeed in college you will need to learn to operate on these dominant channels, to understand your assigned texts to the best of your ability, and to make sense out of any accompanying charts, graphs, and illustrations.

## Cope with Difficult Texts

REFRAMING

Why are some textbooks so difficult to understand?

Sometimes you and the required text for your course may not "hit it off." There are several factors that can make a textbook seem difficult. Here are three of them:

*Writing style or tone.* As we'll see in Chapter 10, most books have a distinctive style or tone, one that usually reflects the voice of the author or authors. Some books are chatty and informal. Others are staid and scholarly. You may not feel as though you are in sync with the way the authors choose to express their ideas. If so, that can make reading the assignments more challenging and even aggravating. Try to stick it out, though. The style may seem jarring at first, but there's a good chance you'll grow accustomed to it over time.

*Vocabulary.* If a book seems to be "over your head," a primary reason for this will often be its vocabulary level. If you're having trouble with a textbook because you don't understand what the words mean, then you probably should be reading two books at once—your text and your dictionary—until you've grown accustomed enough to the vocabulary that you can keep reading without stopping to look something up. With some books, the new and challenging words never end, but more often it's just a matter of getting up to speed. Once you learn the lingo, you'll be fine.

*Organization.* Trouble with the way a book is organized may indicate a conflict between the author's writing style and your personal learning style. As Felder and Soloman explain,<sup>1</sup> *sequential learners* process things methodically, step by step, relating each new piece of information to the facts that came before it as though following a recipe. *Global learners* learn in bursts and insights, grabbing huge handfuls of seemingly unrelated information and then suddenly (and often unexpectedly) establishing connections between ideas in one great big "Aha!" If you're a sequential learner and you run into that rare textbook that's written globally, your best defense is to search first for some sort of summary at the end of the chapter that will pull things together and provide you with a road map for your wild ride. If the author writes sequentially and you learn globally, you might as well get used to it. The vast majority of courses and texts are delivered in a sequential fashion. Global learners can adjust to a sequential text and add some unaccustomed structure to their way of looking at things by taking a few moments to systematically survey a reading assignment (see Chapter 10) before diving in.

Keep in mind that most relationships, even those between a student and a textbook, take work and take time. But if there truly seems to be a disconnect between you and your book, you may want to find a supplementary text or "read" the original book in a different form.

### Use a Supplementary Text

How will a supplementary text help?

If for whatever reason you're having difficulties understanding the course's primary textbook and you've already sought help from the instructor or a tutor, then a supplementary textbook can sometimes help you gain a better grasp of the subject. In some instances, you may be able to find another textbook that covers the same topic that your course textbook does, but it's more likely that you will have to use different supplementary texts for different parts of your course text. It's important to stress that this is a *supplementary* textbook, not an alternate one. Your instructor still has every right and reason to expect you to be studying from the required text. Therefore, any reading you do in a second text will be in addition to your regular text, not instead of it. Once you have a better grasp of the subject or ideas you were struggling with, return to the regular text and see if it is easier to understand.

### Listen Instead of Reading

What is the value of listening instead of reading?

Auditory learners comprehend better when they hear information instead of reading it on a page or screen. This means that although lectures are helpful, reading assignments can sometimes be a struggle. The organization Recording for the Blind and Dyslexic (RFB&D) provides audio versions of a large number of textbooks (<http://www.rfbd.org>). In addition, many popular books—both fiction and nonfiction—are released

<sup>1</sup>Richard A. Felder and Barbara M. Soloman, "Learning Styles and Strategies," available at <http://www.ncsu.edu/felder-public/ILSdir/styles.htm>.

in audio form by commercial publishers and are often available from your college or public library for free. It's important to stick with the unabridged versions, however, or you may miss a part of the book that is stressed in class and on your tests but is absent from the copy you listened to.

## Understand Visuals

REFRAMING

OVERVIEWING

### IT'S YOUR Q

All of us are taught to read words at an early age. But when are we taught to read pictures? When you read words, you're cracking a code. That code is the English language, and its message is the meaning you extract from words, sentences, and paragraphs. Although we spend a great deal of time decoding language, most of the codes around us are visual. We can decode a smile, for example, and know how its meaning differs from that of a frown. Visual materials in textbooks use codes as well to supply messages that are often as important as the meanings contained in sentences and paragraphs. For that reason, they must be read every bit as carefully. Like reading a paragraph, reading a picture simply means extracting its message.

What is the purpose of the OPTIC system?

### Use the OPTIC System

Many students mistakenly give visuals only a quick glance or even skip over them entirely. But these graphic materials should be scrutinized as carefully and as systematically as paragraphs. The OPTIC system will help you take an organized approach to this task.

What do the five letters in OPTIC stand for?

The five letters in the word *OPTIC* (which means “pertaining to the eye”) provide you with a simple system for remembering the five elements of analyzing a visual:

O is for *overview*.

P is for *parts*.

T is for *title*.

I is for *interrelationships*.

C is for *conclusion*.

What are the five steps of the OPTIC system?

Using these five elements as cues, you can conduct a meaningful analysis of almost any diagram, graph, or illustration by following these steps:

1. Begin by conducting a brief *overview* of the visual.
2. Then zero in on the *parts* of the visual. Read all labels, and note any elements or details that seem important.
3. Now read the *title* of the visual so that you're clear on the subject it is covering.
4. Next, use the title as your theory and the parts of the visual as clues to detect and specify the *interrelationships* in the graphic.

5. Finally, try to reach a *conclusion* about the visual as a whole. What does it mean? Why was it included in the text? Sum up the message of the visual in just a sentence or two.

### Learn the Language of Graphs

You are most likely to encounter three general types of graphs: circle graphs, bar graphs, and line graphs. The purpose of a circle graph is unique, whereas bar and line graphs perform the same basic function.

What are the most common types of graphs?

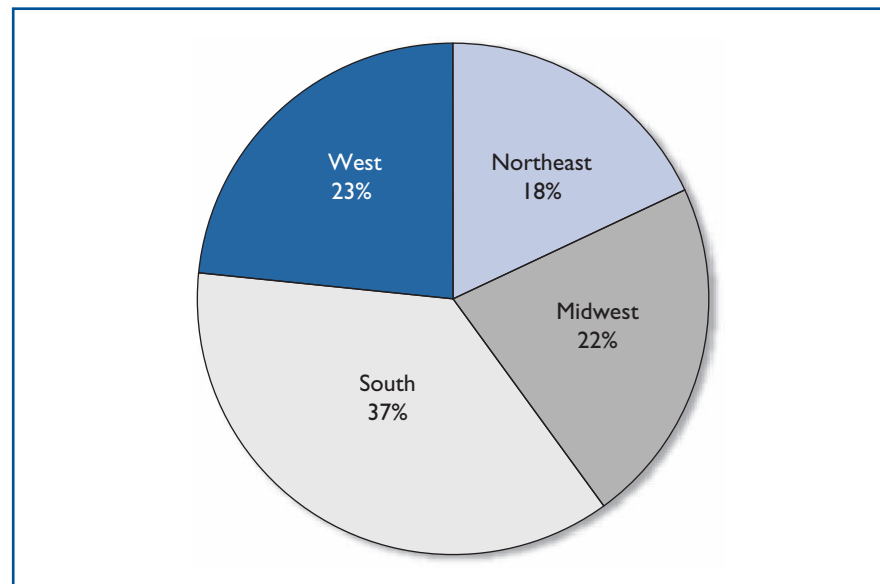
What is the purpose of the circle graph?

**Decode Circle Graphs** The purpose of a circle graph, also known as a pie chart, is to proportionally show the relationship of parts (slices) to a whole (the pie). Although these graphs are relatively rare in highly technical books, they regularly appear in newspapers as well as in textbooks on topics other than mathematics and science. The popularity of the circle graph is mainly due to its simplicity. In most cases, you can tell at a glance the proportions the graph illustrates—that is, the various-sized slices of the pie. For example, in Figure 8.1, the circle graph gives you a clear picture of the population distribution of the United States.

**Decode Bar and Line Graphs** The purpose of a bar or line graph is to illustrate the relationship of a set of dependent variables to a set of independent variables. *Variables* are numbers that can change. For example, the number we use to refer to the year is

#### IT'S YOUR Q

**Figure 8.1**  
**U.S. Population by Region**  
Circle graphs (pie charts) show the relationship of several parts to a whole.  
*Source:* U.S. Census Bureau, projections for 2010.



a variable. It increases by one every twelve months. Population is another variable. It changes when someone is born or dies, when someone becomes a citizen, or when someone leaves the country. Years and dates in general are called *independent variables* because they change on their own. The population of the United States does not influence the fact that a new year begins every 365 or 366 days. Quantities such as population are called *dependent variables* because their change occurs in relation to another variable, such as the year. For example, we measure the changes of the U.S. population every ten years when the census is taken.

How do bar and line graphs differ?

Although bar and line graphs both show how a dependent variable such as population increases or decreases in relation to an independent variable such as the year, each takes a slightly different approach. Bar graphs (see Figure 8.2) focus on specific changes; line graphs (see Figure 8.3) illustrate long-term trends. One way to visualize this distinction is to think of bar graphs as snapshots and line graphs as movies. If you were to take successive snapshots of a long jumper, you would have a series of photographs showing successive stages of the jump. If you were to film the same jump with a movie camera, you'd have a continuous record of the entire jump. Figure 8.4 illustrates this idea.

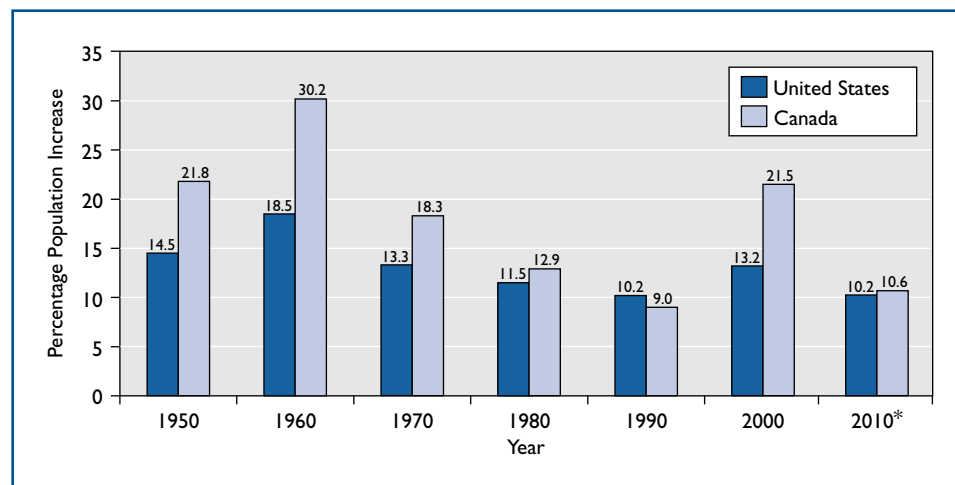
What are the relative strengths and weaknesses of bar and line graphs?

Like snapshots and movies, each type of graph has strengths. Bar graphs are good for comparing the individual sizes or amounts of items, and they provide clear comparisons of several sets of data at once. Line graphs are useful for showing changes in data over long periods of time. For instance, if you wanted to examine a country's population increase over a brief period of time, or if you wanted to compare it with the population of another country, you would probably use a bar graph. Figure 8.2 shows that the growth in U.S. population was relatively steady from 1950 through 2010, whereas Canada's population growth surged during the 1950s and 1960s and then again at

**Figure 8.2**  
**Population Growth in the United States and Canada, 1950–2010**

Bar graphs show sizes of individual items and illustrate comparisons.

Source: U.S. Census Bureau; Statistics Canada.

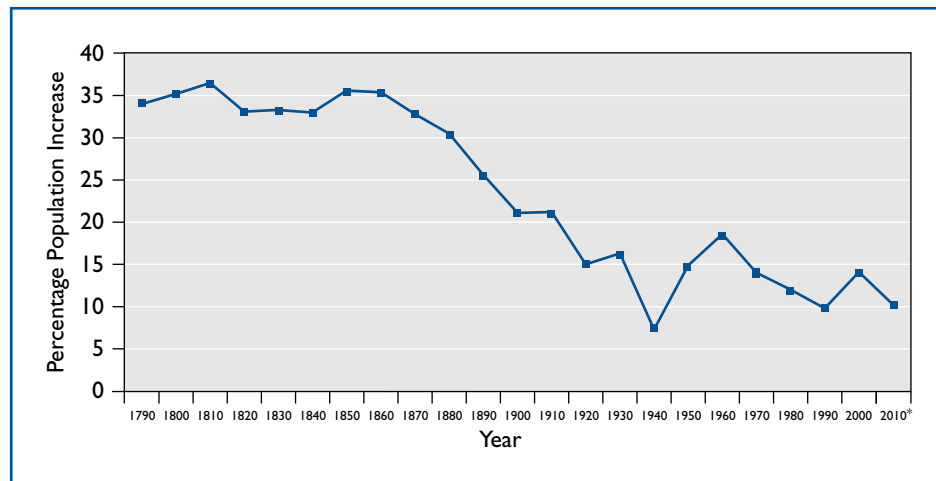


the beginning of the twenty-first century. But if you wanted to show the percentage increase in U.S. population since the eighteenth century, a line graph would be a better visual. Figure 8.3 shows that the growth in U.S. population has generally slowed since 1850.

**Figure 8.3**  
Percentage Increase  
in U.S. Population,  
1800–2010

Line graphs show long-term trends in data.

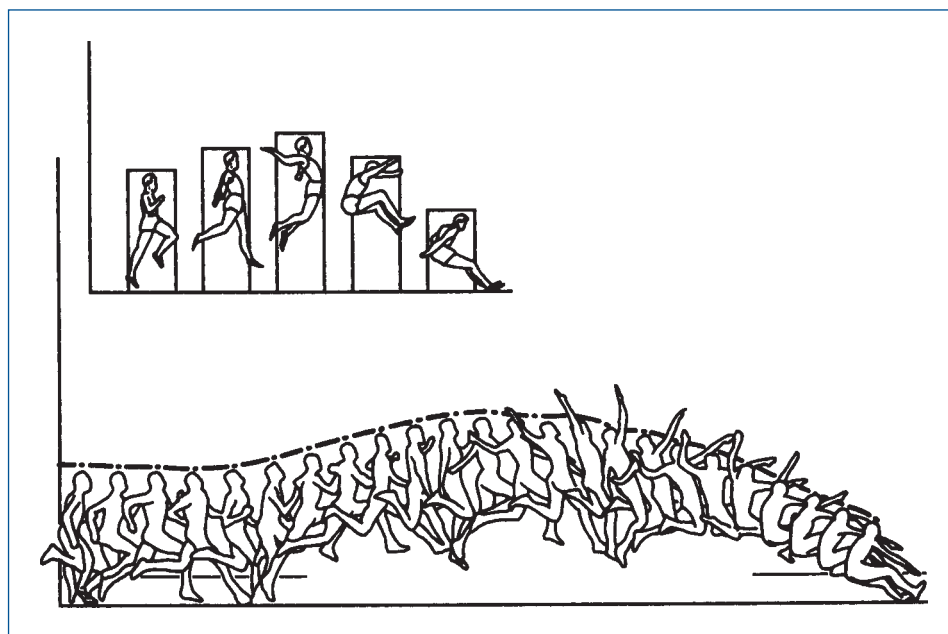
Source: U.S. Census Bureau.



**Figure 8.4**  
Snapshots Versus  
Movies: Bar Graphs  
and Line Graphs

A bar graph can be compared to a set of snapshots, whereas a line graph is more like a movie.

Source: Track and Field Omnibook, Fourth Ed., 1985, by Ken Doherty, Tafnews Press (Track and Field News), Mountain View, Calif. Reprinted with permission.



What should you do once you understand the language of graphs?

How can you avoid being misled by pictures?

How does the way that data are formatted affect their meaning?

Regardless of whether the graphic is a circle, bar, or line graph, once you understand the language of the particular graph, you can methodically extract its meaning in the same way you would with a picture or diagram—by using the OPTIC system. Figure 8.5 analyzes a graph using this system.

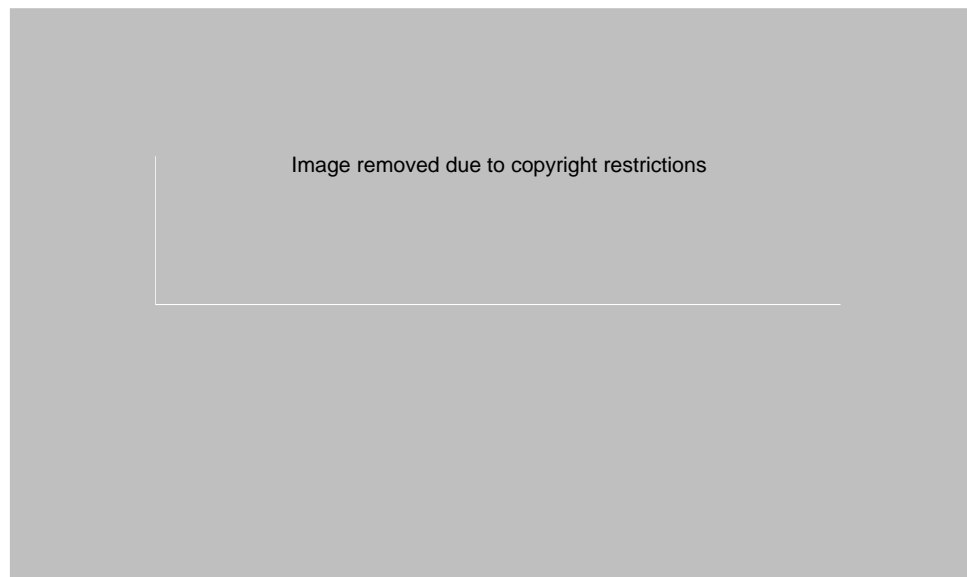
### Watch Out for Distorted Data

Pictures, like words, can occasionally be misleading. Whereas many readers have learned to detect deceptive phrases or sentences, not everyone is quite as sophisticated about detecting distortions in pictures or other kinds of graphic materials. When you consider a graph, illustration, or chart, it helps to do so with a critical eye, paying particular attention to the format, the scale, and the overall context.

**Format** Factual data—especially statistics—can be placed in graphic formats that distort the information. The book *How to Lie with Statistics* exposes some of the devious tricks that are used and is also fun to read.<sup>2</sup> For example, you should be wary of the word *average*, and you should try to find the highest and lowest figures that went into each average. Two companies may have an average salary of \$29,000. But if the range of salaries in one company is from \$6,000 to \$90,000, and the range in the other company is from \$20,000 to \$35,000, the salary policies of the two companies are quite different.

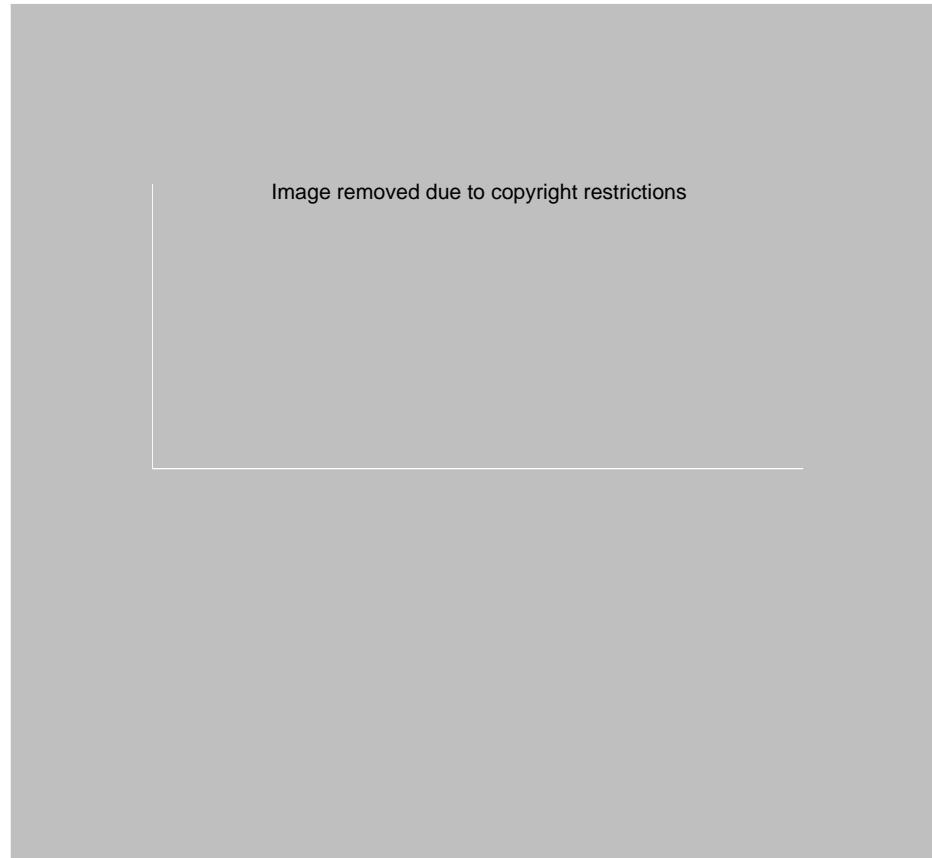
### Figure 8.5 Using the OPTIC System to Analyze a Graph

Source: ThinkEquity Partners.



<sup>2</sup>Darrell Huff, *How to Lie with Statistics* (New York: W. W. Norton, 1993).

Figure 8.5 (Continued)

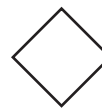


What effect does scale have on a graphic?

**Scale** Don't be overly impressed by the steepness of the lines in graphs. Look at the side of every graph to find the scale—the value of each increment. Units of \$100 can make a line much steeper than units of \$1,000. Always convert what you see into words; otherwise you'll remember the steepness or flatness but not the real information that is being presented.

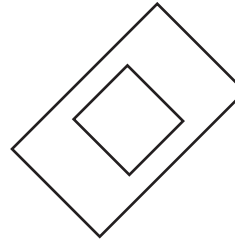
How does context affect the meaning of a graphic?

**Context** Remember that visual relationships can be tricky. The frame around a diagram can actually change the way you see the diagram. For example, this is a diamond-shaped figure:





But notice that when the same figure is placed in a frame,



it looks like a square. The size and shape of a chart or graph can also affect what you see. Data that may be quite neutral or ordinary can be made to appear startling by the form and scale of the graphic. If you read graphics carefully, you'll see them properly, rather than as someone else may expect—or want—you to see them.

## Change the Channel

What can you do to supplement difficult courses with more comfortable learning approaches?

If you're fortunate, your course textbook will be easy to follow and any graphs, charts, or illustrations will make sense to you. However, if you're struggling with the standard way your class is being taught, you can try these other approaches to learning to help the course make sense. If you don't have difficulties with the instructor's approach, you can still use additional learning styles to add extra dimensions to your understanding.

*Converting words into pictures.* Even though visual communication is one of the predominant channels for information, visually oriented students can use their graphical way of thinking to actually rethink information that may not have been conveyed visually in the first place.

*Working in groups.* Nearly all students, but especially those who demonstrate an interpersonal intelligence, should find it helpful to work in groups.

*Gaining hands-on practice.* Active, practical, hands-on learners, who may be impatient with abstractions, can reinforce concepts that might have been difficult to grasp in lectures or readings by trying out examples and drills that should make ideas clearer.

## Convert Words into Pictures

REFRAMING

SUMMARIZING

How do visual learners incorporate pictures into normally nonvisual areas?

Whereas some students find it difficult to extract meaning from images, many others are predominantly visual and actually prefer the picture perspective. They not only find it easy to analyze graphs and illustrations, but often incorporate visual thinking

into other normally nonvisual areas. For example, a visual learner who is listening to a lecture may simultaneously be creating a mental picture of what the speaker is saying. Students who think visually may even find it important to be able to see the speakers during the lecture while listening to them speak.<sup>3</sup> If you are predominantly visually oriented (and even if you're not), you may find it helpful to add an extra dimension to your learning by writing in pictures.

How do you write in pictures?

We now know that reading a visual means studying a diagram or a graph and turning its message into a sentence or two. When you write in pictures, you simply reverse the process. You convert the sentences you've read or heard into a diagram or graph.

If the information you encounter is concrete, your task is fairly simple. The objects you sketch in your diagram represent real, tangible things. If, however, the ideas you read or hear are more abstract, such as information about the characteristics of amphibians, your approach needs to be a bit more involved. Instead of drawing sketches of the animals, which doesn't tell you much about their characteristics, you need to create a concept map. Although your approach to abstract ideas is different from your approach to concrete ones, your goal is the same: to turn something you can read into something you can see (see Figure 8.6).

### Add Illustrations to Your Notes

When should you add illustrations to your notes?

As you read your textbook or go over your lecture notes, don't just jot down the key ideas in words; sketch some of them as well. In some subjects this sketching will come naturally. Science courses, for example, are full of information that can be drawn. The parts of a one-celled organism or the connections in a computer network are much easier to understand if you put little diagrams of them in your notes. Sometimes the drawing is done for you. If the instructor puts a sketch on the board or screen, or if the textbook author includes diagrams in the chapter, add these pictures to your notes in the same way that you would jot down important examples. When a drawing doesn't exist, make one of your own.

What should you do in subjects where elements aren't easily drawn?

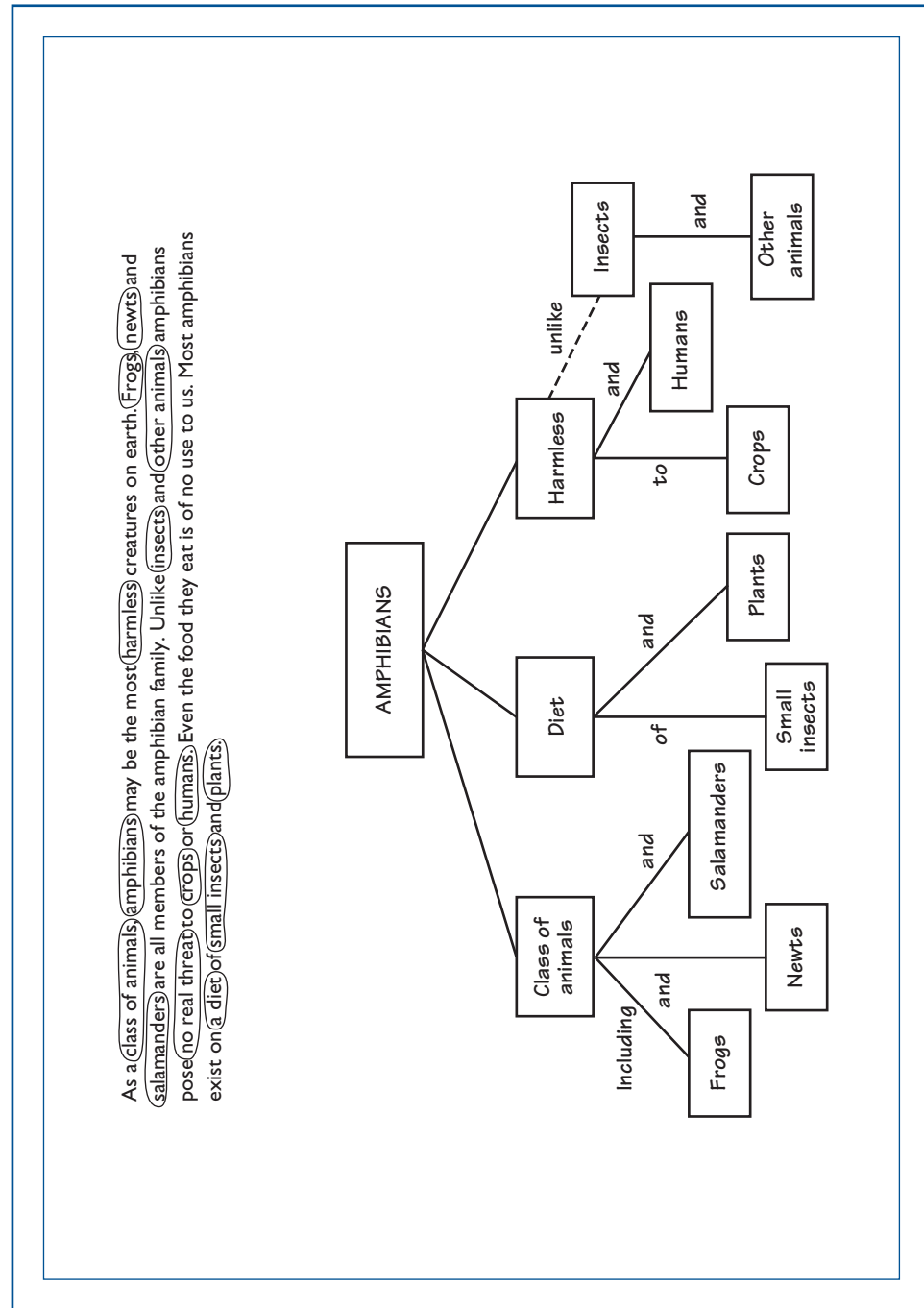
A history course may not feature easily drawn elements, but it does include plenty of concrete data that can be translated into picture form. A series of important dates, for example, can be turned into a timeline, and individual historical facts can be visualized almost as easily.

Here is an example of how words can be converted into a picture. The following paragraph describes an experiment conducted by the English physicist and chemist Michael Faraday (1791–1867):

In 1831, Michael Faraday, one of Britain's greatest scientists, did the experiments which completely demonstrated the close relationship between electricity and magnetism. One of his famous experiments was to take a coil of wire and connect the ends across an instrument capable of measuring tiny currents. By quickly pushing a bar magnet through the coil he

<sup>3</sup>Available at <http://www.learnativity.com/learningstyles.html>.

**Figure 8.6**  
**A Concept Map of**  
**Text Information**



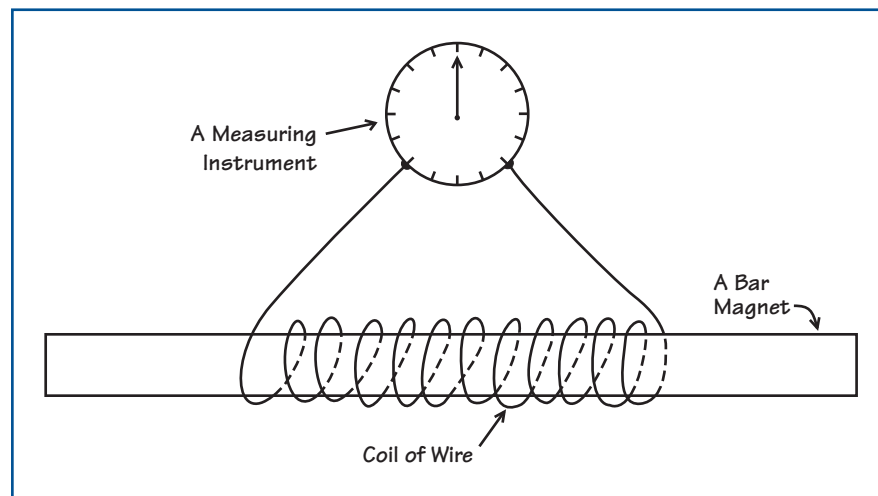
was able to produce a small current in the coil and to measure that current. What he was really doing was to change the strength of the magnetic field in the coil by inserting and removing the magnet. The more rapidly he changed the field the more current he could generate.<sup>4</sup>

Figure 8.7 is an example of how one student converted this descriptive paragraph into a diagram, which helped the student not only to understand the described process but to visualize and remember it as well. If a question about Faraday's experiment appeared on a test, it is not hard to imagine how well a student with this picture in mind would do.

Why is it helpful to add diagrams to your notes?

You don't have to be Michelangelo or Leonardo da Vinci to draw diagrams in your notes. The important point is to tap into the right side of your brain, where most of our visual thinking is done. In his influential "dual coding" theory, Allan Paivio from the University of Western Ontario concluded that information is more readily recalled when it is learned as both pictures and words.<sup>5</sup> Thus, if you make both a verbal and a visual effort to recall something you've learned, your memory will have two places in which to search for the information instead of just one. With your full mind at work, you will increase your brain power, regardless of whether your drawing looks like doodling or a priceless work of art.

**Figure 8.7**  
A Descriptive  
Paragraph Made  
Visual



<sup>4</sup>J. D. Jukes, *Man-Made Sun* (New York: Abelard-Schuman, 1959), p. 33.

<sup>5</sup>Allan Paivio, Mary Walsh, and Trudy Bons, "Concreteness Effects on Memory: When and Why?" *Journal of Experimental Psychology: Learning, Memory and Cognition* 20, no. 5 (1994): 1196–1204.

## IT'S YOUR Q

**Turn Abstract Ideas into Maps**

Abstract ideas don't lend themselves quite as easily to diagrams as do concrete ideas. For example, you can draw a rough sketch of farmland, a field worker, and a tractor, but how would you diagram economic production, a procedure that involves all three? That's where a concept map comes in. Concept maps are used to diagram abstract processes and relationships. Drawing a concept map based on a set of abstract ideas is similar to drawing a road map based on a set of hard-to-follow directions. In both cases, the map will make the idea easier to visualize, understand, and remember.

Here are the steps for mapping a textbook passage:

1. Determine the topic of the passage you are planning to map. Put the topic at the top of a sheet of paper, and circle it.
2. Go back to the passage and circle or list the concepts involved.
3. Find the two to five most important concepts on your list. These are the key concepts. List them on your map in a row beneath the circled topic. Circle these key concepts as well.
4. Cluster the remaining concepts under the key concepts to which they relate. After adding them to your map beneath the key concepts they support, circle these new concepts.
5. Draw lines connecting related concepts. Along each line, you may want to specify the relationship that connects the concepts.

What is the simplest way to master a map?

**Master the Map** Drawing a concept map, like taking notes, does a great deal to help cement important ideas and concepts in your memory. And like your notes, your maps can be mastered. Although there are several systems for mastering your map, the simplest and most effective is to look it over carefully and then, without peeking at the original passage, write a short summarizing paragraph explaining the key concepts and how they relate. The result is like writing your own textbook. You start out with the same concepts the textbook uses, but the words are your own instead of the author's. Figure 8.8 shows a map and its summary paragraph.

What are some other ways to use a concept map?

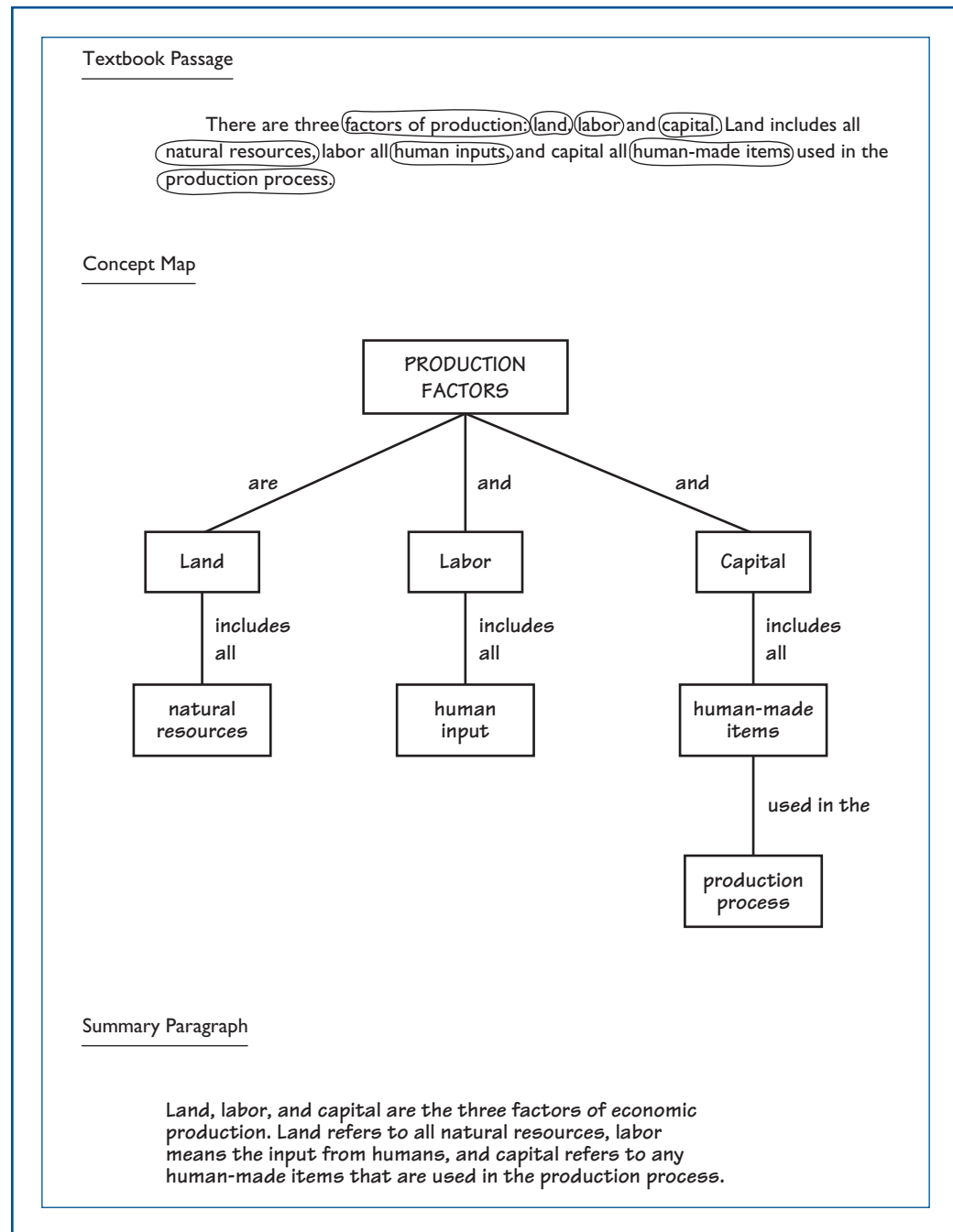
Concept maps are flexible study aids. They don't lock you into a single method or approach. Here are some additional ways you can use a concept map to improve your studying:

*Use the concepts for recitation.* Take one circled concept from your map and explain out loud and without looking at the rest of the map how it relates to the map as a whole.

*Add to your map.* New ideas frequently connect with old information. Take a moment to think about how the concepts in your map relate to ideas you already know. Add the appropriate old ideas to your map, and connect them to what you've just learned.

*Redraw your map.* There's no right or wrong way to draw a concept map. The same information can be mapped in a number of ways. Look over your original map, and see

**Figure 8.8**  
Mastering a Concept  
Map



if you can organize the concepts a little differently. Looking at the information from a different angle often makes some of the concepts clearer. Also, creating a second map of the same information means that the concepts will be stored in your memory an additional time.

How can you use a concept map to summarize key concepts?

**Use Maps for Summaries** Although a map of every concept in a chapter would be huge, and a concept map for even a small book would likely be about the size of a billboard, you can use mapping to summarize the key concepts from chapters, articles, and books. The procedure for summarizing information with a concept map is identical to the one you just followed for mapping a single paragraph from your textbook or section from your notes, except that you cover more ground. Instead of containing information from one paragraph, a summary map may draw from dozens of paragraphs. For this reason, summary maps do not include as much detail as maps created for more specific sections. The maps at the beginning of each chapter in this book are good examples of summary maps. Notice how they include the most important concepts from the chapters they illustrate.

How can you use concept maps to help plan a paper or report?

**Use Maps as Planning Strategies** Concept maps can be used to plan a paper or an oral report. First, write the topic you've chosen at the top of a blank sheet of paper. Then, after you have done a bit of preliminary research and have come up with several main concepts, add these to your map, and connect them to your topic with lines. Finally, fill out your map with any supporting ideas you've acquired, making sure to cluster them under the main concepts to which they refer. Once again, draw connecting lines to show how each piece fits into the puzzle. Here is the step-by-step procedure for mapping a paper or an oral report:

1. Do some preliminary research on your subject.
2. Write your topic at the top of a blank sheet of paper.
3. Add two to five main ideas that you plan to cover, and link them to the topic on your map.
4. Cluster subideas under the main ideas that they support. Link them with lines.
5. Survey your map in order to decide whether its branches are evenly developed.
6. If your map seems lopsided, rearrange it or add information so that all its branches are balanced.
7. Use your map as a guide to do in-depth research on the concepts you plan to cover. Add to your map if necessary.

At the very least, your finished concept map can function as an outline, supplying you with all the main ideas and subideas you plan to include in your paper or oral report. In addition, the map can be used as a guide to help you do your more detailed research as systematically as possible.

How are maps unlike outlines?

Unlike a conventional outline, a map enables you to see your structure instead of just reading it. In general, a well-organized report looks fairly symmetrical when you map it.

If your map has a lopsided appearance, your report may need to be more evenly balanced. Adding some concepts or clustering your existing topics in a different arrangement should do the trick. Once you're happy with the look of your map, it can serve as a plan for further research.

## Work in Groups

REFRAMING

What has research shown about working in groups?

Concepts that make you wrack your brain and tear your hair out when you listen to lectures or study alone may seem more manageable and understandable when they're handled in a group context. Research has shown that students learn more, retain more, and are generally more satisfied with a course if they are given an opportunity to learn actively, rather than just taking notes in lectures or readings.<sup>6</sup> Group work is an excellent example of this sort of active learning.

What does Howard Gardner say about working well with others?

MIT's Howard Gardner arrived at a groundbreaking theory to suggest that instead of possessing one single type of intelligence, we have the potential for seven distinct intelligences. Gardner argues that one of these "frames of mind" is interpersonal intelligence, which is essentially the ability to work well with others.<sup>7</sup>

What should you do if your class doesn't incorporate group work?

Thanks to Gardner's research and to their own eyewitness observations, many instructors are well aware of the value of groups. As a result, some of your classes may already include group work as part of the curriculum. If they don't and you find that you learn better with group interaction, it is important to take the initiative yourself and see if you can encourage several of your classmates to join you. Try to limit your group to four or five members, though, to assure that everyone participates actively. One of the advantages (and challenges) of working in a small group is that it's not as easy to just "fade into the woodwork" as it can be in some larger classes.

What are some benefits to working in a group?

Group work offers several benefits that you're unlikely to gain from working on your own:

*Explanations from your peers.* Although instructors are experts and often trained "explainers," you may find there are concepts you struggle with from lectures or readings that become clearer and easier to understand when a classmate explains them.

*Encouragement and support.* Study groups are also support groups. If you work on assignments on your own, you have only yourself and any grades you might get to encourage you. In a group, the other members have faced the same challenges you have and should be able to share in your success. This is an aspect of collaborative study that transforms group work into teamwork.

<sup>6</sup>Available at <http://teaching.berkeley.edu/bgd/collaborative.html>.

<sup>7</sup>Howard Gardner, *Frames of Mind: The Theory of Multiple Intelligences* (10th anniversary ed.), (New York: Basic Books, 1993).



*Structure for your study.* If you have an assignment to read or some notes to master, it's much easier to simply let things slide when you are working alone. But if you are part of a group, your sense of obligation is extended to several other people. Groups don't work unless everyone pulls his or her own weight. The sense of obligation to a group can provide a powerful motivation to study and keep up for students who might otherwise fall behind.<sup>8</sup>

*Multiple perspectives.* Unless your group consists entirely of students who think the same way you do, you will probably find that someone in the group will tackle a topic with a fresh approach that hadn't occurred to you. This is the essence of what is sometimes known as "reframing." Almost any time that you can examine an idea or issue from multiple angles you have a greater chance of understanding and retaining it.

Of course, one common type of group activity is a class discussion. In class or online, these discussions not only provide the benefits of group work but may also be a component of your grade. Chapter 13 deals with these in more detail.

## Gain Hands-On Practice

REFRAMING

SELF-DIRECTION

How can you gain hands-on practice from a class made up mainly of abstractions?

Many students are bored, dissatisfied, or intimidated by courses that deal primarily with abstractions and concepts. They seek hands-on, real-world relevance with details and concrete examples. In fact, some research suggests that the majority of high school seniors are so-called "concrete active" students who fit this description.<sup>9</sup> If you're that kind of student and you find yourself in a class that doesn't seem to play to your strengths, you can often supplement your class's core materials by completing the end-of-chapter exercises, by using any ancillary materials associated with your text, by looking for related workbooks or programmed software, and by physically manipulating those abstract ideas and concepts.

Why is it helpful to do the end-of-chapter exercises?

### Do the Chapter Exercises

Depending on the nature of your class and the preferences of your instructor, you may or may not be assigned the questions and exercises that often come at the end of a textbook chapter. If you haven't already been assigned these end-of-chapter materials, it still helps to try them, especially if you're finding the course or the text to be a struggle. Once again, it will take you out of the realm of the theoretical and into the realm of the practical.

<sup>8</sup>A. Kohn, *No Contest: The Case Against Competition* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1986).

<sup>9</sup>Charles C. Schroeder, "New Students—New Learning Styles," *Change* 25, no. 5 (September/October 1993): pp. 21–26.

What is the value of ancillary materials?

### Use Your Text's Ancillary Materials

Many textbooks (including this one) come with an array of additional materials known as ancillaries that are commonly posted on a website, the address of which is usually provided along with the book, either as part of the purchase price or for a nominal fee. Tests, drills, and exercises included in such materials are usually interactive, which means that you are provided an almost instantaneous assessment of how well you understand what you've read. Using these materials can encourage active learning and can provide an early heads up if you've got textbook troubles that require the help of a tutor.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

### Look for Programmed Materials and Workbooks

If your skills don't seem to match the requirements of a course, you may need some extra practice. Programmed materials furnish questions and problems closely followed by their answers, thereby enabling you to teach yourself each incremental step of a lesson. These days, the most common programmed materials are found on websites or in specialized software, although some books operate using the programmed format as well. Workbooks provide exercises that apply the ideas explained in your textbooks. These study aids can help minimize the anxiety that arises from feeling uncertain about putting newly learned ideas to use. They can also stimulate your interest by helping you take what you've learned a step further. Unless your text comes with its own programmed materials or workbook, the difference between these and the ancillary materials is that the content may not match your textbook exactly. As a result, you may find yourself spending time on information that won't be covered in your course and perhaps, more important, the programmed or workbook materials may skip over information that will be covered in your text and might even wind up on a test or quiz. So be careful!

What sort of approach do tactile or kinesthetic learners prefer?

### Work with Your Hands

Some students are kinesthetic or tactile learners. They understand better when they are able to move things or touch them. This sort of approach can be a natural with some courses in engineering or the sciences, where you are often able to pick up and examine specimens, construct or disassemble apparatuses, or pour things from one container to another. But there's not normally a lot of hands-on opportunities in courses such as history or English, where the emphasis is on the conceptual instead of the concrete.

How can you use kinesthetic or tactile learning with abstract concepts?

Luckily, there's a relatively simple way that you can add an active hands-on element to abstract courses. That's by jotting key dates, themes, or concepts on sticky notes and then arranging and rearranging them in different ways. This is basically a low-tech version of creating a concept map, but if you are a kinesthetic learner, being able to physically arrange and rearrange these concepts with your hands instead of on a screen, on a page, or in your head may make them easier to understand and retain. Another variation on this theme is to transfer some of the key ideas from your notes or text to index cards, putting the term or concept on one side of the card and its definition or explanation on the other. (This is similar to the procedure for creating Frontier

Vocabulary cards, explained in Chapter 6.) And while shuffling a pack of index cards may not be quite as active or engaging as looking under the hood of a car or examining the integrated circuits inside a computer, it should help to involve you more fully with a subject.

## FINAL WORDS

---

Why are nondominant learning channels worth pursuing?

The notion that we use only 10 percent of our brains has been repeated so often and attributed to so many experts that despite the absence of actual data, it's readily accepted as fact. There's still something about it that rings true. If you think about it, reading and writing words have been a mandatory element of your education. But other than art, music, and physical education classes, which are often underemphasized and in some schools optional or even nonexistent, there are very few nonverbal equivalents to the elementary school reading group or to those early lessons in penmanship. It's true that we've had a head start with words, but that doesn't mean we shouldn't build up our other learning channels. Like boosting your vocabulary, sharpening your other learning skills will strengthen your thinking. And as someone who approaches learning from a variety of different directions, you're bound to be a better-balanced, more successful student.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

- Most textbooks are organized \_\_\_\_\_.  
**globally**                      **sequentially**                      **kinesthetically**
- MIT's Howard Gardner suggests that there are seven distinct types of \_\_\_\_\_.  
**intelligence**                      **memory**                      **textbooks**
- When presented as a map, a well-organized report is usually \_\_\_\_\_.  
**detailed**                      **unbalanced**                      **symmetrical**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| _____ 1. Circle graphs | a. Type of learning that favors "hands-on" approach            |
| _____ 2. Global        | b. Used to diagram abstract relationships and processes        |
| _____ 3. Peers         | c. Illustrate the relationship of parts to a whole             |
| _____ 4. OPTIC         | d. One way to think of the function of line graphs             |
| _____ 5. Kinesthetic   | e. Sometimes provide more meaningful explanations than experts |
| _____ 6. Snapshots     | f. Learning style that often comes in bursts and insights      |
| _____ 7. Movies        | g. One way to think of the function of bar graphs              |
| _____ 8. Concept maps  | h. Method for systematically analyzing graphic materials       |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

- T F Tactile learning is encouraged in English and history classes.
- T F Line graphs can provide an effective illustration of long-term trends.
- T F The OPTIC system can be used for analyzing both pictures and graphs.
- T F Artistic ability isn't necessary for drawing pictures to help you study.
- T F Group study can provide encouragement and support.

**MULTIPLE CHOICE**

*Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.*

1. Research has shown that students learn more, retain more, and are generally more satisfied in a course where they are
  - a. required to take notes.
  - b. allowed to learn actively.
  - c. permitted to use textbooks in tests.
  - d. encouraged to work independently.
2. A circle graph is also known as a
  - a. Venn diagram.
  - b. color wheel.
  - c. pie chart.
  - d. lookup table.
3. The simplest way to master a concept map is by
  - a. erasing it.
  - b. summarizing it.
  - c. highlighting it.
  - d. redrawing it.
4. Summary maps should be drawn with
  - a. less detail than standard maps.
  - b. a black marking pen.
  - c. independent variables.
  - d. concrete concepts.
5. When used with a paper or an oral report, a map can function as
  - a. a guide for research.
  - b. a visual outline.
  - c. a taking-off point.
  - d. all of the above.

## REFLECTION

Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.

1. What is your dominant channel for learning? Explain how you know this and what if anything you have done differently as a result.
2. Choose a diagram, graph, or illustration in this book or another and use the OPTIC system to analyze it.
3. Do you add illustrations to your notes? If so, which of your classes lend themselves well to illustrated notes? If not, suggest some types of information in your notes that you might consider illustrating in the future.

## IT'S YOUR Q

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

## VOCABULARY IN ACTION

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

## SAY WHAT?

From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.

We still think of a powerful man as a born leader and a powerful woman as an *anomaly*.

—Margaret Atwood (1939— ), Canadian author

1. *anomaly*                      exception                      subordinate                      deviant

Don't be afraid to take a big step. You can't cross a *chasm* in two small jumps.

—David Lloyd George (1863–1945), British statesman and prime minister

2. *chasm*                                  river                                  gorge                                  peak

It always seemed strange to me that the things we admire in men, kindness and generosity, openness, honesty, understanding and feeling are the *concomitants* of failure in our system. And those traits we detest, sharpness, greed, *acquisitiveness*, meanness, *egotism* and self-interest are the traits of success. And while men admire the quality of the first, they love the produce of the second.

—John Steinbeck (1902–1968), American writer

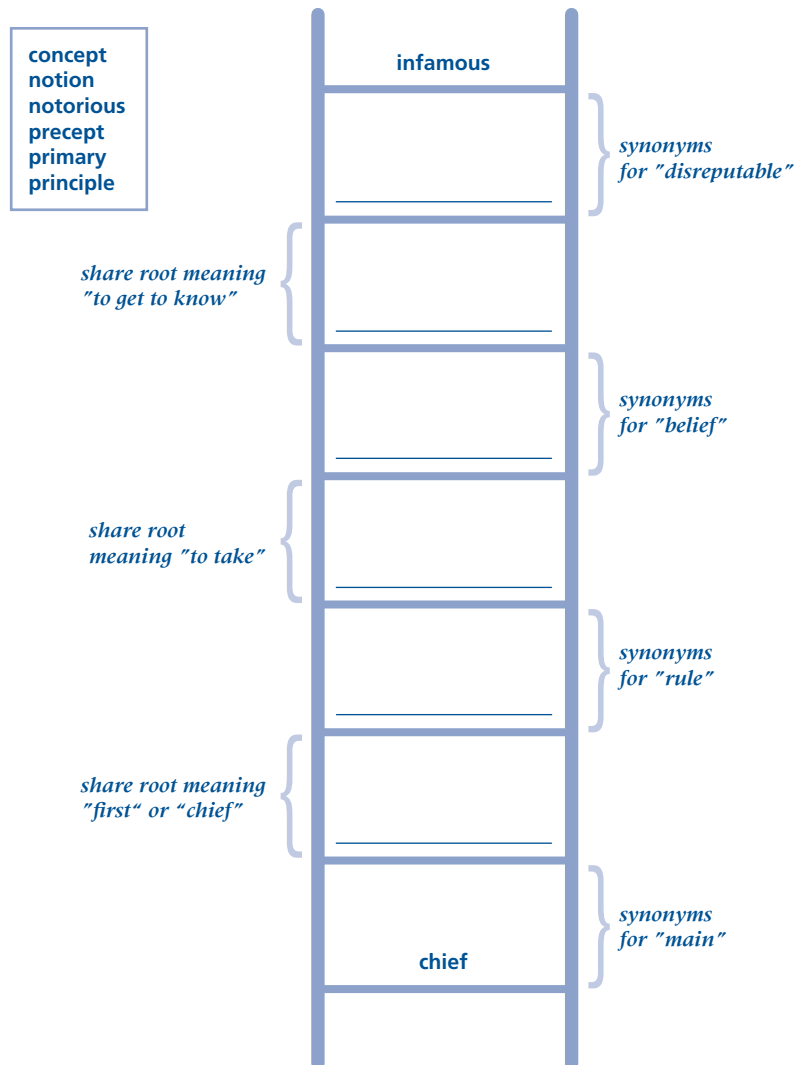
3. *concomitants*                                  accompaniments                                  requirements                                  definitions

4. *acquisitiveness*                                  materialism                                  wealth                                  greed

5. *egotism*                                  confidence                                  self-importance                                  pride

**VOCAB-U-LADDER**

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.







Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

### **Channel** From straw to stream to TV screen

**channel** chă'n' əl *n.* 1. The bed of a stream or river. 2. The deeper part of a river or harbor, especially a deep navigable passage. 3. A broad strait, especially one that connects two seas. 4. A trench, furrow, or groove. 5. A tubular passage for liquids; a conduit. 6. A course or pathway through which information is transmitted.\*

The ancient Sumerians had a bit of a problem. They liked to drink beer—in fact, they invented it—but they didn't enjoy getting a mouthful of grainy yeast and other brewing byproducts each time they tried to take a sip. So they used hollowed pieces of straw to suck up their favorite batch of brew. It didn't take long for these innovative people (who were also pioneers of written language) to see that the idea of routing liquid through a thin pipe had ramifications that went well beyond beer-drinking. Primitive plumbing systems first used larger kinds of hollow grasses, such as bamboo and sugar cane (from the Latin *canna* for “reed”) before making the transformation to non-vegetable materials, like clay, lead, or stone. In Rome, these stronger, more sophisticated pipes were still called *canalis* in recognition of the cane from which they came. The word *canalis* became *chanel* in France before traveling to England as *channel*, where it described a stream or trough of running water. Although channels originally carried liquids, with the advent of the telegraph, the word was first adopted to name the routes for electrical transmission. As communication systems became more sophisticated, so did the meaning of the word *channel*, which now is used to describe a wide variety of information pathways, including diplomatic negotiations, TV transmissions, and Internet video streams.\*\*

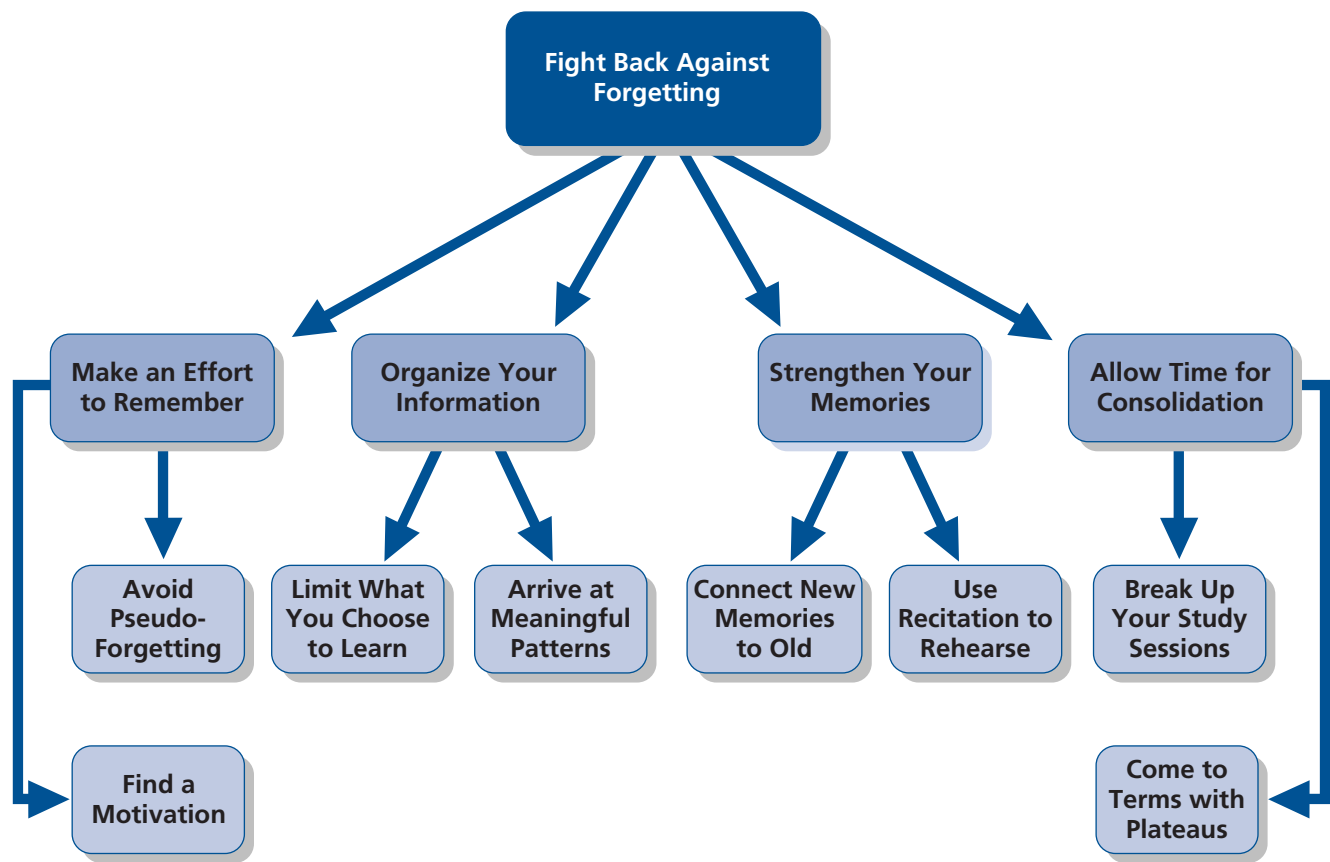
\* Adapted from “channel.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/channel> (accessed May 12, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from “channel.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/channel> (accessed May 12, 2009).; “channel.” *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=channel> (accessed May 12, 2009).; “channel, *n*1.” *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.;; “channel, *n*.” *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50036634> (accessed May 12, 2009).; “A brief history of the drinking straw, part 1: From Sumer to Stone” *Perpenduum*. 2008. <http://perpenduum.com/2008/01/a-brief-history-of-the-drinking-straw-part-1-from-sumer-to-stone/> (accessed May 12, 2009).; Dornbusch, Horst. “Which Came First ... the Bread or the Beer?” *Beer Advocate*. June 23, 2004. <http://beeradvocate.com/articles/595> (accessed May 12, 2009).

# Retaining Information

Now that you've got it, don't lose it! It would be a shame—not to mention a waste of time—to take all the hard-earned information you've gained and let it slip through your fingers. But if you don't counteract the inevitable toll that time takes on all that we learn, that's just what will happen. This part helps you to retain what you've gained. It tells you how to:

- 9 Fight Back Against Forgetting**
- 10 Take Effective Notes**
- 11 Turn Your Notes Into Knowledge**



# Fight Back Against Forgetting

*Memory is a complicated thing, a relative to truth, but not its twin.*

**Barbara Kingsolver** (1955–),  
American novelist

Forgetting doesn't fight fair. In fact, the moment you acquire new information is the moment that forgetting starts trying to take it away. Unfortunately, you can't stop forgetting anymore than you can stop time. But you can fight back, reinforcing what you've learned and strengthening your memories in the face of forgetting's relentless attack. To aid in your defense, this chapter focuses on how to:

- **Make an Effort to Remember**
- **Organize Your Information**
- **Strengthen Your Memories**
- **Allow Time for Consolidation**

Why is forgetting the biggest enemy of academic success?

There's a battle going on in your brain. You may not always be aware of it, but your memory is under constant assault from forgetfulness, the biggest single enemy of your academic success. Forgetting works both massively and rapidly to undo learning. In fact, research has shown again and again that when you learn something new you are likely to forget most of it in a matter of days.

What have experiments shown about forgetting?

In one experiment, people who read a textbook chapter forgot 46 percent of their reading after one day, 79 percent after fourteen days, and 81 percent after twenty-eight days. In other words, subjects could remember slightly more than half of what they'd read the previous day; after less than a month, the information they were able to retain from their reading had dwindled to 19 percent.

Why is it harder to remember what you've heard than what you've read?

Although reading is forgotten quickly, the rate of forgetting for things you hear occurs even faster. This has to do with the way the short-term or *working memory* is designed. The working memory is a way station. All new information passes through there before some of it is sent on to more permanent storage in your long-term memory. Your working memory essentially has two front doors. There's an entrance for the things you see and another for the things you say or hear. Solid evidence suggests that when you read words in a book, you are both seeing and hearing them at once. Images of the words combine with the sounds of those words that you hear in your "inner ear" to make the memories stronger.<sup>1</sup> Contrast that with listening, where there's normally nothing to see, and you can understand why the key points from speech may be easier to forget than the main ideas in a chapter. Besides, when you read, you have an opportunity to set your own pace. You can slow down, pause, reflect, and, if necessary, reread. Listeners have no such luxury; they usually have just one chance to catch spoken words and ideas.

What determines whether information in working memory will be saved to long-term memory?

Almost nothing is a shoo-in for your long-term memory. Anyone who has forgotten a name just moments after hearing it or had to look up a phone number a second time just a few minutes after reading it knows from experience that forgetting can be instantaneous and complete. The way to make memories stick, the way to move them from your working memory to your long-term memory is through rehearsal. The word *rehearse* comes from an old French word that means "to plow again." (For more on the history of this word, see "Backstory" at the end of the chapter.) Each time you repeat or rewrite what you've read or heard, you're rehearsing it; you are deepening and strengthening its memory trace, just like a tractor plow that deepens the furrow in a farmer's field. If you make sure the path is deep, it should last. But if you only plow a shallow path, it can vanish in the first heavy wind or driving rain. It's the same with unrehearsed information.

How quickly does forgetting occur?

Experiments have shown that unrehearsed information is sometimes forgotten in as little as twenty seconds.<sup>2</sup> In a classical experiment, Hermann Ebbinghaus (1850–1909),

<sup>1</sup>Alan Baddeley, *Your Memory: A User's Guide* (Garden City Park, NY: Prion, 1993), p. 41.

<sup>2</sup>Douglas A. Bernstein, Edward J. Roy, Thomas K. Srull, and Christopher D. Wickens, *Psychology* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1988), p. 293.

a German psychologist and pioneer in the modern study of memory, found that almost half of what is learned is forgotten within an hour.<sup>3</sup> More than a century after Ebbinghaus conducted his original experiment, psychologists continue to affirm his findings.

The following true story further confirms the rapidity and scope of forgetting. Three professors eating lunch in the faculty lounge had this conversation:

*Clyde:* Did you hear last night's lecture?

*Walter:* No, I was busy.

*Clyde:* Well, you missed one of the best lectures in recent years.

*Leon:* I agree. The four points that he developed were gems.

*Clyde:* I never heard anyone make his points so clearly.

*Walter:* I don't want you to repeat the lecture, but what were those four points?

*Leon:* (Long silence) Clyde? (Passage of two or three minutes; seems like an hour.)

*Leon:* Well, I'd better get back to the office.

*Clyde:* Me, too!

*Walter:* Me, too!

What can we learn from the Leon and Clyde story?

#### IT'S YOUR Q

How can you defend your memories from forgetting?

Both Leon and Clyde were brilliant men, yet neither was able to recall even a fragment of any point made in the previous night's lecture. Each had forgotten the four points because neither had transferred those points from working memory to long-term memory by reciting them. Instead, both had recited that the speaker was clear, forceful, and wise and that he had made four points—and they remembered only what they had recited.

These two learned men were by no means exceptions. Their story has been borne out time and again in traditional research. For instance, in a classic experiment, researchers secretly recorded a seminar held by the Cambridge Psychological Society.<sup>4</sup> Two weeks later, the society members who had attended the seminar were asked to write down all they could recall of it. The results were shocking. More than 90 percent of the points from the lecture had been forgotten or confused with the passage of time. The average proportion of specific points each member correctly recalled was 8.4 percent! Much of what members recalled was at odds with what had actually been said. Events were mentioned that never took place; casual remarks were embellished; points were reported that had only been hinted at. This eminent group of psychologists forgot 91.6 percent of the specific points made in the seminar.

When you consider how much resistance your memories face, it's folly to assume that something you've learned will still be there when you need it. You need to put up a fight. You can defend your memories by making an effort to remember, by organizing

<sup>3</sup>Alan J. Parkin, *Memory: Phenomena, Experiment and Theory* (Cambridge, MA: Blackwell, 1993); Hermann Ebbinghaus, *Memory* (New York: Dover, 1964), p. 76.

<sup>4</sup>Ian M. L. Hunter, *Memory: Facts and Fallacies* (Baltimore: Penguin, 1957), p. 83.

your information, by working to strengthen your memories, and by allowing time for consolidation.

## Make an Effort to Remember

How does effort affect your memory?

Memory isn't automatic. To remember something, you have to make a conscious effort to learn it. If you don't, it isn't really yours to forget. And even if you *do* learn new information, it won't stay with you very long unless you're convinced that it's worth hanging on to. Your initial effort determines whether you'll remember what you've heard or read for a lifetime or forget it in a matter of seconds.

## Avoid Pseudo-Forgetting

SELF-DIRECTION

What is pseudo-forgetting?

Whenever you cannot remember a name, a telephone number, a fact, an idea, or even a joke, it's quite natural to say, "I forgot." Yet forgetting may have nothing to do with your problem. You may never have learned the information in the first place. This phenomenon is known as pseudo-forgetting. The word *pseudo* means "false" or "phony." Thousands of instances we blame on forgetting are actually a result of this "phony forgetting." As Dr. Russell Poldrack, an associate professor of psychology at UCLA, explains, "The best thing you can do to improve your memory is to pay attention to the things you want to remember."<sup>5</sup> Or, as the poet and physician Oliver Wendell Holmes succinctly put it more than a century before Poldrack, "A man must get a thing before he can *forget* it."

How can you guard against pseudo-forgetting?

If an idea or a fact is to be retained in your memory for any length of time, it must be impressed on your mind clearly and crisply at least once. A record of that idea or fact must be laid down in your brain before you can truly recall or forget what you've learned. You can create this record by jotting the new information down or by repeating it aloud. If you are accustomed to meeting a lot of new people, perhaps you already know the technique of repeating the name of the person to whom you've just been introduced. Instead of saying "Pleased to meet you," you say "Pleased to meet you, Mr. Brown." This approach is not only personable, but it also provides an easy way to counteract pseudo-forgetting.

<sup>5</sup>Stewart Wolpert, "Don't Talk to a Friend While Reading This; Multi-Tasking Adversely Affects the Brain's Learning Systems, UCLA Scientists Report," available at <http://newsroom.ucla.edu/portal/ucla/Don-t-Talk-to-a-Friend-While-Reading-7212.aspx>

## Find a Motivation

SELF-DIRECTION

What effect does motivation have on memory?

It's easier to remember something when you have a clear motivation for doing so. In a carefully designed study, researchers showed how motivation can influence the life span of a memory. Two groups of students were asked to master identical material. The only difference was that those in the first group were told to remember the material for only a single day, while those in the second group were instructed to master it for recall after two weeks.<sup>6</sup> The difference in instructions had a noticeable effect. Although the two groups studied the same material in a similar fashion, after two weeks the students who were motivated to remember for the long term retained more than those who were told they only needed to remember the information for a day.

What is the strongest source of motivation for remembering?

Of all the sources of motivation, interest is the strongest. If you could study all your subjects with a motivated interest, you probably wouldn't have to worry about your final grades. When you are naturally interested in a subject, remembering comes easily. This explains why a student who may have an encyclopedic memory for baseball batting averages can still struggle in a class where statistics are emphasized. If you are not naturally interested, try to counteract this by artificially creating interest. Once you begin to learn something about a new subject, the chances are great that you will find it genuinely interesting. Use the power of interest to work *for* you, not against you.

What are some ways to strengthen your intention to remember?

Whether genuine interest or simple academic survival serves as your motivation, when you hear or read information you want to hold on to, there are ways to strengthen your intention to remember, so that what you've learned will be recalled:

*Pay attention.* It's difficult to remember anything when you're distracted. Therefore, make a point of minimizing distractions (see Chapter 3) as you read your assignments or listen to lectures.

*Get it right the first time.* False ideas and misunderstood facts can hang on as tenaciously as information you learn correctly. Therefore, it pays to be attentive when you learn something new. For example, many people incorrectly pronounce the word *nuclear* (NEW-clee-er) as "NEW-cue-ler." One look at the word shows you that this pronunciation is incorrect. But if you learn a word incorrectly, you'll have difficulty replacing the old memory with the correct pronunciation.

*Make sure you understand.* Ideas that aren't clear to you when you initially read or hear them won't miraculously jell and become clearer in your memory. You cannot fashion a lucid, correct memory from a fuzzy, poorly understood concept. Therefore, don't hesitate to ask the instructor to explain any point that confuses you. And don't be

<sup>6</sup>H. H. Remmers and M. N. Thisted, "The Effect of Temporal Set on Learning," *Journal of Applied Psychology* 16 (June 1932): pp. 257–268.



reluctant to read and reread a passage in your textbook until you're sure you fully grasp its meaning.

Interestingly, the same motivation that enables you to remember can also help you forget. It can be used in a positive way to clear your mind of information you no longer need to retain.

This conscious intention to forget is well demonstrated by servers in restaurants. They exhibit a remarkably good memory for what their customers have ordered up to the moment the bill is paid. Then experienced servers jettison the entire transaction from their minds and give their full attention to the next customer. Just as they intend to remember, so they intend to forget.

This idea of intending to forget explains why Albert Einstein, unquestionably one of the great minds of the twentieth century, was nonetheless unable to provide his home telephone number from memory. He saw no point in clogging his mind with simple numbers that could easily be stored in an address book, so he purposely forgot them.

## Organize Your Information

Why is your memory like a small box filled with desktop belongings?

You can't simply sweep the entire contents of your desktop into a small box and expect to be able to find anything easily later. For starters, the box may not be big enough. And even if it is, the items will probably be arranged so haphazardly that you will have to search for a while to find what you were looking for. Your memory faces similar problems. There's a limit to how much you can remember at once. And unless you arrange your memories in a meaningful way, they will be difficult to retrieve when you need them.

What did G. A. Miller determine about our memory's capacity?

How many memories can we hold onto at once? In 1956, psychologist G. A. Miller conducted groundbreaking research that provided us with an answer. In his article "The Magical Number Seven, Plus or Minus Two," Miller points out that most people are able to hold only seven items at a time in their short-term or working memory. If that seems like a terribly small number, it is. Luckily, there's an important refinement to Miller's conclusion that buys us all some extra space. The size of each of the seven items can be virtually unlimited as long as the information in it is meaningfully organized. For example, you couldn't expect to remember the following thirty-one items:

aabceeeeeeiImmmnnnoorrssttuy

How does organization help memory?

But if you organized these items in a meaningful way—as words—you could reduce the number of items to seven and increase your chances of remembering them. Here are the same thirty-one letters reorganized in a far more meaningful way:

you	can	learn	to	remember	seven	items
1	2	3	4	5	6	7

What has recent research revealed about memory spans?

As Miller explains, “Our language is tremendously useful for repackaging material into a few chunks rich in information.”<sup>7</sup>

Since Miller’s breakthrough in establishing the limits of memory, other psychologists have gone on to refine our understanding of what has come to be known as *memory span*. Although complex information can be retained in short-term memory if it is “chunked” into roughly seven items, research indicates that it can actually be harder to recall long words than it is to remember shorter ones. It seems that even when we are reading words on a printed page, “silent speech” (see Chapter 5) still plays a role in how we retain them. Because longer words take longer to say, they increase the likelihood that a memory trace will fade. As a rule of thumb, we can hold on to as many words at once as we can say in two seconds.<sup>8</sup> Or, as British psychologist Alan Baddeley explains it, “short words or fast talking gives rise to long spans.”<sup>9</sup>

What lesson we can learn from Miller and his successors?

The lesson from research on memory span is this: Improve your chances of remembering by being selective, by limiting what you choose to learn and by making sure that what you do choose to remember is meaningfully organized.

## Limit What You Choose to Learn

FOCUSING

What were the conclusions from Ebbinghaus’s most famous experiment?

Long before Miller’s discussion of the “magical number seven,” Hermann Ebbinghaus conducted perhaps the most famous experiment in the history of memory research. He counted the number of trials required to learn a series of six nonsense syllables (such as *bik*, *luf*, *tur*, *pem*, *nif*, and *wox*). He then counted the number of trials required to learn a series of twelve such syllables. Ebbinghaus’s tabulations yielded surprising results: The number of trials required to memorize twelve syllables was fifteen times greater than the number required to learn six syllables.<sup>10</sup> So, for example, if it took four minutes to memorize six syllables, it would take an hour to memorize twelve.

What does Ebbinghaus’s research tell us about mastering textbook and lecture material?

Granted, Ebbinghaus dealt only with nonsense syllables, but his careful research still teaches us a valuable lesson: To improve your chances of remembering what you’ve learned, you must condense and summarize. In practical terms, this means picking out the main ideas from your lecture and textbook notes and leaving the

<sup>7</sup>G. A. Miller, “The Magical Number Seven, Plus or Minus Two: Some Limits on Our Capacity for Processing Information,” *Psychological Review* 63 (March 1956): 81–97.

<sup>8</sup>Alan Baddeley “The Fractionation of Working Memory,” *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 93, no. 24 (November 26, 1996): 13468–13472.

<sup>9</sup>Ibid.

<sup>10</sup>Matthew High Erdelyi, “Commentary: Integrating Dissociations Prone Psychology,” *Journal of Personality* 62, no. 4 (1994): 669–680.

supporting materials and examples aside. Once you have selected the important points from what you've read, you should be able to memorize them in a manageable amount of time.

### IT'S YOUR Q

Another beneficial by-product that comes from limiting what you learn is that in making the choice of what to keep and what to discard, you'll be strengthening your overall understanding of the material. In other words, you can't really tell what idea is worth saving and what is worth deleting without having a basic understanding of both. As you'll see in Chapter 11, a method for condensing your notes called the Silver Dollar System provides an opportunity to make what you've learned a permanent part of your knowledge.

## Arrive at Meaningful Patterns

CLUSTERING

How does organizing affect retrieval?

The papers on your desk (or the files on your computer desktop) are easier to keep track of if you organize them into groups and put them into folders. A textbook is easier to understand because its information has been divided into chapters. A single item is easier to find in a store because the products have been grouped together and arranged in different aisles. If you had to look for a jar of peanut butter in a supermarket where the items were randomly placed, you might give up the search.

How should you organize a list of items you need to remember?

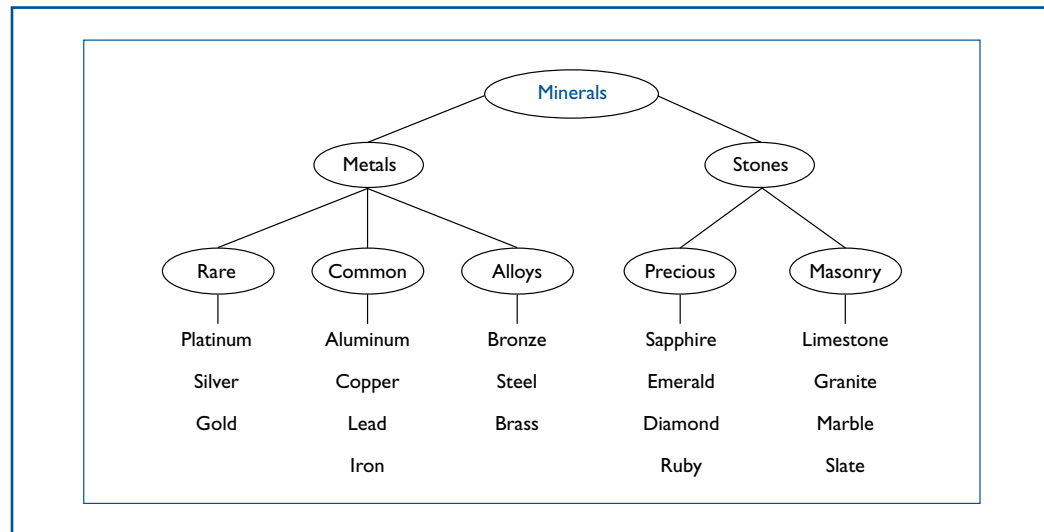
The same idea applies to memories. When you have a large list of items to remember, try to cluster similar items around a natural heading or category. Once clustered and categorized, the items will resist the decaying power of forgetting. Just as the stem holds together the individual grapes, so categories and clusters hold together individual facts and ideas. This hanging together is especially useful during an exam: Remembering one item from a cluster can often be the key to remembering all the items. For example, it would take a long time to memorize by rote the following words, which you might encounter in a geology course:

slate	diamond	sapphire
bronze	lead	aluminum
iron	marble	silver
emerald	steel	brass
gold	limestone	ruby
granite	platinum	copper

But when these words are organized into categories and are clustered as shown in Figure 9.1, memorization is relatively easy and remembering is strong.

**Figure 9.1**  
The Category and Cluster System of Organizing Items

Source: Figure from *Psychology: An Introduction*, Sixth Edition, by Jerome Kagan. Copyright © 1988. Reprinted with permission of Wadsworth, a division of Thomson Learning: www.thomsonrights.com. Fax 800-730-2215.



## Strengthen Your Memories

What can you do to help strengthen your memories?

The stronger a memory is, the longer it lasts. If you reinforce new ideas by connecting them to ideas already in your memory, and if you conscientiously use recitation to rehearse what you've learned, that result should be strong enough to stand up to forgetting.

### Connect New Memories to Old

CLUSTERING

What is the role of association in memory?

The famous line “No man is an island” applies to memories as well. An idea that stands alone is not likely to be recalled. The ideas you remember are woven into a network that connects a single memory with hundreds and often thousands of other memories. The more connections there are in the network and the stronger those connections are, the better the chance for recall.

When are connections made automatically?

Sometimes connections are made automatically, as in the case of traumatic events. Most people easily recall, for example, exactly where they were and what they were doing when they learned of the attack on the World Trade Center in 2001. Previous generations have a similar reaction when recalling the assassination of President John F. Kennedy or Martin Luther King. In these cases, you instantly connect the memory of the event with the memory of where you were.

What can you do to deliberately create associations?

But in normal circumstances, relying on your memory to automatically make these connections is risky. If you want to improve your chances of remembering something, you must make a real effort to link what you've learned to your memory network. You can strengthen the staying power of information when you add it to your memory by consciously making either logical or artificial connections.

How do you establish logical connections for memories?

### Make Logical Connections

Consider how you can recall the written directions to a friend's house by keeping in mind a map you once saw or how you can strengthen your memory of the bones of the body by recalling a diagram of a human skeleton. These are examples of logical connections you make to improve your recall. The best ways of strengthening your memory network through logical connections are by building on your basic background and by using images to support what you're trying to remember.

How does background help strengthen memory?

**Build on Your Basic Background** The principle behind basic background is simple but powerful. Your understanding and memory of what you hear, read, see, feel, or taste depend entirely on what you know, on what you already have in your background. Some of this information has been with you for years, whereas other parts of it may be just seconds old. When listening to a speaker, you understand his or her points as long as you can interpret them in light of something you've already learned. When you make connections this way, you increase the power of your memory.

Here are some concrete steps to help you build a solid background:

Why are basic courses so important?

*Give basic courses the attention they deserve.* Many students make the mistake of thinking that the basic courses they take in their first year of college are a waste of time. Similarly, a house without a foundation looks just fine, that is until the first heavy gust of wind blows it away. Introductory courses provide a solid foundation that is essential for all the courses that follow. Indeed, a student's professional life often begins with first-year courses.

How can you consciously link new information to old?

*Make a conscious attempt to link what you learn to what you already know.* When you learn something new, ask yourself questions such as "How does this relate to what I already know?" and "How does this change what I already know?" These questions will help you to fit new information within the framework of your existing knowledge.

How can your instructor help your background?

*Ask an instructor to explain what you don't understand.* At times, an entire class can hinge on a single point. Miss that and you miss the purpose of the class. Don't feel hesitant or shy about asking an instructor to go back over a point you can't quite get a fix on. After all, the instructor is there to help you learn.

How do pictures strengthen memories?

**Strengthen Memories with Pictures** Another way of logically reinforcing what you've learned is by creating a picture of it. In fact, many students are more visual than

verbal in the way they learn (see Chapter 8). Whether you draw the new information on paper or simply visualize it in your mind, you add an extra dimension to your memory. After all, one part of your brain thinks in words and another part thinks in pictures. When you convert words into pictures, you are using more of your brain.

A student who attended a lecture on amoebas included a sketch of this one-celled organism in her notes (see Figure 9.2). The combination of words and picture gave her a clearer understanding of the subject than she would have gained from relying exclusively on written information. When a question about amoebas appeared on a test, the student handled it easily by recalling the picture she had drawn.

What do you do with material that doesn't seem to lend itself to drawing?

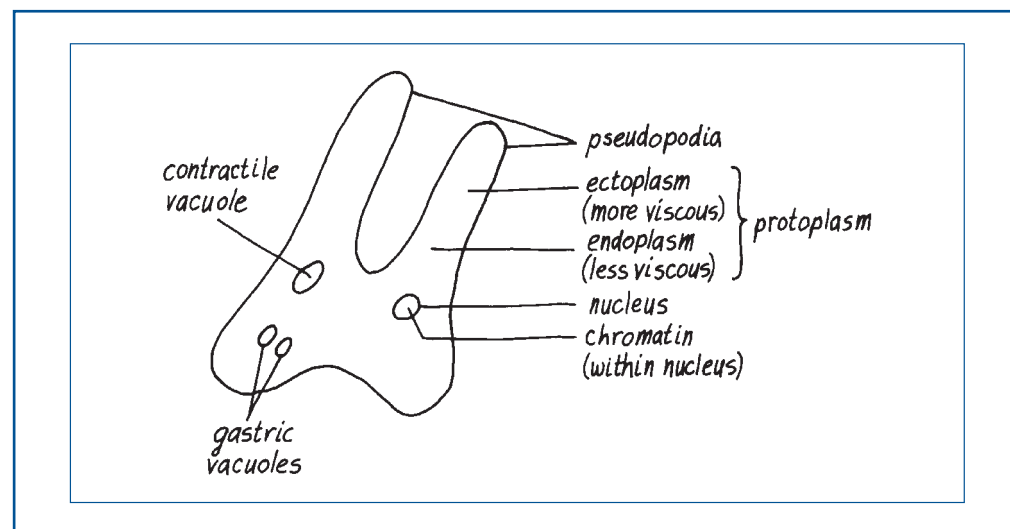
Even when material doesn't seem to lend itself to drawing, you can still devise a mental image. According to Dr. Joseph E. Shorr of the Institute of Psycho-Imagination Therapy in Beverly Hills, California, "The human memory would be worthless without the capacity to make mental pictures." Almost any memory can be turned into a mental image. If you need to remember, for example, that Abraham Lincoln was born in 1809, you can picture a log cabin with "1809" inscribed over the doorway. The image you recall doesn't have to be especially detailed; it only has to be strong enough to jog your memory.

What is an example of an artificial memory connection?

### Make Artificial Connections

The connections you make don't always have to be logical. They just need to be memorable. The time-honored practice of tying a string around a finger as a reminder is a classic example of an artificial connection. Perhaps you needed to remember to take

**Figure 9.2**  
Structure of the  
Amoeba



out the garbage, to pick up your dry cleaning, or to bring your textbook to class. None of these things has anything logically to do with a piece of string, and yet when you look at your finger and say to yourself, “What’s this string for?” there’s a good chance that you’ll recall the task you were trying to remember. You can make equally effective connections to words, to images, and even to locations.

How are words used to make artificial memory connections?

Because words are portable, readable, and usually recognizable, they can be used to store more complicated or difficult-to-remember information. But just as a string has nothing inherently to do with remembering something, the connection between a word and the thing it’s designed to remind you of can be artificial. After all, what natural link is there between the word *face* and a group of musical notes? Yet many beginning music students rely on this word to help them recall the notes written in the spaces of the treble clef (F, A, C, E).

How do images aid memory?

Our amazing human ability to generate vivid and often nonsensical images also comes in handy when you’re trying to remember something. Suppose you have just been introduced to a man named Mr. Perkins. To remember his name, you immediately associate it with a coffeepot *perking*. You even visualize the perking pot and smell the aroma of freshly brewed coffee. And if you really want to make the picture memorable, you imagine the pot where Mr. Perkins’s nose normally is. (In most cases, a silly image is actually easier to remember than a logical one, so don’t feel an obligation to have your image make sense.) What you have done is tie *new* information (Mr. Perkins) to *old* information (perking coffeepot) that is already well established in your memory. When you meet Mr. Perkins at some future time, you will recall the perking coffeepot (try not to stare at his nose though!), which will prepare you to say, “Hello, Mr. Perkins. Nice to see you again.”

What is the loci method?

Another system, known as the loci method, also relies heavily on our ability to conjure up images. The loci method was developed in ancient Greek and Roman times and is still widely used today. The word *loci* is the plural for the root of the word “location,” and that is the key to this system. With loci, you remember items by associating them with locations in a familiar physical space, such as your house, apartment, or dorm room. By creating mental pictures of the names or items you want to remember and then associating them with objects in your chosen location, you can then take a tour of the space in your mind’s eye and recall each name or item as you encounter it. For example, to remember key physicists who were involved in the top-secret atomic bomb initiative known as the Manhattan Project, you might step into your room and mistakenly trip over J. Robert Oppenheimer, sit down on your couch and disturb Edward Teller, who is napping there, and go over to your dresser, open the top drawer, and be startled when Enrico Fermi pops out. The layout of your room becomes the organizing principle that makes it easier to retain these names. Once again, the comical aspect strengthens those memories further.

What are some less ridiculous uses of the loci method?

Of course, loci connections don’t *have* to be outrageous or comical. An instructor who assigns seats in her class may be using a variation of the loci method. Granted, she may have a seating chart with all the names of her students listed, but it is the position of the students in the classroom that makes it easier to recall their names without consulting



the list. That’s why it has been a time-honored prank of some students to switch seats in the class of a brand-new instructor.

**What do most memory tricks rely upon?** Although we make a lot of logical connections to remember things, the majority of so-called “memory tricks” (also known as *mnemonic devices*) rely on artificial connections, like the ones just mentioned.

**How prevalent are mnemonic devices?** **Use Classic Mnemonic Devices** Nearly everyone employs at least one or two mnemonic devices to recall specific hard-to-remember facts and information. Probably the most widely used mnemonic device is the old jingle by which many of us keep track of the irregularities in the calendar:

Thirty days hath September,  
April, June, and November.  
All the rest have thirty-one,  
Except February alone.

Rivaling this days-in-the-month mnemonic is one for spelling:

*i* before *e* except after *c*  
or when sounding like *a*  
as in *neighbor* and *weigh*

**Why do mnemonics work?** Many people have their own personal mnemonics, such as “Surround the *r* with *a* for the word *separate*.”

As we’ve already learned, the cardinal rule for dealing with masses of information is to make sure the information is organized in a meaningful way. A mnemonic device is an organizational system, pure and simple. It is an ordinary means to an important end. Gerald R. Miller conducted a study to evaluate the effectiveness of mnemonic devices as aids to study.<sup>11</sup> He found that students who used mnemonics raised their test scores by as much as 77 percent!

**What is the risk of using mnemonics?** Miller acknowledges that the use of too many mnemonics can overload the memory. Nevertheless, he argues that learning a large number of mnemonics well creates no greater hazard than learning a large amount of material in the traditional way. Here’s a sampling of some classic mnemonics you may have encountered:

*Spelling.* The greatest number of mnemonic devices are aids to spelling. Here’s how to remember the correct way to spell two words that confuse many students:

A principal is a pal.  
A principle is a rule.

<sup>11</sup>Gerald R. Miller, *An Evaluation of the Effectiveness of Mnemonic Devices as Aids to Study*, Cooperative Research Project no. 5-8438 (El Paso: University of Texas Press, 1967).



*Biology.* The first letters of the words in the following sentence stand for the major categories and subdivisions of the animal world—kingdom, phylum, class, order, family, genus, species, and variety:

Kings Play Cards On Fairly Good Soft Velvet.

*Geometry.* Here's a clever way of remembering the first six decimal places of pi. Just count the number of letters in each word of this rhyme.

How I wish I  
could calculate Pi!  
(3.141592)

*Astronomy.* Most people, when pressed, can name the eight planets. But how about listing them in order? (Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune.)

My Very Economical Mother Just Serves Us Noodles.

*Zoology.* Naturalists may automatically know the difference, but many of us get the African and Indian elephants confused.

India's big, but Africa's bigger,  
The same as their elephants—easy to figure!

*History.* The royal houses of England (Norman, Plantagenet, Lancaster, York, Tudor, Stuart, Hanover, Windsor) are difficult to remember without the help of a mnemonic device:

No Plan Like Yours To Study History Wisely.

*Medicine.* Even doctors and pharmacists use memory systems to help keep certain chemicals straight. To distinguish between cyanates, which are harmless, and cyanides, which are extremely poisonous, they use this device:

-ate, I ate; -ide, I died.

**Why is it especially important to memorize mnemonics thoroughly?**

If you use classic mnemonic devices to help recall information, make certain you memorize the sentence, word, or jingle thoroughly. The slightest error can throw you off completely. For example, some algebra students use the FOIL method to remember the order for multiplying a binomial: First, Outer, Innner, Last. But if you recall the wrong word instead, say, FILE, you wind up hopelessly confused.

What can you do to remember information that doesn't have a common mnemonic device?

**Devise Your Own Mnemonics** Associating new information logically is generally better than doing so artificially, and truly knowing something is always better than using a system to remember it. But if you're required to learn facts that you can't connect with your memory network and that have no classic mnemonic, you may want to invent your own mnemonic device to help yourself remember.

What are the two steps for creating a keyword mnemonic?

*Keyword mnemonic.*<sup>12</sup> Connecting a man named Perkins with a perking coffeepot provides a good example of a *keyword mnemonic* in action. The procedure for devising a keyword mnemonic has two steps, a verbal step and a visual step.

What is involved in the verbal step?

1. *The verbal step.* Find a familiar word or phrase that sounds like the word you are trying to remember. This is your keyword. For the name *Perkins* the keyword is *perking*.

What do you do in the visual step?

2. *The visual step.* Connect your keyword with what you want to remember. For example, form a mental image of Mr. Perkins's face on a perking coffeepot. Then when you see him again, you'll recall that image, which will remind you of his name.

What are some common uses for keyword mnemonics?

The keyword system isn't limited to helping you remember the names of people you meet. It also comes in handy for remembering vocabulary from a foreign language. For example, if you want to recall the French word for "butter," *beurre*, connect it with a keyword like *burr*, or *brrr*, and then link the two with a visual image, a pat of butter covered with burrs or a stick of butter wearing a parka and shivering (brrr!).

What is a create-a-word mnemonic?

*Create-a-word mnemonic.* The letters of a "created" word can be used to help you remember important information. What if you needed to remember the Great Lakes, for example: Lake Superior, Lake Erie, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, and Lake Ontario?

What are the steps in creating a mnemonic word?

To devise a *create-a-word mnemonic*, proceed as follows:

1. Underline the keyword in each item. (Superior, Erie, Michigan, Huron, Ontario.)
2. Write down the first letter of each keyword. (S, E, M, H, O.)
3. Create a word or several words from the first letters of the keywords. If the order of the elements isn't important, try rearranging the letters until they spell a word or words. (HOMES.)
4. If possible, make a link between your keyword and the idea for which it acts as a mnemonic. ("The HOMES along the Great Lakes must have a beautiful view.")

Your mnemonic may be a real word or a word you just made up. If you use a made-up word, be sure you have some means of remembering it.

<sup>12</sup>The keyword mnemonics section is based on a discussion in K. L. Higbee, *Your Memory: How It Works and How to Improve It*, 2nd ed. (New York: Prentice-Hall, 1988).

In what cases is a create-a-sentence mnemonic preferable to a create-a-word one?

What are the steps for a create-a-sentence mnemonic?

Why is creating a sentence mnemonic sometimes easier than creating a word or two?

*Create-a-sentence mnemonic.* If the order of the items you want to remember is important, the create-a-sentence mnemonic is often more flexible than the create-a-word mnemonic. For example, if you need to remember the Great Lakes from west to east (Lake Superior, Lake Michigan, Lake Huron, Lake Erie, Lake Ontario), HOMES won't help you. But a create-a-sentence mnemonic will.

Here are the steps for devising a create-a-sentence mnemonic:

1. Underline the keyword for each item. (Superior, Michigan, Huron, Erie, Ontario.)
2. Write down the first letter of each keyword. (S, M, H, E, O.)
3. Construct an easy-to-remember sentence using words whose first letters are the same as the first letters of the keywords. (Super Machine Heaved Earth Out.)
4. Devise a sentence that relates to the information you want to remember. ("Five large lakes in the middle of the country almost make it seem as though a super machine heaved earth out.")

In general, creating a simple sentence is easier than taking the first letters from your keywords and turning them into a word or two, especially if the order of the points has to be maintained. Of course, if the initial letters are mainly consonants, both methods can be difficult. To circumvent the problem of having too many consonants, try to choose some keywords (or synonyms of the keywords) that begin with vowels.

## Use Recitation to Rehearse

SUMMARIZING

Why is recitation so vital to strengthening your memory?

No single activity is more important in strengthening your memory than recitation. That's because recitation forces you to think seriously about what you've read or heard. This deep thinking (experts call it *deep cognitive processing*) is the key to making memories last. To reap the benefits of recitation, you need to know what reciting involves. It also helps to learn why reciting works.

### IT'S YOUR Q

What is the secret behind recitation?

#### What Recitation Involves

Reciting simply involves reading a passage in a book or a line of your notes and then repeating it from memory, either out loud or by writing or typing it. Whether you recite out loud or in writing, your goal should be to use your own words rather than parroting what you've just read. Recitation isn't about memorizing words. It's about comprehending ideas. Chapter 11 explains in detail how you can use recitation to master the notes you've taken from lectures or textbook assignments.

#### Why Recitation Works

Whether you recite by speaking or by writing, the effect on your memory is basically the same. Recitation strengthens the original memory trace by prompting you to think

actively about the new material, thus keeping it in your working memory. It gets both your body and your mind involved in the process of learning. It supplies immediate feedback so you can test yourself and check your progress. And it motivates you to continue reading.

How does reciting encourage participation?

**Reciting Encourages Participation** Reading is not the same as comprehending. It's possible, for example, to read a book aloud to a child without paying attention to the story. Likewise, if you're having a tough time concentrating, you can read every word on a page and still not understand or even recall what you've read. To truly comprehend what you've read, you need to know both what the words say and what they mean. When you recite, you make yourself stop and wonder, "What did this just say?" You're transformed from a detached observer into an active participant. The physical activity of thinking, pronouncing, and hearing your own words involves your body as well as your mind in the process of learning. The more physical senses you use in learning, the stronger the memory will be.

How does recitation provide feedback?

**Reciting Provides Feedback** Reciting not only gets you involved in your reading; it also demonstrates how involved you are. Rereading can give you a false and dangerous sense of confidence. It takes a lot of time and leaves you with the feeling that you've been hard at work, yet it provides no concrete indication of what you're learning. When test time comes, you may blame your mental blanks on test anxiety or on unfair questions when the real culprit is ineffective studying. Unlike rereading, reciting lets you know right away where your weaknesses lie. As you finish each paragraph, you find out whether you understand what you've just read. This gives you a chance to clarify and solidify information on the spot, long before you're tested on it.

How does recitation supply motivation?

**Reciting Supplies Motivation** Because it gets you involved and checks your progress regularly, recitation provides motivation for studying. And, as we've just seen, motivated interest promotes a stronger memory. If you struggled to extract the information from a paragraph you just read, you may be motivated to grasp the point of the next paragraph more easily. If you had no trouble finding the meaning in that paragraph, the momentum of your reading may serve as motivation.

## Allow Time for Consolidation

Why don't new ideas instantly become part of your memory?

The fact that recitation helps new information jell hints at another aspect of memory: New ideas don't instantly become part of your memory. Your memory needs time to consolidate what you've learned.

How did a mountain climber's injury demonstrate consolidation?

A dramatic illustration of memory's need to consolidate comes in a story of a mountain climber who fell and hit his head. Although the man was not permanently injured, he couldn't remember falling. In fact, he couldn't recall anything that had happened to him in the fifteen minutes *before* the accident. Why not? According to the principle of consolidation, the climber's memories before the accident had not had a chance to consolidate. As a result, when the climber hit his head, those unfinished memories were lost.<sup>13</sup>

What are the similarities between human memory and a computer's memory?

Although analogies between humans and machines can only be taken so far, your working memory shares some interesting similarities with DRAM, the dynamic random access memory (often just referred to as RAM) of a personal computer. If your computer crashes a few minutes after you started typing a paper or letter, there's a chance that most of your work up to that point will be lost. That's because it existed only in dynamic memory and had yet to be saved to a disk. When you save a file, you move the information from the short-term temporary storage of DRAM to the long-term storage of a disk. Similarly, when you allow time to consolidate your memories, you move them from the limbo of your short-term working memory to the stability of your long-term memory.

What does consolidation tell us about study strategies?

This principle helps explain why, in most cases, the most effective way to study is in short blocks of time instead of in one long stretch. Also, an understanding of consolidation will help you live through those frustrating times when you don't seem to retain what you're studying.

## Break Up Your Study Sessions

FOCUSING

What is distributed practice?

In *distributed practice*, you engage in relatively short study periods broken up by rest intervals. In *massed practice*, you study continuously until the task is completed. A number of studies have demonstrated that several short "learning sprints" are more productive than one grueling, uninterrupted study session. This is sometimes known as the "spacing effect."

What effect did distributed practice have on learning French vocabulary?

For example, Kristine Bloom and Thomas Shuell gave two groups of high school French students twenty new vocabulary words to learn. The first group used massed practice, studying all the words in a single thirty-minute session. The second group spent the same amount of time on the words but spread the sessions over three consecutive days, studying ten minutes per day. When tested immediately after they had completed their practice, both groups remembered roughly the same number of words (sixteen). But when the test was readministered four days later, the massed

<sup>13</sup>R. S. Woodworth and H. Schlosberg, *Experimental Psychology*, rev. ed. (New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1954), p. 773.

How does distributed practice affect comprehension? What are some other advantages of using bite-sized study sessions?

group had forgotten nearly half of the words, while the distributed group was able to recall all but five.<sup>14</sup>

In an extensive experiment, researchers D. Krug, T. B. Davis, and J. A. Glover examined the effects of massed and distributed practice on a reading comprehension task and found that distributed practice led to better performance.<sup>15</sup>

The memory's need to consolidate information seems to play a key role in explaining why distributed practice is superior to massed practice. Other advantages also support these bite-sized study sessions:

*Periodic "breathers" discourage fatigue.* They refresh you both physically and emotionally.

*Motivation is stronger when you work in short blocks of time.* The end of each session marks a mini victory that provides momentum and a sense of accomplishment.

*Distributed practice wards off boredom.* Uninteresting subjects are easier to take in small doses.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

In spite of all the advantages of distributed practice, massed practice is superior in a few cases. For instance, when you are writing the first draft of a paper, massed practice is often essential. You have organized your notes in stacks; discrete bits of information are waiting in your mind like jigsaw-puzzle pieces to be fitted together; and the organizational pattern of your paper, though dimly perceived, is beginning to take shape. To stop working at this point would be disastrous. The entire effort would collapse. In such a circumstance, it is far more efficient to overextend yourself—to complete that stage of the process—than to take a break or otherwise apply the principle of distributed practice.

### Come to Terms with Plateaus

SELF-DIRECTION

What are learning plateaus?

No two people learn at exactly the same rate, yet the learning patterns of most people are similar. We all experience lulls in our learning. Progress is usually slow and steady at first; then for a period of time there might be no perceptible progress even though we are making a genuine effort. This "no-progress" period is called a *learning plateau*. After days, weeks, or even a month of effort, a surprising spurt in learning suddenly occurs and continues until another plateau is reached.

What is the best way to deal with a learning plateau?

When you reach a plateau, do not lose heart. Plateaus are a normal part of learning and are often an indicator of consolidation. You may not see any progress, but learning is still occurring. Once everything is in place, you'll be rewarded for your effort.

<sup>14</sup>Kristine C. Bloom and Thomas J. Shuell, "Effects of Massed and Distributed Practice on the Learning and Retention of Second-Language Vocabulary." *Journal of Educational Research* 74, no. 4 (1981): pp. 245–248.

<sup>15</sup>D. Krug, T. B. Davis, and J. A. Glover, "Massed Versus Distributed Repeated Reading: A Case of Forgetting Helping Recall?" *Journal of Educational Psychology* 82 (1990): pp. 366–371.

## FINAL WORDS

---

How has Alzheimer's disease affected our attitude toward memory?

Alzheimer's disease has recently shifted a great deal of attention to human memory. People—especially older people—worry even more than they once did when a name or a piece of information slips their minds. Some make changes in their diet or lifestyle in the hope of forestalling or turning back the dreaded disease. The fear is understandable, and the attention to health and good habits is commendable. But the preciousness and precariousness of memory is nothing new. Memory has always been a vital component of our humanity, and it deserved our care, our respect, and our attention long before the emphasis turned to Alzheimer's. That is something we should never forget.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

- G. A. Miller's Magical Number Seven theory teaches the importance of \_\_\_\_\_.  
**numbers**                      **selectivity**                      **reciting**
- Your brain's short-term working memory can be compared to a computer's \_\_\_\_\_.  
**mouse**                      **monitor**                      **DRAM**
- No single activity is more important in strengthening your memory than \_\_\_\_\_.  
**reviewing**                      **reciting**                      **reflection**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| _____ 1. Listening     | a. Enables large amounts of information to be more readily remembered    |
| _____ 2. FOIL          | b. Illustrated by the story of the injured mountain climber              |
| _____ 3. Interest      | c. Even more susceptible to forgetting than reading is                   |
| _____ 4. Einstein      | d. Measured the time it took to remember a series of nonsense syllables  |
| _____ 5. Clustering    | e. Used in math to remember the order for multiplying a binomial         |
| _____ 6. Ebbinghaus    | f. Provided when you recite information either out loud or on paper      |
| _____ 7. Feedback      | g. Strongest form of motivation for remembering information              |
| _____ 8. Consolidation | h. Used motivated forgetting to free his mind of unnecessary information |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

- T    F    When you learn something new, you are likely to forget most of it in a matter of days.
- T    F    To remember something, you have to make a conscious effort to learn it.



3. T F Incorrect information can last as long in memory as correct information.
4. T F Strong, memorable connections between ideas always have to be logical.
5. T F The loci method uses geometrical figures as memory aids.

**MULTIPLE CHOICE**

*Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.*

1. Restaurant servers frequently use
  - a. working memory.
  - b. motivated forgetting.
  - c. pseudo-forgetting.
  - d. mnemonic devices.
2. The “basic background” memory principle reinforces the importance of
  - a. getting it right the first time.
  - b. introductory classes.
  - c. pseudo-forgetting.
  - d. condensing and summarizing.
3. Memory acquires an extra dimension when information is
  - a. written on note cards.
  - b. drawn or visualized.
  - c. reread or recited.
  - d. condensed or reduced.
4. Mnemonic devices are
  - a. computer programs.
  - b. memory aids.
  - c. research instruments.
  - d. learning theories.
5. Reciting should always be done
  - a. out loud.
  - b. silently.
  - c. from memory.
  - d. on paper.

## REFLECTION

Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.

1. Explain some things that have motivated you to remember in the past and suggest some other ways that you can be motivated to remember in the future.
2. Have you made artificial connections to help you remember information? If so, explain some of the connections you've made. If not, think of some areas in your coursework where such connections would be helpful and provide some ideas on how you can make them.
3. What is your greatest personal obstacle to remembering more? Using the systems and methods discussed in this chapter, provide some specific ideas on how you will set out to improve your rate of remembering.

## IT'S YOUR Q

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

## VOCABULARY IN ACTION

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

## SAY WHAT?

From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.

*Destiny* is a name often given in *retrospect* to choices that had dramatic consequences.

—J. K. Rowling (1965— ), British author of the *Harry Potter* books

- |                      |           |         |           |
|----------------------|-----------|---------|-----------|
| 1. <i>destiny</i>    | favor     | fortune | fate      |
| 2. <i>retrospect</i> | hindsight | reverse | nostalgia |

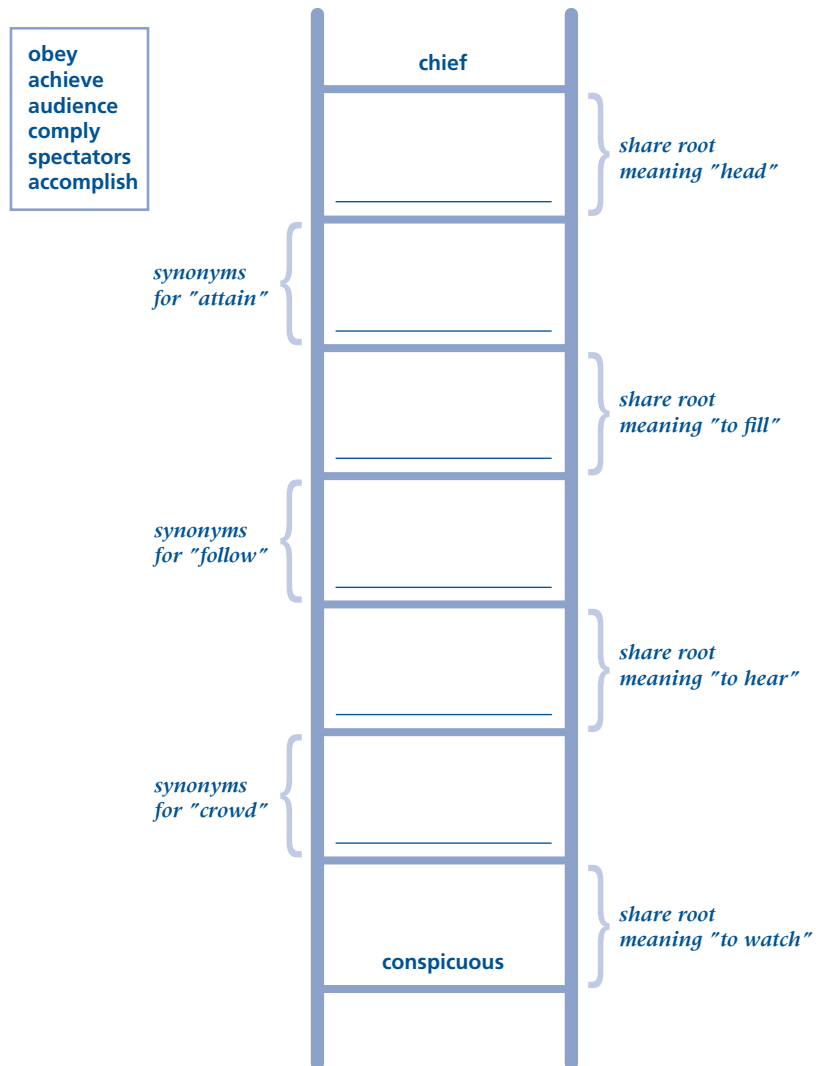
Focusing your life solely on making a buck shows a certain *poverty* of *ambition*. It asks too little of yourself. Because it's only when you hitch your wagon to something larger than yourself that you *realize* your true potential.

—Barack Obama (1961– ), forty-fourth president of the United States

- |                    |                   |                       |                    |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 3. <i>poverty</i>  | lack of money     | deficiency            | emptiness          |
| 4. <i>ambition</i> | desire to achieve | flexibility of motion | energy or exertion |
| 5. <i>realize</i>  | understand        | achieve               | invent             |

**VOCAB-U-LADDER**

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

### **Rehearse** Of memory and the funeral wagon

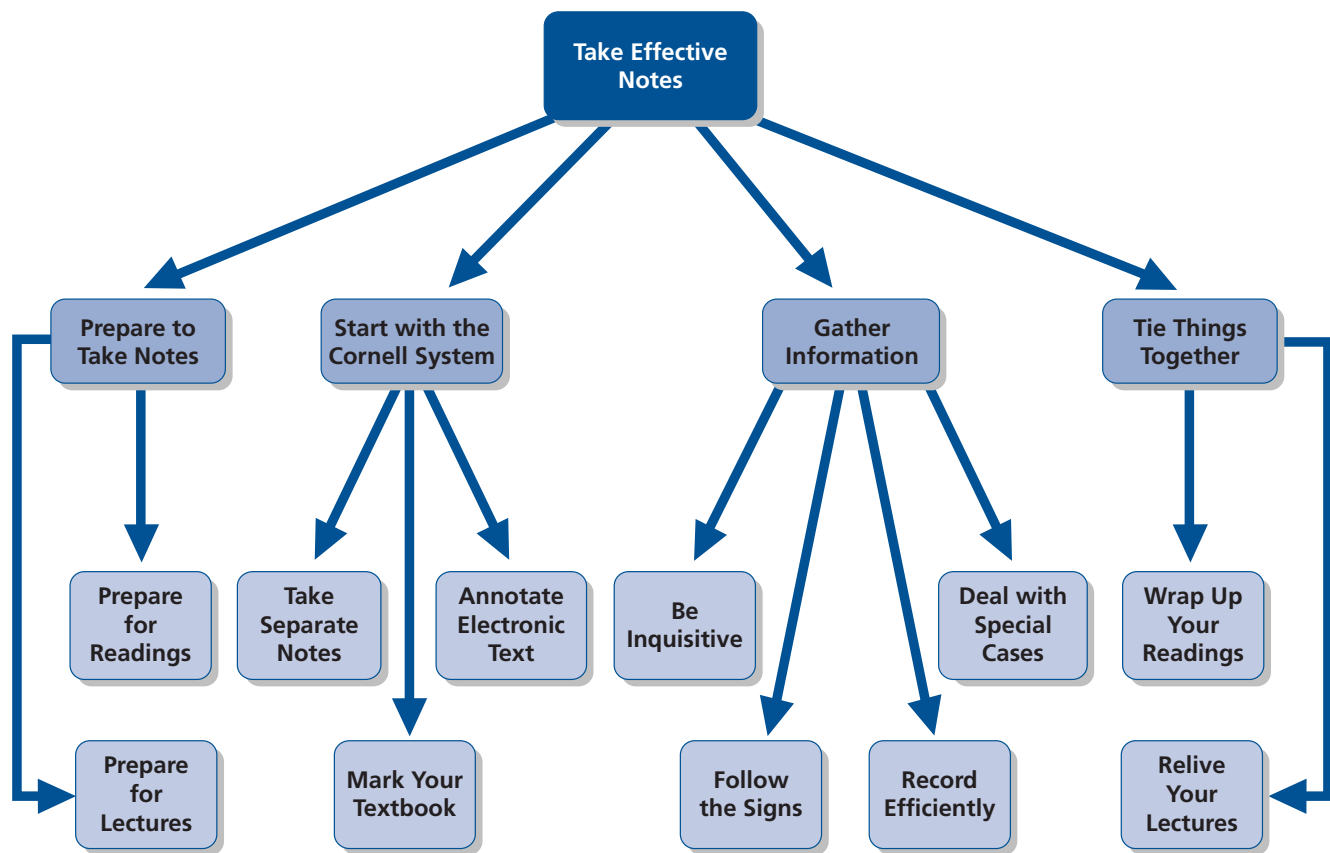
**rehearse** re-hearse' *v.* 1. a. To practice in preparation for a public performance. b. To direct in rehearsal. 2. To perfect through repetition. 3. a. To retell or recite. b. To list or enumerate.\*

If you think that the act of practice through repetition has nothing to do with the vehicle that carries a coffin to a cemetery, you're half right. *Hearse* and *rehearse* aren't directly related, although the two share a common ancestor and an interesting story. The word *hearse* comes from the French word *hercier* for harrow, which was originally a farm implement with a series of sharp teeth attached to a triangular wooden frame. A farmer or his farm animal would drag the *hercier* through the fields, allowing the teeth to dig up the soil in preparation for planting. Death in those days, just as now, was treated with great solemnity and ceremony. Candles were lit and placed on a triangular frame just above where the coffin was resting. Because the frame with the candles resembled an upended harrow, the word *hearse* was soon used to describe it. As time went on and the construction around the coffin grew more elaborate, it still retained the word *hearse*, even though it no longer resembled the original rake. Eventually it acquired wheels and, with the advent of the automobile, an engine. And yet to this day it's still called a hearse. But what of the *hearse* in *rehearsing*? That too refers to the original harrow. *Rehearse* literally means "to re-plow or rake again," in short, to go back over the same territory. And that's pretty much what we do when we rehearse something in an effort to remember it better.\*\*

\* Adapted from "rehearse." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/rehearse> (accessed April 9, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from "rehearse." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/rehearse> (accessed April 9, 2009).; "rehearse." *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=rehearse> (accessed April 9, 2009).; "rehearse, *v.*" *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; "rehearse, *v.*" *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50201440> (accessed April 9, 2009).





*Learn, compare, collect  
the facts!*

**Ivan Petrovich Pavlov**  
(1849–1936), Russian  
physiologist

# Take Effective Notes

The lectures you hear and the assignments you read are a potential gold mine. Both include valuable nuggets of knowledge. Because you spend so much of your academic life accumulating information, it's unwise to do so haphazardly. After all, anybody can take notes, just as anyone can doodle. But it's crucial for your notes to go beyond mere busywork. The key is to take notes effectively. This chapter maps out a strategy for effective note taking and tells you how to:

- **Be Prepared**
- **Start with the Cornell System**
- **Gather Information**
- **Tie Things Together**



What are the elements of successful note taking?

Taking notes doesn't simply mean scribbling down or marking up the things that strike your fancy. It means preparing properly for text or lecture notes, starting with some sort of system and then gathering information quickly and efficiently before pulling things together.

## Prepare to Take Notes

What sort of preparation is required before you start taking notes?

If you don't speak the language of your textbook or have a "big picture" sense of the path of the semester's lectures, it's unlikely that you'll be in a position to take meaningful notes. And even if you do, you still need to take your preparations one step further by previewing each textbook assignment before you begin reading or by setting the table for an upcoming lecture. The time you invest at the beginning will strengthen your memories throughout and make you a much better student in the end.

## Prepare for Readings

OVERVIEWING

SUMMARIZING

What's the best way to prepare for readings?

Because you and your textbooks are going to spend a quarter or a semester together, you'd better become friends. How? By getting acquainted with each textbook as a whole and by surveying specific assignments as they arise.

### Get Acquainted with Your Textbook

What steps can you take to become acquainted with a textbook?

Give yourself enough time to understand how each of your textbooks works by buying them as soon as you've registered for your classes. This is a wise policy even if your school allows a period in which you can attend many courses before deciding on a final few. Don't wait until the first day of class. Get a head start by reading the tables of contents, prefaces, introductions, and other up-front material in all your books. Underline important words and sentences, and make notes in the margins. Look at the pictures, tables, and diagrams; read the captions. Read chapter titles, headings, and subheadings that interest you. This will give you a good idea of what the book is like and where you will be going during the semester. Later, you'll be glad you did, for you'll be able to see how the various parts of the course fit together.

How does a book's prefatory material differ from the rest of its pages?

**Read the Prefatory Material** Although most textbooks are written in a serious, scholarly tone, in the prefatory material—which may be called "Preface," "To the Student," or something similar—the authors often take a more personal approach to their subjects and their readers than they do in the body of the text. This gives you a chance to meet the authors as people and to get comfortable with them. Once you do, you'll find that you can converse and even argue with them as you read the text. Now and then, you'll find yourself saying, "No, I don't agree with that statement," or "What do you mean by that?"

What sort of valuable information does a preface typically contain?

The prefatory material also provides valuable information about the concepts and content of the book. For instance, if you began this book by reading the “To the Student” section, you know the purpose and use of the questions that appear in the margins of every chapter. If, on the other hand, you skipped over this part, you may have squandered a valuable component of the book. In prefaces, you can find valuable information such as (1) what the author’s objective is and is not, (2) the organizational plan of the book, (3) how and why the book is different from other books about the same subject, (4) the author’s qualifications for writing the book, and often (5) an explanation of any supplementary learning aids. As a practical exercise, you might find it interesting to read the preface of this book, if you have not already done so. See how much you can gain toward understanding not only the book but also the authors.

How does learning the author’s objective help?

**The Author’s Objective** Learning the author’s objective—the purpose or goal he or she meant to achieve—enables you to read and interpret the text appropriately. For instance, the authors of *American Government: Student Choice Edition* state their objective succinctly:

Everything in this textbook—from its structure and organization to its learning system, design, packaging and marketing—has been orchestrated to meet the teaching and studying requirements of today’s instructors and students.<sup>1</sup>

In a single sentence, they tell you straight off what to expect and what particular philosophy they will be following.

Why is it helpful to know a book’s organizational plan?

**The Organizational Plan of the Book** Knowing the book’s organizational plan is like having a road map. You know not only what the authors are doing but also where they are going. In the following example, you learn the total number of chapters in the book as well as the topics of the five parts under which they are categorized:

We have carefully constructed the ninth edition to address instructors’ concerns about getting through all the necessary material for this course. The new, streamlined table of contents consists of 18 chapters total broken into 5 Parts: Financial Planning, Money Management, Income and Asset Production, Investments, and Retirement and Estate Planning. A new chapter on Career Planning provides students with the steps they need for successful career planning.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Alan R. Gitelson, Robert L. Dudley, and Melvin J. Dubnick, *American Government: Student Choice Edition*, 9th ed. (Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, Cengage Learning, 2009), p. xv.

<sup>2</sup> E. Thomas Garman and Raymond E. Forgue, *Personal Finance*, 9th ed. (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2008), p. xvii.

Why does it help to know how a book is different?

**How and Why the Book Is Different** Recognizing what makes the textbook unique enables you to read with greater awareness and comprehension and to avoid the trap of thinking the book is “more of the same old stuff:

This text is constructed with a unique pedagogical framework that emphasizes the acquisition and retention of major concepts in psychology.<sup>3</sup>

#### IT'S YOUR Q

**The Author's Qualifications** Writers usually try in some subtle way to let the reader know that their book is written by an expert on the subject and that therefore the information is trustworthy and credible. Note in the following example how the authors mention that they are all professors and that they have been teaching courses in Western Civilization “for years”:

For years we five professors from across the country have taught Western Civilization courses without the textbook we really wanted to have—a textbook with a coherent strategy for helping students to study and learn. In 1999 we commenced to develop such a text. This book is the result.<sup>4</sup>

What does the prefatory material tell you about learning aids?

**Supplementary Learning Aids** Today's textbook is often one component of a larger package of learning aids. The prefatory material generally names these aids and tells how they'll benefit you. In addition to in-text features, supplementary materials such as workbooks, study guides, software, websites, and videos are often available. Reading the introductory material will alert you to the presence of these features and ancillary materials, as you can see from the following example:

The teaching package for the fifth edition includes the *Instructor's Resource Manual with Test Questions, Case Teaching Guide*, a computerized test bank, a videotape with instructor's guide, PowerPoint slides, and student and instructor web sites, which are new to this edition.<sup>5</sup>

What is the role of a book's introduction?

#### Read the Introduction

While the prefatory material often supplies a glimpse of the author's personality, the introduction provides a preview of the book itself. The introduction is the book's showcase. It is designed not only to introduce a book, but also to sell it. Authors and publishers both know that this is the place prospective customers often go to decide

<sup>3</sup>Jeffrey S. Nevid, *Psychology: Concepts and Applications*, 2nd ed. (Belmont, CA: Wadsworth, Cengage Learning, 2009), p. xvii.

<sup>4</sup>Frank L. Kidner, Marcia Bucur, Ralph Mathisen, Sally McKee, and Theodore R. Weeks, *Making Europe: People, Politics, and Culture*, (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2009), p. xxv.

<sup>5</sup>Jean-Pierre Jeannet and H. David Hennessey, *Global Marketing Strategies*, 5th ed. (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2001), p. xviii.

whether a book is worth reading and worth buying. As a result, the introduction is often especially well written and inviting.

Figure 10.1 is a densely packed introduction containing information of great and immediate value for the sharper reading of textbooks. It is from a book titled *Six-Way Paragraphs*.<sup>6</sup> The book's sole purpose is to teach students how to spot main ideas. One hundred paragraphs are provided for practice. To prepare students for such practice, the introduction strives to explain the ins and outs of the paragraphs found in textbooks. As you read it, be aware not only of *what* the writer says but also of *how* he says it and his *purpose* for saying it.

### Preview from Front to Back

What can you learn from a book's table of contents?

After you've read the introductory material, survey the rest of the book. Begin by scanning the table of contents (TOC). It lists the parts, the chapters, and sometimes the major headings within each chapter. Some books, such as this one, actually have two TOCs, an abbreviated one that supplies the part and chapter names and a more detailed table of contents that lists the names and page references of sections and subsections in addition to those for the chapters and parts. General or detailed, the TOC is designed to show the overall organization of the book and how the chapter topics relate to one another. It also indicates whether the book contains extra material: appendixes, glossaries, bibliographies or references, and indexes.

What sort of valuable information can you glean from a book's extra sections?

Now turn to the back of the book and look at these extra sections. Appendixes contain additional information such as tables and graphs, documents, or details about specific aspects of a subject. Glossaries are specialized dictionaries of terms common to the subject the book discusses. Bibliographies and references list the sources the authors consulted in writing the book and can point you in the direction of further reading. Indexes—alphabetical listings of significant topics, ideas, and names along with page references that appear at the end of texts—give you a sense of the scope of the book and help you locate specific material quickly.

What is the general advantage of getting to know your textbook?

By familiarizing yourself with your textbook, you not only bolster your background knowledge about the subject; you also become aware of the features of the book you can use throughout the term. As a result, future assignments will be easier and less time consuming, and you'll have a greater chance to master the material.

### Survey Specific Assignments

What is the value of surveying a reading assignment?

Moving systematically through your textbook at the beginning of the semester will give you a strong context and a solid foundation that you can strengthen and further build on by briefly surveying your assignment before you begin reading it.

How does surveying make a difference in your reading?

**Why Surveying Is Important** There are three practical ways that surveying can make a real and immediate difference in your reading: by creating a background, by limbering your mind, and by overcoming inertia.

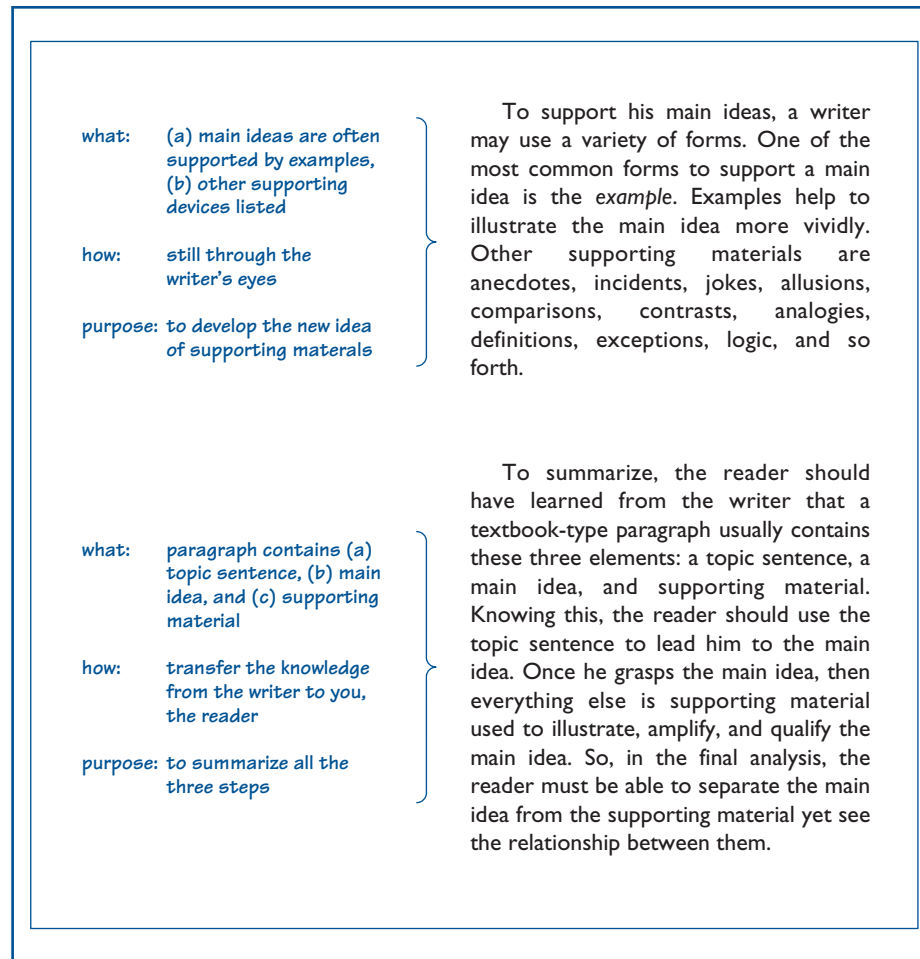
<sup>6</sup>Walter Pauk, *Six-Way Paragraphs* (Providence, RI: Jamestown Publishers, 1974).

**Figure 10.1**  
**The Content of an Introduction**

Source: Walter Pauk, *Six-Way Paragraphs* (Providence, RI: Jamestown Publishers, 1974), pp. 7–8. Reprinted by permission.

<p><b>what:</b> <i>wants you to focus on the paragraph – unit</i></p> <p><b>how:</b> <i>brings you and the writer together</i></p> <p><b>purpose:</b> <i>wants you to look at the paragraph through the eyes of the writer</i></p>	<p>The paragraph! That’s the working-unit of both writer and reader. The writer works hard to put meaning into the paragraph; the reader works hard to take meaning out of it. Though they work at opposite tasks, the work of each is closely related. Actually, to understand better the job of the reader, one must first understand better the job of the writer. So, let us look briefly at the writer’s job.</p>
<p><b>what:</b> <i>each paragraph has but one main idea</i></p> <p><b>how:</b> <i>shows you how a writer thinks</i></p> <p><b>purpose:</b> <i>to convince you to look for only one idea per paragraph because writers follow this rule</i></p>	<p>To make his meaning clear, a writer knows that he must follow certain basic principles. First, he knows that he must develop only one main idea per paragraph. This principle is so important that he knows it backward, too. He knows that he must not try to develop two main ideas in the same, single paragraph.</p>
<p><b>what:</b> <i>the topic of the main idea is in the topic sentence, which is usually the first one</i></p> <p><b>how:</b> <i>the writer needs to state a topic sentence to keep his own writing clear and under control</i></p> <p><b>purpose:</b> <i>to instill confidence in you that the topic sentence is an important tool in a writer’s kit and convince you it is there, so, look for it!</i></p>	<p>The next important principle he knows is that the topic of each main idea must be stated in a topic sentence and that such a sentence best serves its function by coming at or near the beginning of its paragraph. He knows, too, that the more clearly he can state the topic of his paragraph in an opening sentence, the more effective he will be in developing a meaningful, well-organized paragraph.</p>
<p><b>what:</b> <i>developing main ideas through supporting material</i></p> <p><b>how:</b> <i>“more to a writer’s job,” still keeps you in the writer’s shoes</i></p> <p><b>purpose:</b> <i>to announce and advance the new step of supporting materials</i></p>	<p>Now, there is more to a writer’s job than just writing paragraphs consisting of only bare topic sentences and main ideas. The balance of his job deals with <i>developing</i> each main idea through the use of supporting material that amplifies and clarifies the main idea and many times makes it more vivid and memorable.</p>

Figure 10.1  
(Continued)



How does surveying create a background?

1. *Surveying creates a background.* Surveying provides prior knowledge that counteracts tunnel vision and prepares you for reading. According to David P. Ausubel, a learning-theory psychologist, previewing the general content of a chapter creates *advance organizers*, which help students learn and remember material they later study closely.<sup>7</sup> These advance organizers become familiar landmarks when you go back to read the chapter in earnest. John Livingston Lowes, a professor of literature at Princeton University, described these landmarks as *magnetic centers* around which ideas, facts, and details cluster like iron filings around a magnet.

<sup>7</sup>John F. Wakefield, *Educational Psychology* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1996), p. 368.

How does surveying compare to an athlete's pregame warm-up?

How does surveying overcome inertia?

2. *Surveying limbers the mind.* For an athlete, a pregame warm-up limbers the muscles as well as the psyche and brain. An athlete knows that success comes from the coordination of smoothly gliding muscles, a positive attitude, and a concentrating mind. The prestudy survey of a textbook achieves for the scholar what the pregame warm-up achieves for the athlete.
3. *Surveying overcomes mental inertia.* How often have you said, with impatience and exasperation, "C'mon. Let's get started!" Getting started is hard. According to Newton's First Law of Motion (also known as the Law of Inertia), "A body in motion tends to remain in motion; a body at rest tends to remain at rest." Many students find it difficult to open a textbook and begin to study. If you are one of them, use surveying to ease yourself into studying. Surveying does the job: It gets you started. (Figure 10.2 provides a mnemonic device that makes it that much easier to survey each textbook chapter systematically.)

## Prepare for Lectures

OVERVIEWING

What information can you use to help prepare for an upcoming lecture?

You can zero in on the upcoming lecture by marshaling the available information to provide a context for what the speaker will talk about. Of course, lectures aren't like textbook chapters; unless they've been written down or recorded already, you can't survey them in advance. But in most courses, there is enough available information

**Figure 10.2**  
Surveying a Textbook Chapter

### How Surveying TIES UP the Elements of a Textbook Chapter

A chapter's information and elements can become more meaningful if you can tie them all together somehow. Surveying the chapter before you begin reading it can help provide a way.

**Title:** Read the title of the chapter to get a general idea about its subject.

**Introduction:** Read the introductory paragraph to get a sense of the key ideas that will be covered.

**Ending:** Read the chapter's ending paragraph for a summary of its key ideas or a sneak preview of its conclusions or lessons.

**Subheadings:** Scan the major subheadings to build a framework for the chapter that extends from the introduction to the ending.

**Unusual elements:** Look for any unique or unusual elements that stand out, such as lists and boxes, and boldfaced, italicized, or underlined text.

**Pictures:** Glance at pictures, charts, illustrations, or any other graphical elements for a succinct summary of some of the chapter's important ideas or a vivid example of some of its concepts.



supporting the lecture that it should enable you to effectively prepare for it. Each lecture can be viewed as a piece of a puzzle. The more pieces you have in place, the more you know about the shape and size of the pieces that remain. The course syllabus, the notes from your last lecture, and related reading assignments can all function as these puzzle pieces as you prepare for a lecture.

How can you use your course syllabus to prepare for an upcoming lecture?

### Look Over the Syllabus

Assuming that your instructor is sticking to the syllabus, you should be able to read the list of lecture topics to get a big-picture sense of where this latest lecture will fit in. Pay especially close attention to the title and description of the previous lecture, the upcoming lecture, and the one that will follow. Encourage active thinking about the lecture topics by transforming each title into a question and then answering your question in cases where the lecture has already been delivered or by speculating on the answer in cases where the lecture is still to come.

Why is it helpful to prepare for an upcoming lecture by reviewing your notes from the previous lecture?

### Review Your Notes from the Previous Lecture

Each lecture will normally build on the concepts from the lectures that came before it. Most instructors will assume that you attended, understood, and can remember the previous lecture. After all, time will rarely permit a rehash of ideas that have already been fully explained. Although the upcoming lecture will often have some ties to all the lectures that came before it, the bond will usually be strongest with the most recent one. In fact, in some courses, each lecture is like the next episode of a continuing story. To understand what's going on in Chapter 2 in a novel, you often must understand and remember Chapter 1. Lectures often work in a similar way.

How do reading assignments relate to the upcoming lecture?

### Do the Assigned Reading

Some instructors will assign readings as background for an upcoming lecture. Others will give you readings designed to follow up on what you've just heard and learned in a lecture. In either case, surveying these readings can help provide advance organizers that will make it easier to understand and remember an upcoming lecture.

## Start with the Cornell System

What is the Cornell System?

All of the methodical preparation you've done will be wasted if you just wing it when you start to take notes. Instead of taking a chance on a haphazard, seat-of-the-pants method of taking notes, you need a proven note-taking system. The Cornell System, which was developed at Cornell University almost fifty years ago, has been embraced by countless colleges and universities in the United States and

[www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowTOSTudy10e](http://www.cengage.com/success/Pauk/HowTOSTudy10e)



throughout the world. It can be used for taking separate notes, for marking your textbook, and even for annotating electronic texts. The system is flexible and far-reaching, but its secret is simple: Wide margins on the outside and the bottom of the text area are the key.

## Take Separate Notes

PLANNING

In what sense are notes more valuable than a textbook?

The notes you jot down can become a handwritten textbook. In fact, in many instances they are more practical, meaningful, and up-to-date than a textbook. If you keep your notes neat, complete, and well organized, they will serve you splendidly.

What are the principal components of Cornell-style note paper?

Although Cornell-style paper can sometimes be difficult to find at school or office supply stores,\* you can easily use a pen and ruler to adapt standard loose-leaf paper to the task. First, draw a vertical line down the left side of each page two-and-one-half inches from the edge of the paper; end the line two inches from the bottom of the sheet. This creates the *cue column*. Next, draw a horizontal line two inches from the bottom of the page. This is the border for your *summary area*. The large space to the right of the cue column and above the summary area is where you write your notes. Figure 10.3 shows a Cornell note sheet.

What are the cue column and summary area used for?

As you're taking notes, the cue column should remain empty, as should the summary area. But when the time comes to review and recite what you've jotted down, you'll use the cue column for questions to help clarify meanings, reveal relationships, establish continuity, and strengthen memory. The summary area will be used to distill a page's worth of notes down to a sentence or two.

How does the Cornell System adjust to the demands of different courses?

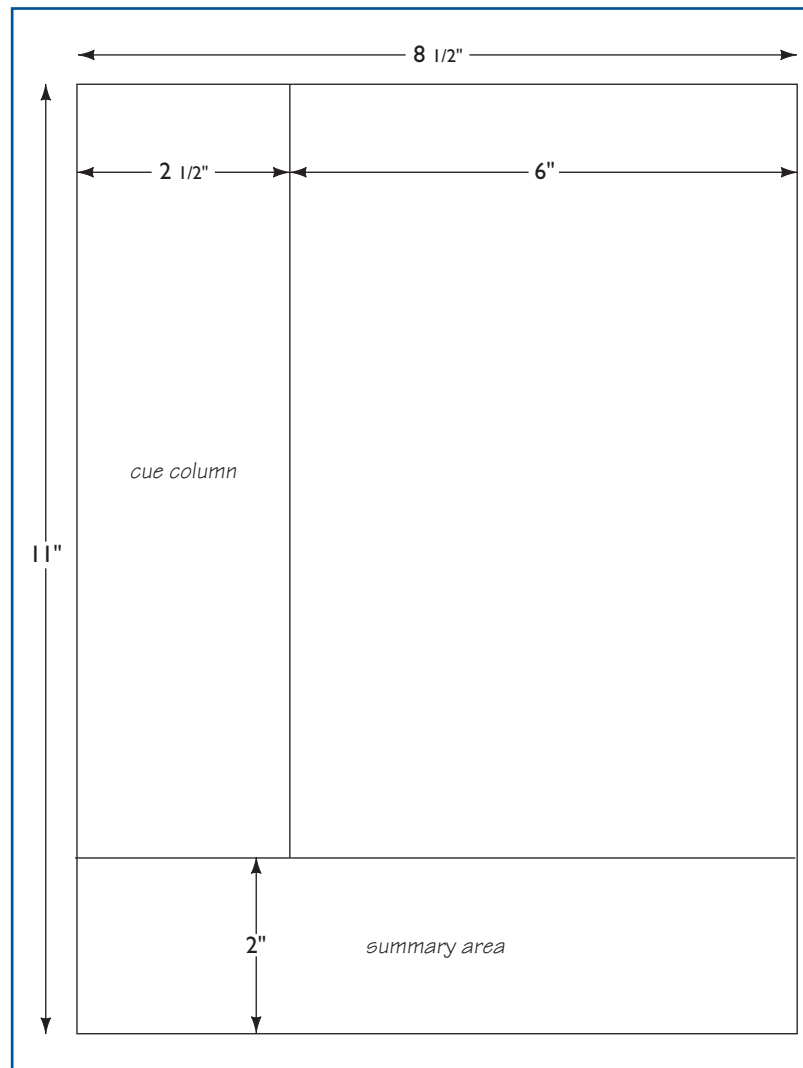
The information that goes in the largest space on the page varies from class to class and from student to student. Different courses come with different demands. The format you choose for taking your notes and the ideas you jot down are almost entirely up to you. If you have a special way of jotting down your notes, you should be able to use it with the Cornell note sheet.

Why is the outline format discouraged?

About the only format you should be wary of is the outline. As crisp and neat as they may look at a glance, outlines have a way of tying your hands and forcing you to squeeze information into an unforgiving framework. When you're taking notes—especially in a lecture—the last thing you want to be worrying about is Roman numerals. As Edward W. Fox, Cornell's great teacher, lecturer, and historian explained:

\*Special "law-rule" paper, available at some office supply stores, has an extra-wide margin similar to what the Cornell System recommends. However, it is slightly larger than standard letter-sized paper and lacks the summary area at the bottom of each page.

**Figure 10.3**  
The Cornell Note  
Sheet



Elaborate arrangements tend to confuse, and the traditional topical form, the use of Roman numerals, capital letters, Arabic numerals, and small letters, etc., with much indentation, has a fatal tendency to imply a logical analysis rather than elicit one.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>8</sup>Edward W. Fox, *Syllabus for History* (Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1959). Reprinted by permission of the author.

If outlines are a bad idea, what sort of note-taking format should you use instead?

How do sentences in your notes differ from traditional sentences?

#### IT'S YOUR Q

What do definition-style notes look like?

Outlines are the tail that wagged the dog. You should be concentrating on the information itself, not on its numbering scheme. Whatever works for you is best. You can take notes in sentence or paragraph form, in lists, as definitions, by adding drawings, or by using a combination of these formats.

*Sentences.* Take key ideas from a lecture or reading and jot them down in your own words. If you're taking notes in a lecture, you probably won't have time to write out complete sentences. Instead, write telegraphically, leaving out articles such as *a*, *an*, and *the*, and abbreviating words you use often. Figure 10.4 provides an example.

*Paragraphs.* Cluster related sentences in a block of text, often under a heading or label that serves to tie them together. As you see in Figure 10.5, these are not traditional paragraphs where one complete sentence flows smoothly to the next. Your sentences in paragraph-style notes will usually be telegraphic, and smooth transitions are not important. However, these paragraphs share one important thing with traditional paragraphs: All the sentences should relate to the same main idea.

*Definitions.* Write a name or term, add a dash or colon, and then provide a succinct explanation or elaboration. Figure 10.6 provides an example.

**Figure 10.4**  
Sentence Notes

	Oct. 10 (Mon.) – Soc. 102 – Prof. Oxford
What's animism?	A. Animism
What's mana?	1. Object has supernatural power
How to gain mana?	2. Power called mana (not limited to objects)
Who has mana?	a. Objects accumulate mana
	Ex. Good canoe – more mana than poor one.
	b. Objects can lose mana
	c. People collect objects w/lots of mana
	d. Good person's objects collect mana
	e. People, animals, plants have mana, too.
	Ex. Expert canoe builder has mana – imparts mana to canoe
	f. Chief has lots of mana – dangerous to get too close to chief – mana around head.

**Figure 10.5**  
Paragraph Notes

<p><b>What was the Greek concept of a well-rounded person?</b></p>	<p>Nov. 6 (Mon.) – World Lit. 106 – Prof. Warnek</p> <p><u>Greece</u></p> <p>1. Unity = well rounded Early Greeks vigorous. Goal was to be well rounded: unity of knowledge &amp; activity. No separate specializations as law, literature, philosophy, etc. Believed one person should master all things equally well; not only knowledge, but be an athlete, soldier, &amp; statesman, too.</p>
--	---

**Figure 10.6**  
Definition Notes

<p><b>What are main types of note-taking formats?</b></p>	<p>Mar. 14 (Fri.) – Ed. 103 – Prof. Pauk</p> <p><u>Types of note-taking formats</u></p> <p><u>sentence</u> - Notes written in sentences, but telegraphically: w/ abbrevs. for common wds. Articles (“a”, “an”, etc.) left out.</p> <p><u>paragraph</u> - Like real paragraphs, clustered around main idea, but sentences telegraphic &amp; transitions left off</p> <p><u>definition</u> - name or term, followed by dash or colon and explanation</p> <p><u>list</u> - word or phrase heading, followed by series of items. No numbers unless relevant. Use bullet pts. instead.</p> <p><u>combination</u> - mix of other formats</p>
---	--

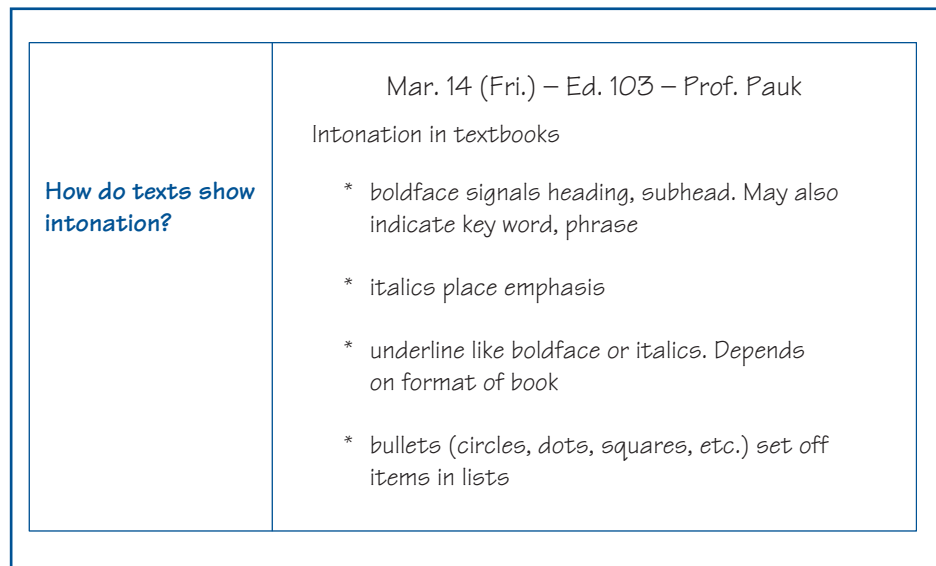
How do you make items stand out in list-style notes?

*Lists.* Start with a topic, name, term, or process, and then list phrases or telegraphic sentences that relate. Avoid numbering the items unless the numbers are relevant to the list. If you want to make the items stand out in your notes, consider beginning each with an asterisk or a bullet point. Figure 10.7 shows what these lists are apt to look like.

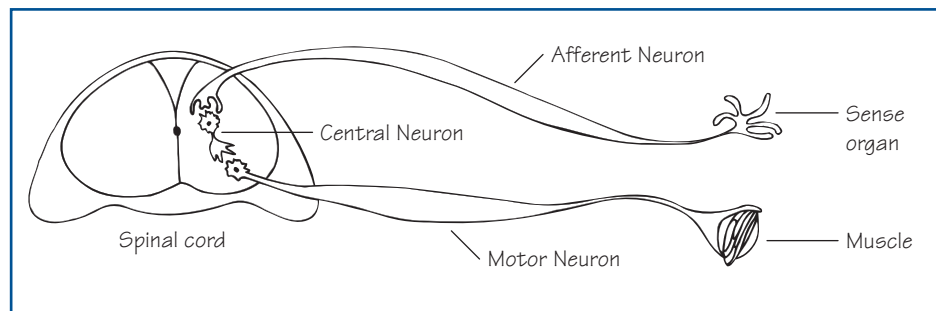
What is the advantage of using drawings in your notes?

*Drawings.* Drawings and diagrams can succinctly sum up information that may be difficult to explain in words alone. A sketch can often convey locations or relationships more effectively than a sentence or two. Figure 10.8 shows the sort of diagram that a biology student might include in her notes.

**Figure 10.7**  
List Notes



**Figure 10.8**  
Diagramming as a Study Aid



When will you need a combination of formats for your notes?

*Combination.* Some chapters and a few lectures may fit into a single note-taking format, but it's unlikely that most will. Good note takers must remain flexible, shifting quickly from one format to another to capture key information as efficiently and meaningfully as possible. It's important to choose the right tool for the job. Figure 10.9 shows notes that combine several formats.

## Mark Your Textbook

PLANNING

What happens to the key Cornell components when you choose to mark your text instead of taking separate notes?

Although the Cornell System can work as well with readings as it does with lectures, when you're taking notes for a textbook assignment, you also have the option of putting those notes directly on the pages of your book instead. When you choose to take notes directly in your textbook, the outside margin of the textbook page becomes the substitute for the cue column, and the spaces at the bottom or top of each page become the summary area. Of course, because a textbook page is already filled with text, you obviously can't put

**Figure 10.9**  
Notes That Use a  
Combination of  
Formats

<p><i>How do org. patterns help make books, lectures easier to follow?</i></p> <p><i>What are movement patterns?</i></p> <p><i>Examples?</i></p>	<p>Mar. 14 (Fri.) – Ed. 103 – Prof. Pauk</p> <p>Organizational patterns</p> <p>Where is this going? Org. patterns provide guidance in lectures &amp; texts. Tell you where author, speaker is headed. Learning common patterns can make it easier to follow both. Also, <u>signposts</u> (next, finally, thus) can provide clues about path.</p> <p><u>Movement patterns</u> systematically travel through <u>time, space, process</u>. Can be easiest pattern to follow. Several types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* time or chronological pattern - events presented in order.</li> <li>* place or spatial pattern - info presented based on location or arrangement. Ex: descrip. of geog. features of U.S., outline of company setup</li> <li>* process pattern - steps or events lead to desired situation or product. Ex: recipe.</li> </ul>
--	--

traditional notes where the text already is. What may at first seem like a disadvantage can actually be a great boon. Rather than jotting down your notes from scratch, you can mark the words or phrases in your textbook that make up the most important ideas.

Figure 10.10 contains twelve suggestions for marking textbooks. Notice especially the use of single and double underlines; the use of asterisks, circling, and boxing for important items; and the use of the top and bottom margins for long notations or summaries. If some of these ideas appeal to you, work them into your marking system. Be sure to use them consistently so that you will instantly remember what they mean.

One key advantage of marking up your textbook directly is that your notes and your textbook travel together as a unit. Whenever you need clarification for a sentence or phrase you have marked, you have an entire book's worth of supporting material, including a table of contents, an index, and often a glossary, at your fingertips.

Of course, a potential disadvantage of textbook marking is that it doesn't require your complete concentration. Unlike taking separate notes, in which you have to consciously choose to add each idea, you can annotate your textbook without a true understanding of what you've marked. Drawing lines and boxes and inserting symbols and question marks can give you a false sense of accomplishment if you're not thinking deeply about what you read. It can also result in overmarking, which can undermine the original value of marking. When you mark your text, you need to do so sparingly, with both discipline and forethought. Keep in mind that the "you" who reviews the marked book will likely be more knowledgeable than the "you" who marked the book originally. Think ahead, so that weeks or months later when you look back at chapters you marked, your marks will still be meaningful and won't seem excessive.

There is a simple but powerful way to manage your marking: recitation. Rather than marking each paragraph as you go, read it through completely and then recite its main idea in your own words. Then return to the paragraph and mark the words or phrases that express this main idea. This step will move you out of the realm of simple recognition and into recall. Recalling your notes is the way to help make information your own.

Figure 10.11 provides an example of an appropriately marked textbook page. Notice how numbers are used to highlight the five basic types of supporting materials and how a box has been drawn around each of those types so they're easy to discern. The rest of the passage is marked sparingly, with the underlined phrases primarily forming the answers to the marginal questions. This type of organization not only aids in comprehending and remembering the main points of the page, but also helps immensely when you're studying for an examination and time is short.

What advantage does textbook marking have over separate notes?

#### IT'S YOUR Q

How can you make sure your marks are meaningful and not excessive?

## Annotate Electronic Text

PLANNING

How do you mark an electronic text?

These days, many of the texts we read are no longer printed pages. Instead, they take some electronic form, such as webpages, Portable Document Format (PDF) files, word

**Figure 10.10**  
A System for Marking  
Your Textbooks

EXPLANATION AND DESCRIPTION	SYMBOLS, MARKINGS, AND NOTATIONS																
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Use double lines under words or phrases to signify main ideas.</li> <li>2. Use single lines under words or phrases to signify supporting material.</li> <li>3. Mark small circled numbers near the initial word of an underlined group of words to indicate a series of arguments, facts, ideas—either main or supporting.</li> <li>4. Rather than underlining a group of three or more important lines, use a vertical bracket in the margin.</li> <li>5. Use one asterisk in the margin to indicate ideas of special importance, and two for ideas of unusual importance. Reserve three asterisks for principles and high-level generalizations.</li> <li>6. Circle keywords and key terms.</li> <li>7. Box words of enumeration and transition.</li> <li>8. Place a question mark in the margin, opposite lines you do not understand, as a reminder to ask the instructor for clarification.</li> <li>9. If you disagree with a statement, indicate that in the margin.</li> <li>10. Use the top and bottom margins of a page to record ideas of your own that are prompted by what you read.</li> <li>11. On sheets of paper that are smaller than the pages of the book, write longer thoughts or summaries; then insert them between the pages.</li> <li>12. Even though you have underlined the important ideas and supporting materials, still jot brief cues in the side margins.</li> </ol>	<p><u>Radiation can produce mutations . . .</u></p> <p><u>comes from cosmic rays . . .</u></p> <p>Conditions change . . .</p> <p>① rocks rise . . .</p> <p>② some sink . . .</p> <p>③ the sea dashes . . .</p> <p>④ strong winds . . .</p> <p>had known . . .</p> <p>who gave . . .</p> <p>the time . . .</p> <p>of time . . .</p> <p>* When a nuclear blast is . . .</p> <p>** People quite close to the . . .</p> <p>***The main cause of mutations . . .</p> <p>The <u>genes</u> are the . . .</p> <p><u>fourth</u>, the lack of supplies . . .</p> <p><u>furthermore</u>, the shortage . . .</p> <p>The latest . . .</p> <p>? cold period . . .</p> <p>about 1,000,000 . . .</p> <p>Even today . . .</p> <p>Life became . . .</p> <p>on land only . . .</p> <p>340 million years . . .</p> <p>Disagree</p> <p>Why not use carbon dating?</p> <p>.....</p> <p>Check on reference of fossils found in Tennessee stone quarry.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Fossils</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Plants</td> <td>= 500,000,000 years old</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Insects</td> <td>= 260,000,000 " "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bees</td> <td>= 100,000,000 " "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>True Fish</td> <td>= 330,000,000 " "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Amphibians</td> <td>= 300,000,000 " "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reptiles</td> <td>= 300,000,000 " "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Birds</td> <td>= 150,000,000 " "</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Adapt - _____</p> <p>fossil - _____</p> <p>layer - _____</p>	Fossils		Plants	= 500,000,000 years old	Insects	= 260,000,000 " "	Bees	= 100,000,000 " "	True Fish	= 330,000,000 " "	Amphibians	= 300,000,000 " "	Reptiles	= 300,000,000 " "	Birds	= 150,000,000 " "
Fossils																	
Plants	= 500,000,000 years old																
Insects	= 260,000,000 " "																
Bees	= 100,000,000 " "																
True Fish	= 330,000,000 " "																
Amphibians	= 300,000,000 " "																
Reptiles	= 300,000,000 " "																
Birds	= 150,000,000 " "																



**Figure 10.11**  
**Use of Enumeration in**  
**Textbooks**

Source: Stephanie J. Coopman and James Lull, *Public Speaking: The Evolving Art*, p. 188. Copyright © 2009 by Cengage Learning.

*How many types of supp. materials?*

*Purpose of narratives?*

*How do examples help? Types of examples?*

*Why use definitions?*

*What makes testimony effective?*

*What is appeal of facts and stats?*

There are five basic types of supporting materials.

① Narratives dramatize a topic and help your audience identify with it. A speech might include your own stories, stories about others, organizational stories, or cultural stories. Telling a good story requires having a sense of timing and drama.

② Examples make ideas less abstract and personalize a topic. General examples are broad and provide little detail. Specific examples provide greater detail. Hypothetical examples are based on supposition--the audience imagines the circumstances--and must seem plausible to be effective. Examples help listeners better understand the topic, yet an example can mislead if it doesn't accurately represent the larger class to which it belongs.

③ Definitions establish a common meaning between the speaker and the audience. Speakers use definitions to clarify concepts and identify the boundaries of a topic. Definitions may explain how something functions or offer analogies for a word or concept. Specialized dictionaries can provide more descriptive and technical meanings for a word than standard dictionaries can. In using definitions as supporting materials, speakers must recognize that the audience likely will associate connotations with words, no matter how those words are defined.

④ Experts, celebrities, and laypeople may provide testimony or their experiences about a topic. The effectiveness of testimony rests on the degree to which audience members perceive the person as a credible source of information about the topic.

⑤ Facts and statistics clearly appeal to an audience's logical thinking processes. These supporting materials show listeners the scope of a problem and can demonstrate a topic's importance. Including too many facts and statistics, especially without using presentation media to show all the numbers and figures, can overwhelm the audience. In addition, facts and statistics may be interpreted--and misinterpreted--in many ways.

processor documents, or electronic slides from presentation software such as Microsoft PowerPoint. Any one of these formats can be printed out and then marked up as though they were pages from a textbook, although you may find that you don't have enough space for your marginal cues if you simply print them out "as-is." However, there are adjustments you can make to accommodate Cornell-style margins.

How can you make room for Cornell margins on printed webpages?

*Webpages.* To add the space you need for note taking at the left and the bottom of each webpage, choose Page Setup from the File menu of your browser. Once you do, you should be able to change your browser's default margins to Cornell margins by typing the new dimensions into the appropriate text boxes. Enter 2.5 in the box for the left-hand margin and 2 in the box for the bottom. The text of the webpages will not be reduced. Instead it will be squeezed into the smaller text space to make room for the oversized margins.

Where do you put your markings on PDF files?

*PDF files.* Although Portable Document Format provides excellent print-quality pages, it's not as flexible if you want to make room for oversized margins. You can't really squeeze the text this time. The best you can do is to resize it. You do this by fooling your printer into thinking that you are printing standard  $8.5 \times 11$  sheets onto smaller sized paper. The paper size that comes closest to providing the proper margins you need on the side and the bottom is called "B5(JIS)," which shrinks  $8.5 \times 11$  pages down to  $7.15 \times 10.11$ . Depending on the margins on the original document, this should give you just the right amount of space for the cue column and maybe a bit more than you need at the bottom for the summary space. The only other nonstandard aspect of this method is that the cue column winds up on the left-hand side instead of the right as if you were adding marginal jottings to a textbook that only had odd-numbered pages.

What are some ways that you can annotate presentation slides?

*Presentation slides.* Most presentation software is designed so the slides can be printed out in a way that allows room for notations. In addition, if the slideshow is editable, you may be able to add your notations onscreen without even printing out the slides.

How do you adjust word processor documents to accommodate Cornell markings?

*Word processor documents.* Of all the electronic documents you may want to annotate, word processor documents are probably the best suited and most flexible. If you prefer to handwrite your marginal jottings, you can change the margins in the document (just as you did with the webpages) to accommodate both the cue column and the summary space. With most word processing applications, you do this by choosing Page Setup from the File menu, clicking on the tab for margins, and increasing the size of the left and bottom margins. When you print out the pages, you should have ample room at both the left and the bottom of each printed page.

How can you type in your markings instead of jotting them down by hand?

Word processor documents also make it relatively easy to type your jottings onscreen instead of writing them down by hand. You do this by converting the text of your document into a one-column table, with one paragraph per row. Highlight the text of your document and then choose the item in the Table menu that converts your text to a table.

Once you're satisfied that each paragraph occupies its own table row, go back and add an additional column to your table, just to the left of the original one. This should create a blank cell to the left of every paragraph in your document that you can use for typing in your marginal questions. Adding a summary area is a little trickier—particularly if you want to be sure that each summary winds up at the bottom of a page. To do so, highlight the last row on a page, choose Insert from the Table menu, and add a row below the one you've selected. Then select the newly created two-column row and choose Merge Cells from the Table menu. This should provide you with a summary space that spans the two columns of your note-taking table. To add a space to the next page of your notes, simply repeat the process.

## Gather Information

What can you do to be fully engaged as you take notes?

Whether you are taking notes on sheets of paper, making marks in your textbook, or typing your notes onscreen, you need to be fully engaged. To avoid drifting into the sort of robotic routine that adds little to learning, it is important to remain inquisitive as you take your notes, to keep alert for signs that will tip you off to the meaning of what you're reading or learning, to record things efficiently, and, as always, to stay flexible for the inevitable exceptions and special cases.

## Be Inquisitive

QUESTIONING

What is the secret to being an active participant?

You can't really expect to do a good job of gleaning the most important information from a lecture or reading unless you are paying attention. And while getting enough sleep and sitting up straight can help promote alertness, the real secret to being an active participant is to maintain an inquisitive mindset. Formulating questions, whether silently or aloud, will unlock the meaning of information in a way that listening or reading passively just can't approach.

What are the roles of the speaker and listener in a lecture?

### Ask Questions Both Silently and Out Loud During a Lecture

Although the communication may seem one-sided, both the speaker and the listener play important roles in a classroom lecture. The speaker's responsibility is to make points clearly. The listener's responsibility is to understand what the speaker says. If a speaker's message is not clear and the listener asks a clarifying question, both the speaker and the listener benefit. The speaker is encouraged and gratified to know that the audience is interested. The listener can concentrate on what the speaker has to say and feel good about raising a question that other, more timid members of the audience might have been hesitant to ask.

Why do questions often go unasked?

As vital as questions can be to comprehension, they often go unasked. A professor at the University of Virginia who conducted a survey found that 94 percent of her students had failed to understand something in at least one class lecture during the semester. Seventy percent of the students had not asked clarifying questions even though they knew they could. When she asked them why they had remained silent, they answered with such statements as “I was afraid I’d look stupid,” “I didn’t want to make myself conspicuous,” “I was too proud to ask,” and “I was too confused to know what question to ask.” The way to dispel the fear of asking is to remember that the only dumb question is the one that is never asked. The way to dispel confusion is to acknowledge it by saying, “I’m confused about the last point you made” or “I’m confused about how the example pertains to your main point.” In this situation, as in most, honesty is the best policy.

How do you ask questions when you’re reading a book that can’t talk back?

### Formulate Questions as You Read

It’s easy to see how questions can help clarify important points in a classroom lecture. After all, you usually have an expert right there who can sense your confusion and respond to the questions. Not so with a textbook assignment, where all you have are silent words on a printed page. Instead of approaching a textbook as a passive recipient of its information, build on the relationship you formed with the author or authors when you first surveyed the book and read over its prefatory material by constantly formulating questions as you read, by wondering out loud about issues or aspects that concern you, and by writing out questions that help you pinpoint and remember the most important information. The latter really serves as the foundation for taking notes and mastering them.

What’s a good way to start asking questions as you read?

If asking questions as you read doesn’t seem to come naturally at first, a good way to start is by reading the headings and subheadings in your assignment and turning them into questions. This is an important ice-breaker in a number of textbook reading systems, including the well-known SQ3R system (see Figure 10.12).

It doesn’t take much to transform a typical textbook heading or subheading into an attention-getting question. For example, the main heading “Basic Aspects of Memory” could be turned into the question “What are the basic aspects of memory?” The technique is simple, but it works. Questions encourage interaction. Suddenly you will be reading with a purpose instead of just passively taking in information. And if your question is answered early in the discussion, simply ask another, based on what you have read.

## Follow the Signs

REFRAMING

What signs help improve comprehension of lectures or readings?

Whether information is delivered in the form of a lecture or a textbook chapter, there are usually signs that help direct you down the road to comprehension. Both the intonation of the words and the way they are organized provide clues about the author or speaker’s purpose and approach.

**Figure 10.12**  
**The SQ3R System**  
Source: Adaptation of "Steps in the SQ3R Method" (pp. 32–33) from *Effective Study*, 4th Edition, by Francis P. Robinson. Copyright 1941, 1946 by Harper & Row Publishers Inc. Copyright © 1961, 1970 by Francis P. Robinson. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

### **THE SQ3R SYSTEM**

- S SURVEY** *Glance through all the headings in the chapter, and read the final summary paragraph (if the chapter has one). This survey should not take more than a minute, and it will show you the three to six core ideas on which the discussion will be based. This orientation will help you organize the ideas as you read them later.*
- Q QUESTION** *Now begin to work. Turn the first heading into a question. This will arouse your curiosity and thereby increase comprehension. It will bring to mind information you already know, thus helping you understand that section more quickly. The question also will make important points stand out from explanatory details. You can turn a heading into a question as you read the heading, but it demands conscious effort on your part.*
- R<sub>1</sub> READ** *Read the paragraph or section to answer the question. Read actively.*
- R<sub>2</sub> RECITE** *After you finish reading the paragraph or section, stop, look away from the book, and try to recite the answer to your formed question. If you cannot recite the answer correctly or fully, reread the section and try again.*
- R<sub>3</sub> REVIEW** *When you have finished reading and reciting page after page, go back to the beginning of the chapter, glance at the headings and subheadings, and think briefly about the answers that you have already recited. Work your way in this manner to the end of the chapter. Now you should have ended with an integrated bird's-eye view of the entire chapter.*

How does intonation affect the meaning of words?

### Pay Attention to Intonation

Consider the dramatic effect that intonation can have on the meaning of even a simple phrase, such as “Excuse me.” Depending on the tone of voice, these two words can sound polite, tentative, argumentative, or downright resentful. In each case, the words are identical, but the delivery is different. If you pay attention only to the words when you’re listening to a lecture or reading a textbook, but ignore their delivery, you may be missing a critical component of their meaning.

What are the three components of intonation?

**Intonation in Lectures** Most college lecturers speak about 120 words per minute, which means that in a fifty-minute lecture you hear roughly 6,000 words. Listening for signals in a lecture is especially helpful because, unlike in reading, you don’t have the luxury of retracing your steps if you discover that you’re lost. In addition to words, intonation—variations in the lecturer’s voice—is the most significant signal in spoken language. Intonation has three components: volume, pauses, and cadence.

*Volume.* In general, the introduction of a crucial idea is preceded by a change in volume; the speaker raises or lowers his or her voice.

*Pauses.* Pausing before and after main ideas sets these ideas apart from the rest of the lecture. Pauses achieve a dramatic effect and, on a practical level, provide note takers with extra writing time.

*Cadence.* The rhythm of a lecturer’s speaking patterns can be particularly helpful. Often, like the bulleted lists you find in textbooks, the speaker lists a series of important ideas by using a steady speaking rhythm, sometimes even beginning each idea with the same words or phrase. Whenever you detect these oral signals, your pencil should be moving steadily, adding these important points to your notes.

What does reading with intonation involve?

**Intonation in Textbooks** Reading with intonation can make the words on your textbook page come alive. This doesn’t mean reading out loud, but it does mean reading with expression. Intonation helps you combine individual words into meaningful mental “bites.”

How does reading expressively help?

As your eyes move rapidly across the page, let your mind swing along each line with an intonation that can be heard by your “inner ear.” By reading expressively, you will be supplying the important rhythm, stress, emphasis, and pauses that were taken out when the words were turned into written form. If at first you find it difficult to “hear” what you’re reading, take a few minutes to actually read aloud in the privacy of your room. This should help to establish speech patterns in your mind and will ultimately result in what reading experts call “fluency,” which is considered the key to reading with speed and accuracy.

How do type styles mimic the volume, pauses, and cadence of speech?

Adding your own intonation in this way can help impart meaning and expression to words that may otherwise seem to lack pizzazz. In addition, books provide another form of intonation that mimics the volume, pauses, and cadence of speech.

Open any textbook and you'll quickly discover that the words aren't all printed in the same size or the same style. The format may differ from text to text, but in general each book takes advantage of a variety of type sizes and styles to convey information. By noting these typographical differences, you can pick up on signals for organization and emphasis.

**Boldface** (thick, dark type) often signals a textbook heading or subheading. It may also be used to draw your attention to a specific principle, definition, or keyword within the text.

*Italics* (type that slopes to the right) places emphasis on a word or a phrase.

Underlining often performs the same functions as boldface and italics, depending on the format of the particular textbook.

- Bullets (small markers, often circular or square) set off the items in lists.

Size, color, and placement of type often call attention to headings and subheadings. Take note of words printed in larger type, in color, or on lines by themselves.

How can you learn the meaning of a book's typographical intonation?

You can usually crack a book's particular typographical code by skimming through it before you start reading. In addition, look for an explanation of format—especially if it is unconventional—in the book's introductory material.

What role do organizational patterns play in lectures and textbooks?

### Recognize Organizational Patterns

Where are we going? And how are we going to get there? Those are both reasonable questions to ask when you're heading off on a journey. They're equally reasonable when you're reading an assignment or listening to a lecture. Luckily, both authors and speakers normally tell you where you're headed and how you're going to get there by using common organizational patterns to help arrange their information. Familiarize yourself with these patterns, and you should find things easier to follow. In addition, you can often navigate through information by noticing certain verbal signposts that commonly line the route. Simple words such as *next*, *thus*, or *finally* can provide valuable clues to the path that a chapter or lecture is taking.

What are movement patterns?

**Movement Patterns** Authors or speakers will frequently move you systematically through time, through space, or through a process. Once you catch on, these patterns can be among the easiest to follow.

With the **time or chronological pattern**, events are presented in the order in which they occurred. This pattern can be recognized quickly from the author's or lecturer's use of dates and such phrases as *in previous years*, *the next day*, and *two years later*, which denote the passage of time.



Items in a **place** or **spatial pattern** are presented or discussed on the basis of their locations or their arrangement relative to one another. For example, an author might use a spatial pattern to describe the geographical features of the United States from the West Coast to the East Coast. This is often called a *geographical pattern*. It is also called a *topical pattern* when it is used to describe the organization of a corporation along the lines of purchasing, manufacturing, sales, and so forth. The progression from item to item is usually orderly and easy to follow: from left to right, from high to low, from north to south, and so on.

Steps or events in a **process pattern** are presented in an orderly sequence that leads to a desired situation or product. A recipe and the instructions for assembling a bicycle are examples of process patterns. They often include words such as *first*, *after this*, *then*, *next*, and *finally*. You'll frequently encounter this pattern in computer courses and the sciences, where the steps in a process are described in the order in which they must occur to put something together, run an application, or blend ingredients.

How are importance patterns organized?

**Importance Patterns** A common way of organizing facts or information is by arranging them in terms of their relative importance.

In the **increasing importance pattern**, the most important or most dramatic item in a series is placed at the end. Each succeeding item is more important than the previous one, so a crescendo effect is created. Thus, this pattern is also called the *climactic-order pattern*.

In the **decreasing importance pattern**, the most important or most dramatic item in a series is placed at the very beginning. Such an organization grabs your interest immediately, so there is a good chance that you will stay with the writer or speaker all the way through. This pattern is commonly used in newspaper articles and is known by journalists as the *inverted pyramid pattern*.

What do causal patterns all share in common?

**Causal Patterns** One thing leads to another in a number of patterns, most of which are variations on the well-known idea of cause and effect.

In the **problem–effect–solution pattern**, the writer or speaker outlines a problem (cause), explains its effect, and then often (though not always) maps out a solution.

The **problem–cause–solution pattern** inverts this approach. A predicament (effect) is introduced, followed by its antecedents (cause), and eventually by remedies. In short, the effect comes first this time, followed by the cause.

Of course, not all cause–effect patterns involve problems. In technical subjects, the generic **cause–effect pattern** is quite common. In this case, variables are defined and their result (effect) is explained. Meanwhile, in the social sciences, you'll often run into the **action–impact pattern**, where some sort of initiative is outlined, such as increased funding for education, followed by a result, such as a higher average income for employees who received a college education.

Regardless of the variation, phrases such as *as a result* or *consequently* will usually alert you to a causal pattern.



When do writers and speakers use comparison patterns?

**Comparison Patterns** Writers and speakers compare things, events, or people when they emphasize similarities, and contrast them when they emphasize differences. Individual characteristics may be compared or contrasted one at a time, or several characteristics may be discussed as a group. In either case, the pattern can be recognized from the various similarities or differences and from the use of words such as *similarly*, *likewise*, *conversely*, and *on the other hand*.

What do logical patterns have in common?

**Logical Patterns** In these patterns, a conclusion is either drawn or stated at the outset and then supported.

With the **inductive pattern**, a number of incidents are cited, and then a conclusion is arrived at. The main point will be something like this: “So, on the basis of all these facts, we come to this overriding principle, which is so-and-so.”

With the **deductive pattern**, the reverse is true. Here, the principle or general statement is given first, and then the events or proofs are enumerated.

What should you do if you can't identify a precise organizational pattern?

**Signposts** Although identifying the precise organizational pattern can be extremely helpful, it isn't always easy or even possible. Some textbook chapters may defy easy organization, and some lectures can be rambling. In these cases, all is not lost. Keep in mind that your key goal while taking notes is to use cues and patterns to help arrange your thoughts and aid your search for meaning. Luckily, the signposts that often tip you off to a particular organizational pattern can still be helpful even if you have a tough time nailing down the overall arrangement. Table 10.1 lists some common signposts and the directions they're likely to point you in.

## Record Efficiently

PLANNING

### IT'S YOUR Q

Depending on whether you're taking lecture notes or textbook notes, you may find that you are short on space, short on time, or both. Of course, if you scribble down information too quickly, your notes may be illegible. And if you're too choosy about what you record, you could be left with costly gaps in your information. The way to circumvent these problems and record legible, useful notes at a reasonable speed is to adopt the modified printing style, use telegraphic sentences, and record selectively.

What is modified printing?

### Use Modified Printing

Poor handwriting need not keep you from taking legible notes. The easy-to-master *modified printing style* combines the rapidity of writing with the legibility of printing. Your words still have a cursive look, but the periodic breaks between letters that are normally characteristic of printing prevent your writing from deteriorating into an unreadable blur.

**Table 10.1**  
**Signposts**

Categories and Examples	When you come across these words, immediately think...
<p>Example Words</p> <p>specifically to illustrate for example for instance that is</p>	<p>“Here comes an example. Must be double checking to make sure I understood the point just made.”</p>
<p>Cause-and-Effect Words</p> <p>consequently therefore as a result if...then accordingly thus, so hence</p>	<p>“There’s an effect word. Better check back when I have a chance to make sure I can find the cause now that I know what the effect is.”</p>
<p>Enumeration Words</p> <p>the four steps... first, second, third next, finally</p>	<p>That’s a lot of steps. I’d better be sure I’m keeping track of all of them and getting them in the right order.”</p>
<p>Addition Words</p> <p>furthermore as well as along with in addition moreover also not only...but also</p>	<p>“Seems there’s always something else to be added. Must be worth remembering.”</p>
<p>Contrast Words</p> <p>on the other hand in contrast conversely although however, despite whereas</p>	<p>“Here comes the other side of the coin. Let’s see how it differs from what’s been said already.”</p>
<p>Comparison Words</p> <p>likewise similarly comparatively identical</p>	<p>“Lots of similar things, it seems.”</p>
<p>Swivel Words</p> <p>however nevertheless yet but still</p>	<p>“Looks like there’s going to be a little bit of doubt or ‘give back’ on the point just made. Better pay attention to this qualifying remark.”</p>

*(continued)*

**Table 10.1**  
**Signposts**  
**(Continued)**

Categories and Examples	When you come across these words, immediately think...
Concession Words to be sure indeed though, although granted of course	“Okay! Here comes an argument or two from the opposing point of view.”
Emphasis Words more important above all remember in other words finally	“Looks as though what’s coming up is going to be important.”
Repeat Words in other words it simply means that is briefly in essence as we’ve seen	“Here comes another explanation. Maybe I’ll understand this one a little better.”
Time Words before, after formerly, soon subsequently prior, during meanwhile	“Hmm! A time relationship is being established. Let’s see: What came first, what came last, and what came in between?”
Place Words above below beyond adjacent to	“Okay! I’ll put these ideas and facts not only in their proper places, but also in their proper relationship.”
Summary Words for these reasons on the whole in conclusion in a nutshell to sum up in short finally	“Good. Now I’ll get a simple wrap-up of the points that have been made. It’s almost sure to be full of key ideas.”
Test Words (lectures) This is important. Remember this. You’ll see this again. Here’s a pitfall.	“Sounds like a potential test item. Better be sure to pay close attention to it.”



Figure 10.13 shows how modified printing looks in a typical paragraph.

What does it mean to take notes telegraphically?

### Take Notes Telegraphically

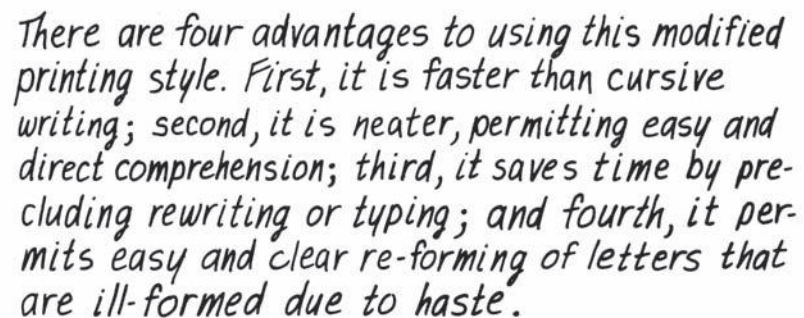
The best way to take notes is telegraphically. Long before e-mail and the fax machine were invented, important business and personal messages were sent by telegraph. The sender paid by the word; the fewer the words, the lower the cost. A three-word message such as “Arriving three pm” was much less expensive than an eleven-word message: “I will arrive home promptly at three o’clock in the afternoon.” Of course, taking notes doesn’t cost money, but it does cost time. To save time when you’re taking notes, leave out unnecessary words such as articles (*a*, *an*, *the*), abbreviate words you use often (see Figures 10.14 and 10.15), and streamline definitions by using a colon (: ) or a dash (—). Two examples of this telegraphic style are shown in Figure 10.16.

How do you take notes selectively?

### Take Notes Selectively

With textbook note taking it’s impractical to jot down every word. In lectures, it’s impossible. Notes are not supposed to be a transcript. Your emphasis should be on the

**Figure 10.13**  
Modified Printing  
Style



*There are four advantages to using this modified printing style. First, it is faster than cursive writing; second, it is neater, permitting easy and direct comprehension; third, it saves time by precluding rewriting or typing; and fourth, it permits easy and clear re-forming of letters that are ill-formed due to haste.*

**Figure 10.14**  
Examples of Technical Symbols

+	plus, positive, and	↕	vibration, motion
-	minus, negative	log	common logarithm
x	algebraic x, or multiplied by	ln	natural logarithm
÷	divided by	ε	base of natural logarithms
≠	does not equal	π	pi
≈	equals approximately, approximates	∠	angle
>	greater than, greatly, increased, increasing	⊥	perpendicular to
<	less than, reduced, decreasing		parallel to
~	sine curve, cosine curve	a°	a degrees (angle)
→	approaches as a limit, approaches	a'	a minutes (angle)
≥	greater than or equal to	a''	a seconds (angle)
≤	less than or equal to	∫	integral, integral of, integration
≡	identical to	f	frequency
μ	varies directly as	f <sub>n</sub>	natural frequency
∴	therefore	cps	cycles per second
( ) <sup>1/2</sup>	square root	m	mass
( ) <sup>n</sup>	nth root	Φ	phase
vs	versus, against	F	force
≡	ground	/	ratio, the ratio of
↔	varied, variation	⌋	base, support, mount, foundation
□	area	(	curve, curvilinear

**Figure 10.15**  
Typical Technical Abbreviations

Source: Reprinted by permission from G. H. Logan, "Speed Notes for Engineers," *Product Engineering*, September 30, 1963. Copyright © 1963 by Morgan-Grampian, Inc.

<i>anlys</i>	analysis	<i>pltg</i>	plotting
<i>ampltd</i>	amplitude	<i>reman</i>	remain
<i>asmg</i>	assuming	<i>rsnc</i>	resonance
<i>cald</i>	called	<i>rtnshp</i>	relationship
<i>cnst</i>	constant	<i>smp</i>	simple
<i>dmpg</i>	damping	<i>smpfd</i>	simplified
<i>dmnsls</i>	dimensionless	<i>stfns</i>	stiffness
<i>dfln</i>	deflection	<i>system</i>	system
<i>dfnd</i>	defined	<i>sgnft</i>	significant
<i>dstrbg</i>	disturbing	<i>ths</i>	this
<i>eftvns</i>	effectiveness	<i>trnsmblty</i>	transmissibility
<i>frdm</i>	freedom	<i>thrtly</i>	theoretically
<i>frcg</i>	forcing	<i>valu</i>	value
<i>gvs</i>	gives	<i>wth</i>	with
<i>hrmc</i>	harmonic	<i>whn</i>	when
<i>isltr</i>	isolator	<i>xprsd</i>	expressed
<i>isltn</i>	isolation		

**Figure 10.16**  
Examples of Telegraphic  
Sentences

Lecture's words

In marketing, we try to understand customers' needs and then respond to them with the right products and services. In the past, firms often produced goods first and tried to fit the customer's needs to the goods. Today's world-class marketers pride themselves on their customer orientation. We begin with the customer and build the product or service from there. A good example is McDonald's, the fast-food chain, which tailors its menus to local tastes and customs when it opens fast-food outlets in Moscow and other international locations.

Student's telegraphic sentences

*Marketing understands customers' needs first.*

- *In past, firms produced goods first, then fit them to customers.*
- *World-class = having customer orientation.*
- *Ex. McDonald's in Moscow*

Lecture's words

The US Patent Office has granted numerous patents for perpetual motion machines based upon applications with complete detailed drawings. Some years ago, though, the patent office began requiring working models of such a machine before a patent would be granted. Result: No patents granted for perpetual motion machines since that time.

Student's telegraphic sentences

*Perpetual motion machine (drawings) = many patents.  
Required working model = no patents since.*

ideas, not the words. And you don't want all the ideas, either, just the key ones (as Figure 10.17 shows), along with any details or examples you need to make those ideas easier to understand.

## Deal with Special Cases

REFRAMING

What should you do in special cases?

Not all note-taking scenarios are ideal. If you can't make it to a lecture or have difficulty taking notes when you do, you need an alternate plan. In the same way, there are factors that can throw a wrench into traditional textbook note taking.

What's the best strategy if you have to miss a lecture?

### Have a Backup Plan When You Can't Attend the Lecture

If you know you'll be missing a class, supply a friend with an audio recorder and ask him or her to record the lecture for you. Then you'll be able to take your own notes when you play back the recording.

How can you cope with a lecturer who speaks too rapidly?

### Use the Two-Page System for Fast-Moving Lectures

When you need to scramble to keep up with a fast-talking lecturer, try the two-page system. Lay your binder or notebook flat on the desk. On the left-hand page, record main ideas only. This is your primary page. On the right-hand page, record as many details as you have time for. Place the details opposite the main ideas they support.

**Figure 10.17**  
Selective Note Taking

<p><b>What's sympathetic magic?</b></p> <p><b>What's contagious magic?</b></p>	<p>Oct. 10 (Mon.) – Soc. 102 – Prof. Oxford</p> <p>A. Two kinds of magic</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Sympathetic — make model or form of a person from clay, etc. — then stick pins into object to hurt symbolized person.</li> <li>2. Contagious magic             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Need to possess an article belonging to another person.</li> <li>b. Ex. Fingernail clippings. By doing harm to these objects, feel that harm can be transmitted.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>
--	---

After the lecture, remain in your seat for a few minutes and fill in any gaps in your notes while the lecture is still relatively fresh in your mind.

What's the best approach to supplemental readings?

### Take a Different Approach for Supplemental Readings

In many courses, although assignments and lectures usually focus on a single textbook, instructors often assign additional readings to supplement the main text. You aren't usually expected to master such supplementary material as thoroughly as you master your primary text. Nevertheless, once the assignment has been made, you must cope with it. Here are some suggestions for doing so:

1. *Understand the assignment.* Try to figure out why the book was assigned. You might ask the instructor. If you find out, then you can skim the book, looking for pertinent material and disregarding the rest.
2. *Read the preface.* As you already know from earlier in this chapter, the preface provides inside information. It may tell you how this book is different from your textbook.
3. *Study the table of contents.* Notice especially the chapter titles to see whether they are like those in your textbook. If the chapters with similar titles contain the same information as the chapters in your textbook, read the chapters that do not duplicate your textbook's coverage. (Do this with topics covered in classroom lectures, too.)
4. *Find the pattern.* If you have not yet found an "angle," read the summarizing paragraph at the end of each chapter. Make brief notes on each chapter from the information thus gained. With these notes spread out before you, try to see the overall pattern. From the overall pattern, come up with the author's central thesis, principle, problem, or solution.
5. *Get to the point.* Don't put the book away with only a vague notion of what it is about. You must come up with something so definite that you can talk about it the next day or write about it two weeks later. Do not waste time on details, but be ready to answer general questions: What was the author's central approach? How was it different from that of your textbook? How was it the same? Look for the central issues around which everything else is organized.
6. *Have the courage to think big.* If you lack courage, you'll waste time on minor details that you won't remember. Select the big issues and concentrate on them.

## Tie Things Together

Why is it a waste to end your note taking abruptly?

As a lecture draws to a close or a chapter comes to an end, there's a temptation to just pack up and move on. That may be understandable, but it can prove to be a great waste of an especially valuable time. At this point, the ideas from the lecture or reading are like wet clay. You have only a brief time to shape them into something meaningful. If you wait too long, they won't be nearly as pliable.



## Wrap Up Your Readings

OVERVIEWING

How do you conduct a quick overview of a reading assignment?

After you've completed a reading assignment, step back and quickly overview what you've just read. Here are two ways to do so:

1. *Reread the abstract, introduction, or summary.* Any of these three common elements provides a brief overview of what you've just read and puts the ideas you've picked up in an appropriate framework or context.
2. *Reread the title and headings.* If the text doesn't include an obvious overview, create one yourself by rereading the title, headings, and subheadings. In combination, these elements can help you mentally organize the information you've just learned. Don't spend too much time doing this rereading. The primary purpose is to refresh your memory of the important points so that you'll be able to focus more carefully on them later. If you find you have questions, jot them down so you can ask them in class.

## Relive Your Lectures

OVERVIEWING

SUMMARIZING

QUESTIONING

What should you do at the end of a lecture?

The closing minutes can sometimes prove to be the most important part of an entire lecture. Speakers who do not pace themselves well may have to cram half the lecture into the last five or ten minutes. Record such fact-packed finales as rapidly as you can. After class, stay in your seat for a few extra minutes to write down as much as you can remember.

What should you do once you've left the lecture room?

As soon as you leave the lecture room, while walking to your next class, mentally recall the lecture from beginning to end. Visualize the classroom, the lecturer, and any chalkboard work. After mentally recalling the lecture, ask yourself some questions: What was the lecturer getting at? What was the central point? What did I learn? How does what I learned fit with what I already know? If you discover anything you don't quite understand, no matter how small, make a note of it and ask the instructor to explain it before the next class.

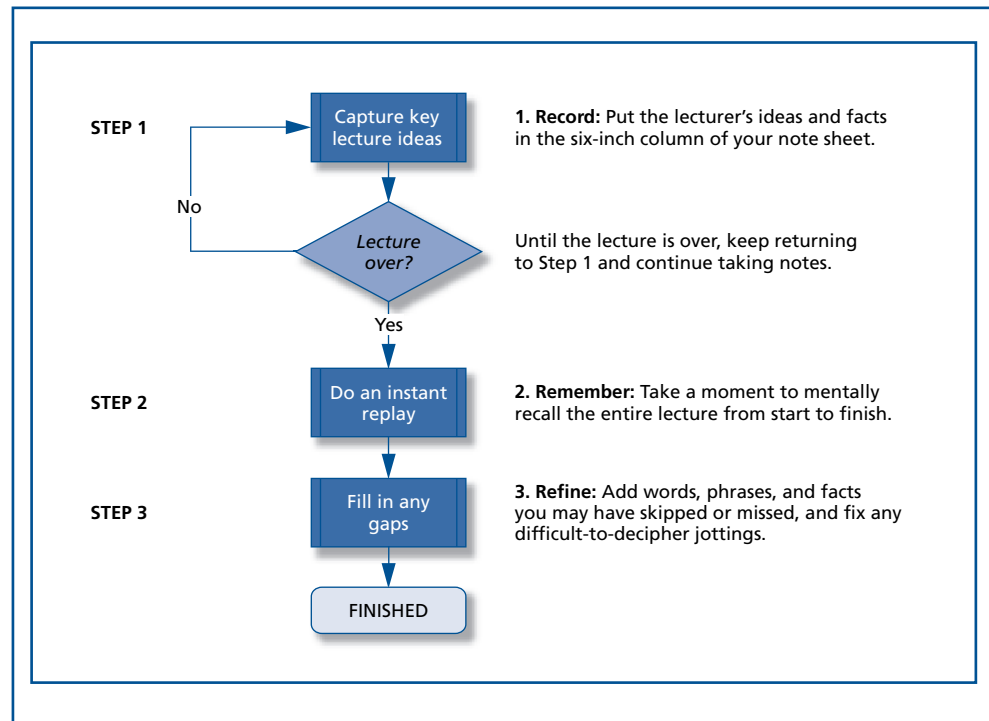
## Walk Through the Note-taking Steps

PLANNING

What are the basic steps in taking lecture and textbook notes?

Despite some obvious differences, the core concepts that underlie taking lecture notes, taking textbook notes, and marking up your textbook are remarkably similar. If you are careful to devise a system and stick with it, to gather information actively, efficiently, and flexibly, and to pull things together conscientiously at the end of a note-taking session, the handful of steps that follow should put you in a powerful position to master your notes and make them your own.

**Figure 10.18**  
Taking Lecture Notes



### How to Take Lectures Notes

Figure 10.18 is a flow chart of this process.

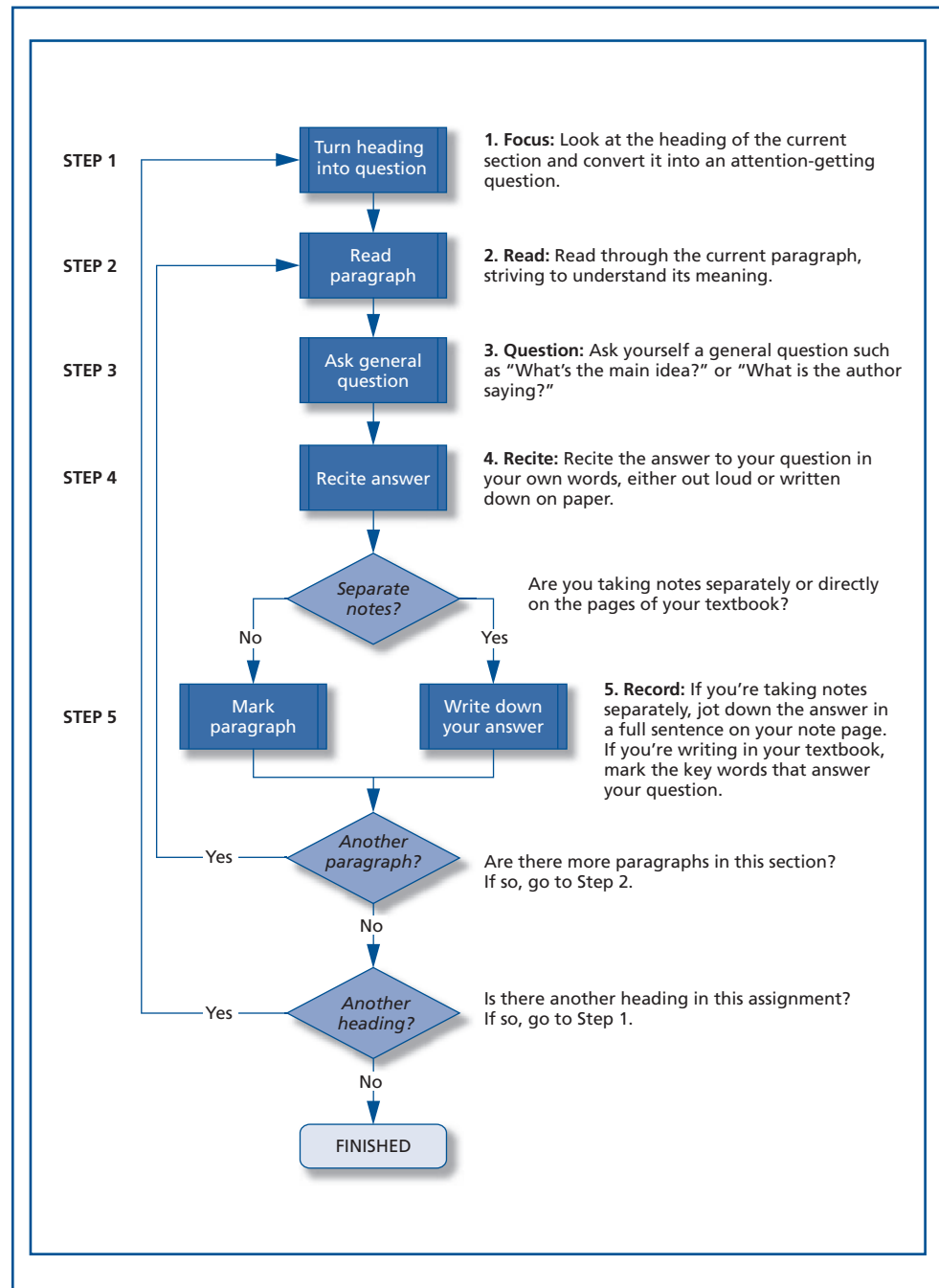
- 1. Record.** Put the lecturer's ideas and facts (along with any relevant diagrams) in the six-inch column of your Cornell System note sheet.
- 2. Remember.** As soon as class is over, take a moment to mentally recall the entire lecture from start to finish.
- 3. Refine.** Looking over your note sheets, add words, phrases, and facts you may have skipped or missed, and fix any difficult-to-decipher jottings.

### How to Take Textbook Notes

Figure 10.19 shows how this process works for textbook marking and separate notes.

- 1. Focus.** As you read through each section, turn the headings and subheadings into attention-getting questions that help stimulate your thinking and your curiosity as you read on.
- 2. Read.** Move through the assignment a paragraph at a time, striving to understand the meaning of the current paragraph.

**Figure 10.19**  
Taking Textbook  
Notes



3. *Question.* Before you move on to the next paragraph, take a moment to ask yourself, “What’s the main idea?” or “What is the author saying?”
4. *Recite.* Recite the answer to the question you just asked, in your own words and preferably out loud.
5. *Record.* If you’re marking your textbook, find the words or phrases in the paragraph that support your recited answer and mark them. If you’re taking separate notes, jot down the answer you’ve just recited in the six-inch column of your Cornell System note sheet. Then repeat the entire process until you have completed the assignment.

## FINAL WORDS

---

What is the final step that makes your note taking effective?

Despite indisputable benefits, taking effective notes can be difficult for many students. Of course, most students take some sort of notes when they attend lectures; and a smaller number do so when they’re reading. But in each case, the students who take notes often come close but don’t quite reach the point where their notes are truly effective. Taking effective notes requires work; it requires time; and it forces you to be actively engaged in what you’re reading or listening to. This can be a little daunting, especially when you may already have a false sense of accomplishment from half-baked notes or markings. Take that final step. Cross that threshold and make your note taking truly effective. You’ll be working harder initially, it’s true. All new skills require a little extra effort at the outset. But the benefits you derive will materialize almost immediately when you begin to master the notes that you have taken and make your new knowledge permanent instead of just fleeting.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

1. Effective note taking requires building a background and creating a \_\_\_\_\_.  

<b>context</b>	<b>summary</b>	<b>memory</b>
----------------	----------------	---------------
2. Words such as *next*, *thus*, and *finally* often function as \_\_\_\_\_.  

<b>signposts</b>	<b>diversions</b>	<b>intonation</b>
------------------	-------------------	-------------------
3. The margin area at the outside of each page should be reserved for \_\_\_\_\_.  

<b>reminders</b>	<b>questions</b>	<b>definitions</b>
------------------	------------------	--------------------

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>_____ 1. Ties Up</p> <p>_____ 2. Preface</p> <p>_____ 3. Summary area</p> <p>_____ 4. Telegraphic</p> <p>_____ 5. Two-page</p> <p>_____ 6. Outline</p> <p>_____ 7. Signposts</p> <p>_____ 8. Syllabus</p> | <p>a. Helps provide context for an upcoming lecture</p> <p>b. Mnemonic for surveying a textbook chapter</p> <p>c. Provide clues for the organization of a chapter or lecture</p> <p>d. Used for distilling a page's worth of notes down to a few sentences</p> <p>e. The only note-taking format that is explicitly discouraged</p> <p>f. Often reveals a textbook's overall organizational plan</p> <p>g. System for taking notes in especially fast-paced lectures</p> <p>h. Note-taking style that employs only the most essential words</p> |
|--|---|

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

1. T F The first few pages of a textbook should usually be skipped.
2. T F Of all the electronic texts you annotate, word processor documents are probably the most flexible.
3. T F It's unlikely that a chapter or lecture will fit into a single note-taking format.

4. T F A sketch can rarely convey locations or relationships as clearly as a few sentences.
5. T F You're seldom expected to read supplemental materials as thoroughly as your textbook.

**MULTIPLE CHOICE**

*Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.*

1. To take notes effectively, you need
  - a. a loose-leaf notebook.
  - b. a system.
  - c. sheets of unlined paper.
  - d. several fundamental questions.
2. As you're taking notes, the cue column should
  - a. remind you.
  - b. get wider.
  - c. remain empty.
  - d. be filled.
3. One advantage of taking notes directly in your textbook is that
  - a. your book is more valuable when you sell it at the end of the semester.
  - b. your notes and your textbook can travel together as a unit.
  - c. you can use a highlighter to single out important ideas and concepts.
  - d. as the term progresses, your knowledge is likely to grow.
4. Surveying a textbook chapter can provide
  - a. advance organizers.
  - b. magnetic centers.
  - c. familiar landmarks.
  - d. all of the above.
5. Modified printing is
  - a. speedy, like writing.
  - b. neat, like printing.
  - c. easy to learn.
  - d. all of the above.

**REFLECTION**

Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.

1. Do you already prepare for lectures in the way that the chapter suggests? If so, explain which part of your preparation has proven to be the most valuable. If not, which part do you think will turn out to be the most helpful? Explain.
2. Why do you take notes? Analyze your own reasons for note taking and then explain how this chapter has affected those reasons.
3. Do you plan to take notes on readings by marking them directly in your textbook or by writing them on separate sheets of paper? Explain the thoughts behind your choice.

**IT'S YOUR Q**

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

**VOCABULARY IN ACTION**

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

**SAY WHAT?**

From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.

I did *envisage* being this successful as a player, but not all the *hysteria* around it off the golf course.

—Tiger Woods (1975— ), American golfer

- |                    |        |         |             |
|--------------------|--------|---------|-------------|
| 1. <i>envisage</i> | create | imagine | believe     |
| 2. <i>hysteria</i> | frenzy | panic   | controversy |

Our political differences, no matter how sharply they are debated, are really quite narrow in comparison to the remarkably *durable* national *consensus* on our founding *convictions*.

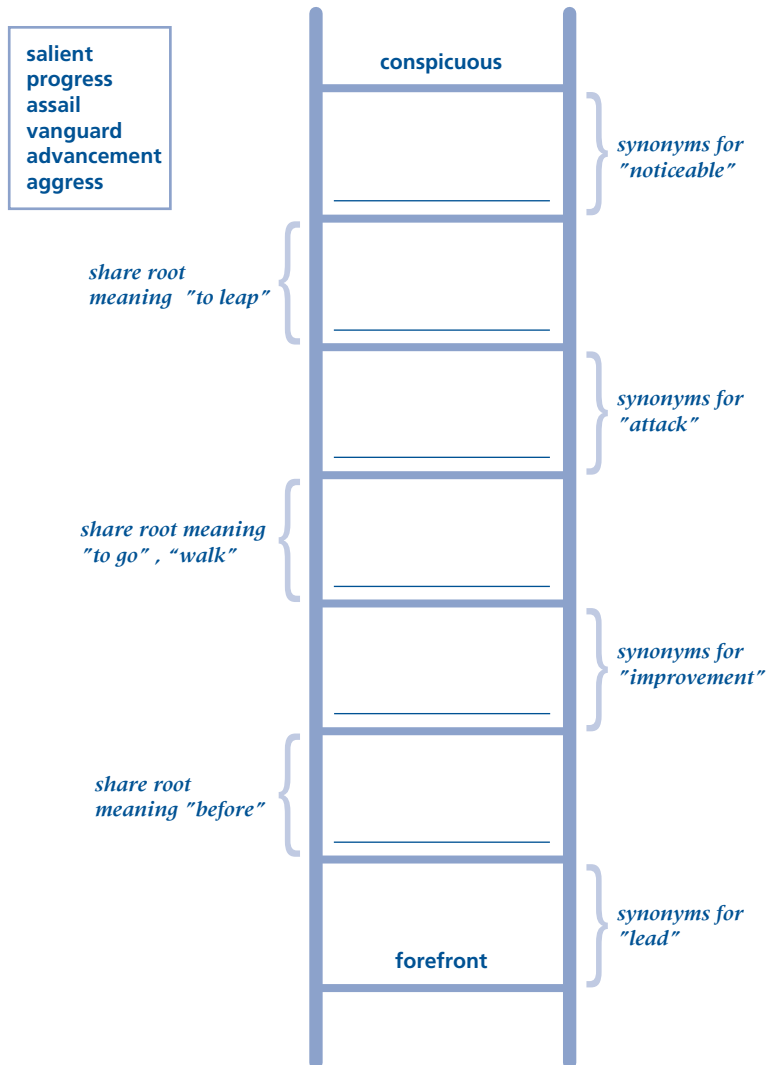
—John McCain (1936— ), U.S. Senator

- |                       |           |             |                  |
|-----------------------|-----------|-------------|------------------|
| 3. <i>durable</i>     | resilient | flexible    | rubbery          |
| 4. <i>consensus</i>   | uproar    | inventory   | shared agreement |
| 5. <i>convictions</i> | crimes    | certainties | strong beliefs   |



### VOCAB-U-LADDER

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

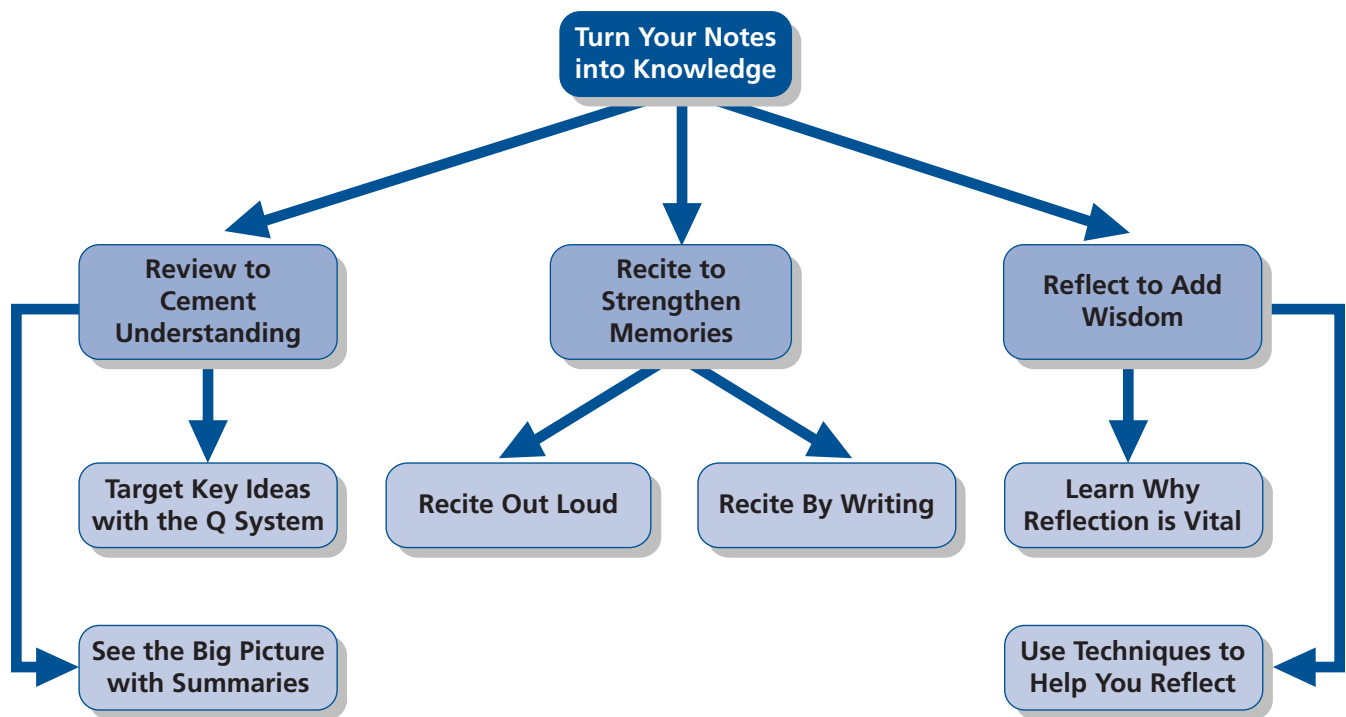
### Survey A view from above

**sur-vey** sŭrvā' *n.* 1. A detailed inspection or investigation. 2. A general or comprehensive view.\*

Once you know the history of the word *survey*, you'll find that describing it as a "35,000-foot view" is pretty appropriate. In fact, that's almost literally what it means. *Survey* comes from the Old French word *surveeir*, which hails from a combination of two extremely useful Latin roots, *super* and *vidēre*. *Vidēre* is Latin for "to look" or "to see" and is the source of a huge number of "*vision*" words you should recognize, including *vision* itself, as well as *video*, *view*, *vista*, *voyeur*, many words ending in *-vise*, such as *advise* and *revise*, and, of course, *survey*, along with its relatives, *convey* and *purvey*. All these variations exist because the spellings change slightly as the words journey from one language to another. The same fascinating sort of garbling happened to *super*, which although it sometimes gets shortened to *sur* (as in *surmount*, *surpass*, and, of course, *survey*), has also managed to make it from Latin to English intact (*superscript*, *superlative*, *supervise*), as well as in other forms that come closer to its original primitive Indo-European source, *uper*, which meant "over or above." If that word *uper* looks familiar, it should. Thanks once again to spelling changes through the centuries, we get *upper*, *over*, and *hyper* from it. Although the additional *s* makes *super* look a little different, it's actually the little brother of this trio. So, you see, with *vidēre* meaning "see" and *super* "above" you now have the big-picture story of how *survey* came to mean "a view from above" and ultimately, "a general or comprehensive view."\*\*

\* Adapted from "survey." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/survey> (accessed June 17, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from "survey." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/survey> (accessed June 17, 2009); "survey." Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=survey> (accessed June 17, 2009); "survey, n." *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; "survey, n." *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santa-cruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50243508> (accessed June 17, 2009).



# Turn Your Notes into Knowledge

*Order and simplification are the first steps toward the mastery of a subject—the actual enemy is the unknown.*

**Thomas Mann** (1875–1955),  
German-American author

You've reached a crossroads. Now that you've conscientiously taken notes, you can let all that hard work go out the window and surrender to the unforgiving power of forgetting. Or you can put in extra effort to retain all that valuable information and transform what you've read and heard into a permanent part of your knowledge. Congratulations. You've made the right choice. This chapter tells you how to:

- **Review to Cement Understanding**
- **Recite to Strengthen Memories**
- **Reflect to Add Wisdom**

How do you master your notes?

If you've taken notes thoroughly and conscientiously, you have every right to feel good about your efforts. But taking notes is not an end in itself. In fact, it is only the beginning. Far too many students jot down their notes and then forget about them until exam time rolls around. They leave them neglected in a desk drawer or repeatedly pass over their detailed textbook markings as they move on to subsequent chapters. This is a tragic mistake and a great waste of time and effort. The only way to take advantage of all the information you've jotted down or marked up and highlighted—to master information that you've worked so hard to understand—is to review it carefully, recite it regularly, and reflect on it deeply until it becomes a permanent part of your knowledge.

## Review to Cement Understanding

What's wrong with reviewing notes just by looking them over?

Most students review their notes by reading them over and perhaps by asking themselves a question or two to see what they remember. This spot-check approach may be common, but it's also haphazard. A systematic approach not only makes your review worthwhile, but also enables you to gain a clear sense of how you're doing.

What do you gain by conducting an immediate review?

The purpose of the immediate review is to cement your understanding of what you've just read or heard. As you learned in Chapter 9, memory can be fleeting. Chances are that when you were taking notes, especially in a lecture, you were taking in information an idea at a time. You probably didn't have the opportunity to make sure you truly understood everything you'd marked or written down, and you almost certainly didn't have the chance to step back and see how things all fit together. That's where the immediate review comes in. By targeting key ideas with the Q System, you are able to verify that you understand your notes. And by pulling things together in summaries, you gain a valuable big-picture perspective.

## Target Key Ideas with the Q System

QUESTIONING

SUMMARIZING

PLANNING

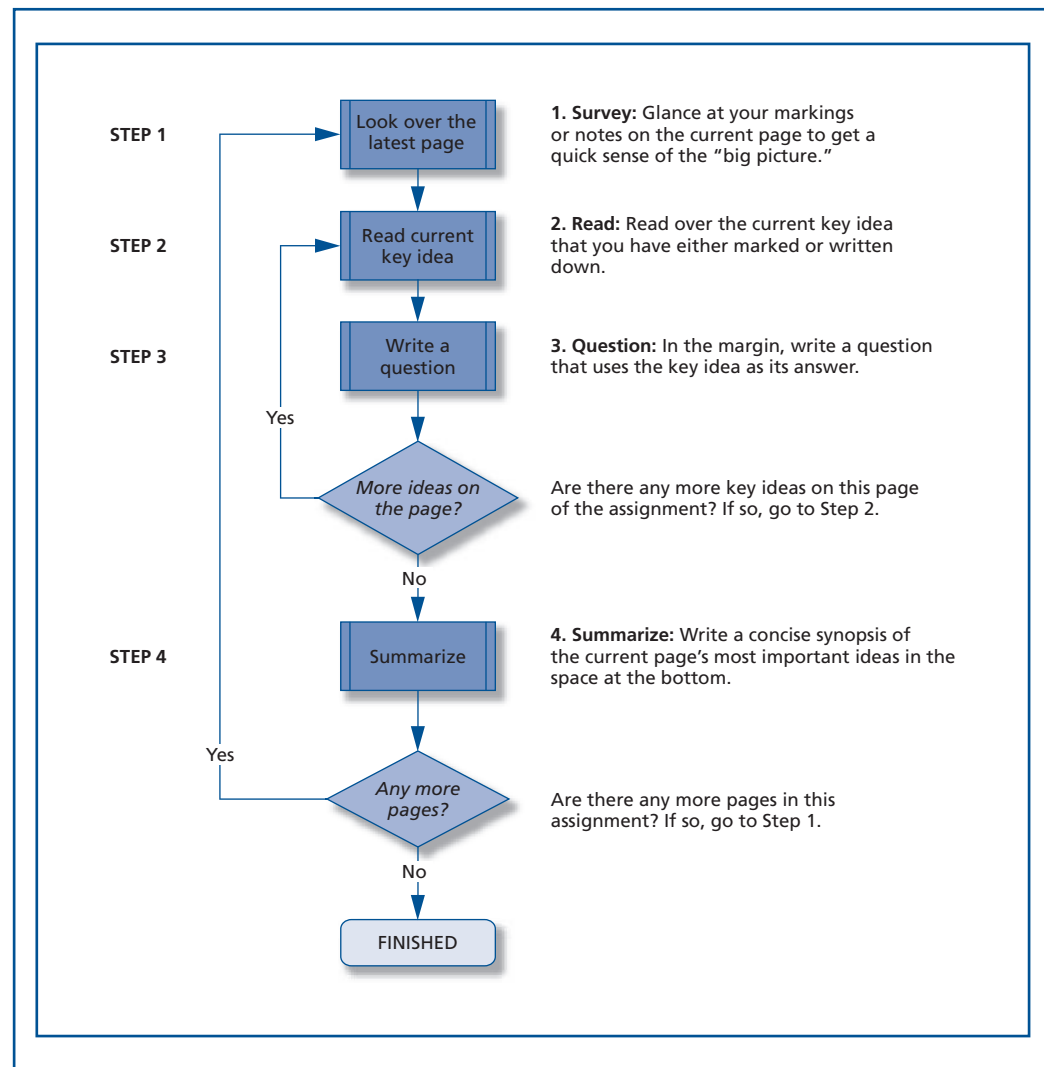
What is the Q System?

The left-hand margins of your Cornell System paper or the outside margins of your text should have remained blank up to this point. Here's your chance to put them to good use. At your earliest opportunity, move systematically through the notes you've just taken or the assignment you've just marked up, and come up with a question for each important idea. This is known as the Q System. Each question you write will provide a cue for the answer it addresses. Figure 11.1 provides a diagram of the Q System process.

How do you arrive at Q System questions for each important idea?

When using the Q System, try to avoid formulating a question that can be answered with a simple yes or no. Aim instead for questions that prompt you to recall key information. Arriving at a suitable question is a little like playing the popular TV game show in which contestants are given the answers and asked to supply the questions. And it's

**Figure 11.1**  
**Using the Q System to Review Your Notes**  
 Whether you're reviewing textbook notes, lecture notes, or markings you've made directly in your textbook, the Q System is your best bet.



almost identical to the process you went through as you were reading an assignment and converting the headings into questions. The only real difference is that this time you're using ideas from your notes or the lines you underlined in your textbook as the starting point. The goal is to pose a question whose answer most effectively sums up the entire key idea or paragraph. Jot (or type) the question down in the margin alongside the information it refers to. Figure 11.2 shows some marginal questions for a textbook passage.

**Figure 11.2**  
Using the Q System  
with a Textbook  
Assignment

### WRITING GOOD PAPERS IN COLLEGE

The techniques of writing a good paper are easy to follow. You should remember two important aspects that lead to success. First, start work early on the paper. Second, if you have a choice, choose a subject that you are interested in or that you can develop an interest in.

Much of your work in college involves absorbing knowledge; when it comes to writing papers, you have the opportunity to put down on paper what you've <sup>1</sup>learned about a subject, and perhaps <sup>2</sup>your opinions and <sup>3</sup>conclusions on the subject.

Writing is an important form of communication. To communicate well you must have something you really want to say. So if you have a choice of topics, choose one that intrigues you. If it isn't one that everyone else is writing on, all the better.

If you're not sure about your choice of topic, do a little preliminary research to see what's involved in several topics before you make a final decision. Remember the caution about allowing yourself enough time? Here's where it comes into play. Take enough time to choose a topic carefully.

What form should your marginal questions take?

Repeat the process of formulating questions and putting them in the margin as you systematically move through all the paragraphs in your text or notes from your note paper. It's OK to abbreviate your question, especially if you are short on space. (Figure 11.3 shows an excerpt from some classroom notes with abbreviated questions in the margins.) But be certain there's nothing ambiguous about what you've written down. After all, you'll want to be able to read these questions throughout the semester. A badly abbreviated question may make sense to you now, but it could leave you scratching your head later on. The same applies to your handwriting. Make sure you can read it. You may want to use the modified printing style (explained in Chapter 10) to help you write quickly and legibly.

What should you do if there's no space for your questions?

Properly ruled Cornell System note paper should provide plenty of room for your Q System questions. But if you've marked up your textbook and it has skinny margins, you have a handful of options to adjust for the limited space.

How does the sticky note method work?

#### Try the Sticky Note Method

Jot down the same sort of question that you would have written in the margin, but put it on a "sticky note" instead (using one sticky note per question). When you've fin-

**Figure 11.3**  
Using the Q System  
with Classroom Notes

<p><i>Who purchased Alaska?</i> <i>When? Cost?</i> <i>Rough dimensions of mainland?</i> <i>How long is the Yukon River?</i> <i>Name kinds of minerals?</i></p> <p><i>How are the forests?</i></p> <p><i>Two most numerous fish?</i></p> <p><i>Name several kinds of fur?</i></p> <p><i>What's the highest mt. in No. America?</i> <i>When admitted as state?</i></p> <p><i>Who designed the state flag?</i></p>	<p>Sept. 10 (Mon.) – History 101 – Prof. A. Newhall</p> <p>A. Some facts about Alaska William H. Seward, Sec. of State – fr. Russia in 1867 – \$7,200,000. Size – mainland: length = 1,500 mi. – width = 1,200 mi. Yukon River – 1,979 mi. long Minerals – oil, gold, silver, coal, chrome, iron, etc. Forests – commercial timber = 85 billion board feet Fish – world's richest in salmon and halibut Furs – seal, mink, otter, beaver, fox, etc. Mt. McKinley – 20,320 ft. – highest in No. America Statehood – Jan. 3, 1959 – 49th State State flag – designed by 13-year-old Benjamin Benson</p>
---	---

ished writing the question, affix it near the paragraph it refers to. Because your sticky notes may come unstuck, it's often a good idea to put a circled number in the margin of your textbook next to the paragraph your question is intended for and to number your sticky note to match, adding the page number as well in case you renumber with each new page.

### Use the Bookmark Method

One method that many students swear by is to jot their questions on slips of scrap paper that resemble extra-wide bookmarks (about two-and-a-half inches wide, the same dimension as the margin in Cornell System paper). Use one bookmark for each pair of facing pages, keeping a running list of the questions for the left-hand page on one side and putting the questions for the right-hand page on the other. Just as you did with the sticky note system, number each question and put a corresponding number in the

What does the  
bookmark method  
involve?



margin alongside the paragraph it refers to. When you've written all of the questions for the two pages, you can lodge the slip in the book at just the right spot, the same way you would an ordinary bookmark.

What is the advantage of using separate notes?

### Take Separate Notes

Of course, if your textbook doesn't offer an accommodating set of margins, it might be simpler to take separate notes. You'll miss some of the advantages of taking notes directly in your book (see Chapter 10), but you'll be able to carry the notes for your assignment (even stash them in a pocket or purse) without having to lug around the book.

What do you accomplish by writing marginal questions?

Regardless of the method you choose when using the Q System, you will be accomplishing something vital. The straightforward process of formulating questions should provide you with a thorough and immediate review of your material. Although it's possible to do so, it's unnecessarily difficult (not to mention pointless) to "fake" questions for each idea. Ask questions that truly get to the heart of the information. To be able to turn an idea into a meaningful question, you need to have a genuine grasp of that idea.

## See the Big Picture with Summaries

SUMMARIZING

PLANNING

### IT'S YOUR Q

In the same way that questions from the Q System provide you with a better grasp of the important ideas from your notes, summaries help supply the context. It's surprisingly easy to get caught up in the details of your notes and lose the grand scheme of things in the process. Writing a summary is a sure-fire way to force yourself to think about and come to grips with the broader ideas, trends, lessons, and themes that run through notes like a thread. Summaries supply a straightforward answer to the question, "What is this page about?" This cut-to-the-chase aspect of summaries should be especially handy when you're studying for an exam or doing research for a paper and want to go straight to the key information in your notes without having to read through every note on every page to find it.

What is the standard system for writing summaries?

### The Standard Summary

The standard system for summaries is to write one at the bottom of every page. Figure 11.4 shows an example. If you're taking notes directly in your textbook, you may find that there's more room to write at the top of each page than at the bottom. Either place is fine. Regardless of whether you're taking notes in your textbook or on separate sheets, don't pen an epic; you probably don't have the time, and you definitely don't have the room. Just come up with a concentrated sentence or two that efficiently pulls together the key information on the page. If space permits, it's a good idea to use complete sentences for your summaries. This reinforces your goal of articulately expressing what's important on the page. It can be a little too easy to disguise your confusion in an abbreviated sentence. Now is the time to make sure you grasp what you've written down

**Figure 11.4**  
Summarizing a Page  
of Lecture Notes  
in Two Sentences

<p>How do psychologists account for remembering?</p> <p>What's a "memory trace"?</p> <p>What are the three memory systems?</p> <p>How long does sensory memory retain information?</p> <p>How is information transferred to STM?</p> <p>What are the retention times of STM?</p> <p>What's the capacity of the STM?</p> <p>How to hold information in STM?</p> <p>What are the retention times of LTM?</p> <p>What are the six ways to transfer information from STM to LTM?</p>	<p>Psych. 105 – Prof. Martin – Sept. 14 (Mon.)</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>MEMORY</u></p> <p>Memory tricky – Can recall instantly many trivial things of childhood, yet forget things recently worked hard to learn &amp; retain.</p> <p>Memory Trace</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Fact that we retain information means that some change was made in the brain.</li> <li>— Change called "memory trace."</li> <li>— "Trace" probably a molecular arrangement similar to molecular changes in a magnetic recording tape.</li> </ul> <p>Three memory systems: sensory, short term, long term.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— <u>Sensory</u> (lasts one second) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ex. Words or numbers sent to brain by sight (visual image) start to disintegrate within a few tenths of a second &amp; gone in one full second, unless quickly transferred to S-T memory by verbal repetition.</li> </ul> </li> <li>— Short-term memory [STM] (lasts 30 seconds) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Experiments show: a syllable of 3 letters remembered 50% of the time after 3 seconds. Totally forgotten end of 30 seconds.</li> <li>• S-T memory — limited capacity — holds average of 7 items.</li> <li>• More than 7 items — jettisons some to make room.</li> <li>• To hold items in STM, must rehearse — must hear <u>sound</u> of words internally or externally.</li> </ul> </li> <li>— Long-term memory [LTM] (lasts a lifetime or short time). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transfer fact or idea by <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) <u>Associating</u> w/information already in LTM.</li> <li>(2) <u>Organizing</u> information into meaningful units.</li> <li>(3) <u>Understanding</u> by comparing &amp; making relationships.</li> <li>(4) <u>Frameworking</u> — fit pieces in like in a jigsaw puzzle.</li> <li>(5) <u>Reorganizing</u> — combining new &amp; old into a new unit.</li> <li>(6) <u>Rehearsing</u> — aloud to keep memory trace strong.</li> </ol> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<p>Three kinds of memory systems are sensory, which retains information for about 1 second; short-term, which retains for a maximum of 30 seconds; and long-term, which varies from a lifetime of retention to a relatively short time.</p> <p>The six ways (activities) to transfer information to the long-term memory are associating, organizing, understanding, frameworking, reorganizing, and rehearsing.</p>

or read. If you don't understand things at this stage, there's a good chance that they will grow murkier with time. Make the effort right now to see clearly. If you still don't understand, you have time to get help from a tutor or instructor. If you wait, it may be too late.

What is the approach for the wrap-up summary?

### The Wrap-Up Summary

Rather than summarizing each page, you may choose to write a longer summary at the very end of your lecture notes or textbook assignment. Depending on the length or importance of the assignment, this method may be enough, but in general it's not recommended, at least not in isolation. Even if you write several paragraphs for your wrap-up summary, you probably can't expect to approach the level of insight and detail that you gain from summarizing each page. However, if the lecture is especially brief or the reading assignment is a supplemental one that doesn't require a great deal of attention (see Chapter 10), a wrap-up summary may suffice.

Why is the split-level approach best for summarizing your notes?

### The Split-Level Summary

The best way to review and summarize your notes is to combine the standard summaries with the wrap-up summary. Start with the standard summary, summarizing each page with a sentence or two. Then, rather than rereading all of your notes to arrive at a wrap-up summary, simply reread the summaries you've written for each page and come up with a summary of your summaries. This two-level approach makes your notes extremely useful and flexible. If you just need a reminder of what a single assignment or lecture was about, you can read the wrap-up summary. If you need more detail, you can go to the next level and read the summary on a particular page.

What else do questions and summaries provide besides an immediate review?

Formulating questions for each important idea in your notes and then coming up with summaries not only provides an extremely directed and effective means of review, but it also sets the stage for recitation, the most valuable technique you can use to help commit your notes to memory.

## Recite to Strengthen Memories

What is the role of reciting?

Now that you've added Q System questions (and brief summaries) to each page and conducted a thorough review in the process, how are you going to hold on to all that valuable information? After all, forgetting never lets up. It works continuously to expel from memory what you worked so hard to put there. Luckily, you can bring forgetting almost to a standstill by using the power of recitation.

How does reciting work?

Reciting forces you to think, and this thinking leaves a neural trace in your memory. Reciting promotes concentration, forms a sound basis for understanding the next paragraph or the next chapter, provides time for consolidation, ensures that facts and ideas are remembered accurately, and supplies immediate feedback on how you're

What is the process for reciting?

doing. Moreover, experiments have shown that the greater the proportion of reciting time to reading time, the greater the learning. Students who spent 20 percent of their time reading and 80 percent reciting did much better than students who spent less time reciting and more time reading.

The process of reciting is relatively straightforward. Go back to the first page and cover it with a blank sheet of paper, exposing only your Q System questions. (If you used the sticky note method, you should still be able to obscure the text while reading your questions. If you chose the bookmark method, you can use your marker to cover the text. If your notes and Q System questions are in a computer file, open the file and then open another empty file and use it as an electronic version of a blank sheet of paper to cover your text.) Read the first question, and answer it in your own words. Slide the blank sheet down to check your answer. If your answer is wrong or incomplete, try again. Do this until you get the answer right. Go through the entire assignment this way. (See Figure 11.5 for a diagram of the entire process.) Your aim is to establish an accurate, crystal-clear impression in your memory, because that's what you want to return to during an exam. If the impression in your memory is fuzzy at this time, it will be even fuzzier three or four weeks later (see Chapter 9).

### Recite Out Loud

SUMMARIZING

#### IT'S YOUR Q

The traditional way to recite is out loud and in your own words. When you recite aloud, speak clearly so there's no mistake about what you are saying. Express the ideas in complete sentences, using the proper signal words. For example, when you are reciting a list of ideas or facts, enumerate them by saying *first*, *second*, and so on. Insert words such as *furthermore*, *however*, and *finally*. When you do so in oral practice, you will do so more naturally in writing during an exam. One of the best ways to recite out loud is in a group study or discussion (see Chapter 13), where there are people who can alert you right away should you answer your question incorrectly.

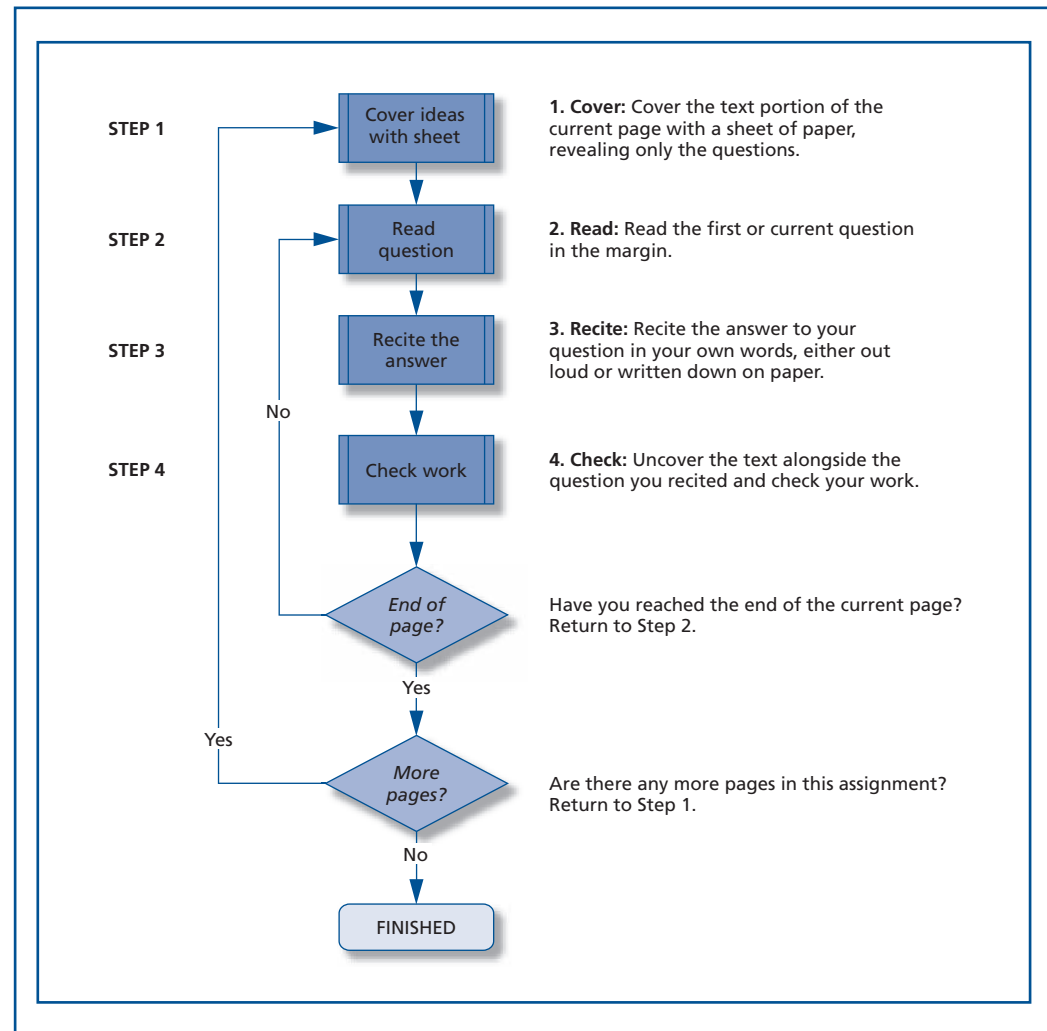
### Recite by Writing

SUMMARIZING

How do you recite by writing?

If you are reluctant or unable to recite aloud, you can recite by writing out (or typing) your answers instead. This method is slower than traditional reciting, but it provides added benefits. Even more than reciting aloud, reciting by writing supplies solid proof that you can answer your questions. After all, you have a written record. And it provides excellent practice for essay and short-answer tests. To recite by writing, move through your notes a question at a time just as you would normally. But instead of speaking your answers, write them down on a separate sheet of paper. Then uncover the page and compare each answer you've just written with the one in your notes.

**Figure 11.5**  
The Process of  
Reciting Your Notes



## Reflect to Add Wisdom

### What is reflection?

After you learn facts and ideas through reviewing and reciting, take some time to mull them over. Use your innate sense of curiosity to speculate or play with the knowledge you've acquired. This is called *reflection*. To engage in reflection is to bring creativity to your learning. Ask yourself such questions as these: What is the significance of these

facts and ideas? What principle or principles are they based on? What else could they be applied to? How do they fit in with what I already know? From these facts and ideas, what else can I learn? When you reflect, you weave new facts and ideas into your existing knowledge and create a fabric of genuine wisdom. History's greatest thinkers have relied on reflection for their breakthroughs. They make a strong case for reflection as a vital skill. With a technique or two to get you started, you can begin using reflection on your own to master your notes and gain lasting learning and genuine insight.

## Learn Why Reflection Is Vital

REFRAMING

What did Bethe say about reflection?

Professor Hans Bethe, Cornell University's famous nuclear physicist and Nobel Prize winner, talked about reflection as used by a scientist:

To become a good scientist one must live with the problem he's working on. The problem must follow the scientist wherever he goes. You can't be a good scientist working only eight hours a day. Science must be the consuming interest of your life. You must want to know. Nothing matters more than finding the answer to the question or the problem you are engaged in.<sup>1</sup>

What is the connection between reflection and creativity?

Professor Bethe went on to say that students who go only as far as their textbooks and lectures take them can become proficient, but never creative. Creativity comes only with reflection. That is, seeing new material in the light of what you already know is the only road to original ideas, for having an idea is nothing more than discovering a relationship not seen before. And it is impossible to have ideas without reflecting.

What was Whitehead's position on reflection?

Alfred North Whitehead, famous British philosopher and mathematician, strongly advocated reflection. He, too, spoke about the knowledge that grows out of throwing ideas "into fresh combinations." He viewed reflection as taking what one already knows and projecting one's thought beyond familiar experience—considering new knowledge and ideas in the light of the old, and the old in the light of the new.

What was Schopenhauer's point about reflection?

The famous German philosopher Arthur Schopenhauer had exceptionally strong views on the importance of reflection.

A library may be very large, but if it is in disorder, it is not so useful as one that is small but well arranged. In the same way, a man may have a great mass of knowledge, but if he has not worked it up by thinking it over for himself, it has much less value than a far smaller amount which he has thoroughly pondered. For it is only when a man looks at his knowledge from all sides, and combines the things he knows by comparing truth with truth, that he obtains a complete hold over it and gets it into his power.

<sup>1</sup>Interview with Professor Hans Bethe, May 19, 1960.

Reflections should not be left vague. Pursue the problem until ideas take definite shape. If you need more information, an encyclopedia or a standard book on the subject will often give you what you need to bring fuzzy ideas into focus.<sup>2</sup>

**What is the connection between reflection and the subconscious?**

The subconscious plays an important role in creative thinking and discovery. We have all had an exciting idea or even the solution to a problem suddenly flash upon us when we weren't consciously thinking about it. The great Hungarian physicist Leo Szilard came up with the solution to the nuclear chain reaction while crossing a London street. Archimedes arrived at the principle of displacement while sitting in his bathtub. The mind continues to work on concepts even when you aren't aware of it. The process that initiates much of this deep thinking is reflection.

### Use Techniques to Help You Reflect

REFRAMING

PLANNING

**What is a big advantage of reflection?**

A great advantage of reflection is its flexibility. It can be molded to fit your imagination. You can take it with you wherever you go and make use of it in spare moments. You can reflect while walking from one building to another, standing in line, waiting for a friend, or riding a bus.

**What is a drawback of reflection?**

But reflection's flexibility can also be a disadvantage if you're unsure of how to get started. This uncertainty prompts some students to skip over the reflection step completely. Although there are no specific reflection steps like those you might find for reviewing or reciting, there are a number of strategies you can use to ease into a reflective mindset.

**How does the Silver Dollar System work?**

#### Use the Silver Dollar System

You can reflect on the information from your notes and make it more manageable by using the Silver Dollar System:

1. Read through your notes and make an *S* in the margin next to any idea that seems important. Depending on the number of pages of notes you read, you'll probably wind up with several dozen *S*'s.
2. Now read only the notes you have flagged with an *S*. As you go through these flagged notes for a second time, select the ideas that seem particularly important, and draw a vertical line through the *S*'s that are next to them. Your symbol will look like this: \$.
3. Make a third and final pass through your notes, reading only those ideas that have been marked \$. Out of these notes, mark the truly outstanding ideas—there will be only a handful of them—with another vertical line so your markings look like dollar signs: \$.

<sup>2</sup>Essays of Arthur Schopenhauer, selected and translated by T. Bailey Saunders (New York: A. L. Burt, 1892), p. 321.



## IT'S YOUR Q

The Silver Dollar System stimulates reflection by helping you compare the relative weights of the ideas you have noted. It shows you at a glance which ideas are crucial to remember and which are not. The \$ sign alerts you to the truly important ideas, the “Silver Dollar” ideas that should receive most of your attention. Next come the \$ ideas; they are worthy but shouldn’t clutter up your memory if you have a lot to remember in a limited amount of time. Finally, the S ideas can be ignored. Although you flagged these as potentially important ideas, since then you’ve twice marked ideas that were even more important.

How is rearranging your information helpful?

**Rearrange Your Information**

You almost always gain insight when you *reframe* information, that is when you look at it from a different framework or perspective. If, for example, you’ve been studying countries geographically, you might want to consider grouping them by their systems of government or comparing them chronologically. You may want to group existing information under categories such as “pros” and “cons” or “before” and “after,” depending on the nature of the information you are mastering.

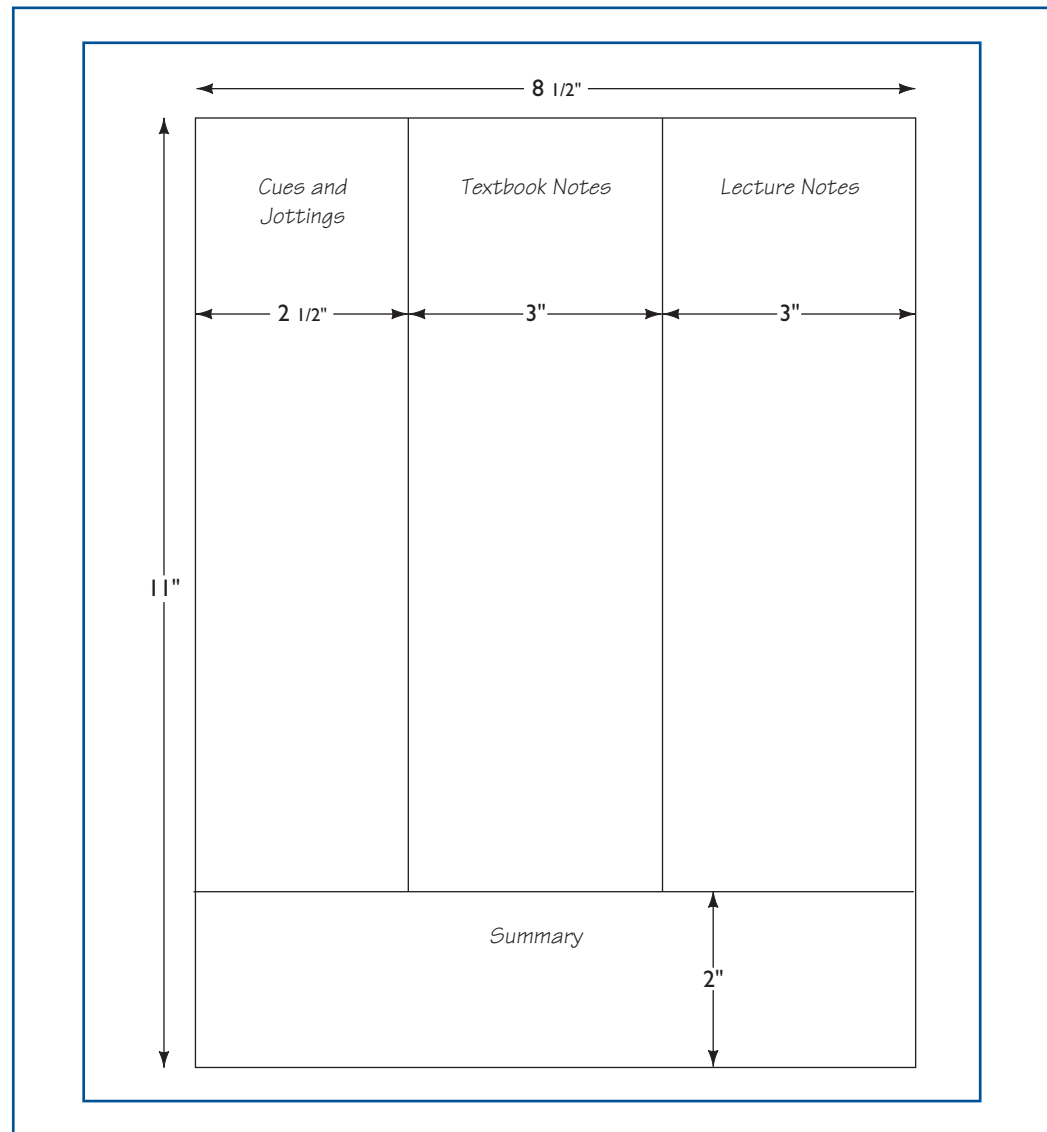
How can software be used to aid reflection?

**Use Software**

Computer software can provide most of the benefits of manual rearranging but without the drudgery and time expense. Some computer programs can take a split second to reconfigure information that would take hours to rearrange by hand. Most word processor and spreadsheet programs allow you to sort a table of information by one or more of its columns. More sophisticated tools found in many spreadsheet programs allow you to take an existing table and turn it into a brand-new table that clusters the information in any number of ways of your choosing. Thus, if you had a table that listed all the presidents of the United States, the years they took office, their political parties, and their states of birth, you would be able to see, for example, all the presidents from Ohio, all the presidents who were members of the Whig Party, or all the presidents who took office between 1800 and 1850. These clusters could trigger any number of reflective questions: What happened to the Whig Party? What other political parties no longer exist? Why are so many presidents from Ohio? Who was the first president from Ohio? Who is the most recent president from Ohio? Which state has produced the most presidents? How does the number of presidents between 1800 and 1850 compare with the number of presidents between 1900 and 1950? And so on. Because a computer performs it, the actual rearranging teaches you nothing. But the questions you ask as a result will stimulate reflection and strengthen your memories by allowing you to remember things in a variety of ways. In a similar fashion, the increasingly popular use of tagging on blogs and other Internet sites provides an extremely helpful means of quickly and dynamically grouping information in different ways to add context, broaden understanding, and aid reflection.



**Figure 11.6**  
Cornell System Format  
for Combining Lecture  
and Textbook Notes



Why is context an important factor in reflection?

### Put It in Context

Few ideas are meaningful when viewed in isolation. They need context to establish them in a realm that you can truly understand. For example, if you read about a scientific discovery from a certain time period, consider examining other events from the year the discovery was made or the place where the discovery occurred. Was this before or after the Civil War, the Second World War, the Vietnam War? Had the telephone, the radio, or the computer

been invented? Were people traveling by horse, by car, or by jet? These investigations supply a basic background (see Chapter 9) that will often yield a deeper understanding.

Why is it helpful to ask additional questions?

### Ask More Questions

In press conferences, the follow-up question is sometimes more insightful than the original question. If you've been using the Q System, each idea in your notes or paragraph in your reading assignment has an accompanying question. Come up with a follow-up to the original question and see if your notes or your text can provide the answer. If not, you might want to dig deeper for clues.

How can concept maps be used as a reflection tool?

### Think Visually

Chapter 8 explains how concept maps can be used to work out problems, explore possibilities, and establish connections. These are exactly the sorts of issues that reflection addresses. Take the key concepts from your notes or from a chapter assignment, put them in ovals on a plain sheet of paper, and try numerous ways of arranging and connecting them. If you do, you will almost certainly learn something that wasn't clear to you when those concepts were merely isolated words on a page.

How do you combine textbook and lecture notes?

### Combine Textbook and Lecture Notes

Although the classroom lectures you attend should presumably relate to your reading assignments, you won't always see the connections clearly until you can actually place notes from both side by side. Using the format shown in Figure 11.6, jot down the most important information from a textbook assignment in the middle column of the three-column note sheet. Then add any lecture notes that deal with the same topic in the right column, alongside the textbook notes they pertain to. Finally, just as you did with your original notes, use the Q System to arrive at a question for which the textbook note *and* any related information from the lecture is the answer. It's impossible to predict in advance what you'll learn from this experience, but by combining two sets of notes you'll almost certainly arrive at an answer that is greater than the sum of the parts. This is the essence of reflection.

## FINAL WORDS

---

How do a scholar and a student differ?

There's a huge difference between proficiency and creativity. You can become proficient by studying your textbooks and lecture notes, but you will never be creative until you try to see beyond the facts, to leap mentally beyond the given. If your object is simply to tackle tests, pass your courses, and emerge from college with a degree and reasonably good prospects for employment, this book should serve you well. But if your aspirations aim higher, this book will serve you even better. The things that distinguish a scholar from a mere student are perpetual curiosity and an unquenchable thirst for learning. Reviewing and reciting should help you reach your modest goals. Reflection will enable you to reach for the stars.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

1. You can bring forgetting almost to a standstill with \_\_\_\_\_.  
**summaries**                      **recitation**                      **questions**
2. Creativity comes only with \_\_\_\_\_.  
**practice**                      **reflection**                      **summaries**
3. Ideas in your notes that you have marked with an S can be \_\_\_\_\_.  
**saved**                      **difficult**                      **ignored**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| _____ 1. Reflecting    | a. Method that summarizes an entire assignment as well as each page        |
| _____ 2. Recitating    | b. System that allows you to reduce and reflect on your note sheets        |
| _____ 3. Split-level   | c. Used as an alternative to the traditional method of reciting your notes |
| _____ 4. Bookmark      | d. Using your innate curiosity to mull over ideas                          |
| _____ 5. Rereading     | e. Alternate Q System method when your textbook margins are too narrow     |
| _____ 6. Silver Dollar | f. Provided when you add questions and summaries to your notes             |
| _____ 7. Reviewing     | g. Mistakenly thought to be an effective method of reviewing               |
| _____ 8. Writing       | h. Repeating key information from memory and in your own words             |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

1. T F Most students review their notes by reading them over.
2. T F When using the Q System, try to come up with yes-or-no questions.
3. T F It's OK to abbreviate your Q System questions.
4. T F If your notes are in a computer file, you will be unable to recite them.
5. T F Although reciting by writing is slower than traditional reciting, it provides added benefits.

## MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.

1. The primary purpose of an immediate review is to
  - a. cement your understanding.
  - b. spot-check your notes.
  - c. look up words or terms you don't know.
  - d. make sure your notes are legible.
2. If your textbook's margins are too narrow for Q System questions, you can use
  - a. the sticky note method.
  - b. the bookmark method.
  - c. separate notes.
  - d. all of the above.
3. Adding summaries to your notes helps you
  - a. zero in on key ideas.
  - b. gain a broader perspective.
  - c. anticipate multiple-choice questions.
  - d. include questions you couldn't fit in the margins.
4. The traditional way to recite is
  - a. out loud.
  - b. in your own words.
  - c. from memory.
  - d. all of the above.
5. One strength and weakness of reflection is its
  - a. cost.
  - b. repetitiveness.
  - c. flexibility.
  - d. imagination

## REFLECTION

Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.

1. Both the Q System and summaries help you master your notes but from two different perspectives. Which approach do you think will be easiest for you to adopt? Which approach will be the most valuable for you? Explain why in each case.

2. Are you already in the habit of reciting your notes? If so, do you recite out loud or in writing? Explain your choice. If you haven't been reciting your notes up until now, why not? Has this chapter convinced you about the value of reciting?
3. Can you think of some specific examples where you already use the technique of reflection? If so, please explain. If not, suggest situations where you could use reflection in the future and mention a method of reflection that seems to best suit the way you learn and understand things.

### IT'S YOUR Q

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

### VOCABULARY IN ACTION

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

#### SAY WHAT?

*From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.*

There are many examples of old, incorrect theories that stubbornly persisted, *sustained* only by the *prestige* of foolish but well-connected scientists. Many of these theories have been killed off only when some *decisive* experiment exposed their incorrectness.

—Michio Kaku (1947— ) American theoretical physicist

- |                     |              |           |            |
|---------------------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. <i>sustained</i> | suffered     | prolonged | confirmed  |
| 2. <i>prestige</i>  | reputation   | charm     | greatness  |
| 3. <i>decisive</i>  | unmistakable | confident | conclusive |

## Chapter 11: Turn Your Notes into Knowledge

297

Voting is the most precious right of every citizen, and we have a moral obligation to *ensure* the *integrity* of our voting process.

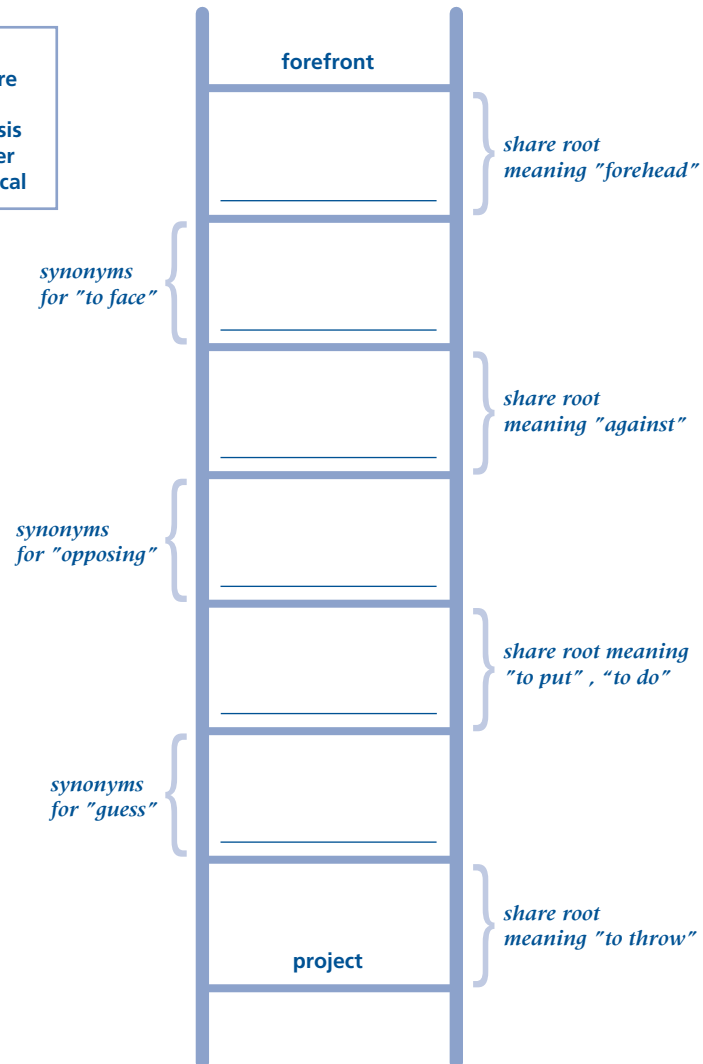
—Hillary Clinton (1947— ), U.S. Secretary of State

- |                     |             |           |          |
|---------------------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| 4. <i>ensure</i>    | underwrite  | guarantee | pacify   |
| 5. <i>integrity</i> | reliability | honesty   | morality |

### VOCAB-U-LADDER

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.

confront  
conjecture  
contrary  
hypothesis  
encounter  
antithetical





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

### **Cue** Finding clues for cue leads to Q

**cue** kyōō *n.* 1. A signal, such as a word or action, used to prompt another event in a performance, such as an actor's speech or entrance, a change in lighting, or a sound effect. 2. a. A reminder or prompting. b. A hint or suggestion.\*

Tracking down the story of a word isn't always easy. In fact, it can sometimes require quite a bit of detective work. Some words evolve naturally and often imperceptibly over time. As a result, when somebody finally steps back and asks "Hey, where did that word come from?" the answer may not be readily available. What's more, well-intentioned efforts to explain a word's origins can sometimes lead down the wrong path. For example, the word *queue*, which describes both a line of people and a pigtail, comes from the Old French word *cue* meaning "tail", the same source that gave us the word *curlicue*. So are the Q System cues you write in your Cornell-style columns related somehow to the French word for tail? That's doubtful, although some word experts have tried hard to make the connection. A more likely explanation comes from sixteenth century theater where actors would mark the margins of their scripts to indicate the places in the play where they were supposed to deliver their lines. Instead of drawing a line or an arrow, they would add the letter Q (or sometimes "qu") to the spots when it was their time to do the talking. Why a Q? Word detectives suggest that these marginal Qs were abbreviations for the Latin word *quando* meaning "when." And when the time came to refer to this Q mark in print, writers as well known as William Shakespeare and Henry Fielding started spelling it *cue*.\*\*

\* Adapted from "cue." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/cue> (accessed June 4, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from "cue." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/cue> (accessed June 4, 2009).; "cue." *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=cue> (accessed June 4, 2009).; "cue, *n*" *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; "cue, *n*<sup>2</sup>" *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50055417> (accessed Jun 4, 2009).

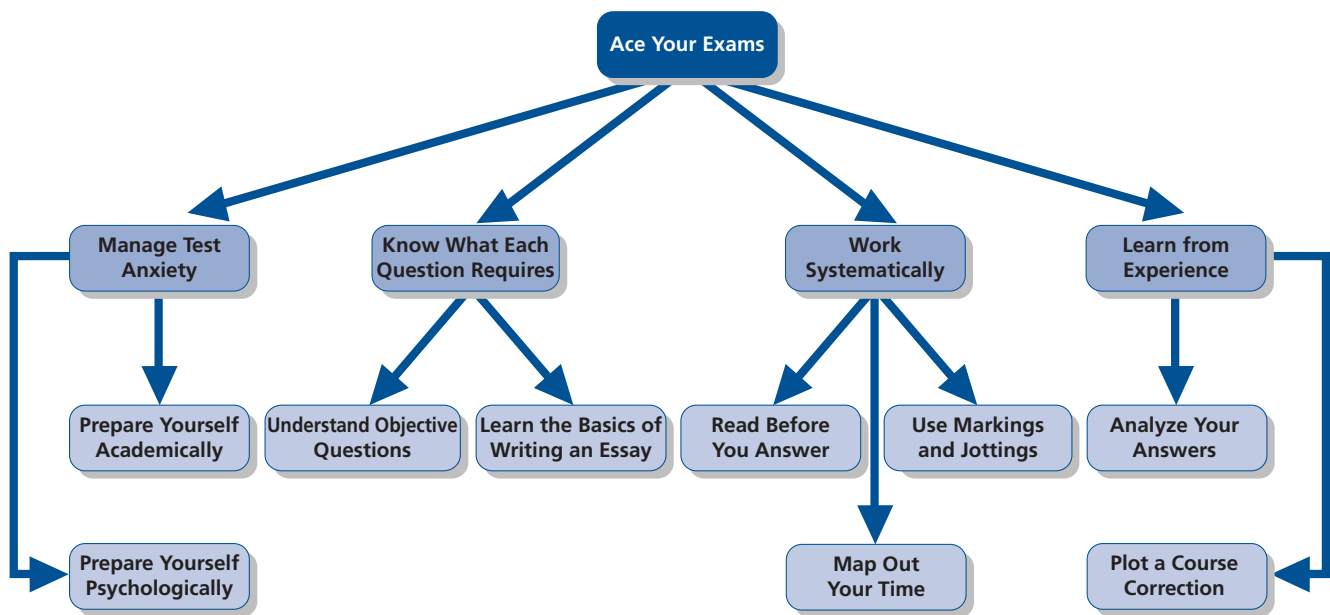




# Explaining Information

In an ideal world, your success in gaining and retaining information would be its own reward. But that's not how college works. Colleges need a mechanism for assessing your value, and for most schools, the currency is a system of grades. Your performance is measured not by what you know but by what you can actually explain. Those explanations typically take the form of tests, class discussions, and papers. In order to make sure that all your hard work and learning pay off, this part will help you to:

- 12** Ace Your Exams
- 13** Get the Most Out of Discussions
- 14** Turn in a Solid Research Paper



*What is the answer? . . .  
In that case, what is the  
question?*

**Gertrude Stein** (1874–1946),  
American writer; reportedly  
her last words

# Ace Your Exams

The real purpose of exams is to test your knowledge, not to try your patience. Yet when faced with the prospect of answering true-false, multiple-choice, matching, sentence-completion, or essay questions, many students would prefer to choose “none of the above.” What they may not realize is that if they’re well prepared, methodical, and thoughtful, then taking a test doesn’t have to be traumatic. This chapter shows you how to:

- **Manage Test Anxiety**
- **Understand Each Question Type**
- **Move Systematically Through the Test**
- **Learn from Experience**

What are the two basic categories of test questions?

Most of the test questions you'll be expected to answer in college fall into one of two categories: essay questions and objective questions. Essay questions take a broader view of a subject and generally emphasize your ability to recall and organize what you've learned and to write about it. Objective questions focus more on details and on your ability to recognize, rather than recall, them.

What does performing well on a test involve?

Performing well on a test involves managing test anxiety through preparation, understanding each question type, moving systematically through a test, and learning from experience.

## Manage Test Anxiety

What is the simple cure for test anxiety?

The best cure for test anxiety is simple but powerful: preparation. Advance preparation is like a fire drill: It teaches you what to do and how to proceed, even in a high-stress situation, because you've been through the procedure so many times that you know it by heart. To manage the anxiety that often arises at test time, you can prepare yourself both academically and psychologically.

### Prepare Yourself Academically

OVERVIEWING

CLUSTERING

SUMMARIZING

How can you prepare yourself academically for a test?

To be prepared academically, start early, stay on top of your coursework, and organize yourself and your studying plan. Even if you're forced to cram for a test, do so as sensibly and methodically as you would if there were no time constraints.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

#### Start Early

The pressure is almost nonexistent at the start of a new term. Take advantage of this calm before the storm. Get a head start in a course by picking up your textbooks, looking over your syllabus, and learning where and how to get academic help. Picking up your textbooks right away instead of waiting until the last minute will give you time to build a foundation of understanding. You'll be able to look through the text in a leisurely manner to get a sense of where the book and the course will be headed. In the same way that surveying your textbook gives you a sense of the book as a whole, reading the syllabus from start to finish at the earliest opportunity provides a valuable overview of the course and makes preparing for tests much easier. And finally, take a few minutes before the semester begins to find out where your campus tutoring service is located and how to arrange for a tutor. This information is often available on the campus website or in the materials you receive during orientation. Then, if you should find that you are struggling with a course and need help, all the research will have been done in advance. You'll be able to arrange for a tutor without delay rather than putting things off until the tutors' schedules are full and your situation has reached a crisis.

How do you stay on top of your coursework?

### Stay on Top of Your Coursework

When the time comes to start focusing on an exam, you can seriously endanger your performance if you have to spend valuable time getting caught up. If you stay on top of your assignments throughout the semester—by taking notes as you read or listen and by mastering those notes at the earliest possible opportunity—they won't come back to haunt you when it's time to study for finals. Taken conscientiously throughout the semester, your Cornell-style notes will provide a valuable storehouse of knowledge and an excellent start in your preparation for upcoming exams. If you took notes using the Q System (see Chapter 11), you'll not only have used the powerful tool of recitation to embed your course's important ideas into your memory, but you will have already set up a format for your notes that allows you to study in a way that closely matches the format of your exams!

How can you organize yourself?

### Organize Yourself

The work you put into preparing yourself academically by starting early and by keeping up with your classes and assignments can be best used if you organize both your time and your notes.

What kinds of schedules help prepare you for exams?

**Organize Your Time with Schedules** Scheduling is important throughout the term. Three-part scheduling plans (explained in Chapter 2) allow you to set aside time for reviewing material so that you won't get caught off guard by a quiz or test. As you near the end of a term or semester, scheduling your time becomes even more crucial. If you haven't been using schedules, now's a good time to start. If you have been, you probably feel on top of things already. In either case, it's a good idea to organize your time with a "homestretch schedule" specifically designed to help you tie up loose ends and get you through that all-important last week before exams begin. When exam week arrives, devise another schedule that specifies when each of your tests takes place and that includes time for meals, sleep, and recreation, which are particularly crucial during exam week.

What items belong in a homestretch schedule?

*Make up a homestretch schedule.* Use the format in Figure 12.1 for your homestretch schedule. (This schedule uses the grid discussed in Chapter 2.) Start by filling in the time blocks that will be taken up by meals, sleep, job, and recreation. Next, fill in your classes. Do not miss classes for any reason at this stage; you will want to be there to hear the instructors' answers to students' questions about exams. Finally, fill in the time you will need for completing term papers and other assignments. Make sure you get them done before exam week. You don't want unfinished business to interfere with your studying or distract your thinking during exams. Use any time remaining at the end of the week to study for your exams. Fill in the exact study times and subjects. Instead of writing "Study" in the time blocks, write exactly what you plan to study: "Study economics, chaps 1 to 10" or "Summarize sociology notes." Make a schedule that you'll be able to follow, and then be sure to follow it.

**Figure 12.1**  
**Format for the**  
**Homestretch Schedule**

	M	Tu	W	Th	F	Sat	Sun
7:00							
8:00							
9:00							
10:00							
11:00							
12:00							
1:00							
2:00							
3:00							
4:00							
5:00							
6:00							
7:00							
8:00							
9:00							
10:00							

**What items belong in an exam-week schedule?**

*Use an exam-week schedule.* Toward the end of the week before finals, make up a schedule for exam week. Fill in the times for your exams but be sure to leave time for meals, rest, and recreation. You must be in tiptop mental, emotional, and physical shape to do your best on the exams. Finally, leave a block of time immediately before each exam to review important information. The less time you allow between this last review and the exam, the less forgetting will take place. Review calmly and thoughtfully, and carry this calm, thoughtful behavior right into the exam room.

**What is the best way to organize your notes?**

*Organize your notes with summary sheets.* The best way to organize your notes before an exam is by consolidating them into a set of summary sheets (a highly concentrated version of the notes), then reciting those sheets as you would your regular notes. But unlike your regular notes, your summary sheets should be limited to the truly important ideas from each lecture and reading. The process of reducing a semester's worth of notes to a

handful of sheets provides a thorough, thoughtful review. If you have already used the Silver Dollar System (see Chapter 11) to pick out the main ideas and subideas from your notes, reducing those notes one step further should be relatively simple. Include only notes marked with \$ in your summary sheets. If you haven't used the Silver Dollar System, you can narrow your notes all at once by employing it now, although the process may prove time consuming.

Figure 12.2 is an example of a standard summary sheet. It is indistinguishable from a regular Cornell note sheet except that it contains the most important ideas from several lectures, rather than just one, compressed into the same amount of space.

**IT'S YOUR Q**

*Encourage reflection with advanced summary sheets.* Although creating summary sheets of any kind gives you a chance to review your notes, devising advanced summary sheets also enables you to reflect on the information you have learned thus far. Reflection involves thinking about and applying the facts and ideas you've learned. By rearranging your notes into categories that you've chosen yourself, you are doing just that. Remember that "creativity comes only with reflection" (see Chapter 11). That's because reflection leads to *advantageous learning*—learning propelled by a burning desire to know something. You can't help being curious about your notes when you reorganize them for your summary sheets. The knowledge you gain from doing so not only provides excellent preparation for an exam, but also remains with you long after the test is over.

Figure 12.3 shows an advanced summary sheet that represents more than ten pages of notes taken during two lectures. Notice how the points are categorized by century and are placed side by side for ease of comparison. The questions in the margin are appropriately brief; they hint at, but do not supply, each comparison.

Figure 12.4 shows an advanced summary sheet derived from textbook markings. The subcategories "Advantages" and "Disadvantages" were supplied by the student who took the notes. The material in each subcategory was originally scattered throughout the chapter.

**Be a Study "Switch Hitter"**

How do you become a study "switch hitter"?

Baseball players who bat from both sides of home plate are more flexible than those who can hit only right-handed or left-handed. In the same way, you can often improve your test-taking average when you master the material in your notes from both directions instead of from just one. Use the Q System as you normally would to recall each important idea, but reverse the process from time to time by covering your questions, reading your notes, and then seeing whether you can remember the questions you wrote to accompany each important idea.

What helps you master your material regardless of its order?

If you have time and want to make absolutely certain you know your material, write each important idea from your notes on the front of a separate index card or slip of paper, and jot your cue on the back. A stack of cards, instead of a few sheets of paper, enables you to constantly rearrange your notes, ensuring that you will be able to recall important information regardless of the order in which it's presented.



**Figure 12.2**  
**A Standard Summary**  
**Sheet**

<u>Steps in Writing</u>	
What are four elements of college writing?	<u>Writing must have:</u> basic premise, logical development of ideas, support in paragraphs, good word choice
What are steps in prewriting?	<u>Prewriting</u> Brainstorm about a subject — generate ideas Narrow to a topic — use list or concept map Focus on a basic premise — ask a meaningful question that makes a point Plot a pattern — organize points into a framework
What is the basic structure?	<u>Writing</u> Structure — use introduction, body paragraphs, and conclusion – write body first
What should a body paragraph contain?	Body Paragraphs — begin each with topic sentence that supports basic premise (controlling idea) – support points with good examples and detail
What is the purpose of introduction? What does it reveal?	Introduction — first paragraph — states basic premise Reveals: — topic of essay – opinion about topic – organization pattern you'll use
How do you conclude?	Conclusion — should leave reader with a feeling of completion Either: summarize basic premise or main points — state your opinion
What are the two main facets of revising?	<u>Revising</u> Strengthen support — data, examples, etc. Edit for transitions, spelling, and grammar errors.

**Figure 12.3**  
An Advanced  
Summary Sheet  
for Classroom  
Lecture Notes

	<u>Sociology 103 – Dr. Lund</u>	
	<u>19th Century</u>	<u>20th Century</u>
How is family governed?	1. Patriarchal, Father head of family.	1. Individualistic, democratic
Difference in stability?	2. Family <i>stable</i>	2. Family <i>less stable</i>
Status of extended family?	3. Many children and relatives under one roof – extended family	3. Smaller in size. Only 2 generations (parents & children)
Changes in mobility?	4. Non-mobile. Rarely moved. “Old family homestead.”	4. Mobility increased & residences changed often
Relationship between women & work?	5. Women: housework & children	5. Women: work outside & care for children after hours
Attitude toward sex?	6. Puritanical on sex	6. Increasingly liberal
Variance in family types?	7. Family types in community alike	7. Greater variability in family type
Family’s function?	8. Family had many functions: political, religious, economic	8. Family for procreation & socialization

If you’re forced to cram, how do you cram systematically?

### Cram Systematically

Proper academic preparation usually eliminates the need for cramming. But if you find yourself unprepared for an exam, sometimes cramming can be an unfortunate necessity. To cram systematically, the key words to remember are *selectivity* and *recitation*. Resist the temptation to try to learn everything. It’s too late for that now. Instead, comb through your readings and lecture notes for only the essential facts, write them in your own words on summary sheets, and then use as much of your time as possible for remembering them. Don’t make the mistake of reading and rereading this material. To make these notes your own, you must recite, recite, and recite. Begin by reading each fact you’ve

**Figure 12.4**  
**An Advanced**  
**Summary Sheet from**  
**a Textbook Chapter**

Economics 102 – Professor Maxwell	
<p><b>I. Single</b></p> <p><b>What are two advtgs?</b></p> <p><b>What are two disadvtgs?</b></p>	<p>I. Single proprietorship</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>ADVANTAGES</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Can do what desires</li> <li>2. All profit goes to owner</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>DISADVANTAGES</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. All losses hurt owner (unlimited liability)</li> <li>2. Commercial banks ordinarily will not provide “venture capital”</li> </ol>
<p><b>II. Partner--</b></p> <p><b>What are three advtgs?</b></p> <p><b>What are two disadvtgs?</b></p>	<p>II. Partnership</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>ADVANTAGES</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Pool wealth, profits, losses</li> <li>2. “Vertical integration” = gain control of resources, become own wholesaler</li> <li>3. “Horizontal integration” = buy out competitors; add products; improve products</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>DISADVANTAGES</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Each time a member dies or leaves, a new partnership needs to be formed</li> <li>2. Unlimited liability, even if own a small share</li> </ol>
<p><b>III. Corporation</b></p> <p><b>What are four advtgs?</b></p> <p><b>What are four advtgs to society?</b></p>	<p>III. Corporation</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>ADVANTAGES</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Easy to form (legal permission needed)</li> <li>2. Issue stock to raise capital; banker underwrites stock issue and sells to public</li> <li>3. Limited liability – Corp., distinct from its owners; can sue and be sued</li> <li>4. “Perpetual succession,” or existence. Board of directors</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>ADVANTAGES TO SOCIETY</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Technical efficiency – production of goods &amp; services</li> <li>2. Pool business risks – continuation of production</li> <li>3. Creates further capital for expansion or finance new</li> <li>4. It is taxed</li> </ol>

chosen and devising a question you can jot down in the margin of your summary sheet for which that fact provides the answer. This will function as written recitation. Then, once you have a question for every idea, cover up the answers and test yourself by reading each question and reciting the answer from memory, again and again, until you know the information cold. By judiciously selecting the very top ideas and by using your own set of questions to help memorize them, you will have a chance of passing the exam. You may not remember much once the test is over, but for now the objective is to survive the battle so that you can come back next term and continue the war.

## Prepare Yourself Psychologically

OVERVIEWING

SELF-DIRECTION

What role should psychological preparation play in getting ready for an exam?

When it comes to getting ready for an upcoming exam, there's no substitute for academic preparation. But even if you know your material inside out, there's still an advantage to be gained from putting yourself in the proper mindset. Some students who experience test anxiety claim that even when they've studied hard, they still freeze when the test is placed in front of them. Although academic preparation is essential, a little psychological preparation can help take the sting out of an exam. If you take time to find out all you can about the exam, get yourself acquainted with the test site or a similar site, and work at maintaining a positive attitude, you're more likely to escape the test-taking anxiety that plagues unprepared students.

How can you lessen the fear of the unknown that contributes to test anxiety?

### Find Out About the Exam

Fear of the unknown can be a great contributor to test anxiety. You can dispel some of this fear and its resulting anxiety by asking the instructor directly about the nature of the exam and by looking over previous exams for further clues. Asking the instructor seems so obvious that it's surprising how many students fail to do it. And yet, in many cases, instructors are not at all hesitant to discuss what the test will involve. Ask about the types of questions (objective, essay, or both), the length of the exam, and the materials (textbooks, notes, calculators) you'll be allowed to bring with you into the exam room. You can gain further clues about the nature of your upcoming exam by looking at exams from previous semesters and noting how each test was written and what the questions covered. When you do finally sit down to take the exam, you're less apt to be knocked off balance by surprises.

How can you get acquainted with your test site?

### Get Acquainted with the Test Site

Exams may be held in auditoriums, large lecture halls, or ordinary classrooms. To be psychologically prepared for an exam, get acquainted with the site where the test will take place or with a similar location. A week or two before the exam, study for a few hours

each evening at the site where you will be taking the test. Your familiarity with the room and the sense of control you feel while studying will help establish a link between working in this room and succeeding on the exam. If you can't study at the site of the test, you can still prepare yourself for the atmosphere of the test by studying in a quiet area, by practicing at a chairdesk if you know that's what you'll be sitting at for the exam, and by timing yourself as you work to get used to the challenge of performing under a deadline.

### Maintain a Positive Attitude

How do you cultivate a positive attitude about an upcoming exam?

Of course, the ideas and strategies for managing stress (see Chapter 4) can be helpful throughout the semester. But often it's not until exam time that these techniques are truly put through their paces. It is essential to address the stress of a test with a can-do approach. Exam-anxious students often sabotage their own efforts by preparing themselves for failure. To counteract this inclination and to cultivate an optimistic attitude, use deep breathing and progressive muscle relaxation to help you relax, use affirmative statements to counter any negative self-talk, and use visualization to help chart a course for your success. Take a moment to review Chapter 4 to find the techniques that will work best for you.

## Know What Each Question Requires

What should you know before you take a test?

Even natural athletes can falter in competition if they don't know the rules. Although the most important things you can do to gear up for a test are to master your material and be psychologically ready for the challenge, you also need to be well acquainted with the rules of the game. Depending on the nature of your test or quiz, that means understanding objective questions, learning the basics of writing an essay, or both.

### Understand Objective Questions

PLANNING

Why are objective questions like pasta?

Objective questions are a bit like pasta in its various shapes. Each type may look different and many of us prefer one over another, but they're all basically made up of the same stuff. The primary ingredients of pasta are flour and water. The primary ingredients of objective questions are true and false statements. In the strictest sense, there are no real tricks for taking objective tests. The requirement for taking any test is basically the same: Know your material. Even so, it helps to understand how each question type works, to know the characteristics that will sometimes make it more complicated, and, finally, to be aware of certain rules and techniques that may not give you the answer, but can sometimes make answering a little easier.

How do true-false questions work?

### True-False Leaves No Room for Ambiguity

The basic idea behind a true-false question is simple: Faced with a single statement, your job is to decide whether it's true. And when we say true, we mean true. The statement

must be 100 percent true, not 50 percent or even 99 percent true. A partially true statement is still a false statement. Consider this example:

1. T F In 1787, the year the United States ratified the Constitution, Washington, D.C., became the nation's capital.

The statement is false. Although the Constitution was ratified in 1787 and the nation's capital is Washington, D.C., the United States had no federal capital until 1790, when Congress chose Philadelphia. Washington didn't officially become the capital until June 10, 1800.

What makes true-false questions difficult?

**Understanding What Makes Them Difficult** One word can be all it takes to turn a true statement into a false one. For example, consider the impact of a word like *always* on a true-false statement or how words like *no* and *not* can radically change a statement's meaning. Words like *always*, *no*, and *not* are known as qualifiers. Other qualifiers include *all*, *some*, *most*, *many*, *usually*, *never*, and *none*. Simply adding one of these words can turn a true statement into a false one or a false statement into a true one. For that reason, you need to be extra sensitive to any qualifiers you encounter in a true-false statement.

How can you make true-false questions easier?

### Learning Techniques That Can Make Answering Them Easier

*Mark or circle each qualifier.* Qualifiers can have such a huge impact on the meaning of a true-false statement that it's crucial not to overlook them. As you read through each statement for the first time, underline or circle any qualifiers. If you aren't sure whether a statement is true or false, try reading it without the qualifier or by swapping in a different qualifier. Comparing and contrasting the statements in this way can sometimes make it clearer whether the original was true or false.

*Mark "True" if you're stumped.* Because instructors would rather leave true information in your mind, they tend to stack true-false tests with more true statements than false ones. You shouldn't guess right away on a true-false question, but if you're stumped and pressed for time, the odds are in your favor if you choose true over false.

*Be suspicious of longer statements.* Remember the importance of context, and remember that true-false statements must be 100 percent true. Each word added to a true-false statement increases its chances of being false. All it takes is one incorrect word to make the statement false.

How do multiple-choice questions work?

### Multiple Choice Is a Cluster of True-False Statements

A multiple-choice question normally begins with an incomplete sentence known as a *stem*, followed by a series of choices, known as *options*, for completing that sentence.

In a typical multiple-choice question, your job is to find the option that completes the stem and makes the resulting statement true. In that sense, a classic multiple-choice question is like a cluster of true-false statements, each one beginning the same way but ending a little differently.

In 1787, the year the United States ratified the Constitution,

- a. George Washington became the country's first president.
- b. Washington, D.C., became the nation's capital.
- c. New Mexico was admitted to the Union.
- d. the country had no official capital.

In this question, connecting option (d) to the stem results in a true statement. Linking the stem to any other option results in a false statement.

**What makes multiple-choice questions difficult?**

**Understanding What Makes Them Difficult** Multiple-choice questions inherit the aspect that makes true-false statements harder. Just as a qualifier can transform a true statement into a false one (or vice versa), it can turn a correct option into a wrong one. Also, because a multiple-choice question is more complex than its true-false ancestor, it acquires some additional aspects that can make it a little more difficult to answer.

*Varying directions.* Some multiple-choice directions tell you to pick more than one correct option; others ask you to mark the one option that is *incorrect*. Be sure to read the directions carefully and go over all the options before you mark your selection.

*Divided context.* Because each choice in a multiple-choice question is usually divided into stem and option, you have to mentally connect the two components to determine whether an option is correct. Correct answers aren't always obvious, even when you know your material.

*Differing format.* Most multiple-choice questions follow the incomplete stem and option format. In some cases, however, the stem may be made up of an entire sentence. A setup of this sort can take you by surprise if you're expecting a standard multiple-choice question, but in general this variation is easier because you don't have to work with a divided context.

### **Learning Techniques That Can Make Answering Them Easier**

**How can you make multiple-choice questions easier?**

*Use the true-false technique.* If you know your material but have a mental block about the multiple-choice format, you can gain a new perspective by treating the question as a series of true-false statements instead. Construct each statement in your head (or on paper) and decide whether it is true or false. The true statement you find in the

true-false statements you create should contain the correct multiple-choice option. Here's an example:

Before becoming president in 1857, James Buchanan was

- a. married and divorced.
- b. secretary of defense.
- c. prime minister of Canada.
- d. secretary of state.

This question and its options can be thought of as four true-false statements:

1. T F Before becoming president in 1857, James Buchanan was married and divorced.
2. T F Before becoming president in 1857, James Buchanan was secretary of defense.
3. T F Before becoming president in 1857, James Buchanan was prime minister of Canada.
4. T F Before becoming president in 1857, James Buchanan was secretary of state.

Viewing the question this way can sometimes make it easier to spot the correct answer. (In this case, the correct answer is d.) The true statement you find in the true-false statements you create usually contains the correct multiple-choice option.

*Discard foolish options.* Not all of the options in a multiple-choice question provide a plausible way of completing the stem. Some of the options are downright silly. If you spot one of these foolish options, known as *distracters*, you can eliminate it right away, and choose your answer from the options that remain. Any time you can reduce your possible choices in a multiple-choice question, you improve your odds of selecting the correct answer. In that sense, a foolish option can be considered a gift.

*Choose the middle number from a range of numbers.* Test writers usually include at least one number lower than the correct answer and one number higher. Using this “rule,” you can often eliminate half the options in a four-option question. If you know the correct answer, then by all means pick that one. But if you're stumped by the question and have no other information to go on, you can increase your odds of guessing correctly by choosing a number in the middle.

*Pick “all of the above” if you're in doubt.* As the purpose behind a quiz or exam is not only to test but also to teach, “all of the above” becomes an attractive choice for the test maker because it allows a single question to convey several facts instead of just one. So, if you don't know the correct answer in a multiple-choice question and “all of the above” is an option, choosing “all of the above” can be a pretty safe bet.

*Do a double-check when you choose “all of the above.”* You don't normally have to confirm that all of the options are correct when you choose “all of the above.” You just have to verify two. If you are unsure whether one particular option is correct, but you know that the other two are, then you should have all the information you need to choose “all of the above.”



How do matching questions work?

### Matching Is a Multiple, Multiple Choice

Items in a matching test are usually divided into two columns and arranged in random order. Using a relationship that is normally explained in the directions, you systematically match the items in one column with the items in the other. (Consider the test

#### Groundbreaking Women of Science

Directions: Match the name of the scientist in the left-hand column with her discovery or distinction in the right-hand column by writing the proper letter in the space provided alongside each scientist's name. Use each item from the right-hand column only once.

Scientist	Discovery or Distinction
_____ 1. Rachel Carson	a. Created the first programming language
_____ 2. Mary Leakey	b. Devised the system for classifying stars by brightness
_____ 3. Marie Curie	c. Garnered a Nobel Prize for her groundbreaking work in genetics
_____ 4. Margaret Mead	d. Earned fame for children's books but gained respect as a mycologist
_____ 5. Jane Goodall	e. First female physics instructor at Princeton University
_____ 6. Grace Hopper	f. Invented the pie chart, although she is best known as a nurse
_____ 7. Georgia Dwelle Rooks	g. First woman elected to the National Academy of Sciences
_____ 8. Caroline Herschel	h. First American woman in space
_____ 9. Florence Sabin	i. Founded the first hospital for African American women
_____ 10. Florence Nightingale	j. Invented the compiler, a critical element in most computer programs
_____ 11. Chien-Shiung Wu	k. Studied chimpanzees as a means of understanding human evolution
_____ 12. Beatrix Potter	l. Popularized anthropology with her book <i>Coming of Age in Samoa</i>
_____ 13. Barbara McClintock	m. Received two Nobel Prizes for her work on radioactivity
_____ 14. Annie Jump Cannon	n. Uncovered fossils that helped unlock the origins of humankind
_____ 15. Sally Ride	o. Founded the contemporary environmental movement
_____ 16. Ada Byron King	p. Teamed up with her brother to discover the planet Uranus

Answers: 1. o 2. n 3. m 4. l 5. k 6. j 7. i 8. p  
9. g 10. f 11. e 12. d 13. c 14. b 15. h 16. a

shown on the following page.) Matching tests work like multiple-choice questions with an added dimension. You're faced with a *multiple*, multiple choice. Instead of one stem and several options, you have several stems and several options.

What makes matching questions difficult?

**Understanding What Makes Them Difficult** Answering a matching question is a bit like filling in a crossword or doing a jigsaw. If you make one mistake, it can sometimes lead to a chain reaction of errors. Therefore, you need to be confident that each match you make is correct before you move on to the next match.

### Learning Techniques That Can Make Answering Them Easier

How can you make matching questions easier?

*Mark off matches to avoid redundancy.* Each time you correctly match two items, cross them off or mark them with a circle or an X. If you're taking your test on a computer screen you might want to keep a running tally on a piece of scratch paper, crossing off the number and letter of each match you make. That way, when you move on to the next match, you'll have fewer items to read, and you won't be confused about which items you've chosen and which ones you haven't.

*Match shorter items to longer ones.* In most matching tests, the items in one column are usually longer than the items in the other. For example, a typical matching test might contain a column of terms and a column of definitions. In cases like these, you can save yourself some time if you set out in search of matches for the longer items instead of the reverse. In other words, the column you keep reading and rereading contains the shorter items. That way you need to read each long item only once. It's a case of the dog wagging the tail instead of the other way around.

### Sentence Completion Is Multiple Choice Without the Choice

How do sentence-completion questions work?

Sentence-completion questions work like multiple-choice questions without the choice. A typical sentence-completion question consists of a partial sentence and one or more blanks. Your job is to read the sentences and to use both context and recall to determine what words belong in the blanks.

What makes sentence-completion questions difficult?

**Understanding What Makes Them Difficult** Unlike answering true-false, multiple-choice, and matching questions, answering a sentence-completion question requires recall instead of recognition. You have to extract the answer from your memory instead of picking it out from the exam page or computer screen. Recall is almost always better from a standpoint of learning, but it can be a little harder when you're taking a test.

### Learning Techniques That Can Make Answering Them Easier

How can you make sentence-completion questions easier?

*Try to clarify any ambiguity.* Sometimes a question seems to have two or more reasonable answers. In these cases, you may need to clarify the type of answer the question is

seeking by raising your hand and asking a well-formulated, unambiguous question of your own to clear up the confusion.

*Disregard the length of the blank.* With sentence-completion questions, the length of the blank is usually irrelevant. Use the context of the sentence, not the length of the blank, to help you arrive at your answer.

*Treat some sentences as multiple questions.* Even students who aren't influenced by the size of one blank when answering a sentence-completion question may become flustered by a question that has two blanks. If the blanks are side by side, the question may be calling for a person's name or a place name. Paying attention to the question's context should help you confirm whether this is the case. But if the blanks in a sentence-completion question are widely separated instead of side by side, the best way to treat them is as if each occurred in a separate sentence. There may or may not be a direct relationship between the missing words, so make sure that each filled-in word makes sense in its own part of the statement. Consider this example:

1. Although corn is second only to \_\_\_\_\_ as the most widely grown crop in the world, no one in Europe had even heard about corn until \_\_\_\_\_ returned from the New World.

In the first portion of the sentence, the word *corn* indicates that you're dealing with a grain. If you had read your textbook carefully (or if you made an intelligent guess), you'd know the answer is wheat. The second blank calls for a person's name: Columbus.

## Learn the Basics of Writing an Essay

### SUMMARIZING

How do you write an effective essay?

To write an effective essay, you need to be able to understand each question with precision and provide a carefully constructed answer.

Why is it important to understand the questions precisely?

### Understand Each Question with Precision

A precise question requires a precise answer. Read each question carefully so you understand exactly what it is asking. A good essay question is never vague or ambiguous. As you can see from Figure 12.5, words such as *criticize*, *describe*, and *interpret* have specific definitions. Therefore, if you have even the slightest uncertainty about what's being asked, don't hesitate to check with the instructor for clarification.

What are the qualities of a carefully constructed answer?

### Provide a Carefully Constructed Answer

For better or worse, an essay answer provides a kind of snapshot of your thinking processes. Depending on who is reading your essay (the instructor, a teaching assistant, or someone else), this may be the only glimpse the grader gets of who you are and what

**Figure 12.5****Keywords in Essay Questions**

This alphabetical list contains keywords encountered in the directions for essay questions, along with brief explanations of what each word means.

Key Word	Explanation
Apply a principle	Show how a principle works, through an example.
Comment	Discuss briefly.
Compare	Emphasize similarities, but also present differences.
Contrast	Give differences only.
Criticize	Give your judgment of good points and limitations, with evidence.
Define	Give meanings but no details.
Demonstrate	Show or prove an opinion, evaluation, or judgment.
Describe	State the particulars in detail.
Diagram	Show a drawing with labels.
Differentiate	Show how two things are different.
Discuss	Give reasons pro and con, with details.
Distinguish	Show main differences between two things.
Enumerate	List the points.
Evaluate	Discuss advantages and disadvantages with your opinion.
Explain	Give reasons for happenings or situations.
Give cause and effect	Describe the steps that lead to an event or a situation.
Give an example	Give a concrete example from the textbook or from your experience.
Identify	List and describe.
Illustrate	Give an example.
Interpret	State the meaning in simpler terms, using your judgment.
Justify	Prove or give reasons.
List	List without details.
Outline	Make a short summary with headings and subheadings.
Prove	Give evidence and reasons.
Relate	Show how things interconnect.
Review	Show main points or events in summary form.
Show	List your evidence in order of time, importance, logic.
Solve	Come up with a solution based on given facts or your knowledge.
State	List main points briefly without details.
Summarize	Organize and bring together the main points only.
Support	Back up a statement with facts and proof.
Trace	Give main points from beginning to end of an event.

you know. That's why it's important that each essay is well organized, well supported, and neatly written.

What can you do to make sure your essay is well organized?

**Be Sure the Path of Your Answer Is Easy to Follow** Essay exams are written in a hurry and are often read in a hurry. Graders usually have a lot of essays to read and seldom have the time or patience to untangle a convoluted answer. You have to be concise! Answer the question right at the start of the essay, choose a recognizable organizational pattern, use clear transitions, and wrap things up neatly with a summary. Wordy answers may be the refuge for unprepared students who hope to bury their ignorance under a heavy blanket of overstuffed sentences, but they seldom fool an experienced grader. This is no time for lavish flourishes or excessive subtlety. Clearly show what you know as soon as possible. Start with the question itself, turn it into the stem of your opening sentence, and complete it with your answer. (See Figures 12.6 and 12.7 for some examples of how to do this.) Then figuratively take your reader by the hand and lead him or her along the path of your essay by organizing your answer with a recognizable pattern such as decreasing importance or comparison/contrast (see Chapter 10). Make things that much easier to follow by inserting transitional words and phrases to act as signposts whenever you change direction or introduce evidence during the course of your essay.

Then finish things off with a summarizing conclusion that ties your points together and reminds the grader of the original answer that you wrote back at the beginning. These suggestions for organizing your essay become even more compelling when you learn how essays are actually graded. Figure 12.8 takes a brief behind-the-scenes look at an essay exam grading session.

**Figure 12.6**  
**A Paragraph-Length**  
**Essay**

*Question:* Identify three of the theories psychologists have suggested to explain forgetting.

*Answer:* Three of the theories that psychologists have suggested to explain how forgetting occurs include fading theory, retrieval theory, and reactive interference theory. Fading theory defines memories as paths or traces in the brain. According to the theory, if these paths aren't used (recalled) regularly, they fade until they eventually disappear (are forgotten). Retrieval theory claims that memories never really disappear; they simply get lost or misfiled, like important information buried under piles of paper on a messy desk. Reactive interference theory says that your attitude or emotions can interfere with your memory. If you are bored with or bothered by information, there's a greater chance that you will forget it. In certain cases, evidence seems to support all these theories of forgetting. But they remain only theories. None of them can be proved conclusively.

**Figure 12.7**  
**A Longer Essay**  
**Answer**

*Question:* Compare and contrast reciting and rereading as methods of study.

*Answer:* Although reciting and rereading are both common methods of study, reciting is superior to rereading as a way of mastering your material. Unlike rereading, reciting (1) gets you involved, (2) supplies motivation, and (3) provides you with feedback on your progress.

1. Reciting gets you involved by compelling you to extract the meaning out of each paragraph you read. In contrast, it's possible to reread an assignment without understanding it.
2. Reciting supplies motivation because it encourages you to understand what you've read. If you had trouble grasping the meaning of one paragraph, you may be determined to have an easier time with the next one. If you understood a paragraph, you'll be motivated to continue your progress. But if you simply reread your assignment, you'll have no such incentive to succeed.
3. Because you know right away whether you've understood each paragraph, reciting provides you with immediate feedback on your progress. Potential trouble spots in your reading are brought to your attention right away. With rereading, the first real feedback you get is delayed until the test or quiz.

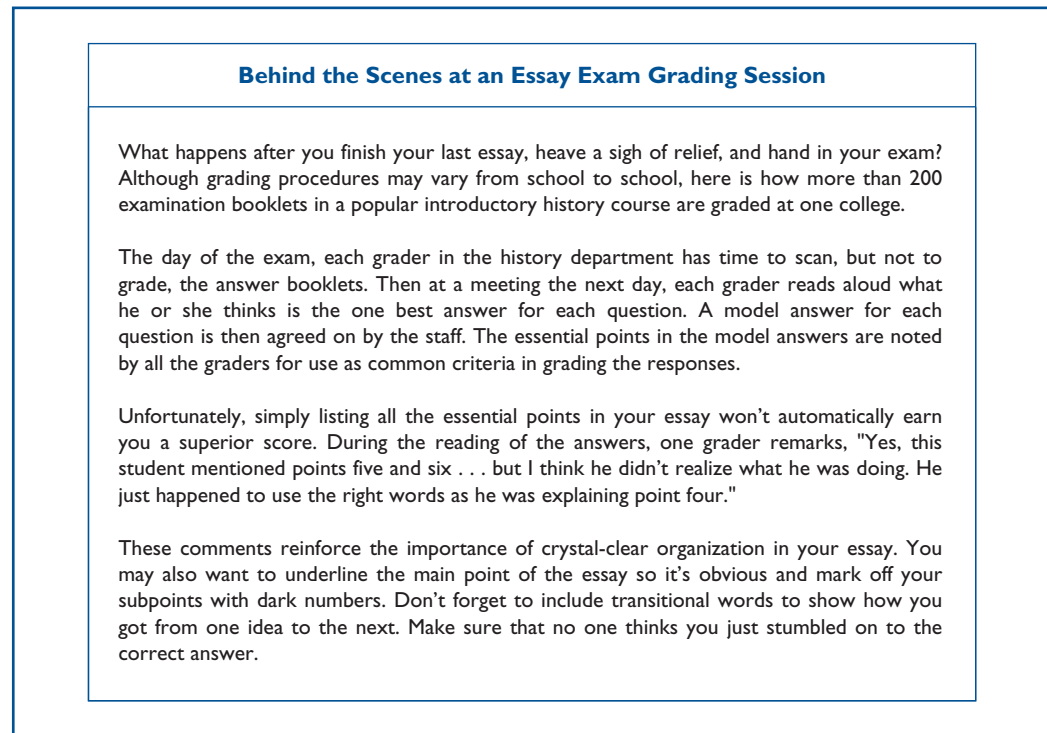
What kind of support should you include in your essay?

**Devote the Bulk of Your Essay to Supporting Your Answer** Instructors rarely include essay questions to learn how you *feel*. They want to find out how you *think* and what you *know*. The best way to make a good impression and earn a good grade is to write essays that are well supported. Back up your answer with solid evidence, support any general opinions, and steer clear of personal opinions unless they are specifically requested. Provide examples, details, and further evidence for your initial answer and its major points. If you can support your answer with ideas or sources that your instructor has stressed in class, you would be wise to do so. An essay that incorporates some of the instructor's "pet ideas" is more likely to be viewed in a positive light. According to respected educator Hugo Hartig, author of *The Idea of Composition*:

An alert student can easily identify these "pet ideas" and work them out carefully in his own words. The student who does this is prepared not only to see through the instructor's questions quite readily, but he also knows exactly how to answer them, using the teacher's own methods of problem solving! Perhaps this is the very essence of grade-getting in any course that depends heavily on essay exams.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Hugo Hartig, *The Idea of Composition* (Oshkosh, WI: Academia, 1974), p. 32.

**Figure 12.8**  
The Essay Grading  
Process



Don't assume that even general opinions will unquestionably be accepted as fact. As Hartig explains,

If you make the statement: "*Huckleberry Finn* is a masterpiece of American literature," and do not give any good reason to show that the statement is true, you get a zero for the statement.<sup>2</sup>

And finally, unless asked for them specifically, keep your personal opinions out of your essay. Informed or uninformed, knowledgeable or ignorant, all of us have opinions. But that's not what the instructor is looking for. The purpose of essay exams, after all, is to see what you've learned and how you can apply it.

How can you  
improve your essay's  
appearance?

**Pay Attention to Appearance as Well as to Content** In a carefully controlled experiment mixing neatly handwritten essay answers with others in which the handwriting was poor, instructors consistently gave better grades to the neater essays, even when they were word-for-word duplicates of the sloppy ones and graders were told explicitly

<sup>2</sup>Ibid., p. 31.

to grade the essays *solely on the basis of their content*. The appearance of your essay has an unconscious effect on how it gets graded. Manage that appearance by writing legibly and on only one side of the sheet, by leaving ample space around each essay, and by avoiding careless errors. Writing in pen instead of pencil will make almost any handwriting look better. If your handwriting is less than it should be, start using the modified printing style explained in Chapter 10. Write on only one side of each sheet of paper so the writing on one side won't show through to the other. Leaving a little "breathing room" around the edges of your essay will not only make your answer look tidier, but it will also provide room for any grader's comments and give you space to insert any last-minute facts or ideas. Above all, keep your essay free of needless errors in grammar or spelling, which can be every bit as costly to your grade as sloppy handwriting. As Hartig observes:

If you misspell common words, and make clumsy errors in sentence structure, or even if you write paragraphs that lack unity and coherence, many of your instructors are going to take it as a sure sign that you are sadly lacking in basic academic ability. Once a teacher thinks this about you, you will not get much credit for your ideas, even if they are brilliant.<sup>3</sup>

## Work Systematically

Why are students tempted to rush through exams?

When an exam is handed out, some students have difficulty resisting the temptation to jump right in. Confident students are often anxious to "get down to business" and show what they know; apprehensive test takers want to get the whole thing over with as quickly as possible. At first glance, these behaviors seem reasonable because time is limited. But if you take a few moments to plan a systematic response to the test, you'll be a lot more efficient as a result. A little preparation saves you a lot more time than it uses. You can make the most of your test-taking experience if you read before you answer, map out your time wisely, and use markings or jottings to help you move through the test more methodically and efficiently.

### Read Before You Answer

PLANNING

What causes some students to skip over the obvious step of reading?

It may sound silly to suggest reading through the test before you begin answering. After all, the advice seems obvious. But because of anxiety and time pressure, common sense is often a casualty, and many students skip the directions and even rush through the

<sup>3</sup>Ibid.



questions without paying attention to what they say. In the long run, cutting corners on these crucial elements of a test could cost you time and points. Take a few moments to read the directions before you make a single mark on your test and then read the questions carefully as well.

Why should you read the directions first?

### Read the Directions First

Exam directions often contain vital instructions for answering the questions. They may establish the length of your answers (one paragraph, three hundred words, five pages), the approach you should take (explain, compare, contrast, mark the two best options), the number of questions to be answered (say, half of the questions presented), or the overall time you've been allotted. If you miss such instructions, you may endanger your grade, waste a great deal of time, and even invite criticism for carelessness.

Why is it important to read each test question carefully?

### Read the Questions Carefully

The text of a test question is usually very dense. If it's an objective question, it may be peppered with clauses, qualifiers, or negatives that can have a huge impact on its meaning. If it's an essay question, as we've already seen, whether it says *evaluate*, *enumerate*, or *interpret* can make a big difference in the instructor's expectations for your answer. For that reason, read each question carefully to pick up important details and context. If the questions are part of an objective test, you can read each question as you encounter it. If the questions are part of an essay test, it's best to read all of the questions before you write anything. This will give you a better sense of how to budget your time. If you have a choice among questions, you will be able to select those for which you are best prepared. If you have to answer every question, you'll know in advance which ones will require the most attention. And if several questions tackle different aspects of the same topic or issue, you'll be able to avoid including information in one answer that should have been saved for another.

## Map Out Your Time

PLANNING

How can you map out your time?

Once you've carefully read over the directions and questions and jotted down any thoughts you may have, you should be able to get a realistic sense of how much time remains for answering the questions. Using this as a starting point, divide the time you have left by the number of questions to figure out roughly how much time you can spend on each question in order to complete the test. Stick as close to your time plan as you can, but don't become overly anxious or rigid about doing so.

Why should you answer the easiest questions first?

### Answer the Easiest Question First

A good way to get a head start is by tackling the easiest question first. Nothing inspires confidence and clear thinking more than answering one question right away. If the

first question has you stumped, don't let it deflate your morale and throw off your time plan. Just pick an easier question and build on the momentum that you get from answering it to your satisfaction.

**IT'S YOUR Q****Keep Your Schedule Flexible**

Of course, even with an easy question under your belt, your time schedule still may not go exactly as planned. It's important to keep your schedule flexible by developing strategies to deal both with a time shortage and a time surplus. If time is running out, zero in on any remaining easy questions and tackle them first. If you've got essay questions remaining, outline the key points you were trying to make in any unfinished questions. Instructors sometimes award partial credit when you can demonstrate that you know the material. If you finish early, use the surplus time to your advantage by going over your exam and re-checking your answers, especially any you were uncertain about. If you've answered essay questions, use any extra time to double-check your spelling and grammar, and, if necessary, insert words, phrases, and examples that may make your answers clearer.

**Use Markings and Jottings**

PLANNING

What should you jot on your question sheet?

In some exam settings, the most underused piece of paper is the question sheet itself. Except in tests in which the question and answer sheet are the same, in tests in which writing on the question sheet isn't allowed, or when the test is onscreen instead of on paper, you can often use the question sheet as a helpful scratch pad as you're progressing through the test. You can use the back of the sheet to jot down important ideas you want to remember. You can use the front to annotate questions, cross off certain items, and to highlight any questions that deserve extra attention.

What sort of notes should you jot on the back of your exam?

**Make Notes on the Back of Your Exam Sheet**

In the few minutes before you begin an exam, your brain may be buzzing with information you want to include or remember. Before you begin reading the test, unburden your mind by quickly jotting on the back of the exam sheet the ideas, facts, and details you think you may forget. Almost like a summary of your summary sheets, these jottings act as cues for the Silver Dollar ideas you gleaned from your lectures and readings (see Chapter 11). Furthermore, the action of writing these notes involves you in the exam immediately. But remember: You are graded for what you write on the front of the exam, so don't spend more than a minute or so jotting down reminders on the back.

What sort of markings should you add to each question?

**Annotate Each Question** As you read through each question, underline or circle important words that provide clues for answering that question. With objective questions, these will likely be the qualifiers and negatives that can make a simple question

more complex. With essay questions, these will be words such as *contrast*, *demonstrate*, *summarize*, or any other word or phrase that provides insights into the type of answer that is expected. If the directions ask for an essay answer, you may also want to keep track of any keywords or key phrases that come to mind by jotting them in the margin. Later, when you begin writing, use these jottings and those on the back of the exam sheet to help organize your answer.

What sorts of choices should you cross off?

**Cross Off Choices You've Used or Eliminated** If you're answering objective questions, you can cross off any multiple-choice options you've been able to eliminate or cross off the items in a matching question that you've already used. If you're taking an essay test and are expected to answer only some of the questions, cross off the questions you don't plan to answer. Then, as you answer the questions that remain, you can cross them off as well. In each case, whether you're answering essay questions or objective questions, crossing off items will help to simplify your job and provide the same sort of sense of accomplishment you get when you cross an item off a to do list.

What kinds of questions should you mark?

**Put a Mark Next to Questions Requiring Special Attention** Annotating certain questions with a circle or a check mark can make it easier to distinguish them from the rest of the questions in the test. Which questions you choose to mark depends on your purpose. If you're taking an essay test in which you have to answer only some of the questions, you might want to mark the questions you plan to complete. If you've answered an objective question but you're not confident about that answer, you could add the mark to remind you to go back and double-check your response if you have time. Regardless of the marking strategy you use, it should make taking a test a bit more efficient and methodical.

## Learn from Experience

What should you do with a test once it's been returned to you?

Once a test or quiz is over, whether you did well or you did poorly, the urge to "move on" or to "put it behind you" can be strong. Don't give in to temptation. The test is more than just a score. It's an informative record of how you perform on a variety of topics and question types. Before you stash the test in a desk drawer or worse, take a few minutes to systematically survey the results. To get the most out of returned exams, analyze your answers and then, based on your analysis, adjust your strategy for taking future tests.

## Analyze Your Answers

SUMMARIZING

REFRAMING

What can you learn from your test?

Unless you earned a perfect score, you missed some questions and answered others correctly. On some questions, particularly essay questions, your answer may be accompanied

by comments from the grader. You can learn something valuable from your mistakes, from your correct answers, and especially from any comments on your test.

What questions should you ask yourself as you analyze your mistakes?

**Examine Your Mistakes** Look over any objective questions you missed and, if the answer hasn't been provided for you, see if you can figure out what it was supposed to be. If the answer is provided, try to discover why you didn't choose it. Was it a case of failing to recall a detail or fact? Misunderstanding an important idea or concept? Or did you misinterpret the wording of the question? Seeking the correct answer in this way will encourage you to reflect on your answers. This reflection should help to strengthen your memory of the correct information, so it will be more readily available the next time you should need it.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

**Inventory Your Correct Answers** Oddly enough, wrong answers probably provide more information, but you can learn from your correct answers as well. Take an inventory of the questions you answered correctly. Is there a pattern you detect? Do you perform better on multiple-choice questions than on true-false? Are you better at essay questions than objective questions? Do you remember dates but forget names? Are you good at details but bad at concepts? Once again, these questions encourage reflection and help you to arrive at some conclusions that you can use in preparing for future tests.

Why are the grader's comments valuable?

**Pay Close Attention to Comments** Carefully look over any comments that the instructor or grader has added to your test sheet. What did he or she like? Dislike? Some instructors may not clearly articulate their standards or preferences in class but will convey them in comments on a test paper, especially in the case of essay questions. Analyze these comments and see if you can draw some conclusions about the instructor's expectations for test answers.

### Plot a Course Correction

REFRAMING

SELF-DIRECTION

What similarities do students and navigators share?

Navigators at sea, on land, in the air, and even in space share some qualities in common: They all point their craft toward a destination and then carefully map out a route designed to get them there. That's how it's supposed to work, in theory. But in real life, the wind may shift, a road could be closed, a storm might blow in, or an engine could lose power. It's a rare route that doesn't require some sort of adjustment along the way. Navigators rely on constant feedback to determine whether a course correction is needed. In the same way, tests are your feedback as you head toward your academic goals. Depending on your own specific analysis of the test you've just taken, you may need to place greater emphasis on mastering the type of information you missed, gaining additional practice on types of questions you seem to struggle with, or working at moving through your tests more methodically. And if none of these strategies seems

as though it will help to get you back on track, it might be a good idea to make an appointment to get your instructor's perspective or arrange to have a tutor provide you with the extra assistance you require.

## FINAL WORDS

---

Exams don't have to be situations of stress. They can actually be times of great triumph. Know your material, know your test site, and know as much as you ethically can about the content of the upcoming test. But above all, know yourself. Learn to distinguish a natural sense of excitement from a damaging feeling of doom. Keep in mind that some of the world's greatest actors still feel nervous when they first walk on stage. But these actors quickly settle down when they realize the obvious: They know their lines and they know their abilities. Like an accomplished actor, with preparation and confidence you can overcome your initial hesitation and be a star.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

1. One of the most obvious but overlooked sources of information on an upcoming exam is your \_\_\_\_\_.

**instructor****textbook****intuition**

2. In a test question, the qualifiers should be \_\_\_\_\_.

**avoided****circled****defined**

3. Key points in an unfinished essay should be \_\_\_\_\_.

**outlined****combined****deleted**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| _____ 1. Introduction     | a. Allows for late additions as well as for instructor's comments       |
| _____ 2. Context          | b. Is provided when you read the entire question                        |
| _____ 3. "Switch hitting" | c. Statement that starts off a multiple-choice question                 |
| _____ 4. Homestretch      | d. Schedule that ties up loose ends as exam week approaches             |
| _____ 5. Reflection       | e. Often provide specifics on how each question should be answered      |
| _____ 6. Directions       | f. Should be left off to ensure that your essay gets right to the point |
| _____ 7. Space            | g. Added benefit that comes from creating advanced summary sheets       |
| _____ 8. Stem             | h. Mastering possible test material from both sides                     |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

1. T F If you've been using the Silver Dollar System, creating summary sheets should be relatively easy.
2. T F By finals week, the bulk of your exam preparation should be completed.
3. T F For a statement to be marked true, it must be entirely true.

4. T F With a sentence-completion question, the length of the blank dictates the size of the answer.
5. T F The appearance of your essay will have no influence on your grade.

**MULTIPLE CHOICE**

*Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.*

1. During exam week, it is OK to skip
  - a. meals.
  - b. sleep.
  - c. recreation.
  - d. none of the above.
2. Deep breathing can be used to produce feelings of
  - a. relaxation.
  - b. fatigue.
  - c. anxiety.
  - d. resentment.
3. A multiple-choice question can be viewed as a series of
  - a. stems.
  - b. qualifiers.
  - c. true-false statements.
  - d. decoys or distracters.
4. Jotting down notes on the back of the test sheet
  - a. gets you involved right away.
  - b. is usually not permitted in an essay exam.
  - c. takes time that could be better spent.
  - d. will often gain you partial credit.
5. Keywords in an essay question should be
  - a. paraphrased.
  - b. circled.
  - c. discussed.
  - d. replaced.

## REFLECTION

Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.

1. What is your biggest source of test anxiety? Explain how you hope to use a technique or method from this chapter to cope with that anxiety in the future.
2. Which type of objective question—true-false, multiple-choice, matching, sentence-completion—do you prefer? Which do you like the least? Why? Given what you now understand about how these questions are constructed, how do you think this will influence your preferences from now on?
3. Do you make a point of reviewing and analyzing your tests once they are returned to you? If so, can you cite a case in which doing this helped you to do better on a future test? If not, can you explain why you haven't done so up until now?

## IT'S YOUR Q

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, reread the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

## VOCABULARY IN ACTION

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

## SAY WHAT?

From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.

If you are going to achieve *excellence* in big things, you develop the habit in little matters. Excellence is not an *exception*, it is a *prevailing* attitude.

—Colin Powell (1937—), American statesman and retired Army general

- |                      |             |             |             |
|----------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>excellence</i> | superiority | speed       | notoriety   |
| 2. <i>exception</i>  | objection   | rarity      | acquisition |
| 3. <i>prevailing</i> | victorious  | predominant | ordinary    |



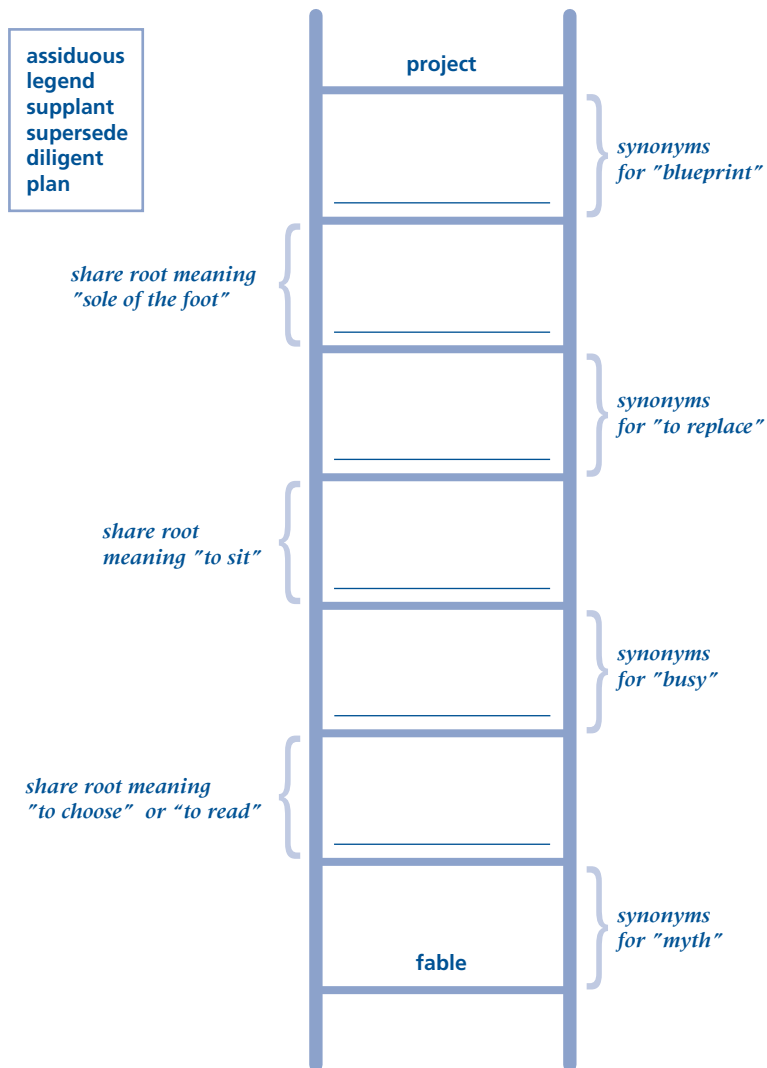
Journalism is the only profession *explicitly* protected by the U.S. Constitution, because journalists are supposed to be the *check* and balance on government.

—Amy Goodman (1957—), American journalist

- |                      |           |           |              |
|----------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|
| 4. <i>explicitly</i> | expressly | obviously | suggestively |
| 5. <i>check</i>      | payment   | restraint | inspection   |

### VOCAB-U-LADDER

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

### **Test** Exams may test your mettle, but the first tests tested metal

**test** *tĕst* *n.* 1. A procedure for critical evaluation; a means of determining the presence, quality, or truth of something; a trial. 2. A series of questions, problems, or physical responses designed to determine knowledge, intelligence, or ability.\*

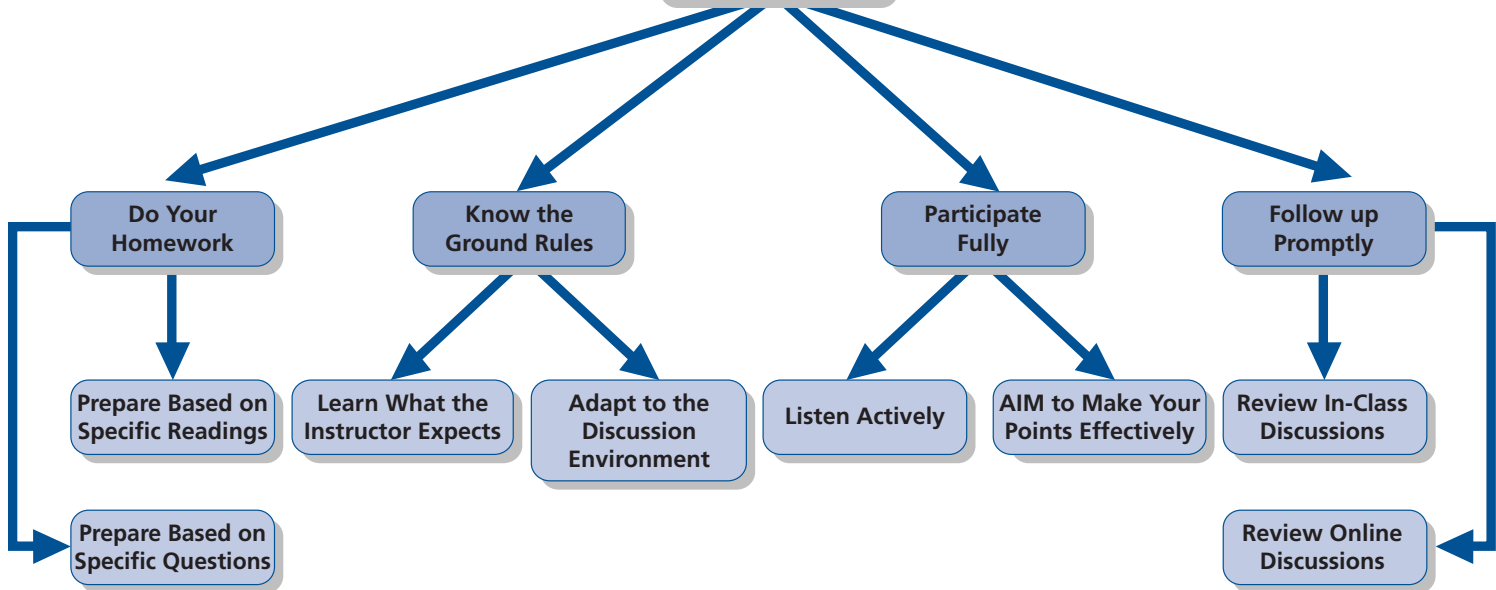
Few words strike fear in the heart of students more than the word *test*. And yet *test* comes from a tool called a *testum* that was once used for a rather mundane, methodical purpose. The Latin word *testum* was a fireproof container, often made out of clay. It comes from another Latin word *testa*, which described an earthen pot or shell (which in turn grew out of another Latin word *testudo* for tortoise!). In ancient times, metals such as gold and silver were considered valuable, just as they are today. But it was necessary to determine whether a seller's silver was pure or his gold was in fact "as good as gold." As a result, experts would confirm the purity of the metals by melting a small sample in the *testum*. In time, the word for the pot used for testing your metal was expanded to include evaluations of all types, including the kind you take in a classroom with a blue book or a No. 2 pencil. By the way, what is the term used for testing metal in a *testum*? Assaying. Sound familiar? It should. It shares its root with "essay," still a key part of many modern-day tests.\*\*

\* Adapted from "test." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/test> (accessed May 26, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from "test." *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/test> (accessed May 26, 2009).; "test." *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=test> (accessed May 26, 2009).; "test, *n.*" *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; "test, *n.*" *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50249695> (accessed May 26, 2009).



**Get the Most out of Discussions**



# Get the Most out of Discussions

*The most fruitful and natural exercise of our mind, in my opinion, is discussion.*

**Michel de Montaigne**  
(1533–1592), French essayist

Do you want to raise the stakes for recitation? Do you want to do some high-quality reflection on the ideas you've learned from your lectures and texts? Some of the most valuable learning you can do comes from what is often the least valuable part of your overall grade. And yet, online or in class, discussions are a precious tool in the pursuit of knowledge. This chapter explains how to get the most out of discussions:

- **Do Your Homework**
- **Know the Ground Rules**
- **Participate Fully**
- **Follow Up Promptly**

Why are discussions not given more respect?

Discussions, whether held in class or online, are perhaps the most underappreciated component of any course. Why are discussions unsung? Part of it may be because their bearing on your grade—if they are graded at all—is relatively small. It may also be because discussions involve the significant participation of “ordinary people”—you and your classmates—instead of the “experts” who write textbooks or deliver lectures.

What are the benefits of discussions?

The potential benefit from discussions in fostering true understanding and long-lasting knowledge is huge. Discussions can breathe life into dormant ideas. They encourage active learning, allow for a kind of recitation that rivals most solitary study, and, perhaps most important, provide an opportunity to reflect on ideas through the perspectives of multiple minds instead of simply your own. That’s why it’s vital to treat discussions with the respect they deserve.

How do you get the most out of discussions?

To get the most out of a discussion, approach each one well prepared, make sure you’re familiar with any ground rules your instructor has laid out, remain fully engaged throughout, and finally, review each discussion while it is still fresh in your mind.

## Do Your Homework

What can you do to prepare for discussions in general?

The good thing about preparing for discussions is that, for the most part, if you’ve been keeping up with your assignments and reciting and reflecting on your textbook and lecture notes, then you should be well prepared already. Of course, sometimes you learn a little more about the scope of the discussion. Perhaps the instructor has set specific guidelines, such as “Read Chapter 5 and be prepared to discuss it on Monday,” or has supplied one or more specific questions designed to start a discussion going. In either case, you can focus your study so you are better prepared for the discussion.

### Prepare Based on Specific Readings

OVERVIEWING

PLANNING

#### IT’S YOUR Q

If the instructor suggests that the discussion will revolve around a specific chapter or section, take your notes from that portion of the text and use them to create summary sheets similar to those discussed in Chapter 12. If you are more visually inclined, take a blank sheet of paper and write down some of the assigned text’s important names, terms, and concepts, and then draw connectors between those items that are related. Annotate the connectors with brief explanations of each relationship. Your annotations might include words and phrases such as “worked with,” “discovered,” “invented,” “opposed,” and “led to.” The resulting map should give you a “big picture” sense of what’s important in the reading.

## Prepare Based on Specific Questions

OVERVIEWING

PLANNING

How should you prepare if you are given the discussion questions in advance?

If the instructor has given you one or more questions that will serve as the basis for the discussion, it's a bit like preparing for a live-action essay test. Search back into your notes for material that relates to the question or questions. Consolidate that material into summary sheets or create a concept map that pulls together all the important names, terms, and concepts onto a single sheet, and then draw connectors between related items. In either scenario, you should be able to use the resulting summary sheet or concept map as a “cheat sheet” during the discussion, regardless of whether takes place in class or online.

## Know the Ground Rules

What are the ground rules for discussions?

To get the most out of class discussions, it helps to know the ground rules. That means learning the instructor's expectations and getting acquainted with the specific discussion environment.

## Learn What the Instructor Expects

OVERVIEWING

What should you know about your instructor's expectations for discussions?

Instructors' expectations for discussions can vary widely. However, you can usually get a better handle on the role discussions play in a specific class by learning the percentage of your grade that will come from the discussion part of the course and by reading any guidelines the instructor may have provided for taking part in discussions.

### Find Out the Grade Percentage

How does it help to know the number of points allocated for discussions?

If you haven't done so already, check the class syllabus or the course website to see how your instructor has divided up the components that make up your semester grade. Discussions—sometimes just called “class participation”—often account for the smallest percentage of your grade, but not always. With the increasing popularity of online discussions, some instructors are placing added emphasis on your ability to carry on a discussion based on what you've read in your text or learned in a lecture. At any rate, it can be risky or reckless to take this part of your class for granted. Even in cases in which the instructor doesn't officially award any points for discussions, your ability to successfully articulate key ideas from the course in a discussion may color the instructor's overall perception of your performance. Besides, discussions provide an excellent “dress rehearsal” for essay tests and can sometimes serve as an early warning sign if you are struggling with the concepts in your class.



What is the value of knowing the instructor's discussion guidelines?

### Read Any Guidelines

Some instructors like to keep the guidelines for the class participation portion of your grade rather vague so they have the flexibility to give you extra points (or take them away) at their own discretion. Others are very specific about the criteria they use for awarding your discussion or participation grade. Check to see if your instructor has furnished some guidelines for discussion performance. This can provide a goal you can aim for and may also alert you to any specific discussion dos and don'ts as far as the instructor is concerned.

## Adapt to the Discussion Environment

REFRAMING

What should you do to adapt to your discussion environment?

It wasn't all that long ago when class discussions could be understood to take place in only one environment: the classroom. But things have changed. More and more colleges and universities are conducting class discussions online. That doesn't mean that in-class discussions don't still exist. They definitely do. Some instructors may have moved their discussions online, but others continue to hold them in the classroom. Still others go with a mixture of both.

What are some key differences between classroom discussions and online ones?

Many of the guidelines for discussions hold true whether you're discussing something face to face or keyboard to keyboard. But there are some conspicuous differences between the real and online discussion worlds, and just as knowing your audience is important if you're a writer or a speaker, understanding your environment is essential if you're taking part in a discussion. Figure 13.1 compares the classroom and online discussion environments.

### Learn the Ropes If You're New to Discussion Software

Although the basic design for many online discussions is similar, their superficial appearance can sometimes be quite different. As a result, it's best to learn the basics of your class's particular discussion software so that you can become familiar with its layout and capabilities.

- *Follow the demo or tutorial.* Depending on the course management software you are using, there may be an interactive demo (demonstration) or tutorial available that will walk you through the functions you are most likely to use in an online discussion.
- *Get assistance from a fellow student.* If you're new to discussion software or uncomfortable using it, you may be able to find a friend at school or someone else in your class who can help you with the basics.
- *Contact your campus learning lab or skills center.* If your campus uses discussion software, it's likely that the entire school has adopted the same program. If so, someone at the learning lab or skills center should be able to help you out.

**Figure 13.1**  
**How Classroom and**  
**Online Discussions**  
**Compare**

	Classroom Discussions	Online Discussions
How can I keep track of the key points in a discussion?	Your notes, ears, and memory are your only real means of navigating an in-class discussion.	Threaded messages provide a helpful visual representation for organizing related comments.
What are some suggestions for planning the points I'm going to make?	Although writing cue cards or using regular notes can sometimes be helpful, delivering prewritten comments verbatim will sound awkward and obvious to all.	With asynchronous discussions, you can take your time. It's recommended but not essential to have some notes prepared in advance.
How should I handle any sources in my comment?	Paraphrasing a source is usually preferable to reading a direct quotation, although you must still be sure to attribute it.	Cutting and pasting quotations from your text or notes is usually permitted, but you must be certain to provide attribution.
What factors can affect the meaning of my message?	For better or worse, your posture, facial expression, and tone of voice are all elements of your message.	Without spoken or visual cues, careful phrasing and proper context are crucial if you don't want to be misunderstood.
When is it best to contribute my comment?	Wait for an opening. Participants aren't supposed to talk at once or interrupt each other during a classroom discussion.	Contribute when you can. Simultaneous posting is common although it can sometimes have the same effect as when letters (or e-mail messages) cross in the mail.
What happens to my comments once I've made them?	In-class comments are ephemeral. Impressions of what you said may linger, and your ideas may be retained in the notes of others, but your exact words are fleeting.	Your comments can be read and reread by others for days and weeks after you first posted them. Great insights and glaring errors are immortalized. So be careful!
What if I make a point that someone has already made?	If you've been paying attention, the chances of accidentally repeating someone else's point are quite small. Redundancy provides a sure indication that you haven't been participating actively.	The risks of inadvertently repeating a point that has already been made are greater than in a classroom discussion. Try to be sure you've read all earlier comments before posting.

- *Ask your instructor.* If you can't figure out your discussion software on your own and have been unable to get help from a tutorial, a fellow student, or someone at the learning lab, check with your instructor. But before you do, carefully check the instructor's syllabus or website to make sure they don't already provide advice or instructions for learning the software or a link to a site that will provide help. If no help is available, your instructor should be willing to provide some assistance. But if you ask the instructor for help that she or he has already provided elsewhere, you may start class off on the wrong foot.
- *Don't delay in getting assistance.* If your class uses discussion software, try to test it out at your earliest opportunity so you can seek help promptly if you need it. The longer you wait, the harder it may be to get help.

## Participate Fully

How do you participate fully in a classroom or online discussion?

Regardless of whether your class discussions count for very little or make up a substantial part of your grade, you'll waste precious time and squander a valuable resource if you fail to participate fully in the exchange. Your full participation isn't just based on how many original points you make—although that can certainly be a factor. It begins when you listen actively and can use what you've just heard or read online to contribute your own ideas effectively.

### Listen Actively

SELF-DIRECTION

REFRAMING

#### IT'S YOUR Q

"Online discussions have changed *everything*." Breathless claims such as this often seem to accompany the introduction of new media or methods. Granted, as we've seen, there are obvious differences between carrying on a discussion in a classroom and participating in one on a computer screen. But just as the evolution from pen to typewriter to personal computer hasn't altered the basic rules for writing, online discussions haven't changed the fundamental guidelines for good listening, even when that "listening" is *e-listening* and is done with the eyes instead of the ears. Figure 13.2 presents a short quiz to help you learn where you stand as a listener. Although originally designed for analyzing "standard" listening, you'll see that the questions are just as relevant online as they are in the classroom. All you need to do is recognize the habits of a poor listener as well as the techniques used by a good listener. Then, knowing the good techniques, apply them in all your daily activities. You can make a fresh and immediate start today by referring to Figure 13.3, which lists the ten most important keys to effective listening.

What does it take to be a good listener?

Being a good listener or e-listener means being fully engaged in what goes on in a lecture or discussion. It is a conscious activity that grows out of three basic skills: *attitude*, *attention*, and *adjustment*. These skills are known collectively as *triple-A listening*.

Why do you need a positive attitude to listen effectively?

#### A<sub>1</sub>: Maintain a Positive Attitude

You can take many steps to improve your listening, but the primary prerequisite to effective listening is a positive mental attitude. A positive attitude sets the stage for the open-mindedness that is essential to learning and comprehension. As businessman and author Kevin J. Murphy says in *Effective Listening*, "Minds are like parachutes; they only function when open."<sup>1</sup> You must walk into the classroom or log on to a threaded discussion convinced that you will acquire new information and insights and learn things

<sup>1</sup>Kevin J. Murphy, *Effective Listening: Hearing What People Say and Making It Work for You* (New York: Bantam Books, 1987), p. 28.

**Figure 13.2**  
**Listening Habits**

Source: Adapted from Ralph G. Nichols and Thomas R. Lewis, "Listening and Speaking", by Dr. Lyman K. Steil, Communication Development, Inc., St. Paul, MN. Reprinted with permission of Dr. Steil and the Unisys Corporation.

How often do you find yourself engaging in these ten bad habits of listening? Check the appropriate columns.						
How often do you ...	Frequency					Score
	Almost always	Usually	Sometimes	Seldom	Almost never	
Decide that the topic is boring?						
Criticize the speaker?						
Overreact by disagreeing?						
Listen only for bare facts?						
Outline everything?						
Fake attention?						
Yield to distractions?						
Avoid listening to tough technical information?						
Let emotion-laden words arouse personal antagonism?						
Waste thought speed by daydreaming?						
Total score						
<b>Tally your score as follows:</b>		<b>Interpret your score as follows:</b>				
<b>Almost always</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Below 70</b>	<b>Need training in listening</b>			
<b>Usually</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>70 to 90</b>	<b>You listen well</b>			
<b>Sometimes</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Above 90</b>	<b>Extraordinarily good listener</b>			
<b>Seldom</b>	<b>8</b>					
<b>Almost never</b>	<b>10</b>					

of real value. No matter how diligently and conscientiously you reflect on information on your own, it's unlikely that you will be able to rival the benefits you gain from the exciting ideas and multiple perspectives that good discussions can provide.

How do you cultivate a positive attitude?

Cultivating a positive attitude isn't always easy. But it is worth the effort. If you're struggling to do so, try finding areas of interest in what others have to say, judge the

**Figure 13.3**  
**Ten Keys to Effective Listening**

Source: Reprinted by permission of Unisys Corporation.

Keys to Effective Listening	The Poor Listener	The Good Listener
1. Find areas of interest	Tunes out dry topics.	Seizes opportunities: "What's in it for me?"
2. Judge content, not delivery	Tunes out if delivery is poor.	Judges content, skips over delivery errors.
3. Hold your fire	Tends to enter into argument.	Doesn't judge until comprehension is complete.
4. Listen for ideas	Listens for facts.	Listens for central themes.
5. Be a flexible note taker	Is busy with form, misses content.	Adjusts to topic and organizational pattern.
6. Work at listening	Shows no energy output, fakes attention.	Works hard; exhibits alertness.
7. Resist distractions	Is distracted easily.	Fights or avoids distractions; tolerates bad habits in others; knows how to concentrate.
8. Exercise your mind	Resists difficult expository material; seeks light, recreational material.	Uses heavier material as exercise for the mind.
9. Keep your mind open	Reacts to emotional words.	Interprets emotional words; does not get hung up on them.
10. Thought is faster than speech; use it	Tends to daydream with slow speakers.	Challenges, anticipates, mentally summarizes, weighs the evidence, listens between the lines to tone of voice.

content of their points instead of the delivery, and hold your fire if you're inclined to lash out at those things you don't agree with.

How can you find areas of interest in "boring" ideas?

**Find Areas of Interest** It doesn't take any talent to brand someone else's ideas as "boring." Anyone can do that. Discussions are a cooperative activity. You can usually find some aspect of another person's comments that appeals to your personal interests.

What if you can't find anything that interests you?

Of course, you can't always immediately find something that captures your interest. Remember the James-Lange theory from Chapter 4? Although we usually think that emotions trigger physical reactions (when you're happy, you smile), a number of recent studies have turned this idea on its head. In other words, smiling can sometimes make you happy. In the same way, acting interested in something that doesn't immediately interest you can sometimes lead to genuine interest! Pay close attention to what's being posted or said, take notes vigorously, and show interest by your facial expression, even if you are by yourself and sitting at the computer. In time, real interest may emerge where none existed.

What's the most important aspect of a discussion comment?

**Judge Content, Not Delivery** Listeners are sometimes terribly rude or downright cruel to people whose delivery fails to measure up to some preconceived standard. Keep in mind that great thinkers aren't always excellent writers or orators. The most important aspect of a comment is its content, not the way it's delivered. Try to approach each comment with a humane attitude. Concentrate on the substance of the remark instead of how it's expressed. If you do, you'll emerge with a positive self-image. You will also learn something.

What should you do if someone writes or says something you don't agree with?

**Hold Your Fire** In college you're bound to be exposed to ideas that are different from or even contrary to those you hold. When this happens, your knee-jerk reaction may be to speak up immediately to defend your position. Hold your fire! Try to fully grasp the differing viewpoint even if you strongly disagree with it. If you shift all your focus to rebutting a point you don't agree with, you'll be unable to concentrate on the rest of the remark. In a war of words of this type, understanding is often the first casualty.

Why is attention important?

### **A<sub>2</sub>: Strive to Pay Attention**

Attention is the path that will lead you into the wonderful state of concentration. Without concentration there is no focus, and without focus there is almost no learning. If you pay attention and concentrate, you will become an active listener able to synthesize new information with facts and ideas you've already known.

How can you build anticipation?

Attention often thrives on anticipation. Before a discussion, look over your notes from the latest lecture and your most recent textbook assignment. Once the discussion starts, let your mind dart ahead (during pauses) to anticipate what's coming next. You'll be alert, engrossed in the material, and concentrating 100 percent.

What should your attention be focused on?

Of course, as we learned in Chapter 3, you cannot attain concentration by concentrating on concentration. Your attention must focus on the discussion, not on the act of concentration itself. Deep cognition, or deep thinking, is vital. Whether you hear a discussion or read it online, the words enter your working memory, where they have to be swiftly processed into ideas to avoid getting dumped from your memory altogether. Active participation ensures the words' survival. If you process them into ideas, those ideas will be stored in your long-term memory almost instantly.

How can you foster the kind of attention that leads to concentration?

You can foster the kind of attention that leads to concentration by focusing on ideas instead of facts, by working to stay fully engaged, by tuning out distractions, and by using the natural lag between speech and thought to forge ahead in your mind in order to consider the current point and anticipate the next one.

What's the drawback of listening for facts instead of ideas?

**Listen for Ideas** Don't imitate the detective who says, "The facts, ma'am, just stick to the facts." Sure, facts are important. And it's true that they're often what you'll be tested on. But facts in isolation don't hold together well. In order to organize information both in your notes and your memory, look to the ideas that lie behind the facts. Strive to uncover the principle or idea that each fact is supporting. Try to see how the pieces of the puzzle fit into the big picture.

How do you work at listening?

**Work at Listening** Listening isn't a passive activity; it requires true participation. Good listeners are fully engaged, outwardly calm, but inwardly dynamic; and they sit toward the front of the classroom. While taking notes, the listener may nod in agreement or look quizzical when the presentation becomes unclear. These sorts of gestures aren't just for effect. Such activity actually promotes comprehension and learning by the listener and provides encouragement to the speaker.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

**Resist Distractions** There are distractions aplenty in the classroom: antics of other students, whispering, the speaker's dress and mannerisms, outside noise, and outside views. In some classes, students may actually be browsing the Web or sending text messages while the lecturer is speaking! The best way to resist distractions and maintain your concentration is to rivet your eyes on the speaker when you have a chance and focus on taking notes the rest of the time. You may also want to consider sitting close to the front. The level of distraction tends to increase as you move farther away from the instructor, especially in large lecture halls. If your discussion is an online one, you can minimize the risk of distractions by clearing away from your field of view anything that doesn't directly relate to the discussion. Don't let the fact that you may be sitting around in sweatpants in a cluttered dorm room discourage you from focusing just as intently as you would if the discussion were taking place in a traditional classroom.

How can you take advantage of thought speed?

**Use Your Thought Speed** In a race of ideas, thought is swifter than spoken words and even speedier than typed ones. Most of us can grasp the gist of a point faster than someone can express it. This "thought speed" leaves a bit of a lag during which your mind is apt to wander. Rather than using this time to daydream or to dart off on mental side trips, devote it to thinking more deeply about what has just been typed or said. Mentally enumerate the ideas that have been expressed and summarize them until it's time to shift your focus back to the comments. Keep alternating in this fashion throughout the discussion.

Why is adjustment so important to active participation?

#### A<sub>3</sub>: Cultivate a Capacity for Adjustment

Even though the discussion may start out with a very specific topic or question, you still need to be mentally limber enough to follow its inevitable twists and turns. You can't simply tune out the parts that don't fit with your expectations. You have to be able to



“roll with the punches.” That’s why adjustment is such an important component of active participation. You can cultivate your capacity for adjustment by remaining flexible while taking notes, by exercising your mind through exposing it to complex or different ideas, and by keeping your mind open to ideas and information that you may initially want to tune out.

What is the key to being a flexible note taker?

**Be a Flexible Note Taker** Flexibility in note taking depends on informed participation. Informed participation means being able to identify the organizational patterns used by discussion participants. Organizational patterns are easily recognizable if you know their basic structures in advance. (Several of the most common organizational patterns are described in Chapter 10.) Once you have detected a pattern, you’ll have a framework you can use to anticipate the form of the message and adjust the way you record your notes. Similarly, when someone suddenly shifts gears and adopts a different pattern, a flexible note taker should be able to adjust and reframe accordingly.

How can you exercise your mind to become a better listener?

**Exercise Your Mind** From time to time, try to sit in on discussions of topics you know very little about or that you may consider to be “over your head.” When you do, make a serious effort to follow the chain of thoughts and ideas. True, some parts may be unintelligible to you, but you’re bound to understand other parts of it. Such participation can be hard work, but in the same way that hard work at a gym can strengthen your muscles, the hard work of following strange or difficult ideas will strengthen your will to concentrate and your power to persist.

What can you do to prevent highly charged words from interfering with your participation?

**Keep Your Mind Open** It’s hard to believe that a single word or phrase can cause an emotional eruption. But all of us can be susceptible to these reactions from time to time. In class, such words can raise the blood pressure or even trigger an outburst. Online, they can prompt nasty messages commonly known as *flames*. Notorious hot-button words include *activist*, *fundamentalist*, *liberal*, *conservative*, *evolution*, *creationism*, *feminist*, *abortion*, *pro-life*, and *free market*. Dealing with highly charged language is similar to dealing with a fear or phobia. Often, the emotional impact of the words can be decreased through a frank and open discussion. Don’t be so inflexible as to totally shut out opposing ideas, as incendiary as they may seem at first. Genuinely listen to the other point of view or read it thoughtfully if it has been posted online. You might learn something that you didn’t know before.

### AIM to Make Your Points Effectively

SELF-DIRECTION

PLANNING

What should you do to truly be part of a discussion?

You can’t truly be part of a discussion if you aren’t participating actively. But even if you’re conscientiously maintaining a positive attitude, working hard to pay attention, and nimbly adjusting to the discussion’s unexpected twists and turns, you’re unlikely to add anything to your grade until you take advantage of your active participation and chime in yourself.



How can you add something valuable to a discussion?

But how do you do it? You can't just jump recklessly into the fray. There's a real risk that a callous or careless contributor will do more harm to his or her grade than someone who rarely pipes up. To earn a good grade from your instructor, the respect of your classmates, and to truly add something valuable to a discussion, whether in-class or online, your AIM should be to make your points Accurate, Interactive, and Memorable.

What do you need to make sure your points are accurate?

### Make Your Points Accurate

On one level, the expectations for the points you make in discussions are not all that different than those for essay answers you write. They need to be well supported and well expressed.

How can you make sure that your comments are well supported?

**Make Sure Your Comments Are Well Supported** A discussion comment typically begins with some sort of assertion that is then fleshed out with facts. Sometimes the instructor will jump-start a discussion with an assertion of her or his own or a quotation from a respected source and then look to you and your classmates to explore its implications. Other times, you may introduce the assertion yourself. Unlike in essays, opinions are usually acceptable in discussions, but they still need to be backed up with material from your lectures or readings. It's legitimate to say either "I think Martin Luther King would be appalled by the state of the world if he were living today" or "I think Martin Luther King would be pleased by the state of the world if he were living today" as long as you can support your contention with evidence, examples, facts, and reasons.

How are comments best expressed in online or classroom discussions?

**Make Sure Your Comments Are Well Expressed** Even the best-supported assertions can still suffer if they are poorly expressed. Poorly expressed statements in a discussion—like bad handwriting in an essay—have a way of undermining otherwise good ideas. In online discussions, that means you should write in clear, complete, properly punctuated, grammatical sentences with words and names spelled correctly. Because most online discussions are asynchronous, don't be in such a hurry to respond that you post something sloppy. If your course management software doesn't include a spell-checker, type your comment in a blank document of your word processor and then do a spell-check before adding it to the discussion. If you are making your comments in the classroom instead of online, it still pays to think in terms of the written word. Try to visualize the sentences as you are saying them, ending each with a period and including transitions to make your argument easier to follow. Simply visualizing such structures will almost automatically transform you into a thinking-on-your-feet kind of speaker instead of a shooting-off-your-mouth one. In sum, you'll be thinking rather than just rambling. When you come to the end of your point, a summarizing sentence—ending with a period—will be impressive.

How are discussion points interactive?

### Make Your Points Interactive

The emphasis on well-supported, well-expressed points may share something in common with essay answers, but discussions are fundamentally different in one crucial

respect. They're interactive. Each comment you make should connect in some way to the others, and each person who participates in the discussion should be part of the group instead of acting as a lone wolf.

What can you do to connect your comments to the rest of the discussion?

**Keep the Comments Connected** Skillfully integrate your comments into the general discussion by keeping to the topic at hand, steering clear of loose threads, and refraining from being a rubber stamp.

1. *Stay on topic.* Your comments may be interesting and even important, but if they're off the subject, they're irrelevant to the current discussion. Save them for the appropriate forum. If you're taking part in an online discussion, you may be able to start a new topic thread or add your comment to another existing discussion, but don't gum up the current one with needless detours or digressions. They don't reflect well on your ability to think in a clear and disciplined fashion.
2. *Avoid loose threads.* Even if your comment is on topic, it shouldn't just dangle freely. Work to weave it into the overall fabric of the discussion by referring specifically to other comments and then by supporting, refuting, or refining them.
3. *Don't be a rubber stamp.* "Me too" adds nothing to a discussion. If you agree with another comment, that's fine. But cite specific information from lectures or readings that explains why you concur. Above all, be sure to avoid making a point that has already been made. Redundancy provides a sure sign to your classmates and, more important, to your instructor, that you haven't been paying attention.

What steps can you take to keep the other members of the discussion in mind?

**Keep the Others in Mind** Just as you want to make sure that your discussion comments fit into the topic at hand, it's also important that you make an effort to keep your classmates in mind by tying in their comments, treating them with sensitivity, keeping your voice down, and pausing for effect.

1. *Tie in the comments of others.* Even if the instructor started things off, it's good to try to relate your comment to the points made by several other classmates. Beginning your comment with a phrase such as "Although I share Anil and Julie's concerns, I am more inclined to agree with Juan that . . ." will help to make it clear that you have not only read or listened to the other comments but that you have actually *thought* about them.
2. *Be a diplomat.* There's a difference between being forceful and being rude. Don't let strong opinions overwhelm your ability to be civil and respectful. Be especially careful to steer clear of sarcasm, which may grant you a moment of supremacy but can lead to some long-term resentment. This can be tricky in online discussions in which you don't have the benefit of your facial expressions or your tone of voice to help make your intentions clear. Play it safe and make your comments constructive and straightforward.
3. *Turn the volume down.* Obviously, you need to be heard, but yelling isn't going to make your point any clearer. Let your choice of words, not their volume, provide

the oomph in your assertion. Similarly, when posting to an online discussion, refrain from posting messages in all capital letters, which is generally considered to be the typographical equivalent to yelling.

4. *Take a breath.* Pauses not only give you a second to collect your thoughts and come up with a good opener, but if you're participating in a classroom discussion, the brief, unanticipated silence can actually stimulate the interest of the others. Most people view it as a signal that something important is coming. Online, you can provide the equivalent of pauses by breaking your post into paragraphs instead of adding an uninterrupted block of text.

### Make Your Points Memorable

What helps to make your discussion comments memorable?

The interactive nature of discussions often provides insights and perspectives that couldn't be gained from individual study. But if your contributions are going to be a key part of the process and—from a practical standpoint—if they are going to earn you suitable recognition from your instructor and a superior grade, you need to ensure that your contributions are memorable by striving to make them easy to follow and fresh.

How can you make your points easy to follow?

**Make Your Points Easy to Follow** We've seen how a clear organizational pattern makes it easier to follow another person's point. When it's your turn to contribute to the discussion, it helps to return the favor. State your point succinctly at the outset. Don't make others have to read between the lines to figure out what you are saying. Then elaborate on your position by using a clear organizational pattern and including "signposts" (see Chapter 10). If you have a series of facts to support your original point, enumerate them by preceding each supporting fact with a number and by introducing your last supporting fact with the word "Finally." If you're comparing and/or contrasting your point with points made by others, begin each comparison with an obvious phrase, such as "Just as" or "In the same way" or "Like," and introduce each contrasting point with phrases such as "Unlike" or "In contrast to" or "On the other hand." A succinctly stated main point and clearly structured support supply an easy-to-follow framework that will make your comments more valuable and memorable.

What is it that makes discussion comments seem fresh?

**Make Your Points Fresh** Good instructors seldom want their students to behave like walking, talking versions of their lectures or readings. This robotic approach may be a simple test-passer but it rarely fosters genuine learning. That's why, in all but the most rigorous courses, instructors place a premium on fresh insights, not on rote regurgitation. In short, they are seeking creativity. You can do only so much to analyze ideas in different ways on your own. Even though it may have several facets, your thinking generally comes from a distinct perspective. Because they represent the meeting of many minds, discussions expose you to a wide variety of perspectives and provide an extraordinary opportunity for reflection. And, as Nobel Laureate Hans Bethe reminds us (see Chapter 10), creativity comes only with reflection.

## Follow Up Promptly

Why is it important to promptly do a follow-up?

A good discussion may be full of fresh ideas, but those ideas will have a short shelf life if you don't make a concerted effort to reinforce them in your memory. As the Leon and Clyde episode (see Chapter 9) made all too clear, even brilliant insights can fade quickly if you don't do something to fix them in your memory.

## Review In-Class Discussions

SUMMARIZING

Why are in-class discussions so easy to forget?

Discussions that take place in the classroom are especially susceptible to the ravages of forgetting. Ideas and facts spend such a brief time in your working memory that a key point at the beginning of a classmate's comment could be gone without a trace before she or he is even finished talking! And because class discussions are more interactive than regular lectures, you may not be able to take notes as thoroughly as you'd like.

What's wrong with recording discussions?

Some students try to solve this problem by recording class discussions electronically. This is a mistake on a number of levels:

- *It's a waste of time.* The discussion will take twice as long because you'll be compelled to replay the entire recording once you're home.
- *It's an invitation to inattention.* Recording a discussion can discourage you from remaining fully engaged because you're aware—whether consciously or not—that you can go back and catch what you missed in class by listening to the recording.
- *It's a technical gamble.* Unless you have a very good recorder or a number of microphones, you may not be able to make out all of the comments when you go back and listen to them.

### IT'S YOUR Q

Your best strategy for following discussions is to use the two-page system (explained in Chapter 10). With the main points on one page and important details on the other, you should be able to reconstruct a lot of what went on in the discussion, providing you are careful to review your notes right away while you're still able to fill in some of the missing pieces. You can further improve your memory of the discussion by labeling each point in your notes with the name of the person who made it. Associating each idea with a name and a face will strengthen its memory. Finally, because all the comments won't be coming from the same part of the classroom, you can use the loci method (see Chapter 9) to trigger memories of the points that came from various parts of the room.

## Review Online Discussions

SUMMARIZING

What are the drawbacks to reviewing online discussions?

Asynchronous online discussions aren't as susceptible to your forgetting them as are discussions that are held in a classroom setting. That's because the threads retain a record of everything that's been "said" during the course of a discussion. But online discussions have their own special drawbacks. Depending on the nature of your course management software, most of the important discussion points are at least one click away, hidden beneath a hyperlinked thread title that may not be especially informative. Also, an online discussion that is many threads deep can result in a snakelike string of links that can be intimidating to approach.

What's the best strategy for reviewing online discussions?

Your best strategy for reviewing online discussions is to do so on an ongoing basis, rather than waiting until the discussion is over. Each time you read a message, try to determine its main point right away, just as you would with a paragraph in your textbook. Then type or jot down that point. If the messages are grouped in threads, try to summarize all the comments in each thread, just as you would summarize a page of your notes (see Chapter 11). Most discussion programs automatically change the color of a link after you've read its associated message. If you make a point to capture the main idea right away, the color change will not only tell you that it's a message you've read, but also that it's one you've taken notes for. That knowledge should make a dense page of threads a little less intimidating and should actually provide encouragement as you get a visual sense of the progress you've made. Also, it should make reviewing an online discussion much easier. Instead of having to painstakingly reread each thread, you should be able to conduct a thorough review of the discussion without even logging on.

## FINAL WORDS

What is an unexpected outcome of some class discussions?

Like tests, quizzes, and papers, discussions provide an opportunity to take your knowledge and explain it—in short, to show what you know. But unlike the other three, which are essentially solitary activities, discussions require interaction with others. This not only encourages insight and reflection as we've seen, but it can also result in something unexpected: friendship. This underscores the motivation for treating other participants with respect. After all, the person you're agreeing (or disagreeing) with may start out as just a classmate and wind up as a good friend.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words listed below each sentence.

- The number of colleges and universities using online discussions is \_\_\_\_\_.  
**increasing**                      **decreasing**                      **stagnant**
- When you participate actively in a discussion, your attention often thrives on \_\_\_\_\_.  
**appearance**                      **anticipation**                      **agreement**
- Posting a message in all capital letters is generally considered to signify \_\_\_\_\_.  
**agreement**                      **disagreement**                      **yelling**

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letter preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| _____ 1. Content     | a. Provides a tool for discussion preparation                               |
| _____ 2. Sarcasm     | b. Should be provided when you cite sources during a discussion             |
| _____ 3. Concept map | c. Much more important than delivery when it comes to discussion comments   |
| _____ 4. Attribution | d. Leads to a state of concentration  |
| _____ 5. Redundancy  | e. Often indicates that you haven't been paying attention to the discussion |
| _____ 6. Thought     | f. Can provide an effective means of drawing attention to your comments     |
| _____ 7. Attention   | g. May provide a brief moment of supremacy but can often lead to resentment |
| _____ 8. Pauses      | h. Moves at a faster rate of speed than writing or speech                   |

## TRUE-FALSE

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

- T F Discussions are often the most appreciated component of a course.
- T F Discussions can provide an excellent "dress rehearsal" for essay tests.

3. T F Many of the guidelines for discussions apply whether the discussion is in class or online.
4. T F Simultaneous posting is rare in online discussions.
5. T F Your comments on an online discussion can normally be read for days after you've posted them.

**MULTIPLE CHOICE**

*Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.*

1. Discussions
  - a. encourage active learning.
  - b. allow for superior reciting.
  - c. provide reflection from many perspectives.
  - d. all of the above.
2. In-class discussion comments are usually
  - a. brief.
  - b. ephemeral.
  - c. archived.
  - d. required.
3. With in-class discussions, the meaning of your message can be affected by your
  - a. facial expression.
  - b. tone of voice.
  - c. posture.
  - d. all of the above.
4. Flexibility in note taking depends on
  - a. your handwriting.
  - b. the content of the discussion.
  - c. informed participation.
  - d. whether the discussion takes place in class or online.
5. When you disagree with a discussion comment,
  - a. begin rehearsing your rebuttal.
  - b. automatically decide if he or she is misinformed.
  - c. take his or her stand as a bias.
  - d. make a note of it, but keep on taking notes.

## REFLECTION

Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.

1. Of the three keys to active listening, which comes most easily for you? Why? Which one do you struggle with most? What ideas have you gleaned from the chapter for improving?
2. Of the three keys to making your points effectively, which comes most easily for you? Why? Which one do you struggle with most? What ideas have you gleaned from the chapter for improving?
3. Do you review discussions as the chapter suggests? If so, how have you done this in the past? If not, which strategy seems as though it will work best for you? Explain.

## IT'S YOUR Q

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, re-read the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

## VOCABULARY IN ACTION

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

## SAY WHAT?

From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.

A team should be an *extension* of the coach's personality. My teams were *arrogant* and *obnoxious*.

—Al McGuire (1928–2001), American basketball coach

- |                     |              |             |               |
|---------------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. <i>extension</i> | mirror-image | counterpart | continuation  |
| 2. <i>arrogant</i>  | haughty      | excitable   | high-spirited |
| 3. <i>obnoxious</i> | tough        | noisy       | nasty         |



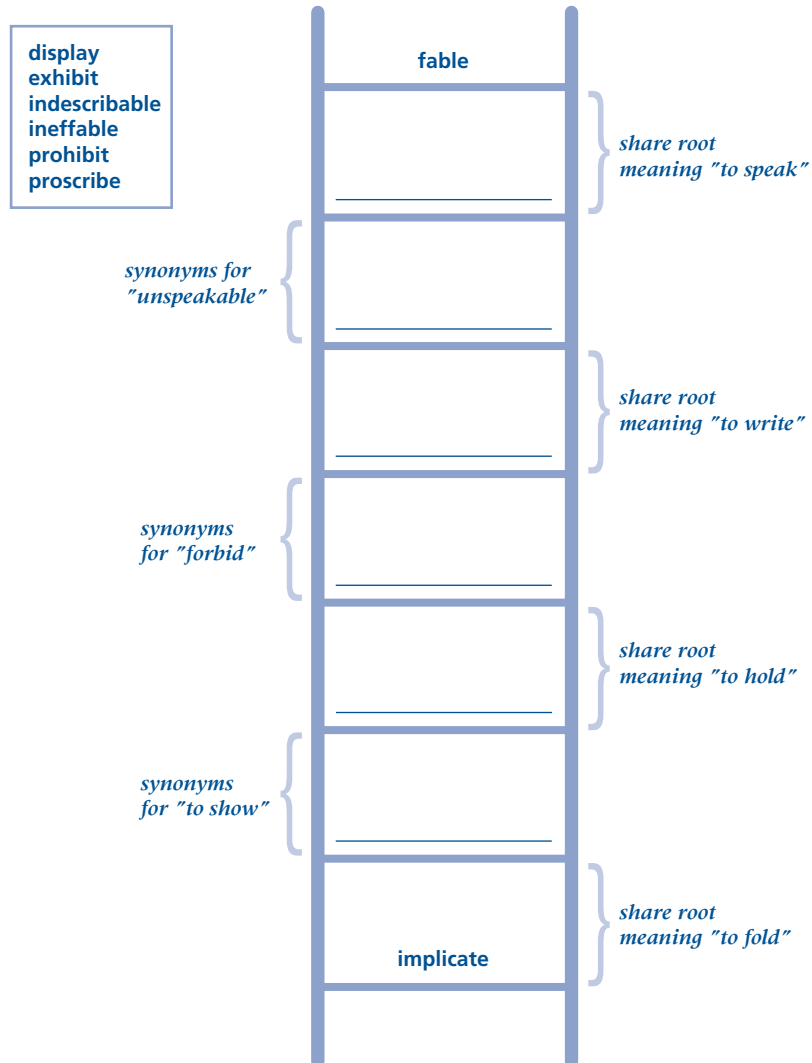
“Involvement” in this context differs from “commitment” in the same sense as the pig’s and the chicken’s roles in one’s breakfast of ham and eggs. The chicken was *involved*—the pig was *committed*.

—Anonymous

- |                     |           |          |            |
|---------------------|-----------|----------|------------|
| 4. <i>involved</i>  | primed    | rejected | associated |
| 5. <i>committed</i> | solicited | included | affiliated |

### VOCAB-U-LADDER

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

### **Discussion** Whole lotta shakin' goin' on?

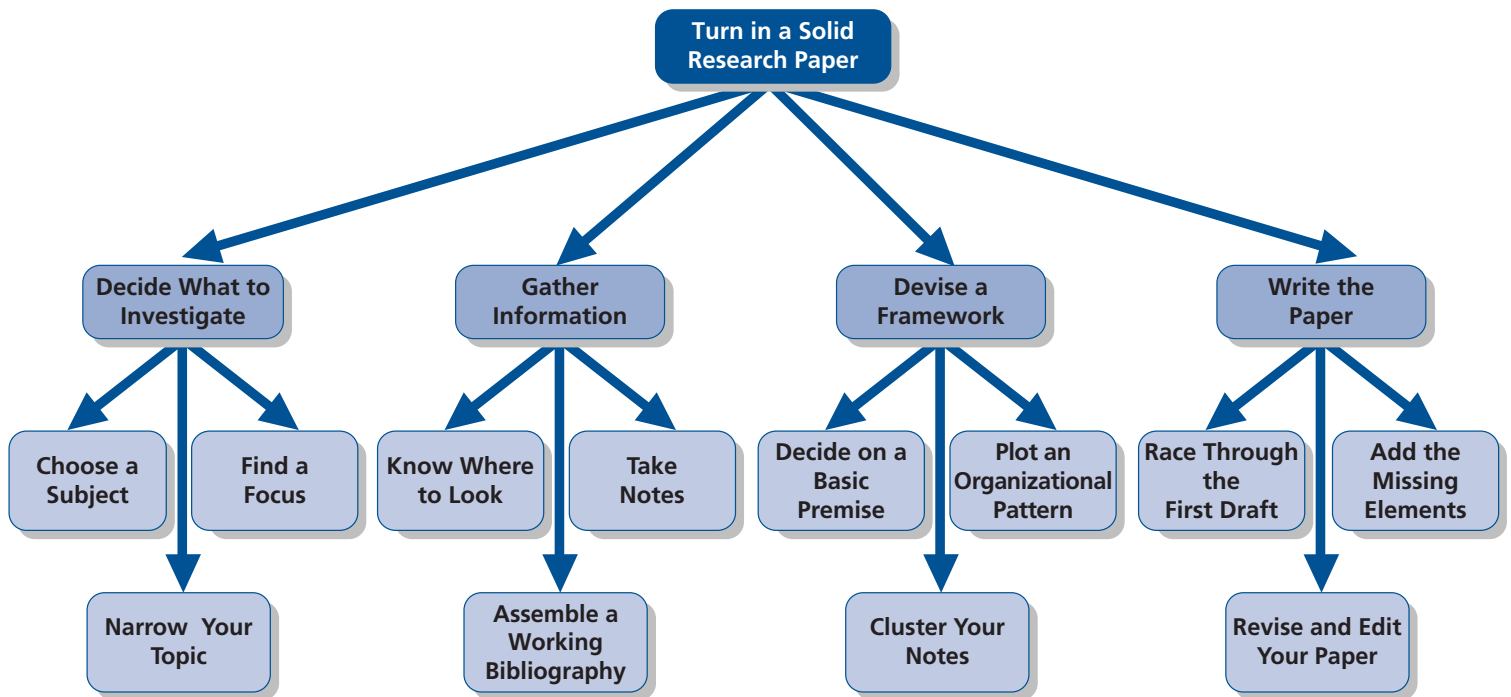
**discussion** dī-skūsh' ən. *n.* 1. Consideration of a subject by a group; an earnest conversation.  
2. A formal discourse on a topic; an exposition.\*

Sometimes it seems the only way to really understand how something works is to crack it open, shake it apart, and then look at all the pieces. That's a good metaphor for how a group of people can analyze an issue together—just as long as we don't take it too literally, that is. When we think of a discussion, we normally associate it with a civilized back and forth examination designed to enhance understanding and perhaps even get to something that resembles the truth. The history of the word, however, is a lot more violent and not nearly as subtle or civilized. In fact, the cuss in *discussion* is the same cuss in *percussion* (but not the same cuss if you're *cussing*; that one comes from *curse*). The Latin root that *percussion* and *discussion* share, *quatere*, means to “to strike or shake.” That makes more sense when you're talking about beating a drum or shaking some maracas than it does when you're just having a chat. But then our ancestors were known to play a little rough at times. Luckily, by the time it reached Middle English (almost one thousand years ago), the word for *discuss*, *discussen* had calmed down considerably and had come to mean “examine,” which is a lot quieter and closer to the way we conduct our discussions today.\*\*

\* Adapted from “discussion.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/discussion> (accessed May 27, 2009).

\*\* Based on information from “discussion.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/discussion> (accessed May 27, 2009).; “discussion.” *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=discussion> (accessed May 27, 2009).; “discussion.” *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; “discussion.” *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50065611> (accessed May 27, 2009).





# Turn in a Solid Research Paper

*If your writing falls apart, it probably has no primary ideas to hold it together.*

**Sheridan Baker** (1918–2000), professor, author of *The Practical Stylist*

From the time it is assigned until the day it is due, a research paper can occupy your mind like no other type of assignment. Although writing a research paper can be time consuming, it doesn't have to be overwhelming if you take the process one step at a time. To give you a head start in the art of the research paper, this chapter provides a calm and well-organized system to help you:

- **Decide What to Investigate**
- **Gather Information**
- **Devise a Framework**
- **Write the Paper**

How does writing a research paper compare to studying your notes?

Writing even a modest research paper can take a lot of effort. Yet though the task is long, the skills it requires aren't sophisticated, and most of them aren't new. In fact, writing a paper isn't much more difficult than reading about a subject in detail, taking notes on your reading, organizing your notes, and reciting—all the activities you undertake to prepare for a test or quiz. The difference is that instead of reciting out loud, you put your recitation on paper in a form that makes what you've learned readable for others. If you realize that writing a paper is not much different from studying your notes, and if you systematically decide what to write about, gather information, devise a framework, and then do the actual writing, you may even find that writing papers can be a most absorbing way to learn about a subject.

## Decide What to Investigate

What are the steps in finding a suitable topic?

Finding a suitable topic is often the biggest stumbling block in research. It's essential that you know how to choose a topic easily and efficiently. There are three steps in the process of selecting a topic: Begin with a general subject that interests you, narrow it down, and then sharpen it even further by finding a focus. If you follow these steps, you'll wind up with a topic that is both interesting and specific.

## Choose a Subject

FOCUSING

What type of subject should you choose?

In most cases, you'll be selecting a topic from a broad subject area. Because you'll be spending a great deal of time on the subject, your best bet is to choose one you are interested in or can develop an interest in. And if it isn't a subject that others are researching, then so much the better.

### IT'S YOUR Q

If you aren't sure what subject to select, do some preliminary research. Although you can sometimes get ideas by surfing the Web, the best place to do your preliminary research is still the library, where you'll have access to a variety of reference sources, both bound and computerized, a chance to browse through the section of the library stacks that matches your area of interest, and an opportunity to talk to a reference librarian, who will introduce you to an array of possible topics.

Suppose you are fascinated by natural disasters and want to learn more about them. But the subject "natural disasters" includes scores of topics: droughts, floods, tornadoes, hurricanes, volcanoes, and earthquakes, to name just a few. How can you do justice to them all? Obviously, you can't. You must narrow your topic.

## Narrow Your Topic

FOCUSING

How do you narrow your topic?

Selecting a topic that interests you is just the beginning. The most common criticism of a research paper is that its topic is too broad. A Cornell professor of English suggests this method for narrowing your topic: Put your subject through three or four significant narrowings, moving from a given category to a class within that category each time. This method is similar to the Silver Dollar System (see Chapter 11), which enables you to select the most important ideas from your notes.

For example, if you select natural disasters as the topic for a ten- to fifteen-page research paper, you have to narrow the scope of your topic before you can cover it in adequate depth. Three narrowings will probably reduce the subject down to a manageable size, although four may be necessary.

General Topic: Natural Disasters

First narrowing: earthquakes

Second narrowing: earthquake prediction

Third narrowing: scientific developments in earthquake prediction

Fourth narrowing: computer simulations in earthquake prediction

How can you use concept maps to help you narrow your topic?

Concept maps, which are explained in Chapter 8 and are similar to those at the beginning of each chapter, can be used to “visually” narrow a topic. Write your general subject on a blank sheet of paper and circle it. Next, write down subtopics of your general subject, circle each, and connect them with lines to the general subject. Then write and circle subtopics of your subtopics. At this point, you may have a suitably narrow subject. If not, keep adding levels of subtopics until you arrive at one. (See Figure 14.1.) The advantage of narrowing your topic with a concept map is that you provide yourself with a number of alternate topics should your original topic choice prove unworkable.

## Find a Focus

QUESTIONING

FOCUSING

What is the purpose of finding a focus for your topic?

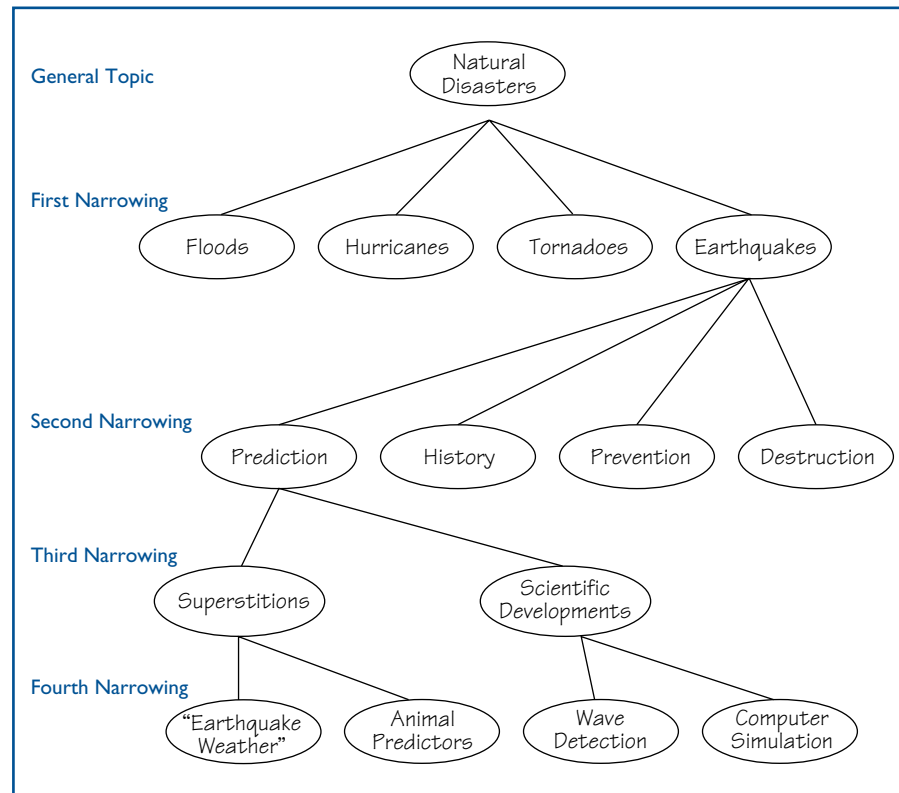
Once you’ve narrowed your topic, give your research direction and purpose by developing a compelling question about that topic. The information you gather from your research can then be used to develop an answer. For the topic “The use of computer simulations in earthquake prediction,” you might ask, “How helpful are computer simulations in earthquake prediction?”

Why is posing a research question important?

Whether you actually arrive at a definitive answer to your research question isn’t crucial. The important thing is to focus your research efforts on answering the broad question.



**Figure 14.1**  
Using a Concept Map  
to Narrow a Topic



## Gather Information

What does gathering information require?

The next step in your research is to begin gathering information. That requires knowing where to look (and knowing what you're looking for), assembling a working bibliography, and then taking detailed notes.

### Know Where to Look

FOCUSING

Where should you look to find material for your paper?

Unless you're using firsthand information—from interviews or experiments—nearly all your material will come from the library (although depending on the nature of your topic, some of it may be found on the Web as well). During this stage of your investigation, the

library's most valuable resources will be the reference librarian, indexes, periodicals, and books.

### Get Help from the Reference Librarian

How can a reference librarian help?

Before you begin your research, as well as any time during the process when you hit a snag, seek out the reference librarian. Although librarians may not be experts on your particular subject, they *are* experts at using the library's research tools. Librarians can often suggest indexes or databases you may not have heard of, sources you didn't think to consult, and searching strategies you didn't try.

### Consult Periodical Indexes

Why is it helpful to consult periodical indexes first?

It's wise to consult the articles that relate to your paper topic before you begin to delve into books. Not only do periodicals frequently provide the most recent information on a subject, sometimes they supply the *only* information. In addition, articles often include important names and titles that relate to your subject and occasionally provide a valuable overview of your topic. There are several general and specific indexes—both computerized and bound—for periodicals.

How do computerized magazine indexes work?

**Use Computerized Indexes** Most libraries use computerized magazine indexes that enable you to type in the name of a subject, author, or title and receive a list of relevant articles. You should also be able to customize your search with keywords and/or Boolean searching.

#### IT'S YOUR Q

*Keyword search.* Unless you know the title of a specific article, keywords usually provide the most direct route to the kinds of articles you are seeking, especially when searching by subject isn't convenient or fruitful. For example, if you want information about Gregg Toland, the cinematographer who worked with Orson Welles on the movie *Citizen Kane*, you may come up empty if you use the subjects "Toland" or "Citizen Kane" in your search. The database simply may not have enough articles on these topics to justify a separate subject heading. If, however, you search for articles under a broader subject, such as "Motion pictures—American," you may have to scan through hundreds of citations before you find appropriate ones. With a keyword search, by contrast, you can type in a word (or name) such as "Toland," and the computer will reply with every article in its database that contains the keyword you have typed.

What is a Boolean search?

*Boolean search.* A Boolean search enables you to narrow your search by combining two or more keywords. Suppose you need information about the Detroit Lions football team. If you searched under the subject "Detroit," "Football," or "Lions," you would have to scan thousands of citations that have nothing to do with your particular topic. But by searching for titles that contain all three keywords—"Detroit," "Football," and "Lions"—you are likelier to pinpoint articles that deal directly with your topic. Depending on the

type of search engine you're using, you may need to specify that you want your result to include *all* the keywords, instead of one or more. Sometimes this is done by inserting the word AND between the keywords: "Detroit AND Football AND Lions" Most search screens, whether they're specific to your library or available on the Web, will include a button that says "Advanced Search" or something similar. Clicking on this button should provide you with more information about the search engine's rules and capabilities.

What is the most useful bound index?

**Use Bound Indexes** Despite the abundance of computerized options for searching periodicals, some bound indexes remain. The most useful of these is the *Readers' Guide to Periodical Literature*. Each volume lists by author and subject all the articles that appeared in several dozen magazines during a given year. To locate articles on your topic, consult the years in which you think those articles may have been published. Each entry in the *Readers' Guide* gives you the information you need to locate the appropriate journal or magazine.

What kinds of articles have their own indexes?

Your paper topic may pertain to a subject that has its own index. For example, if you are doing research in psychology, you can refer to several indexes that deal specifically with psychology and that include journals and magazines that aren't listed in the *Readers' Guide*. A number of other subjects, such as business and education, have their own indexes. In addition, large newspapers such as the *New York Times* publish indexes of their articles.

What are your search options in book indexes?

### Consult Book Indexes

Although some libraries may consolidate their search tools, books usually have their own indexes. Like the traditional card catalogs that came before them, computer-based catalogs usually allow you to search for a book based on its subject, title, or author. In addition, most computer catalogs include advanced commands similar to those used with the periodical index that allow for keyword and Boolean searching. Many college libraries now allow you to search their collections from any browser. If yours works this way, you can get a head start on compiling a list of possible references before you even set foot in the library. That should put you in a more knowledgeable position should you need to ask the reference librarian for additional assistance.

How can you make your search more efficient if your library still uses a card catalog?

If for some reason your library still has just a paper card catalog, you can sometimes use the Internet to help make your search more efficient. Start by conducting an Internet search either from home or at the library to come up with an extensive list of possible sources, taking advantage of the keyword searching that you wouldn't be able to use in a card catalog. You won't be able to search your library's specific holdings, of course, but you will be able to arrive at a pretty good list of books in print on your subject. Then, with a printout of your list, go to your library's card catalog and see which books are actually available. This hybrid search should make your time at the card catalog more efficient.

## Assemble a Working Bibliography

CLUSTERING

What is a working bibliography?

How should you list your references?

What information belongs on the front of each bibliography index card?

As you discover books, magazines, newspapers, journals, and websites that relate to your research, add them to a *working bibliography*—a list of promising sources that you plan to consult. Be generous in compiling your list. It's better to check out several references that do not help than to miss a good one because its title isn't appealing.

Instead of listing all these references on a large sheet of paper, you can use a separate index card for each reference. Then later on, if you decide that a particular reference doesn't help, you can simply throw away its card.

Figure 14.2 provides an efficient format for putting your bibliography on index cards. On the front of the card, record the following information:

*Library's name (optional).* For sources you find at a library, write the library's name on your card.

*A short title of your subject.* A title will make it easier to locate a particular card and will aid in clustering your information.

*A unique identifier.* For books (and some periodicals) that will usually be the library call number. For sources you found on the Web, that will be the URL (Web address).

*The reference information.* Include the author, title, publishing data, and any page references in exactly the form that you plan to use it in the bibliographical portion of your paper. This ensures that you will include all the essential parts of the reference and that typing your paper will be much easier.

Olin Library	Theories of Memory	<p>Bottom-up and top-down theories of memory described in Chapter 18.</p> <p>Refers back to previous chapters and is difficult to read in spots. Provides solid summary of the two theories.</p> <p>Uses simple, vivid examples to explain difficult points.</p>
Q 360 .C33	<p>Campbell, Jeremy</p> <p><i>Grammatical Man</i>. New York: Simon &amp; Schuster, Inc., 1982.</p>	
<b>Index Card with Data</b>		<b>Reverse of an Index Card with Comments</b>

**Figure 14.2**  
Working Bibliography: Index Card Method

What information belongs on the back of each bibliography index card?

On the back of the card, jot down your assessment of the reference. If the source doesn't seem useful, then briefly explain why. If the source appears helpful, jot down how. Then when you have a chance to take another look at the article or book, you'll know why you thought it would or would not be useful. And if you shift the focus of your paper, you'll be able to determine whether sources you had eliminated should now be consulted and whether previously promising sources will no longer be of help.

## Take Notes

FOCUSING

What qualities should you strive for in the notes that you take?

Using your bibliography as a springboard, you can investigate your sources and begin taking notes. There's no getting around it—taking notes is time consuming. But if your notes are easy to use, neat, brief, and accurate, then the bulk of your paper will be written by the time you have completed the note-taking step.

### Make Sure Your Notes Are Easy to Use

How can you make your notes easy to use?

To make your notes easy to use, jot each note on a separate index card or slip of paper rather than writing them one after the other on regular-sized sheets. Whether you use cards or slips, you will be able to rearrange them easily and often because each note is separate.

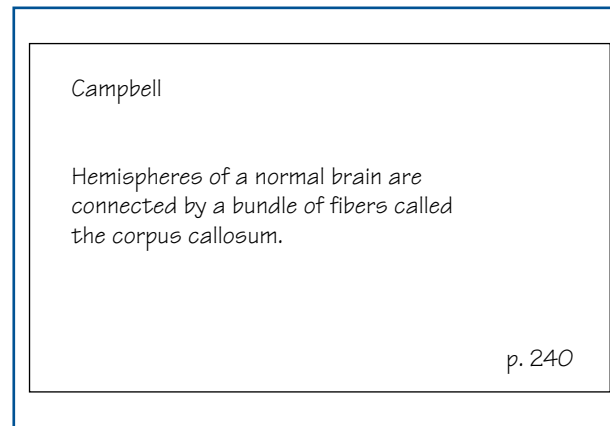
Why are paper notes superior to those taken on a computer?

Assuming you're going to write your paper on a computer, it can be tempting to take your notes on one as well. Resist the temptation. Here's why. Although software has been developed that mimics many of the characteristics of index cards, the fact is that there's no program currently available that's as flexible and as portable as a simple stack of cards or paper slips. As you're organizing your paper, you're going to want to be able to shuffle your cards easily and arrange them in stacks on the desk or table in front of you. You may want to be able to quickly shift a card from one stack to another, suddenly write a new card or slip, or tear one up and toss it in the trash. Some programmers have written thousands of lines of computer code to simulate these actions, but their programs cost money and don't work nearly as well as ordinary pieces of paper. It's also true that you can "write" your cards on a computer and then, depending on your printer, print them out on ordinary index cards or on special (expensive) index card paper, but this maneuver just complicates a relatively simple process. You could also conceivably just type your notes into one or more computer files and then shift them around by cutting and pasting or dragging and dropping. But there is lots of information on a regular note card that would get in the way if you had to include it in a document file along with the text of each card.

What else can you do to make your notes easy to use?

Another way to make your notes easier to use is by conscientiously identifying each card or slip. In the top left corner, write the author's name or the title of the source you consulted. Then at the bottom right, jot down the specific page on which you found the information. With these two markings on every note card, you can easily verify or add to any information you've gathered for your paper. In addition, you'll have all the information you may need for your citations (see Figure 14.3).

**Figure 14.3**  
**Detailed Note**  
**Written on One Side**  
**of an Index Card**



### Keep Your Note Cards Neat

Detailed notes are useless if you can't read them. Write your notes neatly the first time, even if it takes a little longer to do so. Use the modified printing system (see Chapter 10) to write quickly but legibly, and write in pen, instead of pencil, to avoid smears and fading.

### Keep Your Note Cards Brief

Brevity is the secret behind a useful note card. If a note card contains several key ideas instead of just one, you're going to find it harder to organize your paper when the time comes. Get to the heart of the matter with each note you take. Make your notes concise, yet sufficiently detailed to provide accurate meaning.

One simple way to limit the length of each note card is by abbreviating common words. For example, use *w/* instead of "with," *co.* instead of "company," and *govt* in place of "government." Develop your own abbreviations for words you commonly use. For example, if you're doing research on earthquakes, you may want to use *RS* to stand for "Richter scale" and *tct plates* to abbreviate "tectonic plates." Be careful not to go overboard with abbreviations, however. Abbreviating words may save you time to begin with, but you don't want to waste that time later trying to decipher your unfamiliar shorthand.

### Strive for Accuracy

Because you're dealing in facts, you must make certain that the information you jot down is accurate. It's relatively easy to remember as you're taking notes who said what and which of the thoughts you are writing down are your own and which are the thoughts of the author. But between the time you fill your last note card and the moment you write the first line of your paper, you're liable to forget these crucial details. To counteract forgetting and to ensure the information in your paper is accurate,

Why should you keep your note cards brief?

What is one simple way to limit the length of each note card?

What steps can you take to ensure that your notes are accurate?

distinguish clearly on your note cards between quoted ideas and paraphrased ideas and between the writer's thoughts and your own.

How should you treat quotations that you add into your notes?

**Copy Quotations Carefully** When you quote from a book or an article, make sure that you do so carefully. Place quotation marks on your card around the exact words you copied from the reference. Compare your version with the original quotation to make sure you copied it correctly. Don't change the wording or the spelling of the author's quotation. If you find a misspelling or a grammatical error in the quotation, you may use the bracketed notation [sic] to make it clear to your reader that you're aware of the mistake.

How do you leave out part of a quotation?

If you leave out a section or even one word from a quote, use three ellipsis points (. . .) to indicate the omission. If the words you left out came at the end of a sentence, add a period after the ellipsis.

What is the purpose of an ellipsis?

The purpose of an ellipsis is to leave out information that doesn't relate to the point you are using the quotation to support. An ellipsis should not be used to rearrange a quotation simply to suit your needs. Ellipses are intended to abbreviate a quotation, not alter its meaning.

What happens if you come up with your own ideas as you're taking notes from a source?

**Mark Thoughts of Your Own** Some of your best ideas may occur as you're taking notes. Put these thoughts on paper right away, but do so on a separate card or slip marked "My Ideas" or something similar. That way you'll be sure not to confuse your original ideas with the ones you've encountered in your reading.

What should you do with notes that paraphrase material you've found in a source?

**Paraphrase What You Read** Although it is important to distinguish your original ideas from the ones you have read, there's nothing wrong with paraphrasing—expressing someone else's ideas in your own words—as long as you give proper credit to the source. If you paraphrase as you take notes, you'll often be able to transfer what you've written in your notes to your draft without changing a word.

## Devise a Framework

How can you devise a framework for your paper?

You can devise a solid framework for your paper out of a pile of disconnected notes by deciding on a basic premise, clustering your notes under a handful of main ideas, and plotting out a clear and logical organizational pattern.

### Decide on a Basic Premise

QUESTIONING

FOCUSING

What is a paper's premise and how can you arrive at one?

In the same way that choosing a focus helped provide direction for your research, deciding on a basic *premise* from the notes you now have lays the foundation for your paper's organization. Potential arguments, apparent similarities, and possible theories



all have a way of rising to the surface in the process of taking notes. Any of these can be used to form a basic premise, which is the fundamental approach that underlies your paper. If a premise doesn't become obvious to you as you're taking notes, go back over the information and ask yourself some hard questions. For example:

- Where is this paper heading?
- What are the ramifications of the information I've assembled?
- What point is most important?
- What am I saying?
- What do I want to say?
- If there's a choice of viewpoint—for or against a question, for example—which view has the most evidence to support it?

If you've done a good job of research, you should be able to decide now what you want to say in your paper, and you should have the evidence in your notes to support that view.

## Cluster Your Notes

CLUSTERING

FOCUSING

How does the paper's premise influence the way you cluster your notes?

The paper's basic premise should act as a magnet for clustering your notes, which enables you to draw out the most important ideas from the dozens and perhaps hundreds of notes you have written. In most cases, a research paper should incorporate fewer than seven main ideas. These ideas will form the framework for your paper. The cards or slips that remain won't be wasted but will be used as support for the more important ideas. Of course, if a note isn't important enough to be considered a main idea and doesn't provide support for the main ideas, that note should be left out of your paper.

How do you decide on the most important ideas in your notes?

Choosing the main ideas and clustering your research notes require selectivity, the same skill you used not only in narrowing your original paper topic, but in studying conventional notes as well (see Chapter 11). In fact, if you find it difficult to pick out a handful of main ideas from a pile of notes, apply the following three-step system to help pinpoint the pillars that will form your paper's supports:

1. Read through your notes and pick out those cards or slips that seem more important than the others.
2. Now that you have two piles of notes instead of one, pick up the smaller pile and repeat the process, pulling out the most important notes and using them to make up a third pile.
3. Finally, pick up the third pile, which by now should contain only a dozen or so cards or slips, and find four or five ideas that seem to be the most important ones. These ideas will be the basis of your premise and of the pattern for your paper.



## Plot an Organizational Pattern

CLUSTERING

OVERVIEWING

What are the factors that influence how you plot an organizational pattern?

Your basic premise and personal choice largely determine the pattern your paper will follow. You could use any of the organizational patterns listed in Chapter 10 as the framework for your paper. The time pattern or the process pattern is appropriate for most college papers. For some papers, however, you may be required to develop an argument. A good pattern for such papers is to begin with a statement of your premise and then support it with logical examples that build to a conclusion. This kind of organization affords more flexibility than the others.

What techniques can you use to help arrive at a pattern for your paper?

You may need to experiment with several patterns before you arrive at a framework that adequately accommodates the information you want to include in your paper. Don't be discouraged by the inevitable period of trial and error. There's no one "correct" way of plotting your paper. You may feel most comfortable using a traditional outline. Or you may find the process of mapping easier and more enjoyable.

How can you use mapping to organize your paper?

To map out your research paper, use the notes that contain your paper's main ideas and sub-ideas (or jot these ideas down on small slips of paper). On a clear surface such as a desk or a tabletop, shift these ideas around like checkers on a checkerboard, clustering them in various ways, according to the premise of your paper.

How does your paper's pattern influence the way you create your map?

If you're planning to structure your paper using the time or process pattern, arrange your ideas so they follow logically from the earliest to the latest or from the start of the process to the end. If you're structuring your paper as an argument, decide which of the major points should be made first; then arrange the remaining points in an order that will make your argument smooth, logical, and easy to follow.

What sorts of patterns do the maps that begin this book's chapters normally use?

The chapter maps in this book provide examples of the process and argument patterns. The map in this chapter, for example, uses the process pattern, spelling out in order the steps for writing a research paper. The map for Chapter 3, in contrast, develops an argument; it asserts a premise—to stay focused you need to eliminate distractions and cultivate concentration—and then goes on to explain the role of each.

What should you do with the notes that deal with minor points in your paper?

When you arrive at an arrangement that incorporates your information and makes logical sense, you have found a suitable pattern for your paper. Once you have arranged the cards or slips that contain your major points in an effective order, repeat the procedure by arranging the notes that contain your minor points. Think of each major point as a premise in itself. Then arrange the minor points that support a major point in a clear and effective way.

What if your organization has gaps?

If, as you arrange your notes, you find gaps in your organization, you may need to create new categories or perhaps even return to the library or the Internet to take more notes.

How can you make it easier to turn your notes into your paper?

Finally, with all points arranged to your satisfaction, go back and number your note cards or slips according to the order in which they'll appear in your paper.

## Write the Paper

What steps are involved in actually writing your paper?

You already have most of your paper worked out—information, sources, organization. Now all you have to do is put your data into sentences and paragraphs and work up a first draft of your paper. Once that is accomplished, allow yourself plenty of time to go back and revise and edit what you've written, add the missing elements, and type the final copy.

### Race Through the First Draft

PLANNING

What is the best way to start writing your paper?

The best way to start writing is simply to write. Pausing with your pen poised over an empty page or with your fingers resting idly on a keyboard waiting for inspiration to strike is a useless endeavor. Inspiration, like concentration, seldom comes when you call it. Once your hands are engaged in the physical motions of writing, your brain will follow.

How should you handle alternatives that occur to you as you're writing?

Write your first draft as rapidly and spontaneously as possible. To ensure continuity, record your thoughts as they go through your mind. Don't stop to ponder alternatives. Although you will probably write too much, don't be concerned; it's easier to cut than it is to add.

What should your goal be when writing your first draft?

In your first draft, your goal is simply to transfer information from your notes to your paper or computer screen. Take each card or slip in order and write. Start with major point 1. State what it is, and then use supporting evidence to show why it is so. As you use a reference from the card, note the card number on your paper. You can put the footnotes in later, taking the exact information from the card. Continue to write, following your organized and numbered notes.

Once you've finished your first draft, what should you do next?

Only after you've completed your first draft should you step back and take a look at what you've written. If you typed your draft using a computer, either print out a hard copy so you can jot down your comments or use the word processing program's comment function to insert any thoughts directly into your text. Regardless of the form your first draft takes, go over it carefully in search of possible changes, adding words or phrases and highlighting paragraphs you want to move or remove.

How should you handle any changes that you've added to your draft?

While your annotations are still fresh in your mind, produce a clear copy that incorporates all your changes. Don't wait before adding in these corrections. If you delay even a day, you may lose a lot of time trying to recall exactly what you meant by some of your comments. And if you update your draft while it's still fresh, you may find that you do some spontaneous revision.

What should you do with your draft once you've updated it?

Once you have made these changes, put your draft aside for a while. To gain objectivity about what is in the paper and what is still missing, you need a cooling off period of at least a day. When you return to your paper, you should find it easier to spot errors and weaknesses in your writing.

## Revise and Edit Your Paper

PLANNING

What should you be trying to accomplish in later drafts of your paper?

### IT'S YOUR Q

What should you do if you can't support one of your main points?

Why won't padding work to make your paper longer?

**Figure 14.4**  
Strengthening Supporting Details

The hardest part of writing a research paper is completing the first draft. From that point on, you'll be refining what you've already written. In the next drafts—and you may write two, three, or even four drafts before you are satisfied with your paper—you'll focus on strengthening supporting evidence and fine-tuning technical details such as transitions, grammar, and spelling.

### Strengthen Supporting Evidence

Students often state a main point and then go on to something else without supporting it. The kinds of evidence you need to support a major point are statistics, quotations from other published works, facts, examples, comparisons and contrasts in views, expert opinion, and description. If you make statements and follow them up with generalities, you will not convince your reader that your main point is true. Use what you have collected on your cards to support your points. Figure 14.4 provides an example that shows the steps you can take to develop a major point.

Be sure that all the main points are supported equally with this kind of evidence. If you can't find enough evidence to support one point, perhaps it's not a major one. You may need to reorganize the structure of your paper to include that point under one of the other major points.

Avoid padding. You may be tempted to add words or to rephrase a point to make the paper longer. Such padding is usually obvious to the reader, who's looking for logical arguments and good sense, and is unlikely to improve your grade. If you haven't enough evidence to support a statement, leave it out or get more information.

#### 1. State your point clearly.

The two sides of the human brain perform distinct functions.

#### 2. Develop the point beyond a brief statement.

According to the theory of brain laterality, the left hemisphere of the brain handles analytical thinking, while the right hemisphere is the home of abstract thought.

#### 3. Support with data from authorities and with statistics.

Drs. Michael Gazzaniga and Roger Sperry found that the cerebral hemispheres process information differently (add reference here). Subsequent research determined that the brain's left and right sides contrast information that is symbolic and conceptual versus information that is nonsymbolic and directly perceived.

#### 4. Illustrate with examples.

For example, if you were to add up a column of numbers, you would probably be using the left side of your brain. But if you were sketching a picture, you would be engaging the right side.

What are some of the technical details in your paper that may require fine-tuning?

Why are transitions important?

## IT'S YOUR Q

How can you remedy the spelling problems in your paper?

What are the pitfalls of relying on a spell checker?

### Fine-Tune Technical Details

Although awkward transitions, clumsy grammar, and poor spelling may not affect the basic meaning of your paper, they do affect the reader's perception of how you have thought about your topic and what you have written.

**Provide Transitions** In writing your paper, consider how to help your readers move easily from one main point to the next. If they feel that there's no connection, they will find it hard to follow the logical sequence that you have established in your own mind. You must therefore use transitional words and phrases to make your paper easy to follow. (See Chapter 10 for a list of these words.) Check carefully for transitions, and insert them where they are needed.

**Correct Grammar** Students who use the English language correctly get their ideas across to other people more clearly and forcibly than do those who stumble over every sentence. Moreover, students who apply the rules of grammar in their papers earn better grades. If you are unsure about these rules or careless with them, your meaning may get lost. If you feel that you could use a review of grammar, there are good texts that provide answers for most of your grammatical questions. Some of them are actually quite entertaining.

Here's a brief list of some popular books on English grammar:

Casagrande, June. *Grammar Snobs Are Great Big Meanies: A Guide to Language for Fun and Spite*. New York: Penguin, 2006.

Diamond, Harriet, and Phyllis Dutwin. *Grammar in Plain English*, 4th ed. New York: Barron's Educational Series, 2005.

Glenn, Cheryl, and Loretta Gray. *Hodges' Harbrace Handbook*, 17th ed. Belmont, CA.: Wadsworth, 2009.

O'Conner, Patricia. *Woe Is I: The Grammarphobe's Guide to Better English in Plain English*, 3rd ed. New York: Riverhead Books, 2009.

Shertzer, Margaret D. *The Elements of Grammar*. New York: Macmillan Publishing, 1996.

Strumpf, Michael, and Auriel Douglas. *The Grammar Bible: Everything You Always Wanted to Know About Grammar But Didn't Know Whom to Ask*. New York: Holt, 2004.

**Check Spelling** If your spelling problems are not severe, you will find a dictionary helpful. If your spelling is poor, look for one of the paperback books that list the most commonly misspelled words. If you cannot recognize that you are spelling words incorrectly, have someone who is good at spelling read your paper and mark, not correct, the words that are wrong. Then look up and insert the correct spellings. If you do this conscientiously over a period of time, you will improve your spelling.

Of course, if you are writing your paper using a computer, you can use a spell-checking program to pinpoint your spelling mistakes. The spell checker compares each word you have typed with the words stored in its dictionary and calls your attention to words that

don't appear there. Although the computer can catch many of your spelling errors, it isn't infallible. The size of the dictionary is limited, and the spell checker is unable to recognize words that are spelled correctly but used incorrectly (such as *there* instead of *their*).

## Add the Missing Elements

PLANNING

What elements will make your paper complete?

Having revised and edited your writing, you can now add the missing elements that will make your paper complete. Because your paper is a research paper, you must give credit for your information by including citations and a bibliography. In addition, the paper will need a title, an introduction, and a conclusion.

What should you do to properly credit your paper?

### Give Credit Where It's Needed

To avoid any appearance of plagiarism and to demonstrate the depth of your research, attribute quoted or paraphrased material and include a bibliography.

What constitutes plagiarism?

**Don't Plagiarize** Plagiarism is stealing other people's words and ideas and making them appear to be your own. It need not be as blatant as copying whole passages without giving credit. If you paraphrase something from already published material and do not cite your source, you're guilty of plagiarism even though you may have no intention of stealing. Simply rearranging sentences or rephrasing a little without crediting is still plagiarism.

How do instructors detect plagiarism in a paper?

Those who grade papers are quick to notice a change in writing style from one of your papers to another or from one part of your paper to another. Your writing is like your fingerprints—individual. If you try to use another's work, his or her style will not match the rest of your paper, and the difference will be obvious. If you stole some sentences or paragraphs outright, your theft will be easy to detect, especially if you took from material that is available on the Internet. (A Web-savvy instructor or teaching assistant can usually just type a suspicious phrase into a search engine and quickly locate its original source.) Instructors may give you the benefit of the doubt if they cannot prove where you got plagiarized material. But if they can—and doing so is usually not difficult—plagiarism can be grounds for expulsion from college. In a world where the written word is a major product, stealing it from someone else is a serious offense.

What approaches can you take to credit quoted or paraphrased material in your paper?

**Include Citations** Avoid plagiarism by crediting material you've quoted or paraphrased to its source. You may include a credit right after the quoted material, within the body of the paper, in a format like this: (Jones 2003, p. 264). This citation refers to page 264 of the work by Jones that was published in 2003 and is listed in your bibliography. Or you can use a superscript 1 and cite the full source at the bottom of the page or in a complete listing at the end of the paper. Credits that appear at the bottom of the page are called *footnotes*. Figure 14.5 shows a format for footnotes and for credits at the end

**Figure 14.5**  
Format for Footnotes  
and End-of-Paper  
Credits

1. Richard Webster, *Why Freud Was Wrong* (New York: Basic Books, 1995), pp. 136–154.
2. Glenn Alan Cheney, *Journey to Chernobyl* (Chicago, Ill.: Academy Chicago Publishers, 1995), p. 107.

of the paper. References are numbered in the order in which they appear in your paper. Other forms are given in handbooks on English usage.

What should go into  
your bibliography?

**Supply a Bibliography** The bibliography lists the sources you cite in your credits and may include other books or published material that you read as background for the paper but did not quote. A bibliography is not “notes,” “endnotes,” or “sources.” It is a listing of the books that you used in preparing the paper, and you should use the correct title for this listing. When you compile the bibliography, use the index cards or slips you prepared earlier. Each entry should include enough information so that a reader can identify the work and find it in a library or on the Web.

What format should  
you use for your  
bibliography?

Entries are listed alphabetically by author. Different bibliographic forms are used in different fields of study. If your class’s department or instructor follows a particular bibliographic style, use that. Otherwise, select a standard form from a handbook on English usage, or follow the form used in one of the journals on your subject.

Ask your reference librarian to assist you in finding the style manual for a specific field such as biology, chemistry, law, mathematics, physics, psychology, and so forth.

The following three widely used general style manuals will provide you with a form for your citations and bibliography:

- Gibaldi, Joseph. *MLA Handbook for Writers of Research Papers*, 7th ed. New York: The Modern Language Association of America, 2009.
- The Chicago Manual of Style*, 15th ed. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2003.
- Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association*, 6th ed. Washington, D.C.: American Psychological Association, 2009.

No matter what form you use, follow it consistently for every entry in your bibliography. Figure 14.6 shows a common bibliographic form.

How do you choose a  
title for your paper?

### Choose a Suitable Title

It is often a good idea to wait until you have written the paper before you decide on a title. Although the title should reflect the content of the paper, you can give it an interesting



**Figure 14.6**  
**Format for a**  
**Bibliography**

**Bibliography**

Campbell, Jeremy. *Grammatical Man*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1982.

Carr, Nicholas. "Is Google Making Us Stupid?" *The Atlantic.com*. July/August 2008. 24 December 2009. <<http://www.theatlantic.com/doc/print/200807/google>>

Gilbert, Daniel. *Stumbling on Happiness*. New York: Vintage, 2007.

Hanke, Steve H. "The Stagnation Myth," *Forbes* 157 (April 22, 1996): 145-146

Levitin, Daniel J. *This is Your Brain on Music*. New York: Dutton, 2006.

Pinker, Steven. *The Blank Slate*. New York: Viking, 2002.

Sapolsky, Robert. M. *A Primate's Memoir*. New York: Scribner, 2001.

Wolfe, Maryanne. *Proust and the Squid*. New York: Harper, 2007.

twist or perhaps make use of part of a quotation that seems particularly appropriate. Of course, there's nothing wrong with a straightforward title. In many cases, a no-nonsense title that gets right to the point is your best choice.

What sort of information should go into your paper's introduction?

### Write an Introduction

The paper's premise serves as the basis of the introduction. In revising your paper, you can expand on this premise and come up with the introduction in its final form. In addition to stating your premise, the introduction explains how you plan to support it and can include an apt example, anecdote, or quotation. Choose any of these devices carefully; they must be right on target. If you're not sure they will contribute to the paper, then write a straightforward statement.

Why does your paper need a conclusion?

### State a Conclusion

Don't end the paper without a concluding passage. If you do, your readers will be left dangling, wondering what happened to you and the rest of the paper. Let them know they have come to the end.

What is the purpose of a conclusion?

By now, all your major points should have been made and adequately supported. The primary purpose of your conclusion is to restate or summarize your basic premise. In addition, you may want to use your premise to draw a related conclusion. For example, if your premise states that alcohol is one of the country's leading causes of death and your paper has supported that contention with data and examples, you may

choose to conclude with some suggestions for dealing with the problem of alcohol abuse:

Taxes on alcoholic beverages should be increased.

Beer, wine, and liquor companies should be made to subsidize alcohol treatment programs.

Americans must overcome their tendency toward self-destructive, addictive behavior. Alcohol education should begin at the elementary school level.

How does the conclusion differ from the rest of your paper?

Although the rest of your paper should be backed up with information you discovered through research, the conclusion affords you the opportunity to state your own opinion and draw a personal conclusion. In general, of course, the kind of conclusion you write depends on the paper and the subject. In most cases, the conclusion need not be long and involved. But be certain you include one.

What are the guidelines for printing out your final copy?

### Print the Final Copy

All the time and energy you have spent on your research paper should be reflected in the appearance of the final copy. Make it neat, clean, and attractive.

1. Use only one side of white paper. Although instructors seldom specify, most assume that your paper will be printed on 8-1/2 × 11-inch sheets.
2. Leave a generous margin at the top and bottom of each page and a margin of 1-1/2 inches on both sides to provide room for the instructor's comments.
3. Type your final copy and print it out. Handwritten papers are time consuming to produce, difficult to read, and are rarely accepted.
4. Set up long, direct quotations (of five or more lines) in block style—that is, single-space and indent the lines from both sides about a half inch or five spaces. Omit the quotation marks when you block a quotation in this way—the block setup shows that you are quoting.
5. Proofread your final copy. Go over it carefully to catch spelling errors and other minor flaws. Don't rely entirely on a spell checker. This is a very important step.

## FINAL WORDS

---

How is writing a research paper like running a marathon?

Even the most experienced writers can find writing a research paper to be a challenge. After all, unlike taking notes, answering test questions, participating in a discussion, or even writing an essay, writing a paper can take weeks and even months. If the other components that make up your semester grade can be considered sprints, writing a research paper is the marathon. But if you take a hint from the long-distance runner by working systematically and pacing yourself throughout, when you finally reach the finish, you'll have something that you can be proud of.



### My First Research Paper

By Walter Pauk

Registration was like a game of chess. The smart students made their moves early. Some lined up before dawn, while others used the university's new computerized system to register from home. They registered early, not especially to get the best courses, but to avoid being "stuck" with one—the one taught by Professor Wilbur Hendricon.

The word on the grapevine was that this was a course to be avoided by the faint of heart. The chances of being forced into Professor Hendricon's course were slim but still too terrifying to take a chance. Professor Hendricon had, as the students said, "a special deal with the administration." He could handpick twenty-five students for his class, but had to take another ten at general registration.

This unusual procedure was a compromise. It came about this way: Professor Hendricon had originally taught only graduate courses; but ten years ago he decided that he would like to teach one section of English 105. So Professor Hendricon suddenly proclaimed to the dean that he would take twenty-five first-year students and turn them into scholars.

The dean was faced with a dilemma. On the one hand, the proud and sensitive Hendricon might take a negative answer as a rude rebuff. Also, the dean thought, "If he resigns, I will have to answer to the president." Hendricon was the university's brilliant light and other universities eagerly tried to woo him. On the other hand, a positive answer would be a blow to the morale of the other members of the English Department, who had no choice but to take their usual thirty-five students per class. The dean consulted her colleagues and persuaded them to accept the compromise. Needless to say, I was one of the unlucky ten.

Right from the very first day in class, I could see how well Hendricon had chosen. The twenty-five were geniuses. I later discovered that they all had straight As in high school and that they were clustered at the top of the scholarship list. Furthermore, they excelled in language and literature, while my strengths were in mathematics and music. Math skills and musical talent did not count for much in an English course.

At first I thought Professor Hendricon's legendary standards might just be rumor, but after the first test any hopes evaporated. We unfortunate ten compared notes and found our grades in the 30s and 40s. But no one questioned Professor Hendricon's honesty and sincerity. Our papers were filled with notations, symbols, and helpful comments. We did, however, question his standards. They were not for us mere mortals. Six of the ten transferred to other sections of the course immediately; the other three students transferred after the second test. Everyone knew that transferring was possible. The other instructors expected to get all ten of us in their classes within the

first few weeks of term. In this way, morale was preserved, because administratively, at least, all the classes started out with thirty-five students each.

Perhaps it was the lemming instinct in me or perhaps it was Hendricon's appeal, but I decided to hang in. On the day after the last date for changing classes, I took my usual seat. The other twenty-five students, who usually chatted loudly until Professor Hendricon entered the door, were strangely silent today. You see, in all these past ten years, not one of the unchosen had ever stayed in Hendricon's class. Everyone knew this.

We could hear Hendricon's brisk but firm footsteps drawing closer to the open door. The pace was faster than usual. We saw the toe of his left foot puncture the blank space of the doorway. The blood was pounding at my temples. My breathing was fast and shallow. Hendricon always walked straight to the lectern, put down his notes, and said, "Good afternoon" to the class. As he entered today, he glanced at me with a curious look. He did not greet the class as usual. He just lectured, but more seriously. I could not keep my mind on the lecture. No one could. It seemed that I had spoiled the atmosphere of this select club. Why had I not been less foolhardy?

On Monday, however, the class resumed its normal pace and atmosphere. I was present but not accepted. The chosen twenty-five sat in a solid square. I sat outside the square, separate but linked like an appendix. But that did not bother me, for I was really fascinated by Professor Hendricon. He was a great teacher. I took copious notes and studied the assignments carefully. I occasionally forgot myself and spoke out during discussions. I worked hard on tests and examinations, but they were never quite up to standard. I could usually understand the ideas and concepts, but time always ran out. I needed more time to think. But I was not discouraged because I was enjoying the course and learning a lot.

It was just after the Christmas holidays that Professor Hendricon announced it. "It" was the research paper—3,500 words and counting for one-third of the final grade. I should have been petrified because I could not write, and yet, I was glad. This was my chance to raise my present hard-earned average of 62.7 percent to the necessary 70.

This would be the first instance where I would have an advantage over the students—I would have the advantage of time. I needed time. Time is the great equalizer; time is democratic. We all receive the same amount of it every morning. No distinction is made between the genius and the plodder. This is what I told myself; it helped me feel a little better.

There should not have been any excitement because everyone knew about the Hendricon paper. It was indeed another factor that encouraged the rush to register early for other courses. The paper was not due until after the late winter break—almost two months off. But still, there were groans and whisperings. I could hardly hear the professor's caution against plagiarism. "Use both the primary text as well as secondary critical sources," he instructed against a background of restless inattention. Very few paid attention to his next point about thinking carefully before choosing a topic. I

somehow caught, "Once you have decided on your topic, it should be narrowed three or four times." What did he mean by this?

After the others had left, I edged up to Professor Hendricon, who was gathering up his lecture notes, and asked about the idea of narrowing the topic. He said, "If, for example, you were doing a history course, and you chose as your topic the 'Civil War,' you would be almost sure to fail. You simply could not do justice to such a large topic—dozens of books would be necessary to cover that subject, not an undergraduate research paper. Even a second narrowing of the topic to the 'Battle of Gettysburg,' a major engagement in the war, would still be too broad. A third stage of narrowing such as the 'Battle of Cemetery Ridge' would be more manageable, but your focus might not be sufficiently defined yet. So perhaps a further narrowing to the 'Tactical Importance of Cemetery Ridge' might be necessary. This would be an aspect of the original broad topic on which adequate information could be found to write an in-depth paper."

I was so excited about writing the term paper that I went straight to the library, eager and determined to find an interesting topic on which to use this technique of narrowing. I was surprised to find the cavernous library so empty of students. But of course, there would be time during "reading week" and the late winter break—there was no pressure yet. I went directly to the reference librarian, who showed me how to use the various special reference books. Another librarian, who joined us, had an interesting idea. She said, "If you choose a subject area carefully in your first year, and continue throughout your university years to research and write in that area, you could probably become quite an expert." This idea intrigued me.

Over the next few days I brainstormed possible topics for my paper. First, I scrutinized Professor Hendricon's course outline, mulling over his lecture themes and the prescribed authors and texts. Then I returned to the library to peruse reference books such as encyclopedias, surveys of literature, and biographical dictionaries. I developed a list of nineteen topics that interested me. I reflected on these over the weekend and after careful deliberation rejected fourteen of them.

The remaining five topics I decided to discuss with Professor Hendricon. He seemed happy to see me. In about five minutes we eliminated two. As far as the other three were concerned, he suggested that I talk about each with professors who were experts in the respective areas.

These talks were especially stimulating. I got to know three new professors from whom I received not only useful insights about narrowing the topics, but also details of important sources and prominent authorities as well. After thinking through the suggestions made by these professors, I settled on the area that was most appealing to me.

I arranged another session with Professor Hendricon to inform him of my decision and to obtain advice on the direction my assignment should take. We discussed the precise purpose of my paper, and, over a cup of tea, we juggled words and finally

formulated a challenging question to launch my research. I emerged from his Dickensian study aglow with inspiration and enthusiasm. The stern and serious Hendricon of the lecture hall had a warm and sensitive side that few students had glimpsed.

So, with the topic narrowed and a clear sense of direction established, back to the library I went to search for sources and to start my research. With the first week over I was surprised to find none of the class in the library. During the first term I had learned how to use the library's computerized catalog. Why not explore other searching opportunities offered by the computer system, such as using a keyword to locate titles relevant to the focus of my research? I was amazed at the wealth of material available through the computer catalog, and soon I had an impressive list of titles in my working bibliography. Gaining confidence, I decided to use the CD-ROM databases and discovered several periodical articles pertaining to my research question.

I gathered some of my sources and began taking notes on pages of notebook paper. The reference librarian, ever helpful, wandered over and asked if I knew the advantages of recording my notes on index slips. Without waiting for an answer, she said that the ability to categorize my notes would ensure a much more efficient re-search system. Her specific suggestions were these:

- Record only one point, or a small cluster of related points, on one card.
- Record only information that is relevant to the purpose of your research.
- Use only one side of the card.
- Each card should indicate the author and page numbers of the source.
- Enclose all verbatim notes in quotation marks.
- Most notes should be paraphrased or summarized.
- Whenever you have a thought or insight of your own, jot it down and enclose it with brackets to signify "my own."

Noticing that I had no slips, she darted to her desk and pulled out the bottom drawer and thumped several rubber-banded stacks of cards on my table. "These are old cards left over when we converted the catalog to a computer system. They are used on only one side. You are welcome to use them for your research notes."

The card method intrigued me and, now that I had a wide-ranging list of sources, I was eager to get started on the research. I worked steadily in the library for the next two weeks, averaging two to three hours a day. It was surprisingly easy jotting down important information and ideas on cards and indicating the sources and page numbers. Rather than waste time writing out the author's name or the title on each card, I used a simple coding system to identify each source. I did not have a written outline. I had tried to prepare one after formulating my question, but I could not anticipate the material I would find. I also sensed that it would be too restricting. However, although I did not have an outline, it would be unfair to say that I selected the material for my note cards

haphazardly. I selected material that had a bearing on my specific question. Once I immersed myself in the research, I began to sense what was relevant and what was not.

After two weeks, I had a shoebox full of cards. I was ready to start structuring and drafting the paper. During the course of the research I had sketched out a tentative list of sections that might serve as an outline. I stepped back from my intense two-week spell of research to reflect on the provisional outline. Keeping the research question uppermost in my mind, I modified the sections so that they would provide a structure around which I could shape my answer. Next, I read through all my note cards and moved them into categories corresponding to my outline. Having notes on each card that pertained to only one idea permitted me to place the cards in separate categories. If I had put two different notes on one card, I would have had to rewrite the information onto two separate cards now. I was glad that I had a system. It was like playing a card game.

My outline required further modification because not all the cards fit the major sections. I added another section to accommodate some of the cards, while a number of cards simply did not fit into any of the sections. So, with the cards in categories, I started to follow the second step of the librarian's advice. I began to shift the piles of cards into an order that seemed logical for my paper. It was surprisingly easy to reorder the piles of cards so that there was a logical flow in the sequence of the sections.

With the categories of cards spread out before me, I began to study each category independently to create a detailed outline. As I wrestled with sections, subsections, and supporting material, I began to see where I had gaps in data and weak spots in the argument. My detailed outline revealed plainly the areas in which my paper lacked balance and completeness. My work was cut out for the next few days since I needed specifics that the paper at that point lacked. I was glad that each card carried a reference to the source, so that I could locate not only the source but the precise page as well.

After a few hours of additional research in the library, I was able to augment my note cards. I felt that the more complete I could make my collection of cards, the more effective the first draft would be. I remembered Professor Hendricon's advice: "If you do not gather enough first-class material, you will have trouble writing a major paper." I used some of the new research information to revise and refine my detailed outline.

Finally, I was satisfied with my outline. Then I began to write the first draft. It surprised me to see how easy it is to write a long paper once the material is placed in order. I actually enjoyed the process. It took four days of writing in my spare time to complete the draft. I preferred writing my first draft in longhand because I seemed to think more clearly when writing rather than typing. On each day, I concentrated on writing one of four major parts of the paper. When I had finished, I immediately read it over and it sounded good to me—so good that I knew I would be able to

enjoy the late-winter holidays—a wonderful reward. First, I had to type up my draft on the computer, and after backing it up, I printed a copy. I proudly left the copy on my desk to “cool” while I went home for the holidays.

On the last day before we departed for our week’s holiday, Professor Hendricon did his duty as a teacher to remind us to work on our papers because they were due five days after our return to campus. The students fidgeted, a nervous laugh or two mingled with some of the spontaneous whispering, but no one said anything. I thought to myself that I had not seen any of the chosen twenty-five in the library; but then they could have been there at other times. Also, the thought struck me that they loved to discuss every moot point and debate hypothetical issues. They seemed to excel at writing creative papers, often at the last minute, with information they already had in their heads. Perhaps a research paper that demanded hard and dogged work was just too rigorous for their creative souls. Well, I just thought these thoughts and was a bit ashamed at my suspicious mind.

Even though I was still failing Professor Hendricon’s course, the warm feeling generated by my completed draft provided the tone that I needed to enjoy my holidays. I had a good rest.

I arrived back on campus on Friday to avoid the weekend traffic. That evening, feeling proud of myself, I casually picked up my draft and, to extract the maximum amount of satisfaction from my accomplishment, I began reading. By the time I had finished page 3, my smile had vanished, and by page 10 fear had gripped me. The development of my thesis, which sounded so smooth upon completion, was now disjointed and repetitious and some paragraphs were meaningless. How could that be?

I pacified myself after the initial shock by realizing that I still had seven days, while many of the other students in the class had not even started their papers. Most of them would only arrive back on campus on Sunday evening, and that would leave them but a scant five days. As I pondered how to fix up my research paper, I realized, for the first time, the truth of the words that I had discarded as “teachers’ preachings”: “No paper should ever be handed in unless you have revised it. For the revision to be effective, you must always put your paper away for a few days so that you will lose some familiarity with it. Then, when you reread it, you will be better able to spot the weaknesses and the rough sections. Once these are spotted, revise, revise, revise.”

My paper was certainly rough. I recalled the steps for revising: First, look through the draft to make sure the ideas are understandable and supported by details and examples. Second, make sure the organizational plan for the paper is clear and that the sections follow in logical sequence. Third, check for consistency of style, and, finally, ensure that the mechanics such as spelling and hyphenating are correct. I discovered that I had scattered throughout the paper bits of interesting information—interesting but not always pertinent. I added some of the misplaced material to the introduction and eliminated the rest. It was tough to throw away these gems that

I had worked so hard to extract from my sources, but I heard ringing in my ears: “Good writers don’t put everything down that is interesting. Remember the iceberg with its nine-tenths underwater and only one-tenth showing above the surface. This submerged part—your background work—gives the iceberg its strength and power.”

After weeding out the irrelevant material, I concentrated on the structure of the paper and discovered that it, too, was a bit vague. Parts of the general statement that should have been at the beginning were in the body of the paper. So I sharpened the introduction by stating the thesis and then broke it down to the five main points that I had planned to establish and support. By the time I had reworked the introduction, I really knew for the first time what I was attempting to do. I was shocked to realize that my own understanding of what I was trying to do had not been clear. By the time I went to sleep on Sunday, I had hammered out a clear statement of what I was trying to establish and support.

Monday rolled around all too soon. The vacation was over. There was a lot of activity on campus as students accelerated into a faster tempo of study. Papers were due, final examinations hovered on the horizon, and most plans to complete work during the holidays had fallen through. Hendricson reminded the class of the Friday deadline. There was no whispering this time, just grim silence. I, too, contributed to the silence. I had to write not only a passing paper, but a paper good enough to earn an 85 if I was to raise my average to the passing grade of 70. I had, perhaps, counted too heavily on time and technique. Time was running out and technique was not holding up. But I still had a chance. Most of the chosen twenty-five, I was sure, had not even started.

I worked hard to strengthen the body of the paper by realigning my main sections in the same order as in the statement of thesis in the introduction. I made sure that each main section led off with a brief paragraph that introduced the section. Then I grouped the supporting information in a number of separate paragraphs all focused on the central idea of the section. As I worked through the other sections, checking the paragraph structure, I was surprised to discover that some of the supporting materials were still widely scattered even though I had carefully laid out a sequence when I grouped my note cards. By moving some of the information to more appropriate sections, I was able to eliminate repetition. I reworked each main section, especially those that seemed vague or hastily composed. Occasionally, I dug back into my collection of note cards when an idea needed additional support.

On Tuesday I fashioned a concluding summary that was not repetitious, synthesizing the thesis and key points in such a way to show mastery of the material. After dinner I printed a copy of the complete paper. I was immensely relieved and satisfied when I fell asleep that evening.

After the 9 o’clock class on Wednesday, I was free to devote the whole day to the final editing of the essay. I first read the entire paper aloud, checking for style. By reading aloud I could better detect redundant words, vague phrases, and

awkward-sounding sentences. I corrected the flawed sentences so that they flowed smoothly and naturally. As part of the editing process, I made frequent use of a dictionary and a thesaurus to ensure that the vocabulary was precise. Also, I worked on internal transitions to give my paragraphs and sentences better cohesion. After I had edited the printed copy, I corrected the computer version and saved it carefully. I was meticulous in backing up each version in the event that my computer malfunctioned.

I woke early on Thursday, excited to see the final copy in print at last, and printed out my “magnum opus.” I was so eager to start proofreading that I toyed with the possibility of skipping my morning lectures. But with final examinations looming, common sense won out! After lectures, I gobbled my lunch down and headed for my room and my prized paper. I proofread it meticulously, from title page to bibliography. All my thoroughness had paid off—not a single error was apparent. I was flushed with that warm feeling of satisfaction that the completion of a creative assignment brings.

This was it. This was the day! I never heard such an outpouring of incidents to a professor from frantic, frightened students who tried so hard to look and act sophisticated. “The library is so full, you can’t find a table to write on.” “Two other students are working on the same topic as I am and I cannot get hold of the sources.” “My computer crashed.” “My printer overheated and seized up.” “I’ll need more time, because all the typists in town are busy, and they can’t get to mine until after the weekend.”

Hendricon was calm but exceedingly serious. He looked around the room solemnly, making no attempt to answer any of the excuses. After a moment, he held up his hand for quiet and went on with his lecture as if nothing had happened. There was deep silence that hour. Professor Hendricon was always good, but he was especially good that day. He talked hard and earnestly. Most of the students sat glumly, motionless and glassy-eyed. Only a few had the discipline to take notes. For some reason, the professor’s words seemed to be aimed at me. He was trying to make scholars of us, as well as mature men and women. About half the students handed in papers that day. Spurred by the announcement, “Five points a day will be deducted on all late papers,” the rest were in on the following Monday. I was pleased and proud that mine was in on time.

With only two and a half weeks to go, Professor Hendricon lectured hard and fast, determined to complete his schedule of topics. By now, I had reconciled myself that failure was a possibility. Though I still wanted to pass the course, I was not too worried about it. I was just glad to have had the opportunity to attend Professor Hendricon’s class.

On the last day of class, Professor Hendricon strode in with our research papers. “Before I hand them back to you,” he said, “I want to talk about them both generally and specifically.” He continued, “A few of the papers were excellent, a few poor, and



the majority mediocre. The excellent ones were creative and imaginative in their use of technique; but the poor ones seemed as if they had been put together artificially and mechanically with scissors and paste.”

That last remark hit me. Of course, I should have known that Professor Hendricon would be quick to see the artificial way my paper was put together: how I took notes on cards; distributed them in piles; mechanically shifted stacks of cards around; made an outline last, not first; filled gaps by digging out more material; mechanically re-vised; looked up words; read aloud to detect faulty intonation—all done like a “hack” in mechanical and piecemeal fashion. The rest of the class had real talent—they were truly gifted. In four or five days, they were able to write down their thoughts directly, fully developed, like true artists. And like true artists, they made good with one chance, whereas I had dozens of chances to write and rewrite.

As Professor Hendricon continued to talk about “scissors and paste,” he suddenly picked up a paper to illustrate a point. I was shocked. I could tell it was my paper. I just couldn’t stand the embarrassment. All I wanted to do was to get out of that room, fast! Then I suddenly realized that though I knew it was my paper, no one else did. So I steeled myself. Professor Hendricon read one paragraph after another. He jumped to the first part of the paper for a paragraph, then to the end for another. Then I noticed that the rest of the class was listening attentively, and though Professor Hendricon’s voice was excited, it was kindly. As I calmed and composed myself, I heard, “Note the smooth rhythm of the prose and the careful choice of words. This is what I mean by scholarship. The technique is discernible. Yes! But put together with a scholar’s love, and care, and time.”

P.S. You guessed it! I passed the course.

## CHAPTER CHECKUP

SENTENCE  
COMPLETION

Complete the following sentences with one of the three words or phrases listed below each sentence.

- Give your research purpose, direction, and focus by developing a \_\_\_\_\_ about your topic.  

<b>scientific discovery</b>	<b>fascinating misconception</b>	<b>compelling question</b>
---------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--------------------------------
- When you are using the Web or a library's computerized indexes, a Boolean search enables you to narrow your search by \_\_\_\_\_.  

<b>using a prominent keyword</b>	<b>combining multiple keywords</b>	<b>using a full sentence</b>
--------------------------------------	--	------------------------------
- As you discover magazines and books that relate to your research, add them to a working bibliography that is \_\_\_\_\_.  

<b>in your notebook</b>	<b>on separate cards or slips</b>	<b>kept by the reference librarian</b>
-------------------------	---------------------------------------	--

## MATCHING

In each blank space in the left column, write the letters preceding the phrase in the right column that matches the left item best.

- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| _____ 1. Index cards          | a. Can help you find a suitable topic                                 |
| _____ 2. Spell checker        | b. Synopsis found at the beginning of some journal articles           |
| _____ 3. Abstract             | c. Can be used to plan your paper visually                            |
| _____ 4. Index                | d. More flexible than a computer for taking notes                     |
| _____ 5. Ellipses             | e. Primary source for most of your paper's information                |
| _____ 6. Concept map          | f. Good starting point in the search for books or magazines           |
| _____ 7. Preliminary research | g. Helpful but not infallible tool for correcting your paper's errors |
| _____ 8. Library              | h. Indicate that part of a quotation has been omitted                 |

**TRUE-FALSE**

Circle T beside the true statements and F beside the false statements.

1. T F Three or four narrowings should reduce your general topic to a suitable size.
2. T F The *Readers' Guide* is the best-known bound periodical index.
3. T F A computerized catalog usually enables you to search by subject, author, title, or keyword.
4. T F Paraphrasing is permitted in a research paper.
5. T F A conclusion isn't always necessary in a research paper.

**MULTIPLE CHOICE**

Choose the word or phrase that completes each sentence most accurately, and circle the letter that precedes it.

1. The basic skills for writing a research paper are similar to those for
  - a. writing a novel or short story.
  - b. preparing for a test or quiz.
  - c. taking notes during a lecture.
  - d. doing none of the above.
2. The most common criticism of research papers is that they are
  - a. too broad.
  - b. too long.
  - c. poorly written.
  - d. carelessly researched.
3. A research librarian is an expert on
  - a. most research paper topics.
  - b. the proper form for footnotes.
  - c. use of the library.
  - d. all of the above.
4. Your notes will be easier to use if you
  - a. recopy them so they are easy to read.
  - b. copy all your information verbatim.
  - c. jot down each note on a separate card or slip.
  - d. fit them on as few pages as possible.

5. You can avoid plagiarism by including
  - a. quotation marks.
  - b. citations.
  - c. a bibliography.
  - d. all the above.

**REFLECTION**

*Think about the ideas outlined in this chapter and then draw upon your own opinions and experiences to answer each question fully.*

1. Which do you generally find hardest to do when writing a research paper: choose a subject, find a focus, or decide on a premise? How has this chapter helped to make this easier?
2. This chapter contains a number of recommendations for taking notes for a research paper. Mention one that seems especially valuable to you and explain why.
3. In the past, what sort of system have you used to organize the writing of your paper? Which of the suggestions in this chapter seems most helpful in improving whatever organizational system you may have used?

**IT'S YOUR Q**

The Q System uses marginal questions to encourage active reading. You'll notice that most but not all paragraphs in this chapter are accompanied by marginal questions. Now it's your Q. Scan the chapter for any paragraph that is missing a question, re-read the paragraph, establish the main idea, and then arrive at a question that elicits it. Use the questions in the surrounding paragraphs as models for your own marginal questions.

**VOCABULARY IN ACTION**

To expand the horizons of your understanding and to refine the precision of your thought, the three exercises that follow are designed to help you grow, strengthen, and maintain your own vocabulary.

### SAY WHAT?

From the three choices beside each numbered item, select the one that most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word in the quote. Make a light check mark (✓) next to your choice.

No one wants advice—only *corroboration*.

—John Steinbeck (1902–1968), American novelist

- |                         |             |           |              |
|-------------------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. <i>corroboration</i> | cooperation | agreement | confirmation |
|-------------------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|

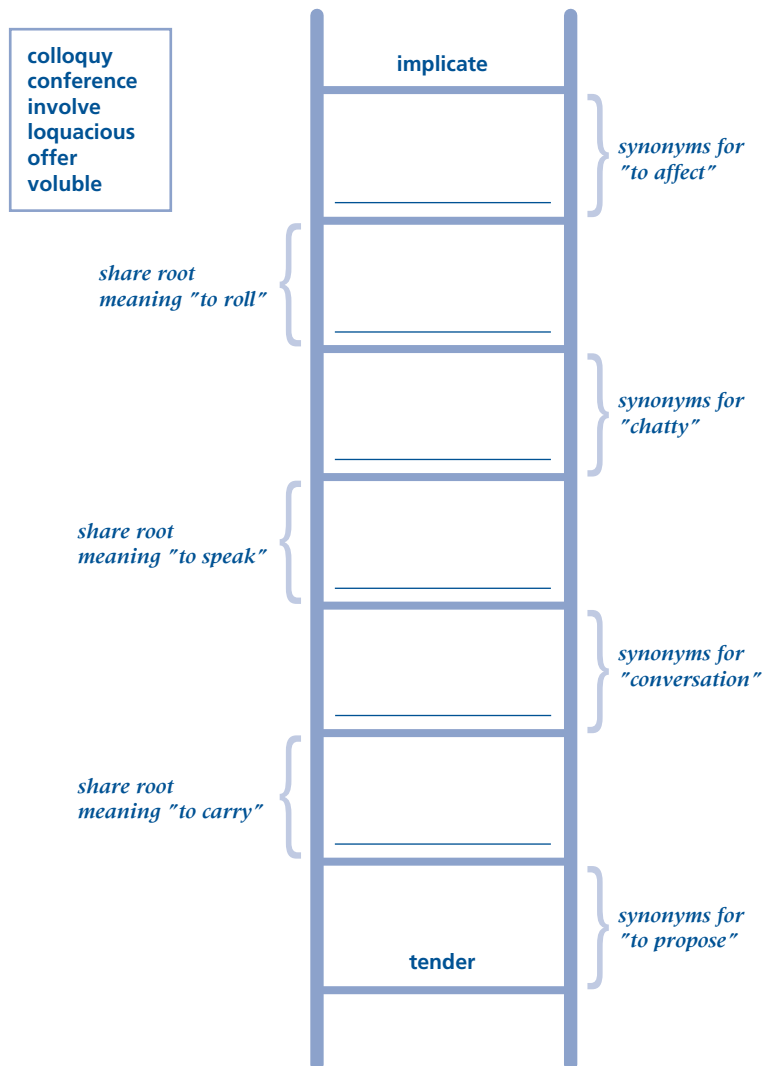
We hold these truths to be *self-evident*, that all men are created equal, that they are *endowed* by their Creator with certain *unalienable* rights, that among these are life, liberty, and the *pursuit* of happiness.

—Thomas Jefferson (1743–1826), third president of the United States

- |                        |           |           |             |
|------------------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 2. <i>self-evident</i> | genuine   | effective | obvious     |
| 3. <i>endowed</i>      | provided  | developed | established |
| 4. <i>unalienable</i>  | lawful    | intrinsic | earned      |
| 5. <i>pursuit</i>      | enjoyment | search    | goal        |

**VOCAB-U-LADDER**

Use your knowledge of word synonyms and roots to connect the word at the top rung to the word at the bottom rung, using the words listed below.





Here's the story behind a word that figures prominently in the chapter you've just read.

### **Topic** A topic was once a spot not a subject

**topic.** tŏp'ĭk. *n.* 1. The subject of a speech, essay, thesis, or discourse. 2. A subject of discussion or conversation. 3. A subdivision of a theme, thesis, or outline.\*

With no teleprompter, index cards, or even sheets of paper at their disposal, ancient Greek and Roman orators often had to rely on their memories for holding a great deal of information. Given the limitations of memory, the points they chose to make had to be clustered in some meaningful way. A popular and quite reliable method for remembering information was known as *loci* (see Chapter 9), where *loci* was Latin for “place.” It involved picking a house you knew well, imagining it in your mind’s eye, and then associating the facts you wanted to recall with specific places inside of that house. Using this method, a skillful orator could mentally fill up numerous houses with the ideas he needed to recall and then simply “visit” them whenever he spoke about a particular subject. The clusters of information that speakers used routinely came to be known as commonplaces, *loci communes* in Latin and *koinos topos* in Greek. The great Greek philosopher Aristotle referred to them simply as *topos*, meaning “places.” And that’s how we came to use *topic* to refer to subject or grouping of information.\*\*

\*Adapted from “topic.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/topic> (accessed May 27, 2009).

\*\*Based on information from “topic.” *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2000. <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/topic> (accessed May 27, 2009).; “topic.” *Online Etymology Dictionary*. Douglas Harper, Historian. <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?search=topic> (accessed May 27, 2009).; “topic, *a* and *n*.” *Oxford English Dictionary*, 2nd ed. 20 vols. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.; “topic, *a* and *n*.” *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. <http://sc-www2.santacruzpl.org:2062/cgi/entry/50254516> (accessed May 27, 2009).

# Index

## A

abridged dictionaries, 135–139, 136f  
abstract ideas, turning into maps, 192–195, 193f  
academic(s), concentration in, 58  
academic preparation, in test  
  anxiety management, 304–311, 306f, 308f–310f  
accuracy, in research papers, 369–370  
action  
  defined, 14  
  goals and, 14–15  
action-impact pattern, 259  
ADHD. *See* attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD)  
ADT. *See* attention-deficit trait (ADT)  
advanced summaries, in test anxiety management, 307, 309f, 310f  
advantageous learning, 307  
aerobic exercise, 97–98  
alarm clock, in time management, 29  
alcohol, sleep effects of, 95  
*American Heritage Dictionary*, 135, 136f, 137  
American Psychological Association, Division of Exercise and Sport Psychology of, 96  
ancillary materials, value of, 197  
antonym(s)  
  value of, 143  
  in vocabulary building, 143  
anxiety, test-related, managing, 304–312. *See also* test anxiety, managing  
appendix(es), of textbook, 239  
artificial memory connections, 217–222  
assigned reading, 243  
assignment-oriented weekly schedule, 39, 40f  
association(s), for memory retention, 214, 215f

attention  
  in effort to remember, 211  
  while listening, 344f, 345–346  
attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), ADT and, 66  
attention-deficit trait (ADT)  
  ADHD and, 66  
  multitasking and, 66–67  
attitude(s)  
  effects on control, 87  
  positive  
    in test anxiety management, 312  
    while listening, 342–345  
attitude, for reading, 113–115  
attitude improvement  
  improving self-esteem, 85–86  
  relaxation techniques, 83–85  
  sense of control in, 86–88  
  in stress management, 82–88  
Ausubel, David, 118  
author's objective, 237  
author's qualifications, for textbook writing, 238  
author's questions, answering of, 162–163

## B

background knowledge, for memory retention, 216  
backstory(ies), in bringing words to life, 131–132  
backup plan when you can't attend lectures, 266  
balance, concentration and, 69–70, 70t  
ballpark search, 159–161, 161f  
bar graphs, 183–186, 184f, 185f  
basic courses, importance of, 216  
“bathtub hoax,” 165  
Bethe, Hans, 289, 350

Bethlehem Steel Company, 37  
better-than-average reader, speed of, 109  
bias(es), confirmation, 166–167  
bibliography(ies)  
  for research papers, 367–368, 367f, 377, 378f  
  of textbook, 239  
bite-sized study sessions, 225  
BlackBerry, 133  
Bloom, Kristine, 224  
book(s)  
  ballpark search in, 160  
  bull's-eye search in, 159  
  good, reading of, 118  
  organization of, difficult, 181  
book indexes, 366  
bookmark method, for Q system, 283–284  
bookstand, for studying, 62  
Boolean search, 161, 161f, 365–366  
bound indexes, 366  
brainstorming, for goals, 15  
breathing techniques, for relaxation, 84  
Brigham and Women's Hospital, in Boston, 92  
Brody, Jane, 89  
Brown, James I., 147  
building on past success, 86  
bull's-eye search, 159–160  
Bunyan, Paul, 114

## C

caddy's tale, 130  
cadence, in intonation, 257, 258  
caffeine, sleep effects of, 95, 97f  
calorie consumption, curbing, 90  
Cambridge Psychological Society, 209  
Carnegie-Mellon University, Center for Cognitive Brain Imaging of, 64



- Carver, Ronald, 114
- category and cluster system of organizing items, 214, 215f
- causal patterns, 259
- cause-effect pattern, 259
- Center for Cognitive Brain Imaging, of Carnegie-Mellon University, 64
- Center for Reading and Language Research, of Tufts University, 119
- chair(s), for studying, 62
- channel(s)
- defined, 204
  - learning, 178–204. *See also* learning channels
- chapter(s)
- controlling idea relationships in, 163
  - finding most important information in, 163
- chapter exercises, hands-on practice with, 196
- Charlesworth, Edward A., 83
- chronological pattern, 258–259
- CIA system, 44–45
- circadian rhythm
- defined, 104
  - sleep and, 93–94
  - in time management, 29–30
- circle graphs, purpose of, 183, 183f
- citation(s), in research papers, 376–377, 377f
- “class participation,” 339. *See also* discussion(s)
- classroom discussion, online discussion vs., 340–341, 341f
- cleanup, allowing time for, 48
- clock, alarm, in time management, 29
- clue(s), skimming for, 114
- cluster(s), reading in, 115–117, 116f
- clustering
- for memory retention, 214, 215f
  - of notes, for research papers, 371
- clutter, cutting down on, 47–48
- common fallacy, 168
- comparison patterns, 260
- comprehension, in reading process, 111, 114–115
- “comprehensive thinking strategy,” four-step, 169
- computerized indexes, 365
- concentration, 56–75
- academics, 58
  - balance and, 69–70, 70t
  - chair for promoting, 62
  - cultivating, 68–70, 70t
  - defined, 58
  - described, 58
  - difficulty in, multitasking and, 65
  - distractions to, elimination of, 59–67
  - elusiveness of, 58
  - equipment for, 61–62
  - lighting and, 61
  - lists for, 68
  - minimize multitasking in, 64–67. *See also* multitasking
  - pencil technique for, 61–62
  - proper environment for, 59–60
  - spider techniques in, 61
  - in sports, 58
  - Stop! technique in, 63
  - taking breaks in, 68–69
  - value of, 58
  - workshop for, 59–60
- concentration scoresheet, 63
- concept maps
- described, 192
  - in narrowing topic, 363, 364f
  - as planning strategies, 194–195
  - in summarizing key concepts, 194
  - of text information, 189, 190f
  - use of, 192, 194
- concluding sentence, 116f, 117
- conclusion, for research papers, 378–379
- confirmation bias, 166–167
- connection(s)
- artificial memory, for memory retention, 217–222
  - for memory retention, 214, 215f
- conscious effort, in remembering, 210–212
- consolidation, for memory retention, 223–225
- context
- graphic, 187–188
  - in reflection in note mastering, 292–293
- control
- attitude effects on, understanding, 87
  - lack of, long-term effects of, 87
  - loss of, multitasking and, 65–66
  - out-of-control circumstances, coping with, 87–88
  - sense of
    - improving, 87
    - increasing, 86–88
    - over upcoming exam, 88
    - significance of, appreciating, 86–87
  - controlling ideas, arrangement of, 163
- Coolidge, Calvin, 139
- Cooper, Kenneth, 98
- Cornell-style note paper, 244, 245f
- Cornell System, 243–254
- for annotating electronic text, 250, 253–254
  - cue column in, 244, 245f–249f
  - definition notes in, 246, 247f
  - described, 243–244
  - drawings in, 248, 248f
  - format for combining lecture and textbooks notes in, 292f, 293
  - list notes in, 248, 248f
  - for marking textbook, 249–250, 251f, 252f
  - for notes using combination of formats, 249, 249f
  - paragraph notes in, 246, 247f
  - sentence notes in, 246, 246f
  - for separate notes, 244–249, 245f–249f
- Cornell University, 243, 289
- cortisone, stress and, 86–87
- Cousins, Norman, 86
- Covey, Stephen, 41
- cramming, systematic, in test anxiety management, 309, 311
- create-a-sentence mnemonic, 222
- create-a-word mnemonic, 221
- creativity, reflection and, 289
- credit(s), in research papers, 376
- critical, defined, 177
- crowd psychology, goals and, 5
- Csikszentmihalyi, Mihaly, 69, 87
- cue, defined, 299
- cue column, in Cornell System, 244, 245f–249f
- Cunningham, Anne, 109, 118–119
- Czeisler, Charles, 92
- D**
- daily schedule, 36, 36f
- to-do list, 39, 41f
- “data smog,” 158
- da Vinci, Leonardo, 191
- Davis, T.B., 225
- deadline, defined, 55
- Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, 112
- decreasing importance pattern, 259
- deductive pattern, 260
- definition notes, in Cornell System, 246, 247f
- Deighton, Lee, 146
- de Montaigne, Michel, 336
- dependent variables, 184
- depression, exercise effects on, 96
- descriptive paragraph, made visual, 191, 191f
- diagram(s), adding to notes, reasons for, 191, 191f
- dialogue, inner, rewriting, 85
- dictionary(ies)
- abridged desk, 135–139, 136f
  - electronic, 137–138
  - how to read, 134f
  - pocket, 133, 134f

## Index

- synonyms in, 135
- unabridged, 138–139
- usage notes in, 137
- using, 133
- in vocabulary building, 132–139, 134f, 136f
- word histories in, 137
- diet. *See* eating habits
- discussion(s), 336–358
  - accurate information in, 348
  - adding to, 348
  - benefits of, 338
  - classroom vs. online, 340–341, 341f
  - defined, 358
  - easy to follow points in, 350
  - environment for, 340–341, 341f
  - follow-up, 351–352
  - fresh points in, 350
  - getting most from, 338
  - grade percentage of, 339
  - ground rules for, 339–341, 341f
  - guidelines for, 340
  - in-class review of, 351
  - instructor expectations for, 339–340
  - interactive points in, 348–349
  - keep comments connected in, 349
  - listen actively during, 342–347, 343f, 344f. *See also* listening
  - make your points effectively in, 347–350
  - members of, keep in mind, 349–350
  - memorable comments in, 350
  - online, review of, 352
  - participating in, 342–350, 343f, 344f
  - preparing for, 338–339
    - questions in, 339
    - readings in, 338
  - recording of, 351
  - software related to, 340–341, 341f
  - unexpected outcomes of, 352
  - well-expressed comments in, 348
  - well-supported comments in, 348
- distortion(s), in graphs, 186
- distraction(s)
  - elimination of, 59–67
  - external, reducing, 59–62
  - internal, discouraging, 62–63
  - Internet, 60
  - listening and, 344f, 346
  - messaging, 60
  - noise, 60
  - visual, 60
- distractor(s), reliability, 164–169. *See also* reliability distractors
- distributed practice, 224–225
- Division of Exercise and Sport Psychology, of American Psychological Association, 96
- Do It Now: How to Stop Procrastination*, 80
- dominant learning channels, 180–188, 183f–187f. *See also* learning channels
- Douglass, William, 94
- draft(s), first, of research paper, 373
- drawings, in Cornell System, 248, 248f
- Drucker, Peter, 58
- “dual coding” theory, 191
- E**
- eating habits, 88–92
  - curbing calorie consumption, 90
  - drink water, 91–92
  - eat nutritious foods, 90
  - emphasize healthy fats and whole-grain foods, 91
  - foods to avoid, 90–91
  - fruits and vegetables, 91
  - routine meal schedules, 89
  - stress and, 88–89
- Ebbinhaus, Hermann, 208–209, 213–214
- echo chamber, 165, 166
- Edfeldt, Ake, 110–111
- editing, of research paper, 374, 374f
- Effective Listening*, 342
- efficiency, in note taking, 260, 263–266, 263f–265f
- effort, in remembering, 210–212
- Einstein, Albert, 212
- Ekman, Paul, 83
- electronic dictionaries, 137–138
- electronic slides, from presentation software, 253
- electronic texts
  - ballpark search in, 161
  - bull’s-eye search in, 160
  - marking of, Cornell System in, 250, 253–254
- Ellington, Duke, 49
- ellipsis, 370
- e-mail
  - limiting of, in time management, 29
  - OHIO rule for, 47
- Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 58
- endorphins, 98
- enumeration, in textbooks, 250, 252f
- environment
  - discussion, 340–341, 341f
  - study, 59–63
- essay(s). *See also* essay tests
  - appearance of, 322–323
  - carefully constructed, 318, 320
  - longer, 320, 321f
  - paragraph-length, 320, 320f
  - supporting material in, 321–322
  - well-organized, 320, 320f–322f
  - writing of, basics of, 318–323, 319f–322f
- essay tests, 318–323, 319f–322f. *See also* essay(s)
  - grading process, 320, 322f
  - keywords in, 318, 319f
  - understanding questions in, 318, 319f
- exam(s), 303–334. *See also* test(s)
- exam-week schedule, items in, 306
- excuse(s), for procrastinating, verbalizing of, 81
- exercise(s)
  - aerobic, 97–98
  - chapter, hands-on practice with, 196
  - for depression, 96
  - sleep effects of, 95–96
  - in stress management, 96–98
- exercise your mind, while listening, 347
- experience, in reading process, 117–119
- eye movement, in reading process, 108–110, 109f
- F**
- facial expressions, effects of, study of, 83
- failure, fear of, procrastination and, 79
- fallacy(ies)
  - common, 168
  - resources for, 168–169
- fantasy(ies), logical, 168–169
- Faraday, Michael, 189–190
- fat(s), healthy, in diet, 91
- fear of failure, procrastination and, 79
- fear of success, procrastination and, 79
- feedback, recitation and, 223
- Felder, Richard A., 181
- Finding Your Focus*, 63
- first draft, of research paper, 373
- First Law of Motion, 242
- five-minute plan, in procrastination prevention, 80
- fixation(s)
  - defined, 125
  - in reading process, 108, 109f
- flexibility, in organization, 46–47
- FOAF (“friend of a friend”) stories, 165–166
- focus, 56–75. *See also* concentration
  - defined, 75
- focused thinking, 56–75. *See also* concentration
- follow-up questions, in reflection in note mastering, 293
- Food Guide Pyramid, of USDA, 90
- Forer, 167

forgetting  
 defending memories from, 209–210  
 defined, 210  
 described, 208  
 fight back against, 207–232. *See also*  
 memory/memorization  
 multitasking and, 65  
 rapidity of, 209–210  
 scope of, 209–210  
 format, of graphs, 186  
 foundation, building of, 1–104  
*Fourteen Master Words*, 147–148, 148t  
 Fox, Edward W., 244  
 Frankl, Viktor, 4  
 “friend of a friend” (FOAF) stories, 165–166  
 Friesen, Wallace V., 83  
 Frontier Vocabulary System, 141–143, 142f  
 applying, 143  
 recognizing frontier words, 143  
 understanding how words are learned in,  
 142–143, 142f  
 fruits, in diet, 91

## G

Gardner, Howard, 195  
 geographical pattern, 259  
 get it right first time, in effort to  
 remember, 211  
 Gibbon, Edward, 112–113  
 Gist, Marilyn, 78  
 gist, skimming for, 114  
 global learners, 181  
 glossary, of textbook, 239  
 Glover, J.A., 225  
 goal(s), 3–22  
 action and, 14–15  
 brainstorming for, 15  
 changes in, 16  
 crowd psychology and, 5  
 defined, 22  
 defining of, 10–12, 11f  
 devising plan for, 12–13, 13f  
 friend and family’s role in, 5  
 GPA, 9–15, 11f. *See also* GPA (goals, plans,  
 actions)  
 imaging of, 5–6  
 importance of, 4  
 major, 10–11  
 marching to own rhythm, 4–5  
 meaning and, 4–5  
 minor, 10  
 money effects on, 6

overcoming obstacles to, 14–15  
 purpose and, 4, 10, 12  
 putting theory into practice, 15  
 quality vs. quantity, 6–9  
 writing down, 12  
 Gould, Edson, 5  
 GPA (goals, plans, actions), 9–15, 11f  
 completion of, 15  
 defining goal, 10–12, 11f  
 described, 9–10  
 devising plan, 12–13, 13f  
 example of, 12–13  
 overcoming obstacles, 14–15  
 putting theory into practice, 15  
 of success, 13f  
 taking action, 14–15  
 grammar, in research papers, correct for, 375  
 Grant, Alexander, 95  
 graph(s), 183–186, 183f–187f  
 analyzing of, 186, 186f–187f  
 bar, 183–186, 184f, 185f  
 circle, 183, 183f  
 context in, 187–188  
 distorted data in, 186  
 format of, 186  
 language of, 183  
 line, 183–186, 185f  
 scale of, 187  
 Great Depression, 130  
 “the great recall,” 113  
 Greenbaum, Judith, 63  
 ground-level reading, 114–115  
 group work, 195–196  
 “gut,” information based on, 167

## H

habit(s)  
 listening, 342, 343f  
 time, changing of, 27–30, 28f  
 Hall, Robert A., Jr., 110  
 Hallowell, Edward, 66  
 hands-on practice, 196–198  
 chapter exercises, 196  
 programmed materials and  
 workbooks, 197  
 text’s ancillary materials, 197  
 work with your hands, 197–198  
 Hanson, Peter, 87  
 Hartig, Hugo, 321  
 Hartmann, Ernest, 93  
 Harvard Medical School, Mind/Body Medical  
 Institute of, 83

Hayakawa, S.L., 142  
 health and well-being, 88–89, 97f. *See also*  
*specific components, e.g., eating habits*  
 good eating habits, 88–92  
 improving sleep, 92–96  
 regular exercise, 96–98  
*Health Gazette*, 95  
 healthy routine, in stress management, 88–98,  
 97f. *See also* health and  
 well-being  
 “hidden” time, finding, 26–27  
*The History of England*, 117  
 Holmes, Oliver Wendell, 22  
 homestretch schedule, in test anxiety  
 management, 305–307, 306f,  
 308f–310f  
*How to Lie with Statistics*, 186

## I

idea(s), controlling, arrangement of, 163  
*The idea of Composition*, 321  
 illustration(s), add to notes, 189, 191, 191f  
 imaging, of goals, 5–6  
 importance patterns, 259  
 increasing, 259  
 independent variables, 184  
 index(es)  
 book, 366  
 bound, 366  
 computerized, 365  
 periodical, 365  
 textbook, 239  
 index card system, in vocabulary building,  
 139–141, 140f  
 inductive pattern, 260  
 information  
 evaluation of, 169–171  
 explaining, 301–394  
 important, determination of, 163–164  
 important, 162–164  
 Internet, evaluation of, 169–171  
 irrelevant, 158–159  
 for note taking, gathering of, 254–267  
 one’s own, answering, 163–164  
 readily available, 158  
 relevant, 158–161, 161f  
 reliability of, 164–171  
 determination of, 164  
 distractors, 164–169. *See also*  
 reliability distractors  
 for research papers, gathering of, 364–370,  
 367f, 369f

## Index

- retaining, 205–299
  - text, concept map of, 189, 190f
  - zeroing in on, 156–177
    - ballpark search, 159–161, 161f
    - bull’s-eye search, 159–160
    - in chapters, 163
    - guidelines for analysis, 169–171
    - “gut,” use in, 167
    - important vs. less important, 162–164
    - linking new to old, 216
    - organization in, 212–214, 215f
    - rearranging for reflection in note mastering, 291
    - relevancy of information, 158–161, 161f
    - reliability of information, 164–171
  - inner dialogue, rewriting, 85
  - insomnia, multitasking and, 66
  - Institute of Psycho-Imagination Therapy, 217
  - Institute of Reading Research, of University of Stockholm, 110–111
  - interest
    - in ordinary places, 130–131
    - in vocabulary building, 128–132
    - in words, 129–131. *See also* word(s), interest in
  - Internet information, challenges related to, 169–171
  - Internet sites, evaluation of, 169–171
  - Internet use
    - for ballpark search, 161, 161f
    - as distraction in study environment, 60
    - limiting of, in time management, 29
  - intonation
    - components of, 257
    - in lectures, 257
    - in note taking, 257–258
    - in reading process, 115–116
    - in textbooks, 257–258
    - typographical, 258
  - introduction
    - for research papers, 378
    - for textbooks, 238–239, 240f–241f
  - iPhone, 133
  - irrelevant information, 158–159
- J**
- Jacobson, Edmund, 85
  - James, William, 77, 82
  - Jorgensen, Chuck, 111
  - jottings, in test taking, 325–326
  - journal(s)
    - ballpark search in, 161
    - bull’s-eye search in, 160
  - Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 64
  - The Joy of Stress*, 87
  - Just, Marcel, 64
- K**
- Kennedy, John F., Pres., 10, 11f, 215
  - key concepts, summarizing, concept maps in, 194
  - keyword(s), in essay tests, 318, 319f
  - keyword mnemonic, 221
  - keyword search, 365
  - kinesthetic learners, approaches of, 197–198
  - King George V, 139
  - King, Martin Luther, 215
  - Kingsolver, Barbara, 207
  - Knaus, William J., 80
  - knowledge, background, for memory retention, 216
  - KPMG (Klynveld, Peat, Marwick, Goerdeler), 6
  - Krug, D., 225
- L**
- labeling, in organization, 45–46
  - lack of control, long-term effects of, 87
  - Lange, Carl, 82
  - law(s), Parkinson’s, 28
  - Law of Inertia, 242
  - learner(s)
    - global, 181
    - kinesthetic, approaches of, 197–198
    - sequential, 181
    - tactile, approaches of, 197–198
  - learning
    - advantageous, 307
    - questions and, 158
    - sleep loss effects on, 92
  - learning aids, supplementary, 238
  - learning channels, 178–204
    - alternative approaches, 188–198, 190f, 191f, 193f
    - converting words into pictures, 188–195, 190f, 191f, 193f
    - coping with difficult texts, 180–182
    - dominant, 180–188, 183f–187f
    - global vs. sequential learners, 181
    - hands-on practice, 196–198
    - listening vs. reading, 181–182
    - supplementary text use, 181
    - understanding visuals, 182–188, 183f–187f
    - working in groups, 195–196
  - learning plateaus, for memory retention, 225
  - learning styles, 178–204. *See also* learning channels
    - LeBon, Gustave, 5
  - lecture(s). *See also* lecture notes
    - backup plan when you can’t attend, 266
    - intonation in, 257
    - organizational patterns in, 258–260
    - previous, review notes from, 243
    - reliving, 268
  - lecture notes
    - Cornell System for combining textbook notes with, 292f, 293
    - how to take, 269, 269f
    - preparation for taking, 242–243
    - previous, reviewing of, 243
  - Lee, Ivy, 37
  - Levenson, Robert W., 83
  - librarian(s), reference, 365
  - light, for studying, 61
  - Lincoln, Abraham, 217
  - line graphs, 183–186, 185f
  - list(s), for concentration, 68
  - listener(s), good, described, 342
  - listening
    - during discussions, 342–347, 343f, 344f
    - for ideas, 344f, 346
    - note taking while, 347
    - with open mind, 347
    - reading vs., 181–182
    - thought speed during, 334f, 346
    - work at, 344f, 346
    - to your body, in time management, 29–30
  - listening habits, 342, 343f
  - listening skills
    - capacity for adjustment, cultivating, 346–347
    - exercise your mind, 347
    - find areas of interest, 344–345, 344f
    - hold your fire, 344f, 345
    - judge content, not delivery, 344f, 345
    - maintain positive attitude, 342–345
    - pay attention, 344f, 345–346
    - resist distractions, 344f, 346
  - list notes, in Cornell System, 248, 248f
  - loci methods, 218–219
  - Loehr, James, 84
  - Logan, Richard, 86

logical connections, making, 216  
 logical fantasies, 168–169  
 logical patterns, 260  
 long-term memory, described, 208  
 loose-leaf paper, in organization, 46  
 “loving kindness” meditations, 82  
 Lowes, John Livingston, 241

## M

Macaulay, Thomas Babington, 117  
 magazine(s)  
   ballpark search in, 161  
   bull’s-eye search in, 160  
 “The Magical Number Seven, Plus or Minus Two”, 212  
 Malcolm X, 129, 149  
 Mann, Thomas, 278  
 map(s)  
   concept. *See* concept maps  
   as planning strategies, 194–195  
   for summaries, 194  
   turning abstract ideas into, 192–195, 193f  
 Markel, Geraldine, 63  
 markings, in test taking, 325–326  
 Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 195  
   on comprehension, 111  
 massed practice, 224–225  
 master schedule, 32, 33f, 38f, 39  
 matching questions, 316–317  
 meaning, goals and, 4–5  
 meditation, “loving kindness,” 82  
 memory/memorization, 207–232  
   artificial memory connections, 217–222  
   associations and, 214, 215f  
   background knowledge and, 216  
   clustering in, 214, 215f  
   computer vs. human memory, 224  
   connections and, 214, 215f  
   conscious effort in, 210–212  
   consolidation in, 215–225, 217f  
   defending against forgetting, 209–210  
   effort effects on, 210–212  
   human vs. computer’s memory, 224  
   images in, 218  
   learning plateaus and, 225  
   limiting what you choose to learn, 213–214  
   loci methods for, 218–219  
   long-term, 208  
   making logical connections, 216  
   meaningful patterns in, 214, 215f  
   mnemonic devices for, 219–222. *See also*  
     mnemonic devices  
   motivation effects on, 211–212

organizing information in, 212–214, 215f  
 pictures and, 216–217, 217f  
 recitation in, 222–223, 286–287, 288f  
 short-term, 208  
 strengthening, 215–223, 217f  
 working, 208  
 memory spans, 213  
 “memory tricks,” 219  
 Mencken, Henry Louis, 165  
 messaging, as distraction in study  
   environment, 60  
 Meyer, David, 64  
 Michelangelo, 191  
 Microsoft PowerPoint, 253  
 Miller, G.A., 212–213  
 Miller, Gerald R., 219  
 mind, exercising of, while listening, 347  
 Mind/Body Medical Institute, of Harvard  
   Medical School, 83  
 mnemonic devices, 219–222  
   classic, 219–220  
   create your own, 221–222  
   create-a-sentence, 222  
   create-a-word, 221  
   described, 219  
   keyword, 221  
   prevalence of, 219  
   risks of using, 219  
   success of, 219  
 modified printing style, for note taking, 260,  
   263, 263f  
 momentum, in procrastination  
   prevention, 80  
 money, goals affected by, 6  
 Morgan, William, 96  
 motivation  
   recitation and, 223  
   in remembering, 211–212  
 movement patterns, 258–259  
 movies, snapshots vs., 185f  
 multiple-choice questions, 313–315  
 multitasking, 64–67  
   ADT and, 66–67  
   adverse effects of, 64–67  
   concentration effects of, 65  
   costs of, 64  
   defined, 64  
   forgetfulness due to, 65  
   insomnia due to, 66  
   minimizing, 67  
   productivity effects of, 64–65  
   stress related to, 65–66  
 Murphy, Kevin J., 342

music, loud, as distraction in study  
   environment, 60  
 “My First Research Paper” (Pauk),  
   380–388  
 MyPyramid, 90

## N

Nabokov, Vladimir, 138  
 nap(s), 94  
 NASA. *See* National Aeronautics and Space  
   Administration (NASA)  
 Nathan, Ronald G., 83  
 National Aeronautics and Space  
   Administration (NASA), 111  
 neologism, 166  
 newspaper(s), in vocabulary building, 130–131  
 Newton, Sir Isaac, 242  
*New York Evening Mail*, 165  
*New York Times*, 92, 131, 166  
 Nickerson, Raymond S., 167  
 noise, as distraction in study environment, 60  
 norepinephrine, 98  
 note(s)  
   add illustrations to, 189, 191, 191f  
   in Cornell System, 244–249, 245f–249f  
   definition, in Cornell System, 246, 247f  
   lecture. *See* lecture notes  
   list, in Cornell System, 248, 248f  
   mastering of, 278–299  
     described, 280  
     Q system in, 280–284, 281f–283f. *See also*  
       Q system  
   recitation in, 286–287, 288f  
   reflection in, 288–293, 292f. *See also*  
     reflection, in note mastering  
   summaries in, 284–286, 285f  
   organization of, in test anxiety  
     management, 306–307, 308f  
   paragraph, in Cornell System, 246, 247f  
   reviewing of  
     immediate, 280  
     from previous lecture, 243  
   sentence, in Cornell System, 246, 246f  
   separate  
     Cornell System for, 244–249, 245f–249f  
     for Q system, 284  
   studying of, vs. writing research paper, 362  
   taking of, 234–277. *See also* note taking  
   during test taking, 325–326  
   textbook  
     Cornell System for combining  
       lecture notes with, 292f, 293  
     how to take, 269–271, 270f

## Index

- turning into knowledge, 278–299
  - usage, in dictionaries, 137
  - notebook(s), in organization, 46–47
  - note cards, for research papers, 369, 369f
  - note paper, Cornell-style, 244, 245f
  - note taking, 234–277
    - active participation in, 254
    - ask questions both silently and out loud during lecture, 254–255
    - attentiveness to detail in, 254, 255, 257–260
    - backup plan when you can't attend lecture, 266
    - Cornell System, 243–254
    - effective, 271
    - efficiency in, 260, 263–266, 263f–265f
    - gathering information in, 254–267
    - inquisitiveness in, 254–255
    - intonation in, 257–258
    - modified printing style for, 260, 263, 263f
    - preparation for, 236–243
      - lectures, 242–243
      - readings, 236–242, 240f–242f
    - recognize organizational patterns in, 258–260. *See also* organizational patterns
    - for research papers, 368–370, 369f
    - selectivity in, 263, 266, 266f
    - special cases, 266–267
    - SQ3R system in, 255, 256f
    - steps for, 268–271, 269f, 270f
    - for supplemental readings, 267
    - telegraphic writing for, 263, 264f, 265f
    - tie things together in, 267–271, 269f, 270f
    - two-page system for fast-moving lectures, 266–267
    - while listening, 347
- O**
- objective(s), author's, 237
  - objective questions
    - described, 312
    - multiple-choice questions, 313–315
    - true-false questions, 312–313
    - understanding of, 312–318
  - O'Connor, Johnson, 141, 142
  - OHIO rule, 47
  - online
    - ballpark search, 161
    - bull's-eye search, 160
  - online discussions
    - classroom discussion vs., 340–341, 341f
    - review of, 352
  - open mind, listening with, 347
  - OPTIC system, 182–183
  - in analyzing graphs, 186, 186f–187f
  - described, 182
  - five steps of, 182–183
  - purpose of, 182
  - organization, 24–55. *See also* time management
    - of book, difficult, 181
    - of essays, 320, 320f–322f
    - of information, in effort to remember, 212–214, 215f
    - list of items you need to remember, 214, 215f
    - in memory retention, 212–214, 215f
    - poor, procrastination and, 80
    - retrieval benefits of, 214, 215f
    - sticking to schedule in, 30–43
    - in test anxiety management, 305–307, 306f, 308f–310f
    - textbook, 237
  - organization techniques, 43–48
    - allow time for cleanup and setup, 48
    - avoid printing out materials, 47
    - category and cluster system, 214, 215f
    - choose logical labels, 45–46
    - CIA system, 44–45
    - devise system, 43–46
    - find place for everything, 43–44
    - flexibility, 46–47
    - intelligence in organizing things, 44–45
    - loose-leaf paper, 46
    - minimize clutter, 47–48
    - notebooks, 46–47
    - OHIO rule, 47
  - organizational patterns
    - causal patterns, 259
    - chronological pattern, 258–259
    - comparison patterns, 260
    - importance patterns, 259
    - in lectures and textbooks, 258–269. *See also* *specific patterns*
    - logical patterns, 260
    - movement patterns, 258–259
    - place pattern, 259
    - process pattern, 259
    - recognition of, 258–260
    - for research papers, 372
    - signposts, 260, 261t–262t
    - time pattern, 258–259
  - organizational systems. *See also* organization techniques
    - types of, 43
  - out-of-control circumstances, coping with, 87–88
  - own thoughts, in research papers, 370
  - Oxford English Dictionary*, 138
- P**
- PACE technique, 112–119
    - attitude in, 113–115
    - clusters in, 115–117, 116f
    - experience in, 117–119
    - preparation in, 112–113
  - Padus, Emrika, 83–84
  - page-by-page reading, 117
  - Paivio, Allan, 191
  - Palm, 133
  - paper(s), OHIO rule for, 47
  - paragraph(s)
    - descriptive, made visual, 191, 191f
    - essay, 320, 320f
  - paragraph-by-paragraph reading, 116–117, 116f
  - paragraph notes, in Cornell System, 246, 247f
  - paraphrasing, in research papers, 370
  - Parkinson's law, 28
  - participation
    - class, 339
    - in discussion, 342–350, 343f, 344f
    - recitation in encouraging, 223
  - Pascal, Blaise, 106
  - pattern(s). *See specific types, e.g.,* causal patterns
  - Pauk, Walter, 380–388
  - pause(s), in intonation, 257, 258
  - Pavlov, Ivan Petrovich, 235
  - pay attention, while listening, 344f, 345–346
  - paying attention, in effort to remember, 211
  - PDAs. *See* personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - PDF files, 250, 253
  - Peale, Norman Vincent, 6, 14–15, 82
  - pencil technique, 61–62
  - periodical indexes, 365
  - personal digital assistants (PDAs), 68, 133, 134f
  - phrase-by-phrase reading, 115–116
  - picture(s)
    - converting words into, 188–195, 190f, 191f, 193f
    - for memory retention, 216–217, 217f
  - "Pike's Peak or Bust," 10
  - place (spatial) patterns, 259
  - plagiarism, described, 376
  - planning strategies, concept maps as, 194–195
  - plateau(s), learning, for memory retention, 225
  - PMR. *see* progressive muscle relaxation (PMR)
  - pocket dictionary, 133, 134f
  - PocketPC, 133
  - pocket work, carrying of, 26
  - Poldrack, Russell, 210



- Portable Document Format (PDF) files, 250, 253
- positive attitude  
in test anxiety management, 312  
while listening, 342–345
- Positive Imaging*, 6
- practice  
distributed, 224–225  
massed, 224–225
- prefatory material, 236–237
- prefix(es), of words, 144–147, 145t
- premise, for research papers, 370–371
- preparation, for reading, 112–113
- presentation software, electronic slides from, 253
- pressure, handling of, 77–104. *See also* stress management
- Princeton University, 241
- printing style, modified, for note taking, 260, 263, 263f
- priorities, in schedules, 39–43, 41f
- problem-cause-solution pattern, 259
- problem-effect-solution pattern, 250
- process pattern, 259
- procrastination  
defined, 14  
discouraging of, 79–81  
multitasking and, 65  
preventing of, 14, 80–81  
reasons for, 79–80
- programmed materials, value of, 197
- progressive muscle relaxation (PMR), 84–85
- pseudo-forgetting, avoiding, 210
- psychological preparation, in test anxiety management, 311–312
- psychology, crowd, goals and, 5
- purpose, goals and, 4
- Q**
- Q system, 280–284, 281f, 283f  
bookmark method for, 283–284  
described, 280  
questions for, formulation of, 280–282, 281f, 283f  
separate notes for, 284  
sticky note method for, 282–283
- question(s)  
author's, answering of, 162–163  
in discussion preparation, 339  
follow-up, in reflection in note mastering, 293  
formulation of, as you read, 255, 256f  
in learning, 158  
during lecture, 254–255  
matching, 316–317  
multiple-choice, 313–315  
for Q system, formulation of, 280–282, 281f, 283f  
reading of, in test taking, 323–324  
sentence-completion, 317–318  
silent, 254–255  
test, 312–323, 319f–322f. *See also specific types*; test questions  
true-false, 312–313  
unasked, reasons for, 255  
use of, 156–177  
quotation(s), for research papers, 370
- R**
- Random House Dictionary of the English Language*, 138
- Rau, John, 6
- reader(s), better-than-average, speed of, 109
- Readers' Guide to Periodical Literature*, 366
- reading, 106–125  
assigned, 243  
attitude in, 113–115  
dictionary, 134f  
in discussion preparation, 338  
experience effects on, 117–119  
expressive, value of, 257–258  
eye movement and, 108–110, 109f  
of good books, reading skills improved by, 118  
ground-level, 114–115  
improving, 108  
listening vs., 181–182  
note taking for, preparation for, 236–242, 240f–242f  
page-by-page, 117  
paragraph-by-paragraph, 116–117, 116f  
phrase-by-phrase, 115–116  
preparation for, 112–113  
speed of, 108–110, 109f  
vocabulary and, 118–119  
in test taking, 323–324
- reading assignment, surveying of, 239, 241–242, 242f
- reading skills, 106–125  
attitude, 113–115  
clustering, 115–117, 116f  
comprehension, 111, 114–115  
intonation, 115–116  
listen to your silent speech, 110–111  
PACE technique, 112–119. *See also* PACE technique  
preparation, 112–113  
reading good books effects on, 118  
scanning for specific words, 114  
skimming for clues or gist, 114  
vocabulary building and, 118–119  
“The Real Dangers of Summer,” 166
- recitation  
described, 222  
feedback provided by, 223  
in memory/memorization, 222–223  
for memory retention, 222–223  
in memory strengthening, during note mastering, 286–287, 288f  
motivation due to, 223  
in note mastering  
process of, 286–287, 288f  
role of, 286  
verbal, 287  
by writing, 287  
participation encouraged by, 223  
success of, reasons for, 222–223
- Recording for the Blind and Dyslexic (RFB&D), 181
- reference librarians, 365
- reference list(s), of textbook, 239
- reflection  
in note mastering, 288–293, 292f  
advantages of, 290  
ask more questions in, 293  
context in, 292–293  
creativity and, 289  
described, 288–289  
drawback of, 290  
importance of, 289–290  
rearrange information in, 291  
Silver Dollar System in, 290–291  
software for, 291  
techniques, 290–293, 292f  
visual thinking in, 293  
subconscious and, 290
- reframing, 13
- regression, 109
- rehearse, defined, 208, 232
- rehearsing, recitation in, 222–223
- relaxation  
for attitude improvement, 83–85  
breathe deeply, 84  
PMR, 84–85  
described, 83–84
- relevant information, 158–161, 161f
- reliability distractors, 164–169  
confirmation bias, 166–167

## Index

- echo chamber, 165, 166  
 logical fantasies, 168–169  
 “The Real Dangers of Summer,” 166  
 urban legends, 165–166
- reliability of information, 164–171. *See also*  
 information, reliability of
- remembering  
 effort in, 210–212  
 intention in, strengthening techniques,  
 211–212
- rereading assignment, quick overview of, 268
- research papers, 360–394  
 accuracy in, 369–370  
 add missing elements, 376–379, 377f, 378f  
 bibliography in, 367–368, 367f, 377, 378f  
 citations in, 376–377, 377f  
 conclusion for, 378–379  
 crediting in, 376  
 ellipsis in, 370  
 final copy of, printing of, 379  
 framework for, 370–372  
 gather information for, 364–370, 367f, 369f  
 introduction for, 378  
 note(s) for, clustering of, 371  
 note cards for, 369, 369f  
 note taking for, 362, 368–370, 369f  
 organizational pattern for, 372  
 own thoughts in, 370  
 paraphrasing in, 370  
 plagiarism in, 376  
 premise for, 370–371  
 quotations in, 370  
 supporting details in, strengthening of, 374,  
 374f  
 title, 377–378  
 topic selection for, 362–363  
   focus for, 363  
   narrowing of, 363, 364f  
 writing process for, 373–379, 374f, 377f, 378f  
   check spelling, 375–376  
   correct grammar, 375  
   fine-tune technical details, 375  
   provide transitions, 375  
   race through first draft, 373  
   revise and edit, 374–376, 374f  
   strengthen supporting evidence, 374,  
   374f
- retaining information, 205–209
- retrieval, organization effects on, 214, 215f  
*Review of General Psychology*, 167
- revising, of research papers, 374–376, 374f
- RFB&D. *See* Recording for the Blind and  
 Dyslexic (RFB&D)
- roots, of words, 144, 144t, 146–147, 146f
- Rosen, Larry, 66
- routine, healthy, in stress management,  
 88–98, 97f. *See also* health and  
 well-being
- Ruggiero, Vincent, 169
- S**
- saccades, in reading process, 108
- Sapolsky, Robert, 88–89
- scale, of groups, 187
- scanning, in reading process, 114
- schedule(s), 30–43. *See also* time  
 management, techniques in  
 adhering to, 30–43  
 benefits of, 30–31  
 breaks in, 29  
 circadian rhythm and, 29–30  
 daily, 36, 36f  
   to-do list, 39, 41f  
 exam-week, items in, 306  
 flexibility due to, 31  
 function of, 30  
 homestretch, in test anxiety management,  
 305–307, 306f, 308f–310f  
 master, 32, 33f, 38f, 39  
 priorities in, 39–43, 41f  
 reluctance to use, 30  
 sticking to, 30–43  
 task-based, 37–39, 38f  
 time blocks in, 31–37, 33f, 35f, 36f. *See also*  
   time blocks, scheduling with  
 time organizing by, in test anxiety  
 management, 305–307, 306f,  
 308f–310f  
 time saving by, 30  
 tools for, 37  
 urgency-importance matrix in, 41–43, 41f  
 weekly, 32, 34–36, 35f  
   assignment-oriented, 39, 40f  
   efficient vs. effective, 40
- scholar(s)  
 origin of, 131  
 student vs., 293
- School of Business Administration, of  
 University of Washington, 78
- Schopenhauer, Arthur, 289
- Schwab, Charles, 37
- search(es)  
 ballpark, 159–161, 161f  
 Boolean, 161, 161f, 365–366  
 bull’s-eye, 159  
 keyword, 365
- self-esteem  
 described, 85  
 improving, 85–86
- Selye, Hans, 77, 78
- sentence(s)  
 concluding, 116f, 117  
 supporting, 116–117, 116f  
 topic, 116, 116f  
 types of, 116–117, 116f
- sentence-completion questions, 317–318
- sentence notes, in Cornell System, 246, 246f
- separate notes  
 Cornell System for, 244–249, 245f–249f  
 for Q system, 284
- sequential learners, 181
- setup, allowing time for, 48
- Shen, David, 158
- Shorr, Joseph E., 217
- short-term memory, described, 208
- Shuell, Thomas, 224
- signposts, 260, 261t–262t
- silent speech, in reading process, 110–111
- Silver Dollar System  
 in reflection in note mastering, 290–291  
 in test anxiety management, 307
- skimming, in reading process, 114
- sleep  
 alcohol effects on, 95  
 caffeine effects on, 95, 97f  
 circadian rhythm effects on, 93–94  
 exercise effects on, 95–96  
 improving  
   guidelines for, 92–96  
   steps for, 95–96  
 keeping to schedule, 93–94  
 naps, 94  
 optimal, 93  
   advantages of, 95
- sleep in dark room, 95
- “sleeping in,” on weekend, impact of, 93
- sleep loss  
 dangers of, 92  
 learning effects of, 92
- slide(s), electronic, from presentation to  
 software, 253
- smartphones, 133
- snapshots, movies vs., 185f
- Socrates, 158
- software  
 discussion-related, 340–341, 341f  
 presentation, electronic slides from, 253  
 in reflection in note mastering, 291
- Soloman, Barbara M., 181



- sophomore, origin of, 131
- space, effective use of, 24–55. *See also* organization
- spare time thinking, 27
- spatial patterns, 259
- specificity, in procrastination prevention, 81
- speech, silent, in reading process, 110–111
- speed-reading, 108–110
- spelling, in research papers, check for, 375–376
- spell-checking program, 375–376
- spider techniques, 61
- split-level summary, 286
- sports, concentration in, 58
- SQ3R system, in note taking, 255, 256f
- Stampfer, Meir J., 90–91
- standard summary, 284–286, 285f
- in test anxiety management, 307, 308f
- statistics, graphic formats for, 186
- Stein, Gertrude, 303
- sticky note method, for Q system, 282–283
- Stop! technique, 63
- stress
- avoidable, elimination of, 78–82
  - cortisone and, 86–87
  - defined, 78
  - eating related to, 88–89
  - multitasking and, 65–66
  - two-sided potential of, 78
  - weariness and, 93
- stress management, 77–104
- attitude improvement in, 82–88
  - in college, importance of, 98
  - discouraging procrastination in, 79–81
  - eliminate avoidable stress in, 78–82
  - eliminate common stressors in, 81–82
  - exercise in, 96–98
  - good eating habits in, 88–92
  - health routine in, 88–98, 97f. *See also* health and well-being
  - improving self-esteem in, 85–86
  - improving sleep in, 92–96
  - regular exercise in, 96–98
  - relaxation in, 83–85
  - sense of control in, 86–88
- Stress Management*, 83
- stressor(s), common, elimination of, 81–82
- stress survivors, qualities of, 86
- student(s), scholars vs., 293
- study environment, 59–63
- bookstand in, 62
  - chair in, 62
  - concentration scoresheet in, 63
  - discourage internal distractions in, 62–63
  - eliminate noise in, 60
  - equipment in, 61–62
  - lighting in, 61
  - minimize visual distractions in, 60
  - pencil technique in, 61–62
  - proper, 59–60
  - reduce external distractions in, 59–62
  - spider technique in, 61
  - tune out messaging and Internet in, 60
  - turn down loud music in, 60
  - worry pad in, 63
- study sessions
- bite-sized, 225
  - breaking up, for memory retention, 224–225
- study “switch hitter,” 307
- subconscious
- reflection and, 290
  - in saving time, 27
- subject(s), of research papers, choosing, 362–363
- success
- fear of, procrastination and, 79
  - past, building on, 86
- summary(ies)
- advanced, in test anxiety management, 307, 309f, 310f
  - split-level, 286
  - standard, 284–286, 285f
  - in test anxiety management, 307, 308f
  - wrap-up, 286
- summary area, in Cornell System, 244, 245f–249f
- supplemental readings, for note taking, 267
- supplementary learning aids, 238
- supplementary text, use of, 181
- supporting sentences, in reading process, 116–117, 116f
- survey, defined, 277
- surveying reading assignment, 239, 241–242, 242f
- “switch hitter,” study, 307
- syllabus, 243
- synonym(s), in dictionaries, 135
- Szent-Györgyi, Albert, 27
- Szilard, Leo, 290
- T**
- table of contents (TOC), of textbook, 239
- tactile learners, approaches of, 197–198
- take breaks, for concentration, 68–69
- task-based schedules, 37–39, 38f
- technical details, in research papers, fine-tuning, 375
- Technostress*, 66
- telegraphic writing, for note taking, 263, 264f, 265f
- test(s), 303–334
- analyzing results, 326–327
  - answer easiest question first, 324
  - anxiety related to, managing, 304–312. *See also* test anxiety, managing
  - categories of, 304
  - defined, 334
  - essay, 318–323, 319f–322f
  - make notes on back of exam sheet, 325–326
  - map out your time during, 324–325
  - nature of, finding out about, 311
  - performing well on, described, 304
  - plot course corrections from, 327–328
  - questions on, 312–323, 319f–322f. *See also* test questions
  - read before answering, 323–324
  - read directions first, 324
  - read questions carefully, 324
  - systematic approach to, 323–326
  - use markings and jottings, 325–326
- test anxiety, managing, 304–312, 306f, 308f–310f
- advantageous learning in, 307
  - be study “switch hitter” in, 307
  - cram systematically in, 309, 311
  - exam-week schedule in, 306
  - find out about exam in, 311
  - get acquainted with test site in, 311–312
  - homestretch schedule in, 305–307, 306f, 308f–310f
  - note organization in, 306–307, 308f
  - organize yourself in, 305–307, 306f, 308f–310f
  - positive attitude in, 312
  - prepare yourself academically in, 304–311, 306f, 308f–310f
  - prepare yourself psychologically in, 311–312
  - schedule your time in, 305–307, 306f, 308f–310f
  - start early in, 304
  - stay on top of coursework in, 305
- test questions
- managing, 304
  - matching questions, 316–317
  - objective questions, understanding of, 312–318. *See also* objective questions
  - sentence-completion questions, 317–318
- test site, get acquainted with, 311–312

- text(s), electronic  
 ballpark search in, 161  
 bull's-eye search in, 160  
 marking of, 250, 253–254
- textbook(s)  
 appendices of, 239  
 author's objective, 237  
 author's qualifications, 238  
 bibliographies of, 239  
 difficult  
 coping with, 180–182  
 factors in, 180–181  
 enumeration in, 250, 252f  
 getting acquainted with, 236–238  
 glossaries of, 239  
 indexes of, 239  
 intonation in, 257–258  
 introduction in, 238–239, 240f–241f  
 marking of, Cornell System in,  
 249–250, 251f, 252f  
 organizational patterns in, 258–260  
 organizational plan of, 237  
 parts of, 239  
 prefatory material, 236–237  
 previewing, 239  
 reference lists of, 239  
 supplementary learning aids, 238  
 surveying specific assignments, 239,  
 241–242, 242f  
 TOC of, 239  
 unique features of, 238
- textbook notes  
 Cornell System for lecture notes with, 292f,  
 293  
 how to take, 269–271, 270f
- text information, concept map of, 189,  
 190f
- texting, limiting of, in time management, 29
- thinking  
 focused, 56–75  
 spare time, 27  
 vocabulary and, 128
- Thoreau, Henry David, 4, 157
- thought(s), own, in research papers, 370
- thought speed, while listening, 334f, 346
- Three Mile Island, 92
- tie things together, in note taking, 267–271,  
 269f, 270f
- time. *See also* time management  
 effective use of, 24–55  
 “hidden,” finding, 26–27  
 lack of, procrastination and, 79–80  
 in test taking, map out, 324–325
- Time*, 93
- time blocks, scheduling with, 31–37, 33f, 35f,  
 36f  
 advantages of, 31  
 components of, 31
- time habits, changing of, 27–30, 28f
- time management  
 importance of, 26  
 staying organized and, 43–48. *See also*  
 organization techniques  
 suggestions for, 49  
 techniques in  
 alarm clock, 29  
 changing time habits, 27–30, 28f  
 defying Parkinson's law, 28  
 finding “hidden” time, 26–27  
 limiting texting, e-mail, and  
 Internet use, 29  
 listen to your body, 29–30  
 making better use of time, 26  
 reclaiming lost time, 26–30, 28f  
 schedules, 30–43. *See also* schedule(s)  
 taking breaks, 29
- “time out,” 29
- time (chronological) pattern, 258–259
- time schedule. *See* schedule(s)
- timer(s), in procrastination prevention, 80–81
- title(s), for research papers, 377–378
- TOC. *See* table of contents (TOC)
- to-do list, 39, 41f
- topic(s), for research paper  
 choosing, 362–363  
 defined, 394  
 focus for, 363  
 narrowing of, 363, 364f
- topic sentence, 116, 116f
- transition(s), in research papers, 375
- trivia, 164
- true-false questions, 312–313
- Tufts University, Center for Reading and  
 Language Research of, 119
- Twain, Mark, 118
- two-page system for fast-moving  
 lectures, 266–267
- typographical intonation, 258
- U**  
 unabridged dictionaries, 138–139  
 understanding, in effort to remember, 211–212  
 University of California, Berkeley, 86, 109,  
 118–119  
 University of California, Los Angeles, 210  
 University of California, San Francisco, 83  
 University of Florida, Gainesville, 92  
 University of Minnesota, 147  
 University of Stockholm, Institute of Reading  
 Research of, 110–111  
 University of Washington, School of Business  
 Administration of, 78  
 University of Western Ontario, 191  
 urban legends, 165–166  
 urgency-importance matrix, 41–43, 41f  
 usage notes, in dictionaries, 137  
 USDA. *See* U.S. Department of Agriculture  
 (USDA)  
 U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Food  
 Guide Pyramid of, 90  
 U.S. Department of Transportation, 92
- V**  
 value  
 of ancillary materials, 197  
 of concentration, 58  
 of expressive reading, 257–258  
 of programmed materials, 197  
 of workbooks, 197  
 van Beethoven, Ludwig, 160  
 variable(s)  
 dependent, 184  
 independent, 184  
 vegetables, in diet, 91  
 verbalize your excuses, in procrastination  
 prevention, 81  
 verbal recitation, in note mastering, 287  
 visual(s)  
 context in, 187–188  
 converting words into pictures,  
 188–195, 190f, 191f, 193f  
 add illustrations to your notes, 189, 191,  
 191f  
 described, 188–189, 190f  
 in descriptive paragraphs, 191, 191f  
 distorted data in, 186  
 format of, 186  
 language of graphs, 183–186, 183f–187f  
 mastering of, 192–194, 193f  
 OPTIC system for, 182–183  
 scale of, 187  
 thinking in, in reflection in note  
 mastering, 293  
 turning abstract ideas into maps, 192–195,  
 193f  
 understanding, 182–188, 183f–187f  
 visual distractions, in study environment, 60  
 visualize success (completion), in  
 procrastination prevention, 81

- vocabulary  
 defined, 154  
 difficult, 180  
 quality of, improving, 128–141. *See also*  
   vocabulary building, tools in  
   thinking and, 128
- vocabulary building, 126–154  
 antonyms in, 143  
 dictionaries in, 132–139, 134f, 136f. *See also*  
   dictionary(ies)  
   *Fourteen Master Words* in, 147–148, 148t  
   Frontier Vocabulary System in,  
     141–143, 142f  
   Hayakawa’s view on, 142  
   index card system for, 139–141, 140f  
   newspapers in, 130–131  
   power of interest in, 128–132  
   for reading speed, 118–119  
   roots and prefixes in, 144–147, 144t, 145t,  
     146f  
   synonyms in, 135  
   tools in, 128–141, 134f, 136f, 140f  
     dictionaries, 132–139. *See also*  
       dictionary(ies)  
     interest, 128–132  
   usage notes in, 137  
   word histories in, 137
- vocalization, in reading process, 110–111
- volume, in intonation, 257, 258
- von Goethe, Johann Wolfgang, 178
- Vonnegut, Kurt, 58
- W**
- water, in diet, 91
- Waugh, Evelyn, 126
- weariness, stress and, 93
- Webb, Wilse, 92
- webpages, printed, Cornell margins on, 253
- Webster, Daniel, 113
- Webster’s Third New International Dictionary of the  
 English Language*, 138
- weekly schedule, 32, 34–36, 35f  
 assignment-oriented, 39, 40f  
 efficient vs. effective, 40
- Weil, Michelle, 66
- well-being, health and, 88–98, 97f. *See also*  
   *specific components*; health and  
   well-being
- Wellness Letter*, 86
- “What Do You Want to Be When You Grow  
 Up?” (Williams), 7–9
- White, Paul Dudley, 96
- Whitehead, Alfred North, 289
- whole-grain foods, in diet, 91
- Willett, Walter C., 90–91
- Williams, David G., 7–9
- Williams, Serena, 58
- Wolf, Maryanne, 119
- word(s). *See also* vocabulary building  
 antonyms, value of, 143  
 backstories of, 131–132  
 converting into pictures, 188–195, 190f,  
   191f, 193f. *See also* visual(s)  
 in dictionaries, 132–139. *See also*  
   dictionary(ies)  
   *Fourteen Master Words*, 147–148,  
     148t  
   frontier, 142–143, 142f  
   histories of. *See* word histories  
   index card system for, 139–141, 140f  
   interest in, 128–132  
   acquiring, 131  
   boosting, 130–131  
   developing of, 129–131  
   learning of, 142  
   mind’s handling of, 111  
   prefixes of, 144–147, 145t  
   reading of, in rapid succession, 111  
   roots of, 144, 144t, 146–147, 146f  
   synonyms, 135  
   treat as chemical compounds, 143–148,  
     144t, 145t, 146f, 148t
- word histories  
 in dictionaries, 137  
 resources for, 132  
 in vocabulary building, 131–132, 137
- word processor documents, 250,  
 253–254
- work, pocket, carrying of, 26
- workbooks, value of, 197
- working bibliography, for research papers,  
 367–368, 367f
- working in groups, 195–196
- working memory, described, 208
- World Trade Center attack (2001), 215
- worry pad, in study environment, 63
- wrap-up summary, 286
- writing  
 recitation by, 287  
 telegraphic, for note taking, 263, 264f,  
 265f
- writing process, for research papers,  
 373–379, 374f, 377f, 378f. *See*  
   *also* research papers, writing  
   process for
- writing style, difficult, 180
- writing tone, difficult, 180